



Workshop Manual
Octavia III 2013 >
Octavia III 2014 >
Body Work
Edition 12.2013

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

- 00 - Technical data
- 50 - Body - front
- 55 - Bonnet, rear lid
- 57 - Front doors, door components, central locking
- 58 - Rear doors, door components
- 60 - Sunroof
- 63 - Bumpers
- 64 - Glazing
- 66 - Exterior equipment
- 68 - Interior equipment
- 69 - Passenger protection
- 70 - Trim, insulation
- 72 - Seat frames
- 74 - Seat - padding, covers



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

Contents

00 - Technical data	1
1 General points	1
1.1 Vehicle identification number	1
50 - Body - front	4
1 Front body	4
1.1 Tools	4
1.2 Lock carrier with components parts	4
1.3 Service position	5
1.4 Removing and installing lock carrier with component parts	7
1.5 Front wing	10
1.6 Removing and installing the wing support	14
1.7 Plenum chamber cover	15
1.8 Bulkhead plenum chamber	17
1.9 Damping of the plenum chamber	18
1.10 Noise insulation	19
1.11 Underfloor trim panel	19
1.12 Tunnel bridge	21
55 - Bonnet, rear lid	23
1 Front flap	23
1.1 Summary of components	23
1.2 Removing and installing the front flap	24
1.3 Removing and installing the actuator for the front flap	25
1.4 Removing and installing the hinge for the pedestrian protection system	27
1.5 Removing and installing the hinge for the front flap	28
1.6 Removing and installing the support bar	28
1.7 Lock and unlock components of front flap - Summary of components	30
1.8 Removing and installing front flap lock	30
1.9 Separating the Bowden cable	33
1.10 Removing and installing the locking clamp	34
1.11 Removing and installing the operating lever	35
1.12 Adjusting the front flap	37
2 Tailgate	40
2.1 Summary of components:	40
2.2 Removing and installing tailgate	41
2.3 Removing and installing the closing wedge	42
2.4 Adjusting tailgate	42
2.5 Removing and installing the tailgate lock	44
2.6 Removing and installing pressurized gas strut of tailgate	45
2.7 Removing and installing the spindle drive of the tailgate (Octavia III - Combi)	46
2.8 Seal for tailgate	46
3 Fuel tank lid unit	48
3.1 Fuel-tank lid unit - Summary of components	48
3.2 Removing and installing fuel tank lid unit	48
57 - Front doors, door components, central locking	49
1 Front door	49
1.1 Door hinges - Summary of components	49
1.2 Removing and installing the door	50
1.3 Door adjustment	53
2 Door internal parts	56
2.1 Front door - Summary of components	56



2.2	Removing and installing the door cover	57
2.3	Door handle and door lock - Summary of components	59
2.4	Removing and installing cap for lock cylinder	60
2.5	Removing and installing lock cylinder	61
2.6	Removing and installing cap (without lock cylinder)	64
2.7	Removing and installing the door handle	67
2.8	Removing and installing the door lock	69
2.9	Removing and installing bearing bracket	71
2.10	Front door window	73
2.11	Removing and installing door window	74
2.12	Removing and installing window lifter motor	78
2.13	Remove and install window lifter	80
2.14	Removing and installing the window run	81
2.15	Removing and installing the inner window shaft seal	85
2.16	Removing and installing the outer window shaft seal	86
2.17	Removing and installing the inside door seal	88
2.18	Removing and installing the outside door seal	90
3	Central locking system	91
3.1	Adaptation of keys with radio remote control	91
3.2	Summary of components of battery for the keys with radio remote control (foldable)	91
3.3	Removing and installing the battery for the foldable key with radio remote control	92
58	Rear doors, door components	93
1	Rear door	93
1.1	Summary of components:	93
1.2	Removing and installing the door	95
1.3	Door adjustment	97
2	Door internal parts	100
2.1	Summary of components:	100
2.2	Removing and installing the cover	101
2.3	Removing and installing the door retaining strap	103
2.4	Removing and installing the locking clamp	104
2.5	Door handle and door lock - Summary of components	104
2.6	Removing and installing the cap	104
2.7	Removing and installing the door handle	107
2.8	Removing and installing the door lock	109
2.9	Removing and installing bearing bracket	111
2.10	Rear door window	113
2.11	Removing and installing door window	114
2.12	Removing and installing window lifter motor	117
2.13	Removing and installing the manual drive	119
2.14	Removing and installing window crank	120
2.15	Remove and install window lifter	121
2.16	Removing and installing the window run	122
2.17	Removing and installing the rear fixed door window	127
2.18	Removing and installing the fixed door window (Octavia III - Combi)	128
2.19	Removing and installing the inner window shaft seal	129
2.20	Removing and installing the outer window shaft seal	130
2.21	Removing and installing the outside window shaft seal (Octavia III - Combi)	131
2.22	Removing and installing the inside door seal	132
2.23	Removing and installing the outside door seal	133
60	Sunroof	135
1	Summary of components Sliding/tilting roof	135
1.1	Removing and installing spoiler	136
1.2	Removing and installing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof	139

1.3	Adjusting the glass panel for sliding/tilting roof	141
1.4	Replacing the glass roof pane seal	142
1.5	Summary of components - screen for sliding roof	144
1.6	Removing and installing the sliding roof screen	144
1.7	Removing and installing motor for sliding/tilting roof	149
1.8	Adjustment run of the motor	150
1.9	Removing and installing cover for sliding/tilting roof	150
1.10	Installing and removing the sliding/tilting roof	155
1.11	Installing and removing the frame for the sliding block guide	159
1.12	Removing and installing water drain hoses	160
1.13	Cleaning the water drain hoses	161
2	Sun roof - Combi	162
2.1	Summary of components - Sun roof	162
2.2	Summary of components - screen for sliding roof	163
2.3	Assembly overview - Air deflector	164
2.4	Removing and installing the glass roof	164
2.5	Removing and installing the rear glass panel	168
2.6	Adjusting glass panel	173
2.7	Removing and installing sun roof frame	176
2.8	Removing and installing the draft deflector	179
2.9	Removing and installing control unit for sunroof	183
2.10	Removing and installing roof blind control unit	185
2.11	Close the sliding roof manually	187
2.12	Removing and installing the gasket of the sun roof	188
2.13	Removing and installing the sliding roof screen	192
2.14	Teach sliding sunroof control unit	197
2.15	Teach control unit for screen for sliding roof	197
3	Water drain hoses	199
3.1	Summary of components - water drain hoses	199
3.2	Cleaning the water drain hoses	200
3.3	Removing and installing water drain hoses	201
63	Bumpers	203
1	Front bumper	203
1.1	Front bumper	203
1.2	Front bumper bracket	208
1.3	Cutting out the openings for the parking aid sensors (drill)	209
1.4	Cutting out park steering assistant sender (drilling)	209
2	Rear bumper	211
2.1	Rear bumper	211
2.2	Rear bumper bracket and runners	214
3	Rear bumper - Combi	216
3.1	Rear bumper	216
3.2	Rear bumper bracket and runners	218
64	Glazing	220
1	Glued windows	220
1.1	Tools	220
1.2	Materials	220
1.3	Windscreen - Summary of components	221
1.4	Removing windscreen	222
1.5	Rear window - Summary of components	224
1.6	Removing and installing the rear window	225
1.7	Installing rear window	226
1.8	Summary of components - rear window (Octavia III - Combi)	226



1.9	Removing and installing the rear window (Octavia III - Combi)	227
1.10	Summary of components - side window (Octavia III - Combi)	228
1.11	Removing and installing the side window (Octavia III - Combi)	229
1.12	Preparing the new window for fitting	232
1.13	Prepare body flange for fitting	233
1.14	Installation instructions for all the windows	233
1.15	Glueing	234
1.16	Minimum hardening time	236
1.17	Cleaning necessary due to soiling through glue sealing material	236
66	- Exterior equipment	237
1	Wheelhouse liner	237
1.1	Front wheelhouse liner	237
1.2	Rear wheelhouse liner	239
2	Exterior mirror	241
2.1	Summary of components:	241
3	Trailer coupling	251
3.1	Summary of components trailer coupling	251
3.2	Summary of components - trailer coupling (Octavia III - Combi)	252
4	Trailer coupling (Octavia III - Combi)	254
5	Letterings	255
5.1	Installation instructions	255
5.2	Removing and installing the logo on the tailgate	255
6	Rear spoiler	257
7	Rear spoiler (Octavia RS)	259
68	- Interior equipment	261
1	Interior rear-view mirror	261
1.1	Tools	261
1.2	Removing and installing the interior rear-view mirror	261
1.3	Removing and installing the interior mirror with rain sensor	263
1.4	Removing and installing the interior mirror with rain sensor and camera	265
1.5	Glueing the retaining plate for the interior rear-view mirror	268
2	Covers, storage areas and trim panels	269
2.1	Tools	269
2.2	Centre console	269
2.3	Removing and installing the armrest	278
2.4	Removing and installing the sun visor	279
3	Recessed handles	281
3.1	Removing and installing the recessed handles of the roof	281
69	- Passenger protection	283
1	Inspect seat belts	283
1.1	Inspection points	283
1.2	Special instructions for the belt tensioner	286
1.3	Storage, transport and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation and actuator units (pyrotechnical components)	286
2	Seat belts	287
2.1	Summary of components - three-point seatbelt front	287
2.2	Summary of components - rear outer three-point seat belt	288
2.3	Summary of components - rear middle three-point seat belt	290
2.4	Summary of components - belt buckle front	291
2.5	Summary of components - belt buckle rear	292
2.6	Removing and installing the front three-point seat belt	293



2.7	Removing and installing the rear outer three-point seat belt	295
2.8	Removing and installing the rear middle three-point seat belt	297
2.9	Removing and installing front belt guide	298
2.10	Removing and installing front belt end fitting	298
2.11	Removing and installing the outer rear belt end fitting	299
2.12	Removing and installing the seat belt height adjustment	299
2.13	Removing and installing the front seat belt buckle	301
2.14	Removing and installing the rear seat belt buckle	302
3	Airbags	303
3.1	Tools	303
3.2	Observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation and actuator units (pyrotechnical components)	304
3.3	Special instructions for driver and front passenger airbag	305
3.4	Additional safety instructions for side airbag	305
3.5	Additional safety instructions for head airbag	306
3.6	Safety instructions for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag	306
3.7	Storage, transport and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation and actuator units (pyrotechnical components)	307
3.8	Replacement of airbag units following an accident	307
3.9	Overview of fitting locations - airbag	309
3.10	Summary of components of steering wheel	311
3.11	Summary of components - Airbag on driver side	312
3.12	Removing and installing airbag unit with ignition for airbag driver's side	313
3.13	Replacing the connection line in the airbag	314
3.14	Summary of components - Airbag on front passenger side	315
3.15	Removing and installing airbag unit front passenger side with ignition 1 for airbag front passenger side	316
3.16	Removing and installing key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger side airbag	318
3.17	Summary of components - side airbags front	319
3.18	Summary of components - side airbag rear	321
3.19	Removing and installing side airbag front with ignition for side airbag	321
3.20	Rear side airbag with ignition device for side airbag rear	322
3.21	Removing and installing the warning light for front passenger side airbag off	323
3.22	Summary of components - head airbag	323
3.23	Removing and installing head airbag with ignition for head airbag driver's side	324
3.24	Summary of components - knee airbag	327
3.25	Removing and installing knee airbag with ignition for knee airbag driver's side	328
3.26	After replacement, configure the control unit	329
4	Crash sensors for airbag	331
4.1	Overview of fitting location - Crash sensors for airbag	331
4.2	Removing and installing the crash sensor for front airbag	332
4.3	Removing and installing the crash sensor for side airbag	334
4.4	Removing and installing the crash sensor for side airbag rear	336
4.5	Removing and installing seat occupation sensor front passenger side	337
5	Airbag control unit	339
5.1	Summary of components - Airbag control unit	339
5.2	Removing and installing the airbag control unit J234	340
6	Hinges for the pedestrian protection system	342
6.1	Set hinges for pedestrian protection system into the initial position after activation	342
70	Trim, insulation	346
1	Dash panel	346
1.1	Removing and installing the dash panel	346
1.2	Removing and installing passenger glove compartment	351
1.3	Removing and installing passenger side glove compartment support	353



1.4	Removing and installing glovebox on driver's side	354
1.5	Removing and installing the steering column trim panel	355
1.6	Removing and installing the central tube of dash panel	355
2	Door and side trim panels	359
2.1	Removing and installing the front door trim panel on the driver's side	359
2.2	Removing and installing the rear door trim panel	361
3	Trim panels of pillars	365
3.1	Removing and installing top trim panel of pillar A	365
3.2	Removing and installing bottom trim panel of pillar A on the driver's side	366
3.3	Removing and installing bottom trim panel of pillar A on the front passenger side	367
3.4	Removing and installing top B-pillar trim panel	368
3.5	Removing and installing bottom B-pillar trim panel	370
3.6	Removing and installing trim panel of pillar C	372
3.7	Removing and installing the top C pillar trim panel (Octavia III - Combi)	373
3.8	Removing and installing the wheel house trim on the C pillar	374
4	Removing and installing the wheel house trim of the C pillar (Octavia III - Combi)	377
5	Removing and installing the D column trim (Octavia III - Combi)	379
6	Tailgate trim panel	381
6.1	Removing and installing the tailgate trim panel	381
6.2	Removing and installing the tailgate trim (Octavia III - Combi)	382
6.3	Removing and installing the tailgate trim	383
6.4	Removing and installing the tailgate trim (Octavia III - Combi)	384
7	Luggage compartment trim panels	386
7.1	Removing and installing the tailgate/luggage compartment cover	386
7.2	Removing and installing the tailgate/luggage compartment cover (Octavia III - Combi)	387
7.3	Removing and installing top part of side luggage compartment trim panel	388
7.4	Removing and installing side luggage compartment trim panel	389
7.5	Removing and installing the side luggage compartment trim panel (Octavia III - Combi)	390
7.6	Removing and installing the seat backrests	391
7.7	Removing and installing the unlocking mechanism on the seat backrests (Octavia III - Combi)	393
8	Moulded headliner	395
8.1	Removing and installing moulded headliner	395
8.2	Removing and installing the moulded headliner (Octavia III - Combi)	396
8.3	Removing and installing the dampings and roof reinforcements	398
72	Seat frames	400
1	Front seats	400
1.1	Removing and installing front seat	400
1.2	Removing and installing the seat upholstery on the side of the sill (seat without height adjustment)	402
1.3	Removing and installing the seat upholstery on the side of the sill (seat with height adjustment)	403
1.4	Removing and installing the operating lever of the seat height adjustment	405
1.5	Removing and installing the seat upholstery on the tunnel side	405
1.6	Removing and installing the grip for the seat height adjuster	406
1.7	Removing and installing the lever for adjusting the lumbar support	407
1.8	Removing and installing front seat backrest	407
1.9	Removing and installing front lumbar support frame	408
1.10	Removing the headrest guides	409
1.11	Remove headrests	411
2	Rear seats	412
2.1	Removing and installing the rear seat bench	412
3	Removing and installing backrests	415



74 - Seat - padding, covers	416
1 Front covers and seat upholstery	416
1.1 Tools	416
1.2 Removing and installing the cover and the upholstery of the front seat cushions	416
1.3 Removing and installing the cover and the upholstery of the front seat backrest	418
2 Rear covers and seat upholstery	422
2.1 Tools	422
2.2 Removing and installing cover and seat upholstery	422
2.3 Removing and installing entire cover and backrest upholstery	425

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

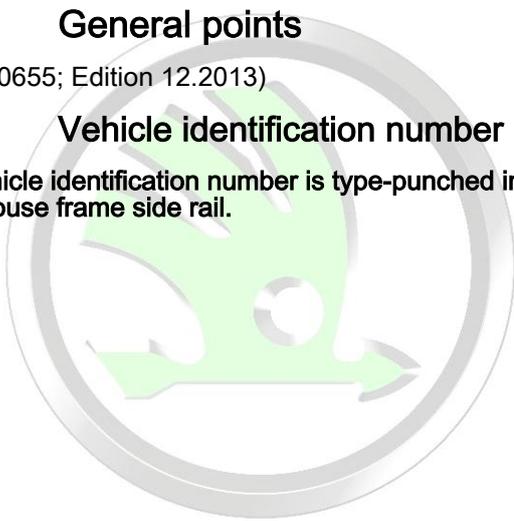
00 – Technical data

1 General points

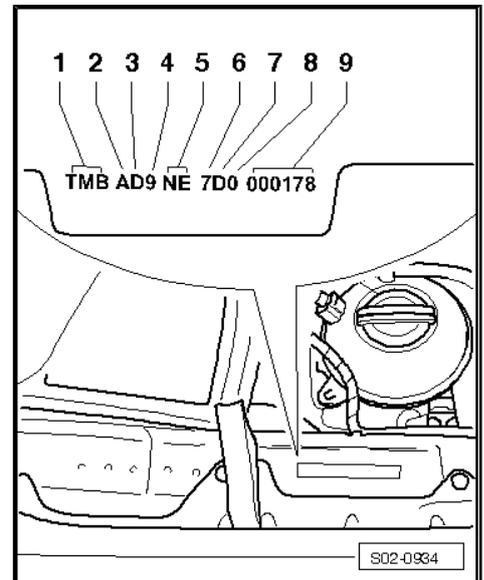
(SRL000655; Edition 12.2013)

1.1 Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number is type-punched into the right wheelhouse frame side rail.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©





The vehicle identification number can also be found at the bottom left of the front window corner.

1 - Manufacturer's world code

TMB - Manufacturing plant Škoda

XW8 - Manufacturing plant in Russia

2 - Body type:

A - Sedan, left-hand drive, 4x2

B- Sedan, left-hand drive, 4x2

J - Combi, left-hand drive, 4x2

K - Combi, right-hand drive, 4x2

L - Combi, left-hand drive, 4x4

M - Combi, right-hand drive, 4x4

1 - vehicle category N1, left-hand drive, 4x2

2 - vehicle category N1, right-hand drive, 4x2

3 - vehicle category N1, left-hand drive, 4x4

4 - vehicle category N1, right-hand drive, 4x4

3 - Engine type:

A - 1.2 ltr./63 kW/petrol engine

B - 1.2 ltr./77 kW/petrol engine

C - 1.4 ltr./103 kW/petrol engine

D - 1.8 ltr./132 kW/petrol engine

E - 2.0 ltr./162 kW/petrol engine

F - 1.6 ltr. TDI/66 kW/diesel engine

G - 1.6l TDI/77, 81 kW/diesel engine

J - 2.0 ltr. TDI/105/110 kW/diesel engine

K - 2.0 ltr. TDI/135 kW/diesel engine

4 - Airbag System:

2 - 2 Front airbags

4 - 2 Front + 2 side airbags

5 - 2 front + 2 side + 1 knee airbag

6 - 2 front + 2 side + 2 head airbags

7 - 2 front + 2 side + 2 head + 1 knee airbag

8 - 2 front + 4 side + 2 head airbags

9 - 2 front + 4 side + 2 head + 1 knee airbag

B - total weight 1360 kg to 1814 kg

C - total weight 1814 kg to 2268 kg

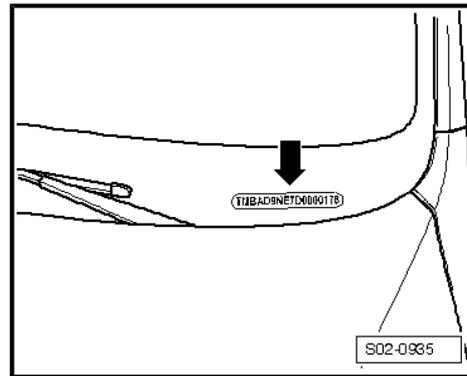
5 - Vehicle type:

NE - OCTAVIA III

6 - Internal code

7 - Model year

D - 2013



E - 2014
F - 2015
G - 2016
H - 2017
J - 2018
K - 2019

ŠKODA

8 - Manufacturing plant:

0 - Mladá Boleslav
A - Aurangabad
B - Solomonovo
D - Ust-Kamenogorsk
H - Nižnij Novgorod, Gaz
U - India (vehicles manufactured in the Czech Republic for India)

9 - Vehicle chassis number



Note

- ◆ *The identification of the body manufactured as spare part is performed with the sign -#- in front and behind the vehicle identification number instead of the existing sign -*-*
- ◆ *Current vehicle identification number → Maintenance ; Booklet Octavia III .*



Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.



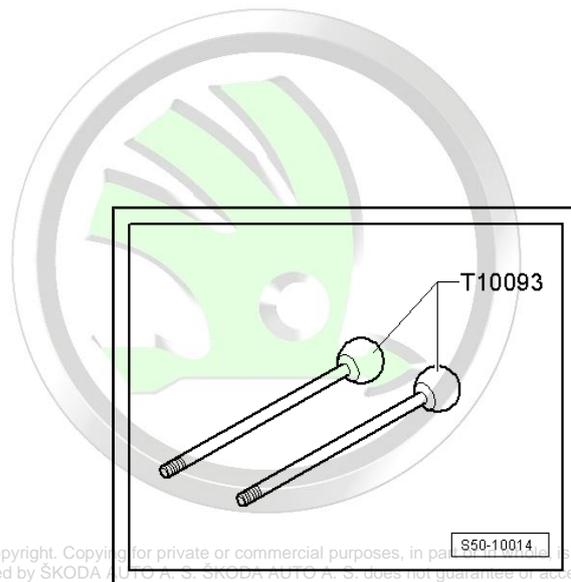
50 – Body - front

1 Front body

1.1 Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Guide bars - T10093-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

1.2 Lock carrier with components parts

Summary of components:



Note

Depending on the model version, slight differences in the mounting parts are possible.

1 - Lock carrier with components parts

- Service position
⇒ [page 5](#) .
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 7](#) .

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque -
2.5 Nm.

**3 -
Air deflector**

4 - Air deflector

5 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.

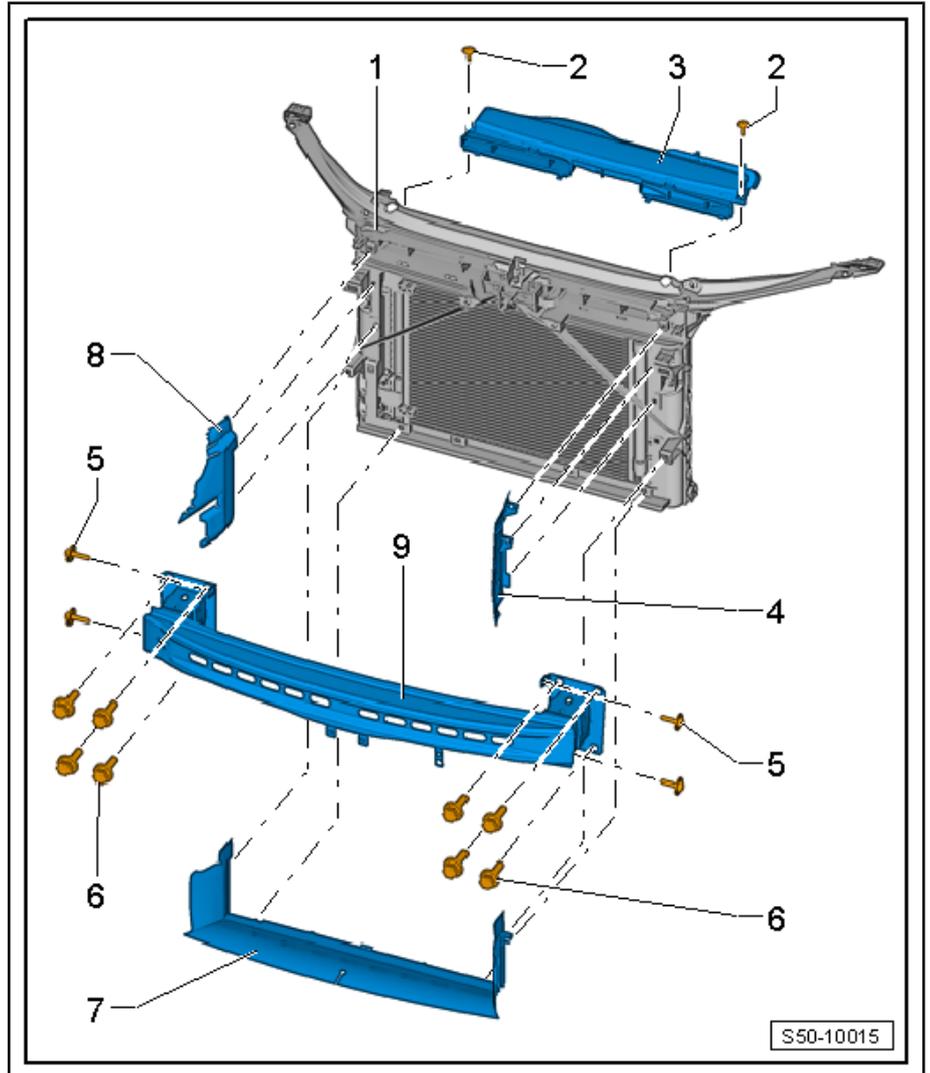
6 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
55 Nm.

7 - Air guide duct

8 - Air deflector

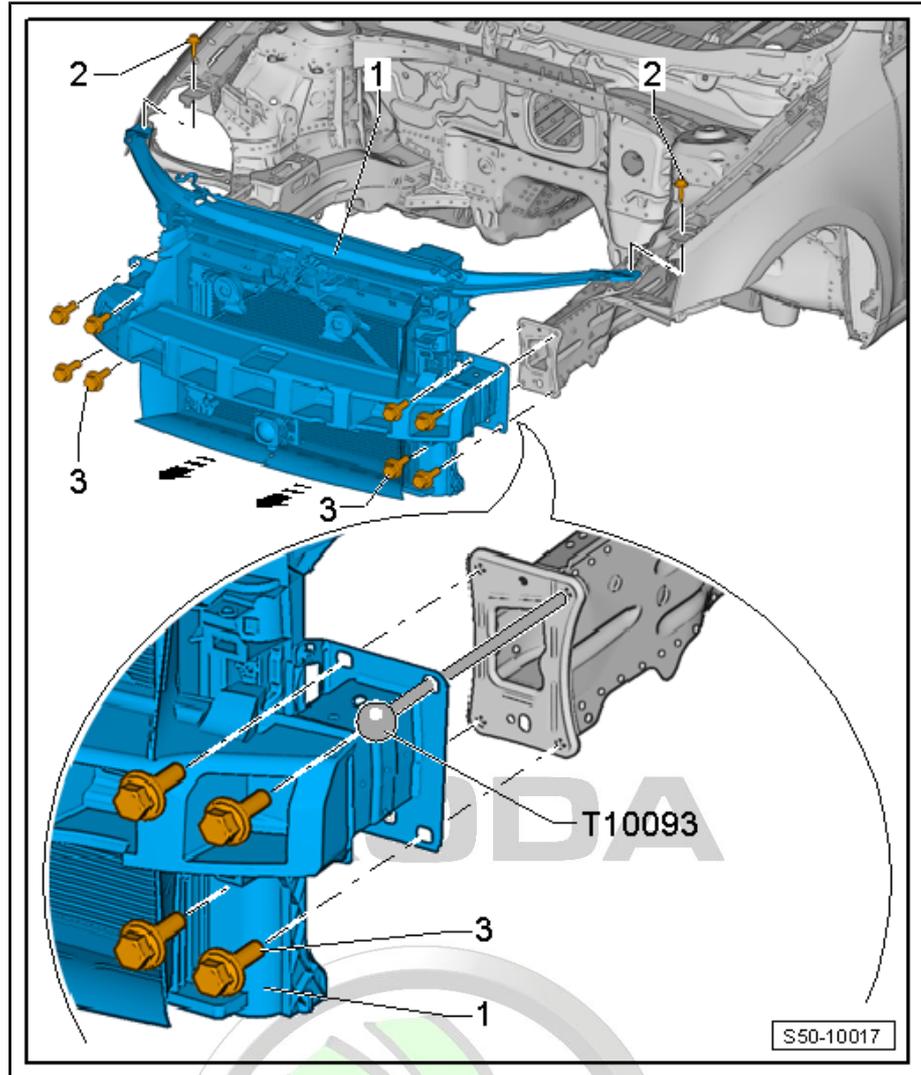
9 - Bumper bracket



1.3 Service position

Set service position:





- Removing front bumper ⇒ [page 203](#) .
- Remove front headlights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 .
- Pull off the control cable from the lock carrier ⇒ [page 33](#) .
- Remove supports for washer fluid vessel from the lock carrier.
- Unclip the pipe from the air-conditioning unit (to the evaporator) from the right-hand lock carrier.
- Remove air guide (depending upon engine type) ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 5\)](#) .
- Remove the screws -3- at the left and right frame side rails.
- Install the guide bars - T10093- on the left and right frame side rails.
- Remove top screws - 2 -.
- The lock carrier -1- can be pulled on the guide bars - T10093- by approx. 10 cm forwards -arrows-.



Note

When removing the lock carrier, make sure the electrical cabling and other cables do not get damaged.

1.3.1 Install

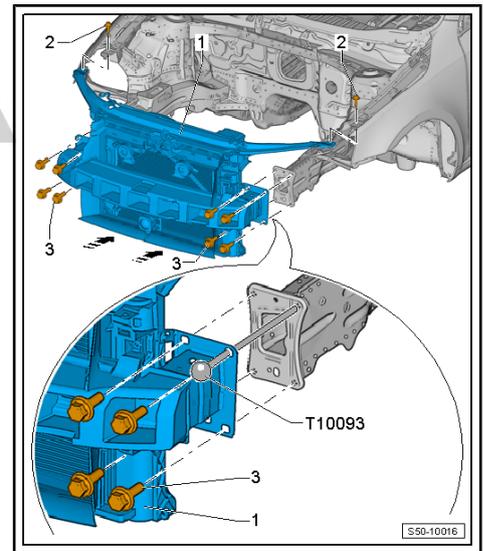
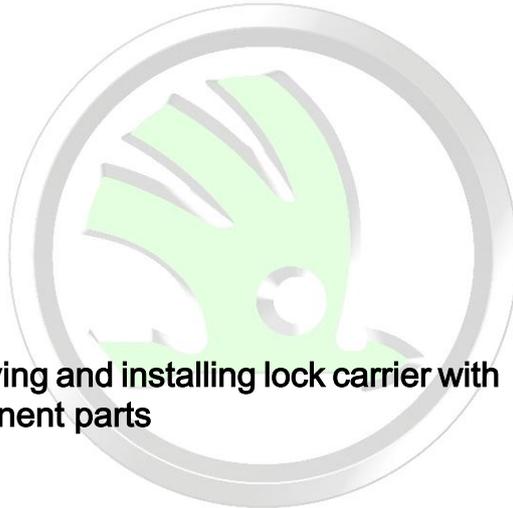
– Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

The hoses and the lines must not be jammed.

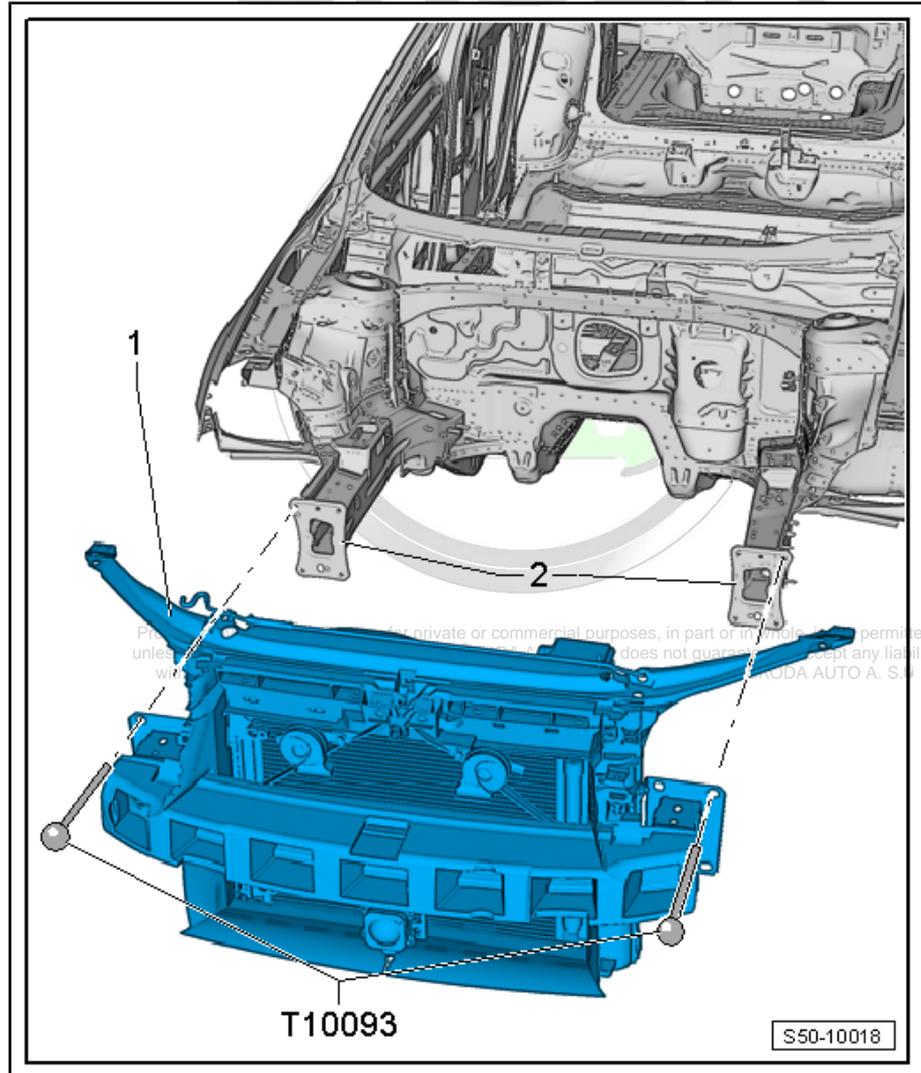
ŠKODA



1.4 Removing and installing lock carrier with component parts

Removing:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Carry out the service position ⇒ [page 5](#) .
- Separate electrical plug connections.
- Disconnect the intake hose to the air filter.
- Separate the coolant line and drain the coolant ⇒ Engine cooling; Rep. gr. 19 .
- Separate the lines for the condenser ⇒ Heating and air conditioning system; Rep. gr. 87 .
- Remove the guide bars - T10093- at the left and right frame side rails - 2 - with the help of a second mechanic and remove the lock carrier with component parts - 1 - .



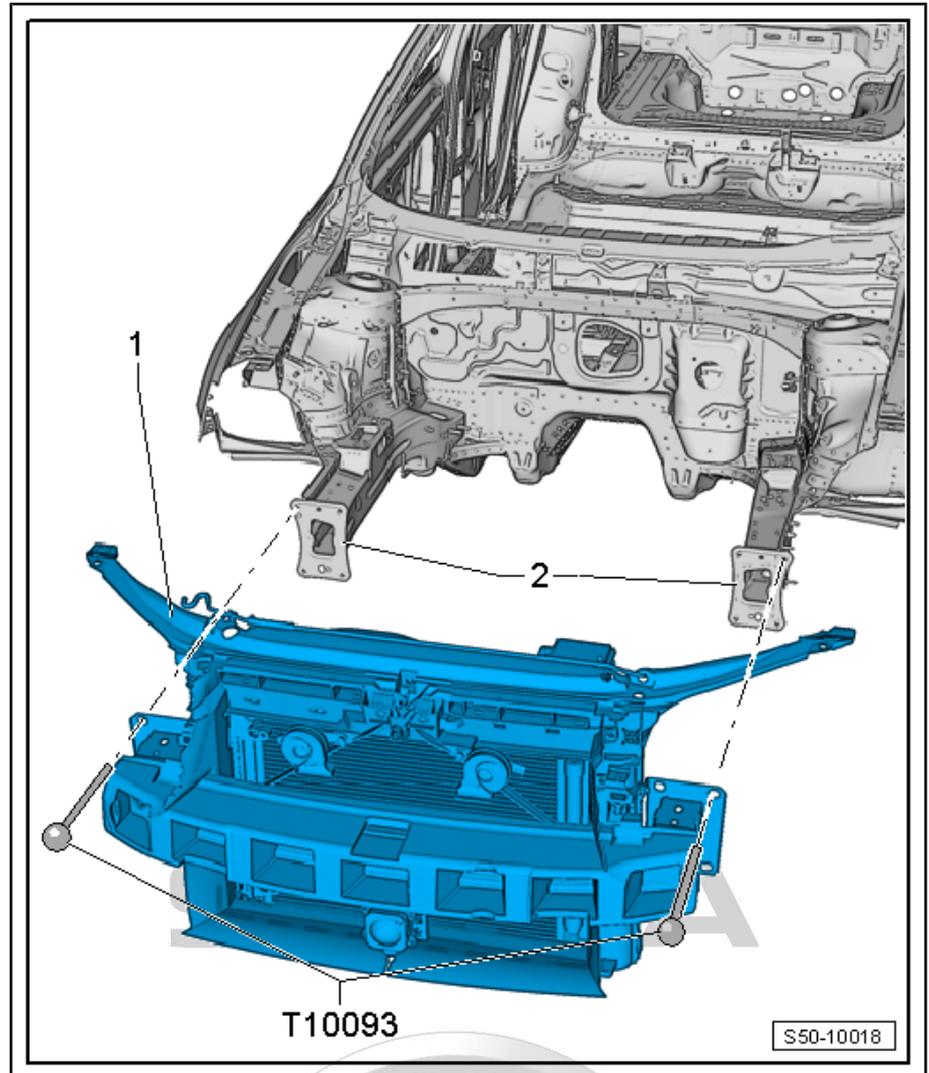
WARNING

If the cables of the air-conditioning system and/or the coolant are separated, the drive unit must no longer be started.

i Note

- ◆ Do not suspend the condenser to the wires.
- ◆ Do not bend the condenser lines.

Installing:



- Position the lock carrier - 1 - on the frame side rails - 2 -.
- Install the left and right guide bars - T10093- .
- Resetting service position ⇒ [page 7](#) .

Further installation occurs in reverse order.

- Take the mean of the lock carrier at the frame side rails and between the wings ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; technical data; body gaps; front body .

1.5 Front wing

1.5.1 Summary of components

1 - Wing

- Removing ⇒ [page 10](#) .
- Installing ⇒ [page 13](#) .

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.

3 - Interior trim

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 10](#) .

4 - Damping of interior trim

- Positioned in front of the
web plate.

5 - Foam part

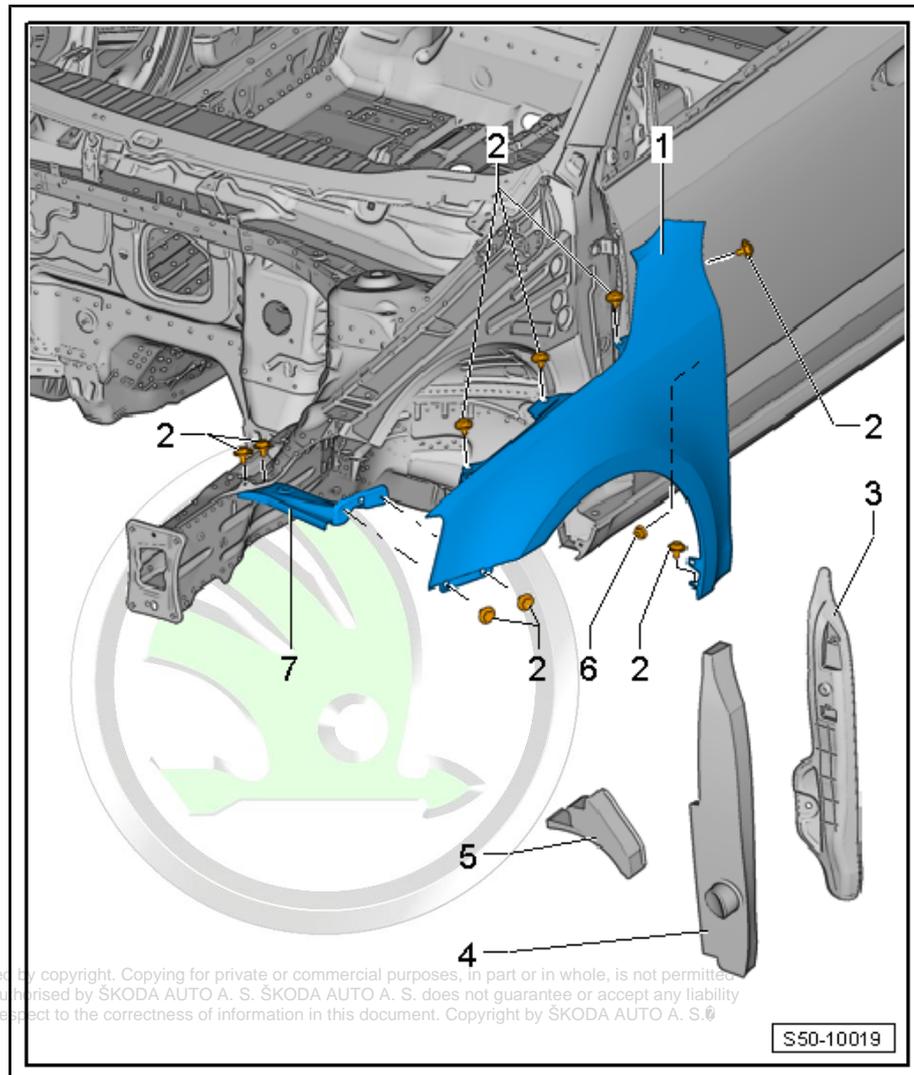
- Inserted between the
wing and the front top
frame side rail.

6 - Nut

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.

7 - Wing support

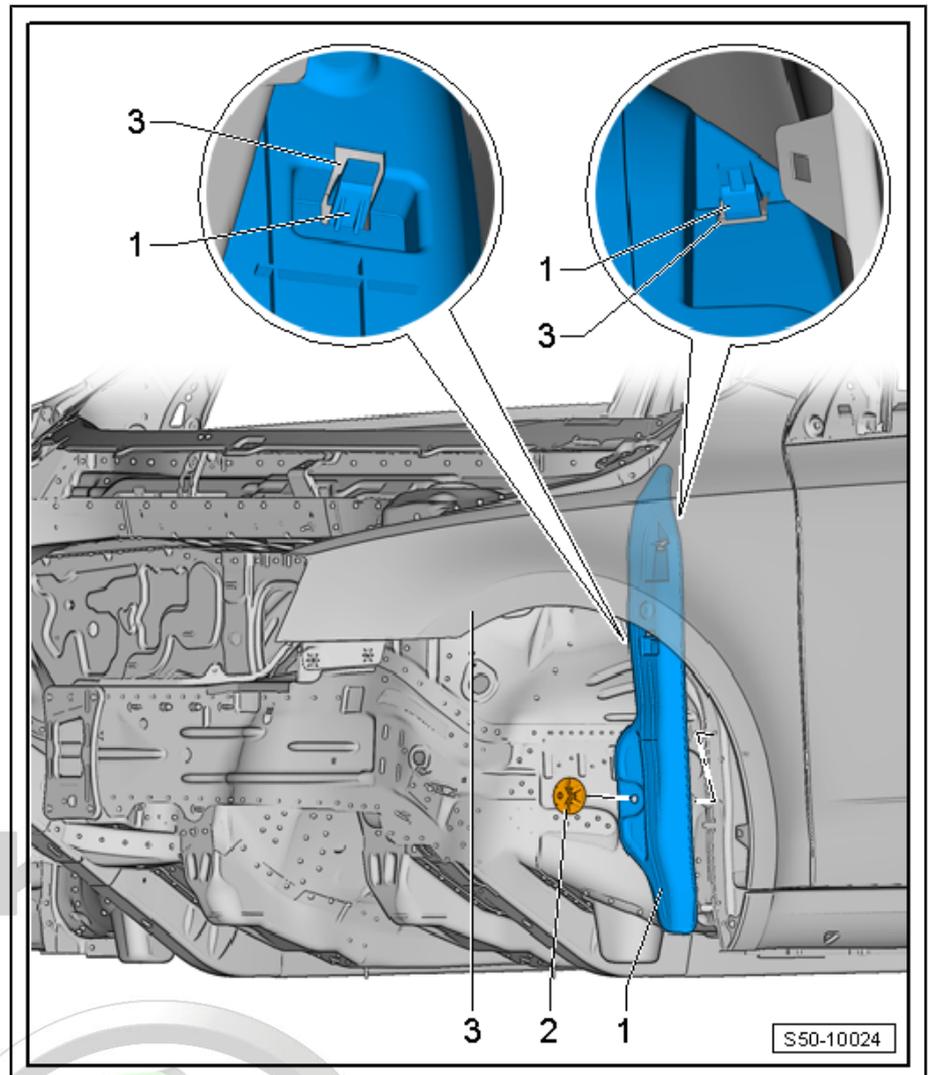
- Removing and instal-
ling: ⇒ [page 14](#) .



1.5.2 Removing front wing

- Remove front wheelhouse liner ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Pull out the foam part between the wing and the frame side rail.
- Pull the damping of the interior trim out of the wheelhouse.

- Remove nut - 2 -.

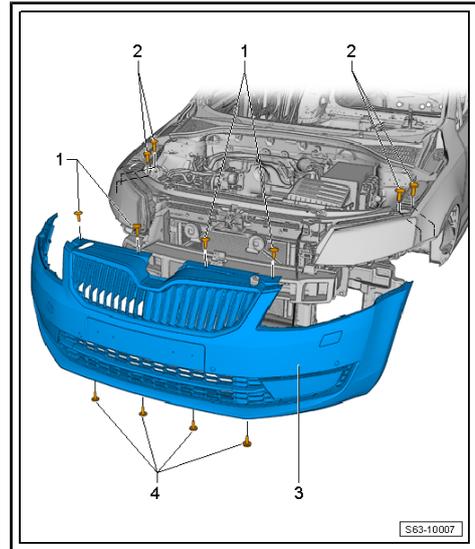


- Undo the latches of the front wheelhouse liner - 1 - from the wing - 3 -.
- Slightly pull the inner trim - 1 - in the lower area forwards and lower.

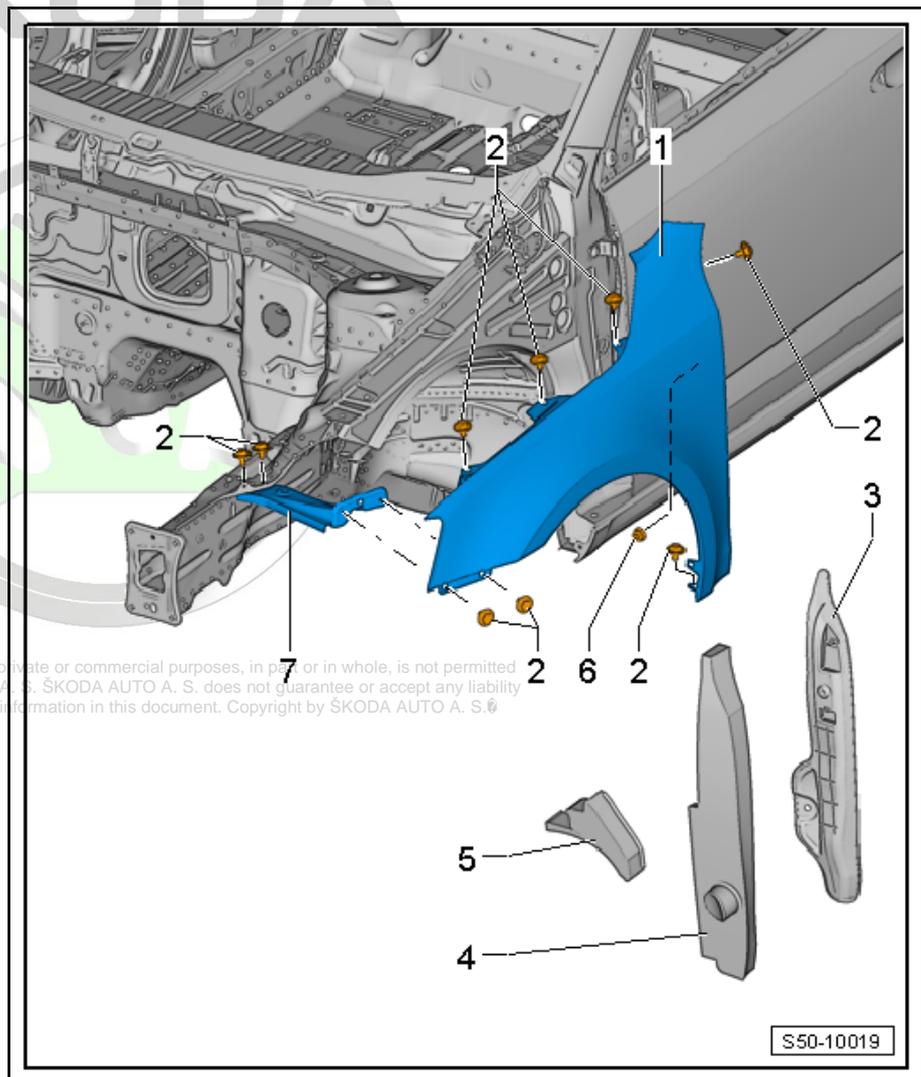
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Remove the securing bolts (3.5 Nm) - 2 - which connect the bumper to the wing => [page 203](#) .



- Unscrew nuts - 6 - .
- Unscrew screws -2-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

i Note

For this step the bumper holder -7- must not be removed.

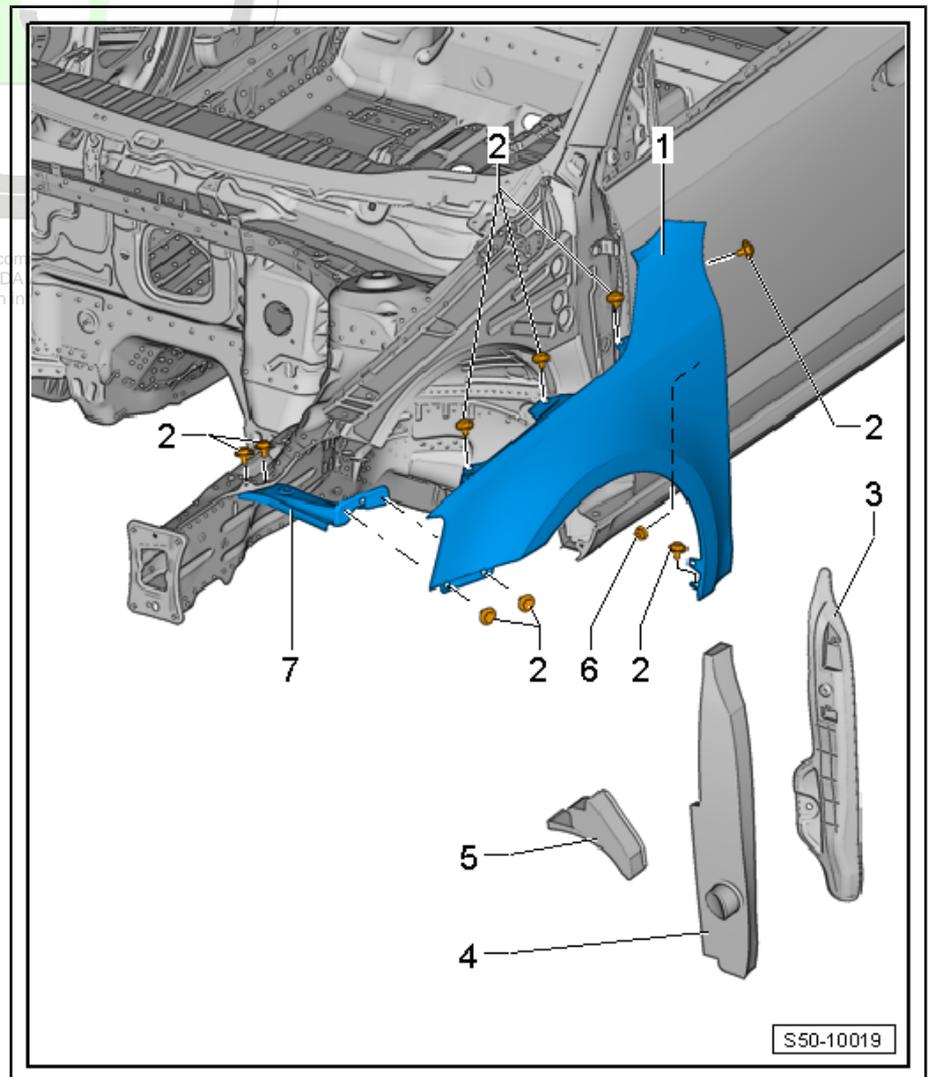
- Carefully remove the wing - 1 -.

i Note

The removal of the wing begins at the A-pillar and ends at the bumper.

1.5.3 Installing the front wing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is prohibited without the written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA is not responsible for the correctness of information.



Installing:

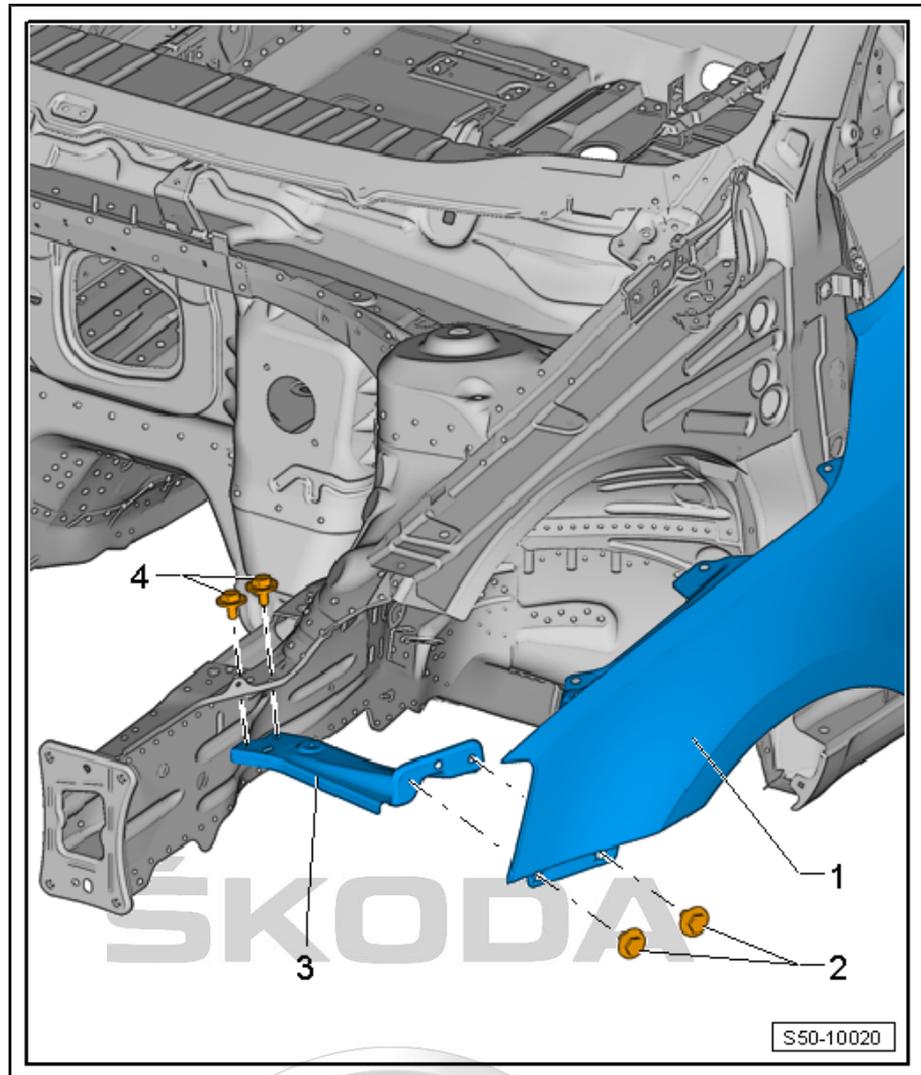
- The installation of the wing - 1 - occurs in the reverse order.
- Tightening torque of screws -2- (8 Nm).
- Observe the parallelism and the correct gap sizes ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; technical data; body gaps; front body .

The wing support must be loosened when the fitting is carried out
⇒ [page 14](#) .

**Note**

Install the wing -1- free of stress.

1.6 Removing and installing the wing support

**Removing:**

- Release the fixing screw of the headlight from the wing support
⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 .
- Remove screws -4-.
- Release screws - 2 - and remove wing support - 3 -.

Installing:

- Screw in the screws -4-.
- Screw in the screws -2-.
- Fit the wing support - 3 - together with the wing - 1 - ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; technical data; body gaps; front body .
- Screw the fixing screw of the headlight into the wing support
⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 .

Copyrighted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ®

- Tightening torques of screws for wing support -3- (8 Nm).

1.7 Plenum chamber cover

1.7.1 Summary of components

1 - Plenum chamber cover

2 - Plenum chamber cover

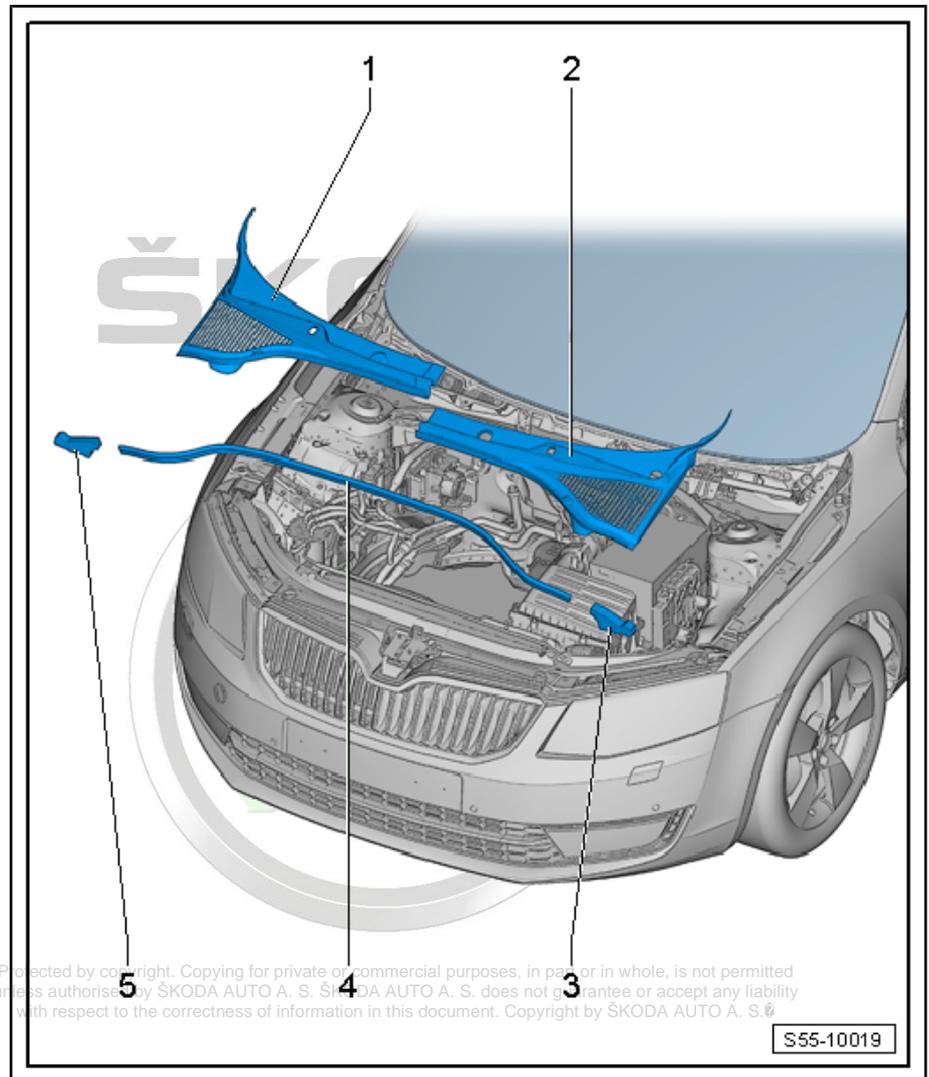
3 - Moulded foam part

- Adhered to wing.

4 - Gasket

5 - Moulded foam part

- Adhered to wing.



Removing:

- Remove wiper arms ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 92 .
- Remove the seal -4- along the entire length of the plenum chamber cover.
- Remove the locating clips for the plenum chamber cover.



Caution

The plenum chamber cover must not be levered off with a lever tool (screwdriver, wedge). The washer is damaged and can subsequently tear.

- Manually raise the plenum chamber cover - 1 - towards the centre of the vehicle to the edge of the glass on the right.



- Remove the plenum chamber cover - 1 - towards the top and out of the fitting section.
- Remove the hose from the spray nozzle and unlip from the clips in the plenum chamber cover.
- Pull out the plenum chamber cover - 2 - from the fitting section towards the centre of the vehicle to the edge of the glass on the left.
- Remove the hose from the spray nozzle and unlip from the clips in the plenum chamber cover.

Installing:



Caution

Breaking open the plenum chamber cover in the fitting section of the windscreen can lead to cracks in the windscreen.



Note

- ◆ *An inlay is installed in the fitting section on new windscreens. This inlay must be removed before installing the plenum chamber cover.*
- ◆ *The plenum chamber cover must be slightly pressed into the fitting section by hand, but on no account knock or press in using a tool.*

Carry out the following tasks:

- Spray the fitting section with soapy water so that the plenum chamber covers can be pressed in more easily.
- First of all, position the plenum chamber cover - 2 - on the edge of the glass on the left before centring to the openings according to the wiper shafts.
- Lightly press on the plenum chamber cover in the centre of the vehicle towards the edge of the glass on the left until the cover engages in the fitting section.
- Position the plenum chamber cover -1- on the cover -2- and at the same time place the plenum chamber cover -1- at the edge of the glass on the right.
- Lightly press on the plenum chamber cover in the centre of the vehicle towards the edge of the glass on the right until the cover engages in the fitting section.
- Press onto the seal - 4 -.
- Position the locating clips for the plenum chamber cover.
- Installing windscreen wipers ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 92 .



Caution

The plenum chamber cover must not be levered off with a lever tool (screwdriver, wedge). The washer is damaged and can subsequently tear.

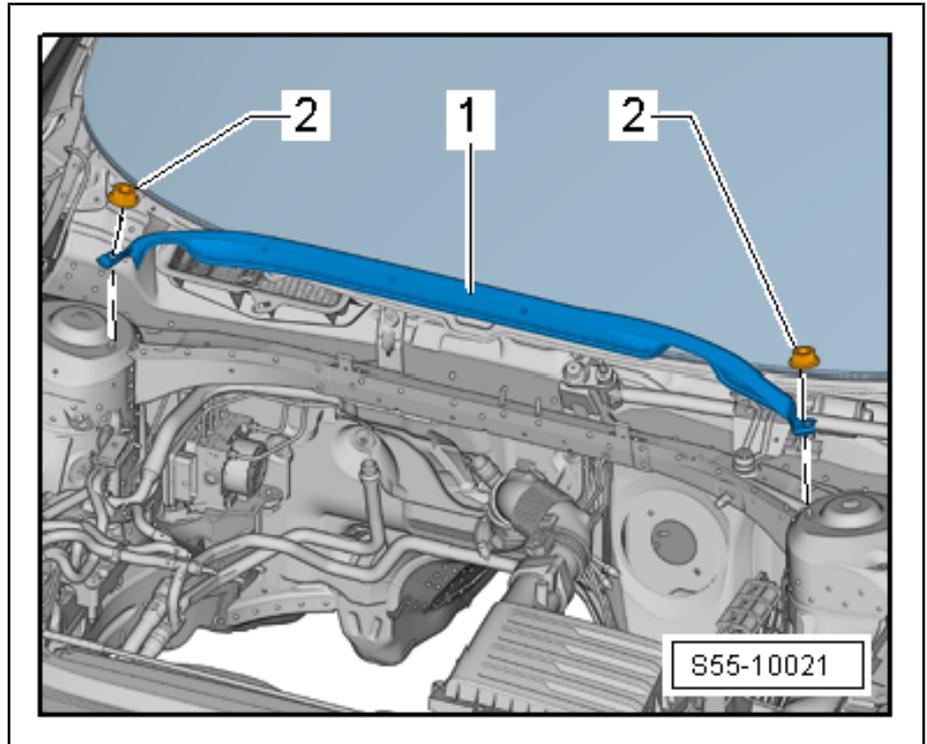
1.8 Bulkhead plenum chamber

1.8.1 Summary of components

1 - Bulkhead plenum chamber

2 - Nut

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.



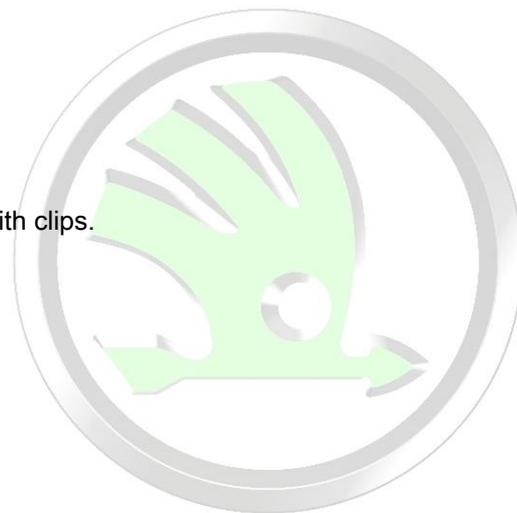
Removing:

- Remove the plenum chamber cover ⇒ [page 15](#) .
- Remove clips for damping of the plenum chamber.
- Unscrew nuts - 2 - .
- Take out the bulkhead plenum chamber.

Installing:

- Insert bulkhead plenum chamber.
- Screw in nuts - 2 - .
- Secure the damping of the plenum chamber with clips.
- Install plenum chamber cover ⇒ [page 15](#) .

ŠKODA





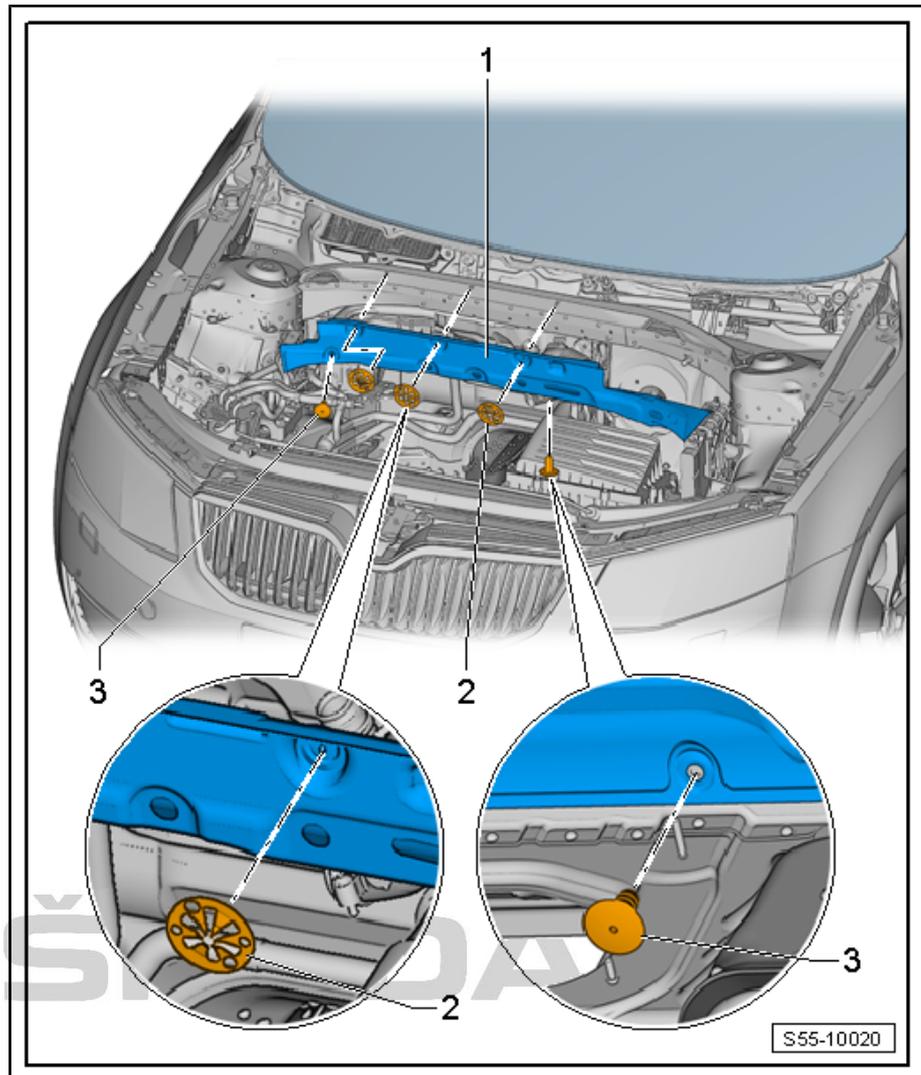
1.9 Damping of the plenum chamber

1.9.1 Summary of components

1 - Damping of the plenum chamber

2 - Circlip

3 - Clip



Removing:

- Remove clips for damping of the plenum chamber - 2 -.
- Remove clips for damping of the plenum chamber - 3 -.
- Remove cable ties depending upon vehicle equipment.
- Remove the damping of the plenum chamber.

Installing:

- Insert the damping of the plenum chamber.
- Insert cable ties depending upon vehicle equipment.
- Insert clips for damping of the plenum chamber - 3 -.
- Insert clips for damping of the plenum chamber - 2 -.

1.10 Noise insulation

1.10.1 Summary of components



Note

Depending on the model version, slight differences must be taken into consideration when removing and installing.

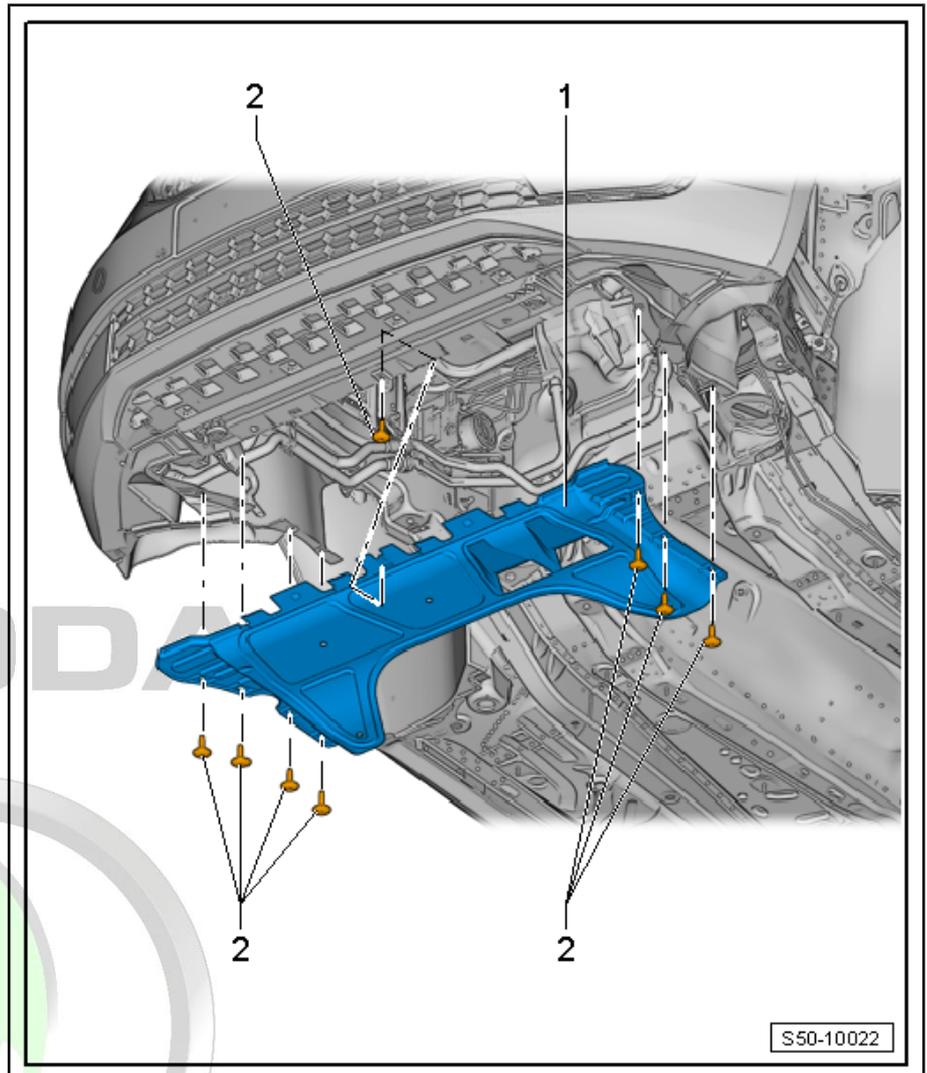
1 - Noise insulation

Removing:

- Remove the screws -2- and push out the noise insulation towards the rear.

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.



1.11 Underfloor trim panel

1.11.1 Summary of components



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

Depending on the model version, slight differences must be taken into consideration when removing and installing.



1 - Floor covering

Removing:

- Unscrew nuts - 8 -.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Floor covering

Removing:

- Removing body-bound rivet - 5 -.
- Unscrew screws - 7 -.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

3 - Floor covering

Removing:

- Unscrew nuts - 8 -.
- Unscrew screws - 7 -.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

4 - Floor covering

Removing:

- Removing body-bound rivet - 5 -.
- Unscrew screws - 7 -.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 - Expanding rivet

- To remove, push out the expanding bolts.

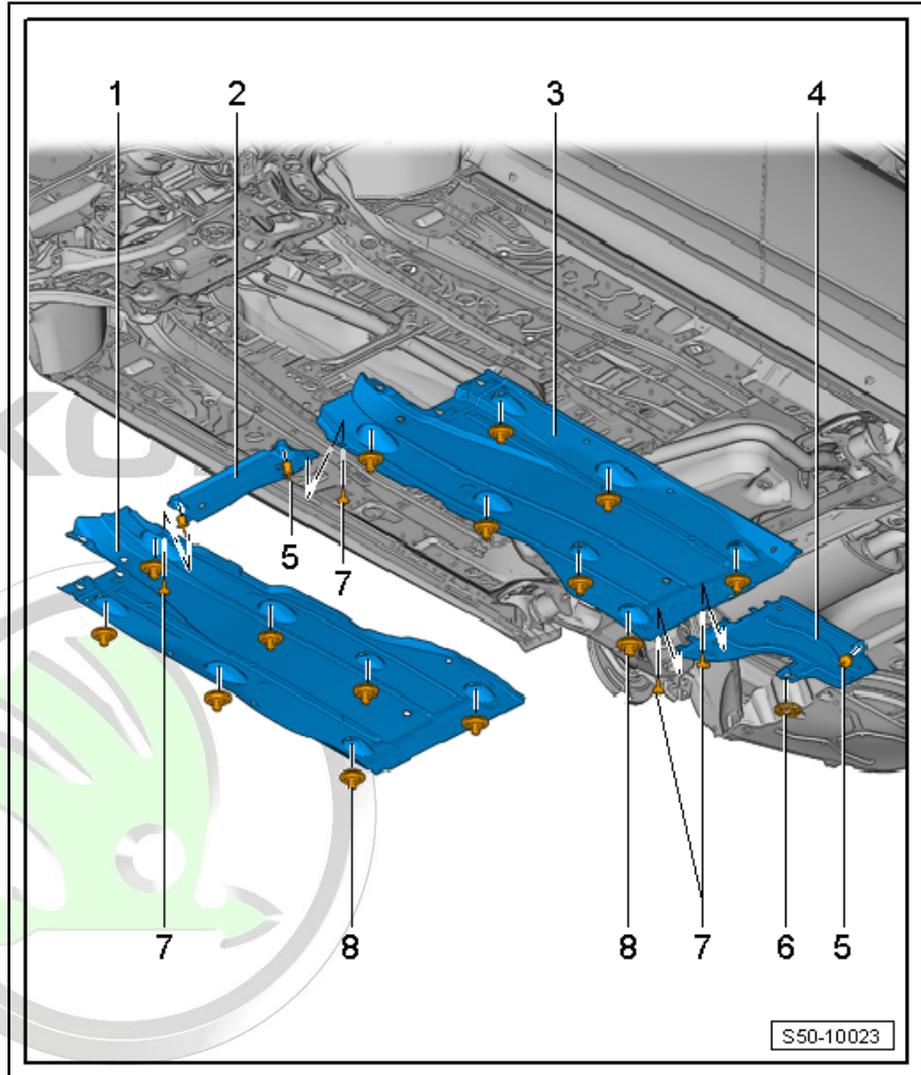
6 - Circlip

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

8 - Nut

- Tightening torque: 2 Nm.



1.12 Tunnel bridge

1.12.1 Summary of components - Front tunnel bridge

1 - Tunnel bridge

Removing:

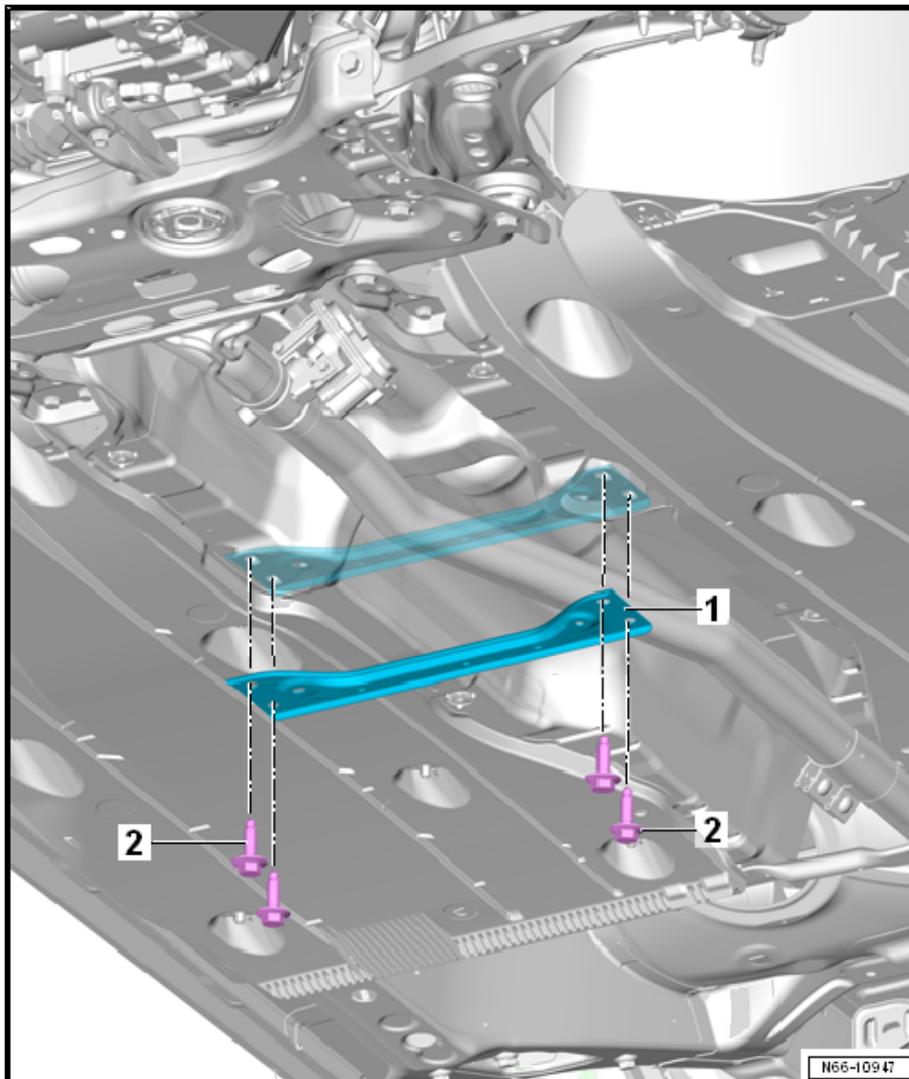
- Unscrew screws -2-.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
20 Nm.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



1.12.2 Removing and installing the rear tunnel bridge

Removing:

- Unscrew screws -2-.



Note

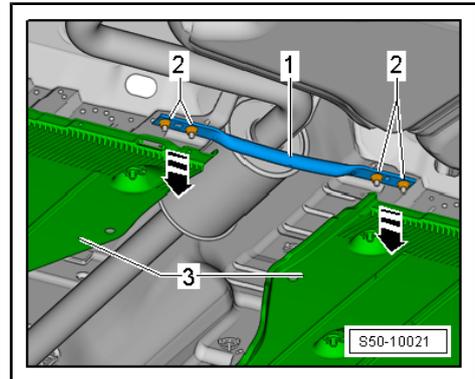
With the rear tunnel bridge, partially remove the underfloor trim panel - 3 - by hand.

- Remove the tunnel bridge - 1 - in - direction of arrow -.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Tightening torque of screws -2- (20 Nm).



ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

55 – Bonnet, rear lid

1 Front flap

1.1 Summary of components

1 - Front flap

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 24](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 37](#) .

2 - Bump stop

- Height-adjustable by turning.

3 - Seal for front flap

4 - Locking clamp

5 - Damping

Removing:

- Unclip all the clips for the damping in sequence.
- Remove the damping from the front flap.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

6 - Clip

- For attaching the damping.

7 - Plug

8 - Hinge

- Assignment ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 28](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 37](#) .

9 - Actuator

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 25](#) .

10 - Support bar

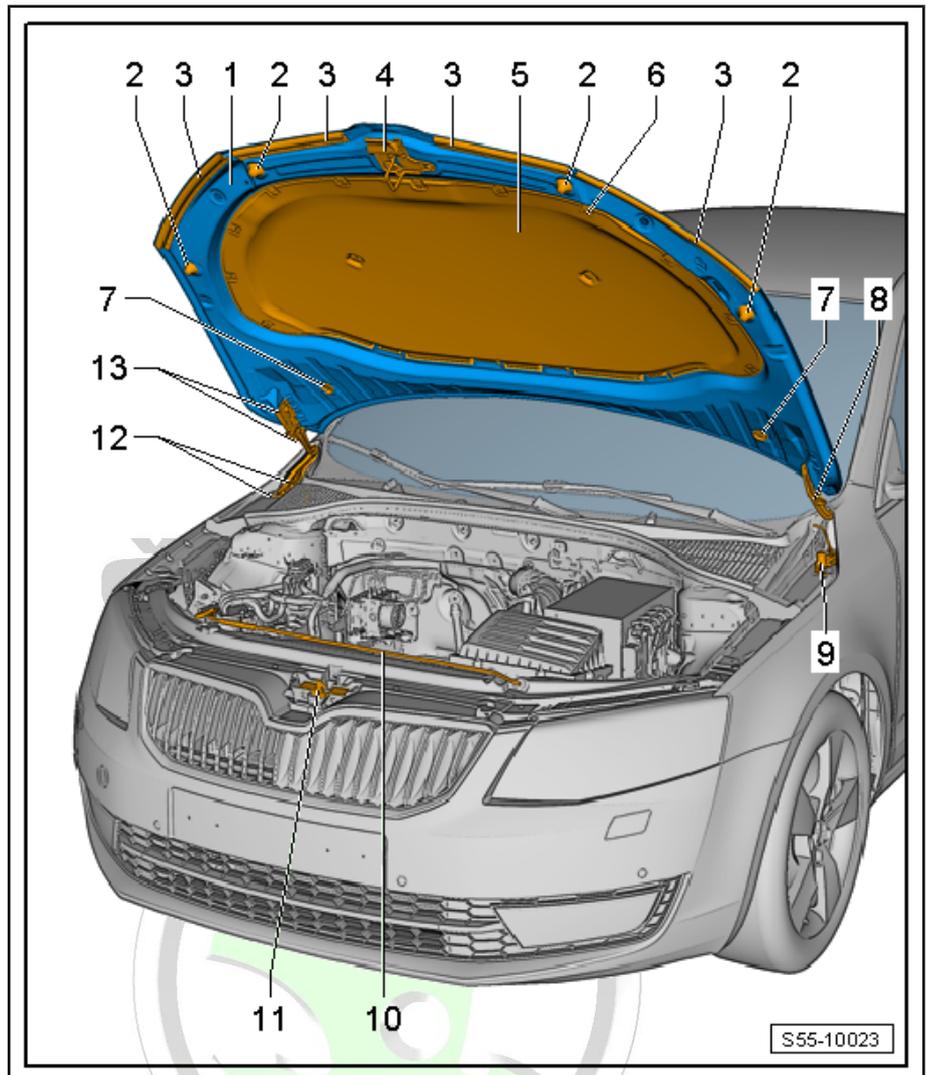
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 28](#) .

11 - Front flap lock

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 30](#) .

12 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

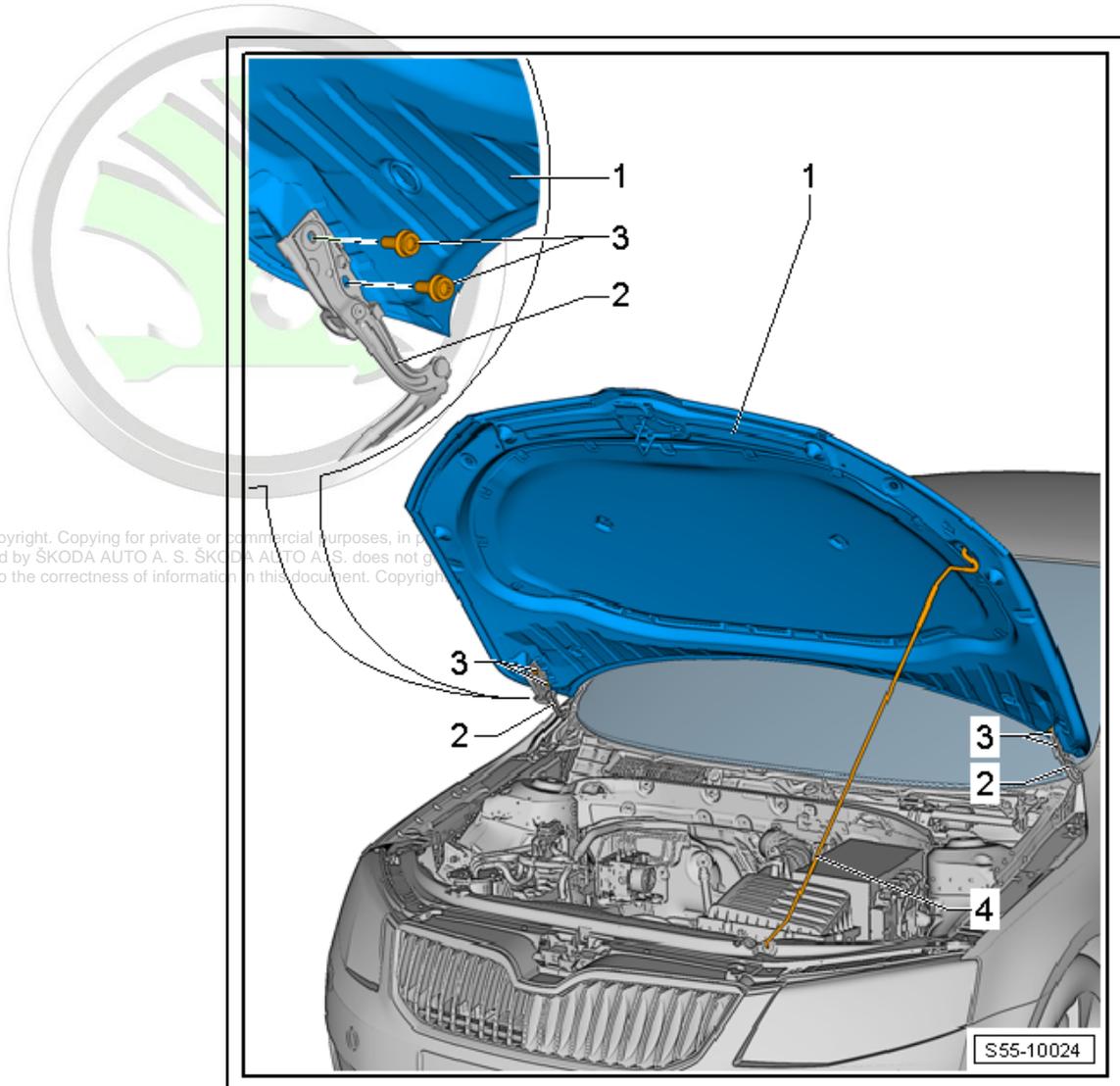


13 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm.

1.2 Removing and installing the front flap

1.2.1 Removing:

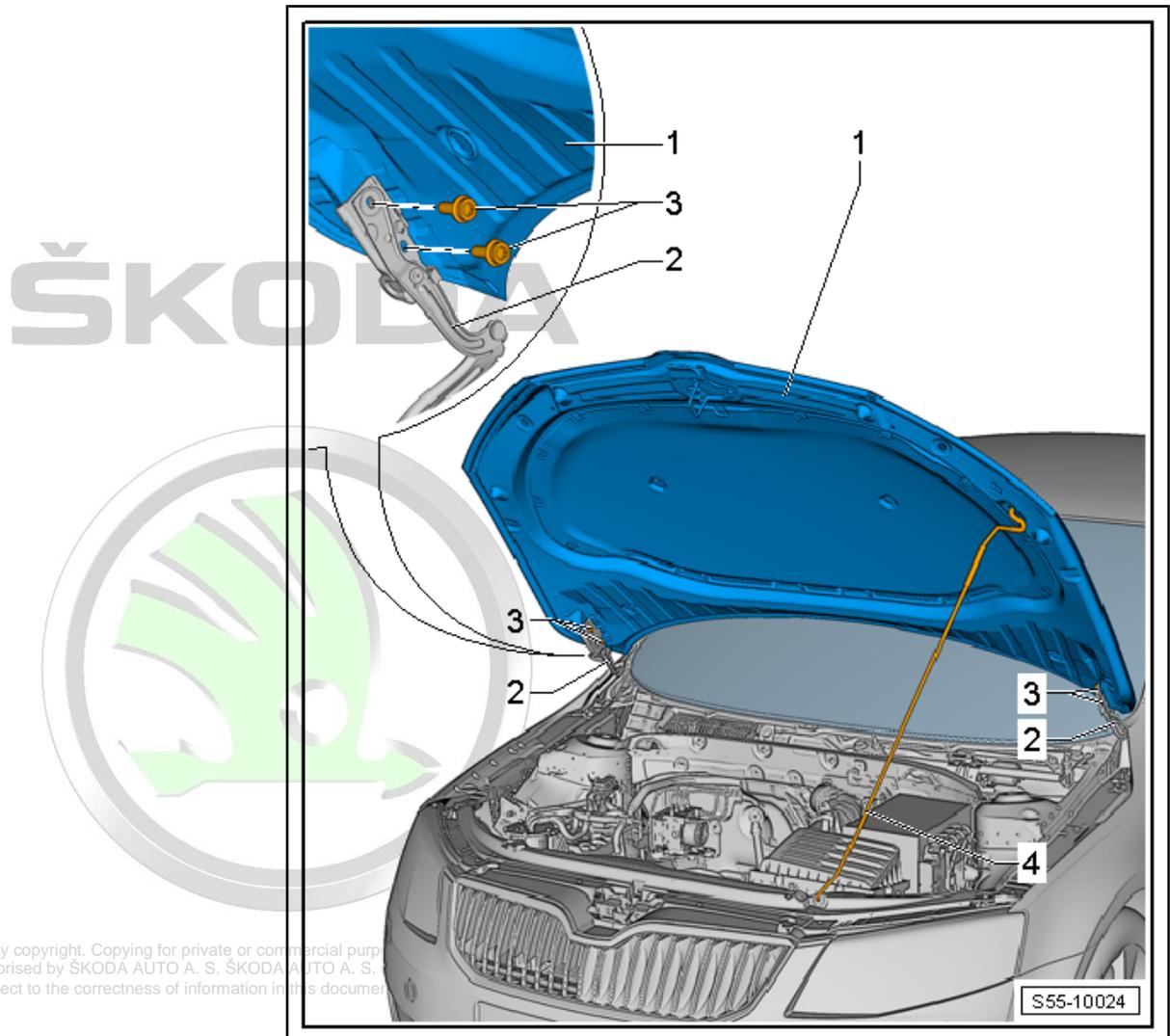


- Slacken the screws -3- on the left and right at the hinge -2- (do not unscrew).

Carry out further removal only with the assistance of a second mechanic.

- Remove support bar -4- from the front flap.
- Only now unscrew the screws - 3 - and lift the front flap - 1 - out of the hinges - 2 -.

1.2.2 Installing:



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Adjust front flap - 1 - ⇒ [page 37](#) .

1.3 Removing and installing the actuator for the front flap

1.3.1 Removing:

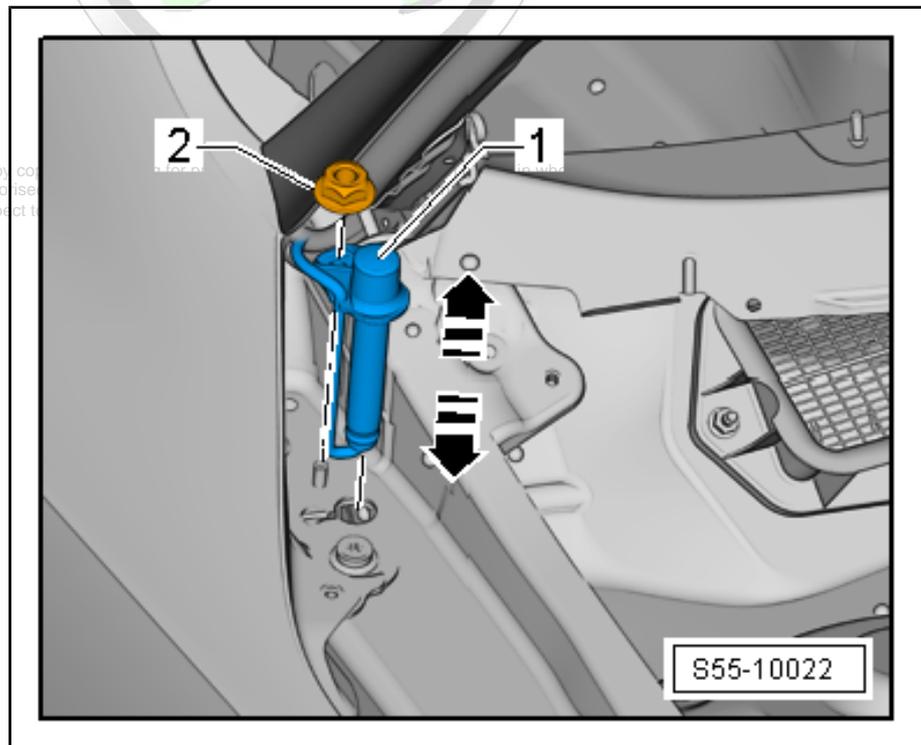
Remove activated actuator ⇒ [page 342](#) .

Remove not activated actuator.

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe the general safety instructions for working on air-bag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components).*
- ◆ *Pay attention to the notes ⇒ [page 303](#).*

- Disconnect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .
- Remove seal for front flap ⇒ [page 15](#) .
- Turn the plenum chamber cover (need not be removed) and disconnect the plug connection for actuator.
- Remove nuts -2- (9 Nm).
- Remove the actuator - 1- from the front flap hinge.
- Unclip and remove the actuator cabling.

**1.3.2 Installing:**

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

Tightening torque of the nuts -2- (9 Nm).



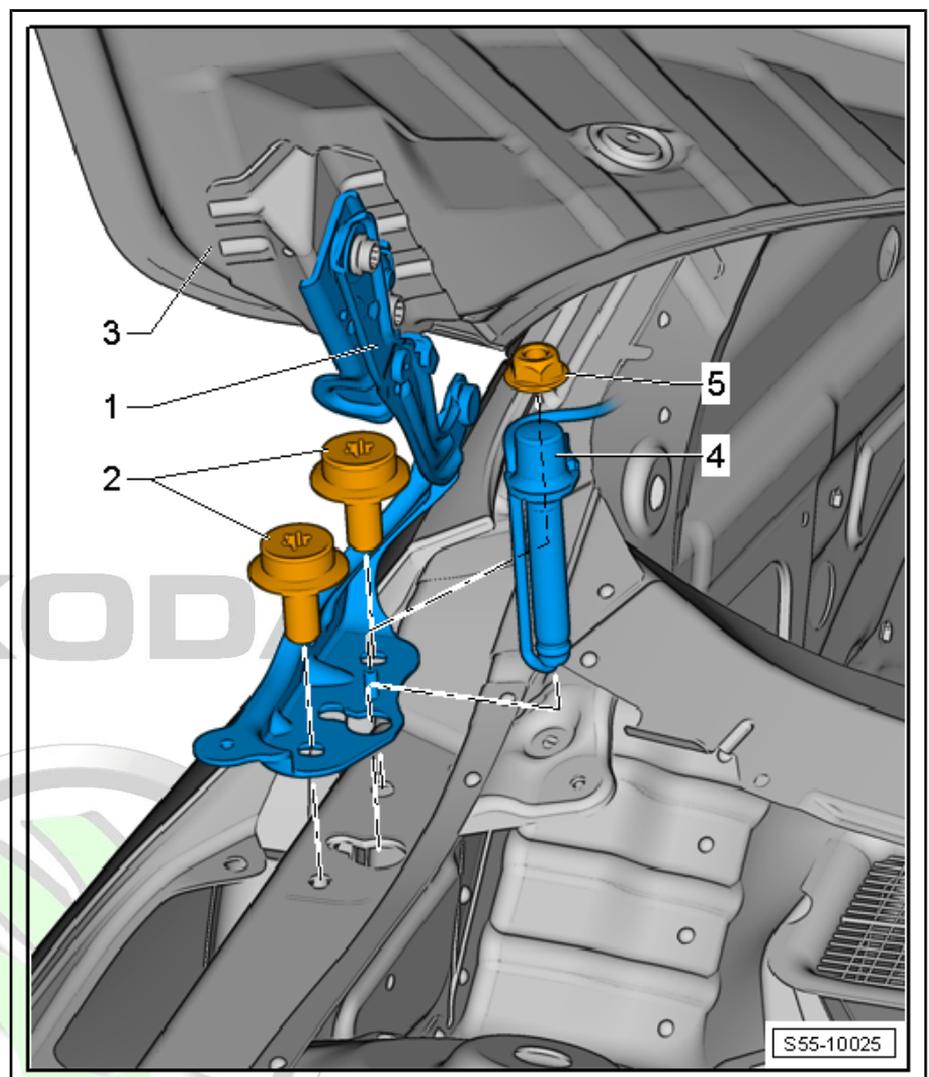
WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the general safety instructions for working on air-bag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components).*
- ◆ *Pay attention to the notes ⇒ [page 303](#) .*

1.4 Removing and installing the hinge for the pedestrian protection system

Set hinges for pedestrian protection system after activation into the initial position ⇒ [page 342](#) .

1.4.1 Removing:



- Remove front flap - 3 - ⇒ [page 24](#) .
- Unscrew nuts -5-, remove the actuator, and place it to one side (9 Nm).
- Unscrew screws -2-.
- Remove hinge - 1 -

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

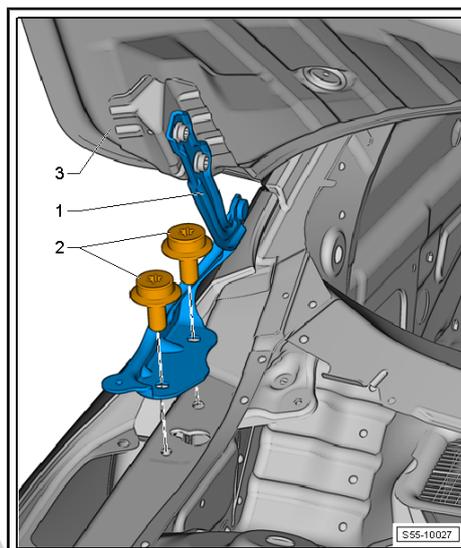
1.4.2 Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Tightening torque of screws -2- (20 Nm).
- Tightening torque of the nuts -5- (9 Nm).

1.5 Removing and installing the hinge for the front flap

1.5.1 Removing:

- Remove front flap - 3 - => [page 24](#) .
- Unscrew screws -2-.
- Remove hinge - 1 - .

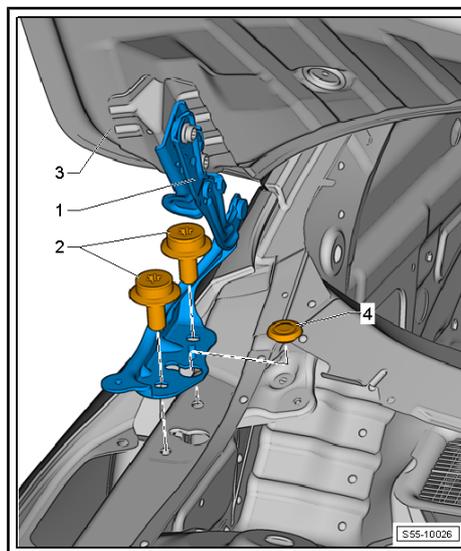
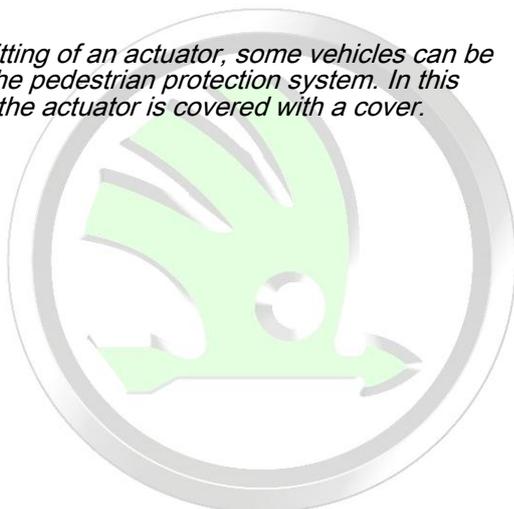


ŠKODA



Note

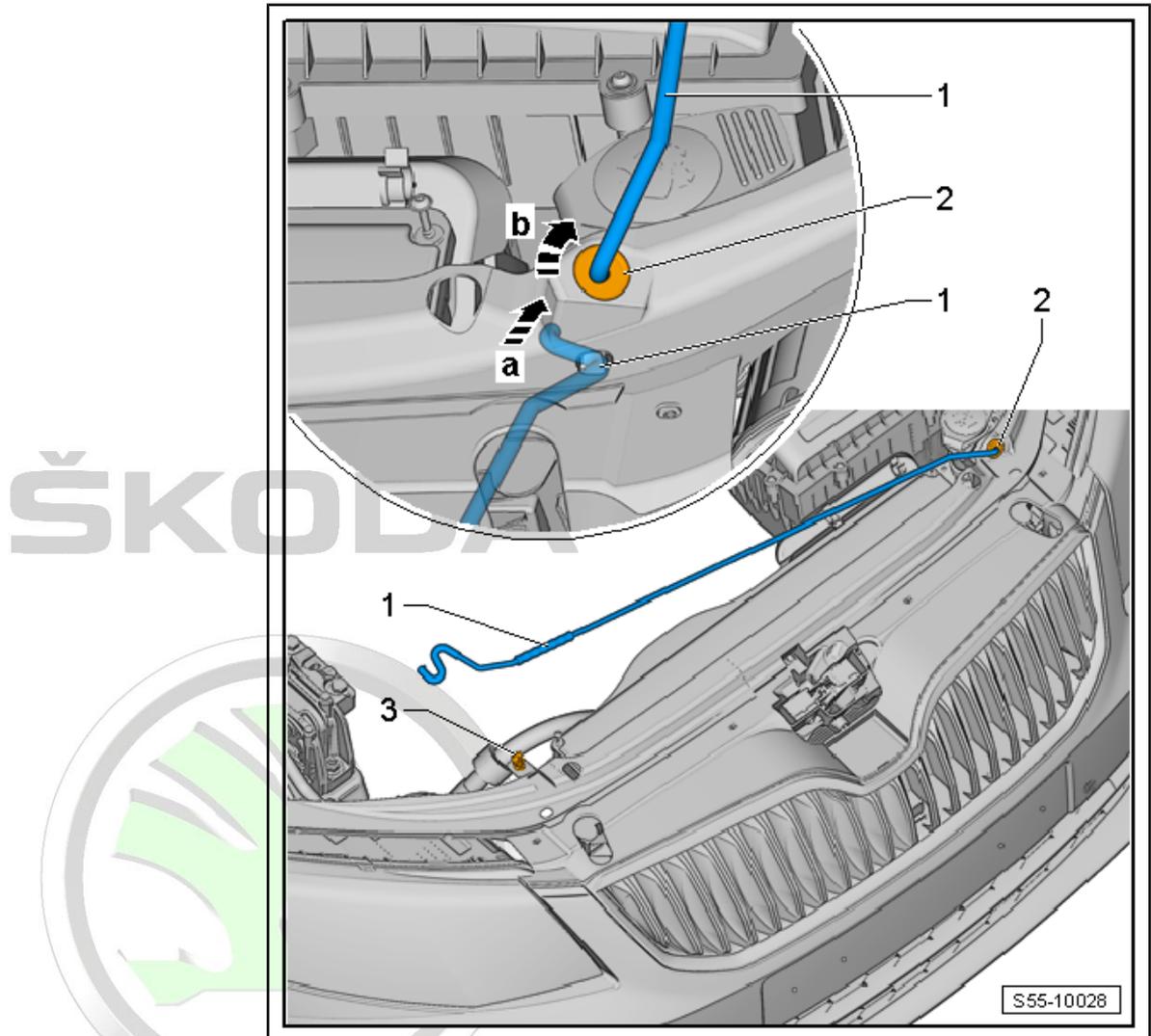
To allow for the retrofitting of an actuator, some vehicles can be fitted with hinges for the pedestrian protection system. In this case, the opening for the actuator is covered with a cover.



1.5.2 Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Tightening torque of screws -2- (20 Nm).

1.6 Removing and installing the support bar



Removing:

- Support the front flap.
- Swivel the support bar - 1 - towards the front and pull the support bar out of the rubber grommet - 2 -.

Installing:

- Push the support bar - 1 - into the rubber grommet (Pos.2) - arrow a-.
- Swivel the support bar towards the lock carrier -arrow b-.
- Check the bracket -3- for damage, and replace where necessary.



1.7 Lock and unlock components of front flap - Summary of components

1 - Locking clamp

- Removing:
⇒ [page 34](#) .
- Setting: ⇒ [page 39](#) .

2 - Release handle

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 36](#) .

3 - Bowden cable

- From the Bowden cable
coupling to the operat-
ing lever ⇒ [page 35](#) .

4 - Clip

5 - Bowden wire coupling

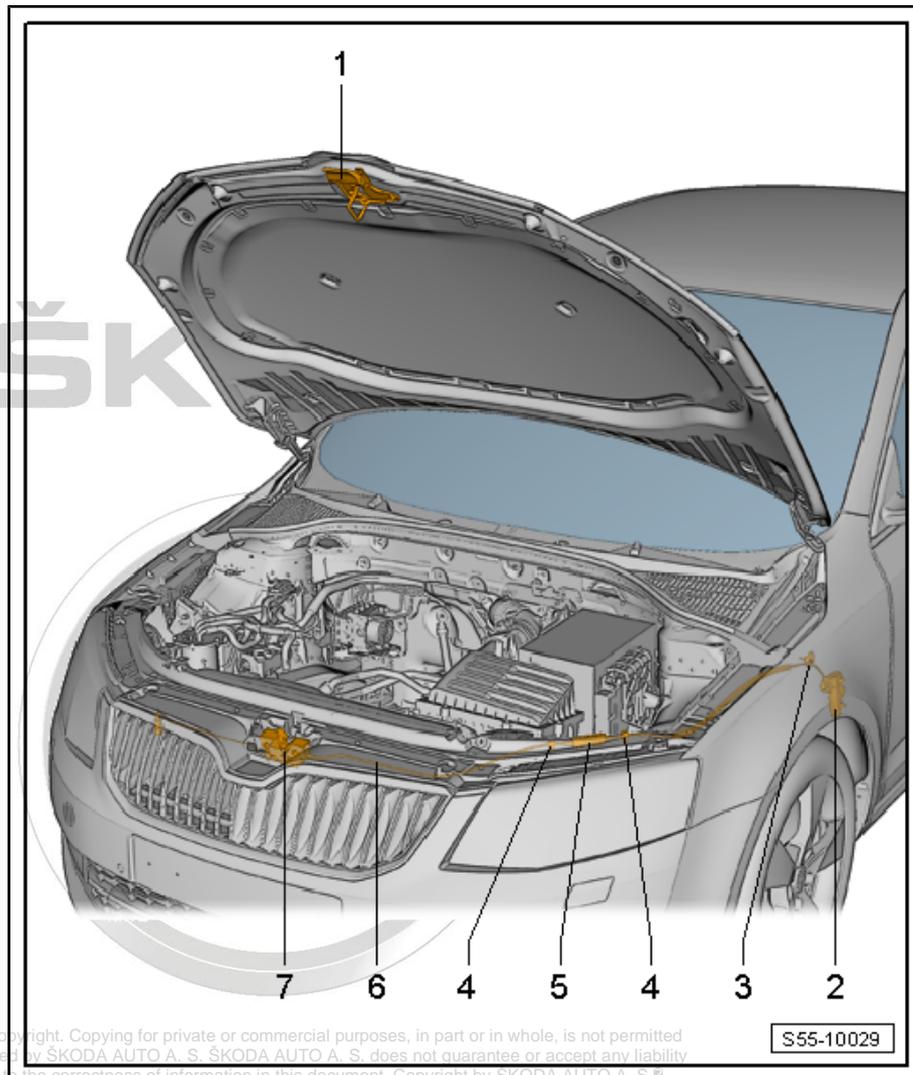
- The Bowden cable cou-
pling is located above
the headlight on the
driver's side.
- Separate ⇒ [page 33](#) .

6 - Bowden cable

- From the front flap lock
to the Bowden cable
coupling.
- Clipped into the Bowden
cable coupling.

7 - Front flap lock

- Remove and install front
flap lock ⇒ [page 30](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 38](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. #

S55-10029

1.8 Removing and installing front flap lock



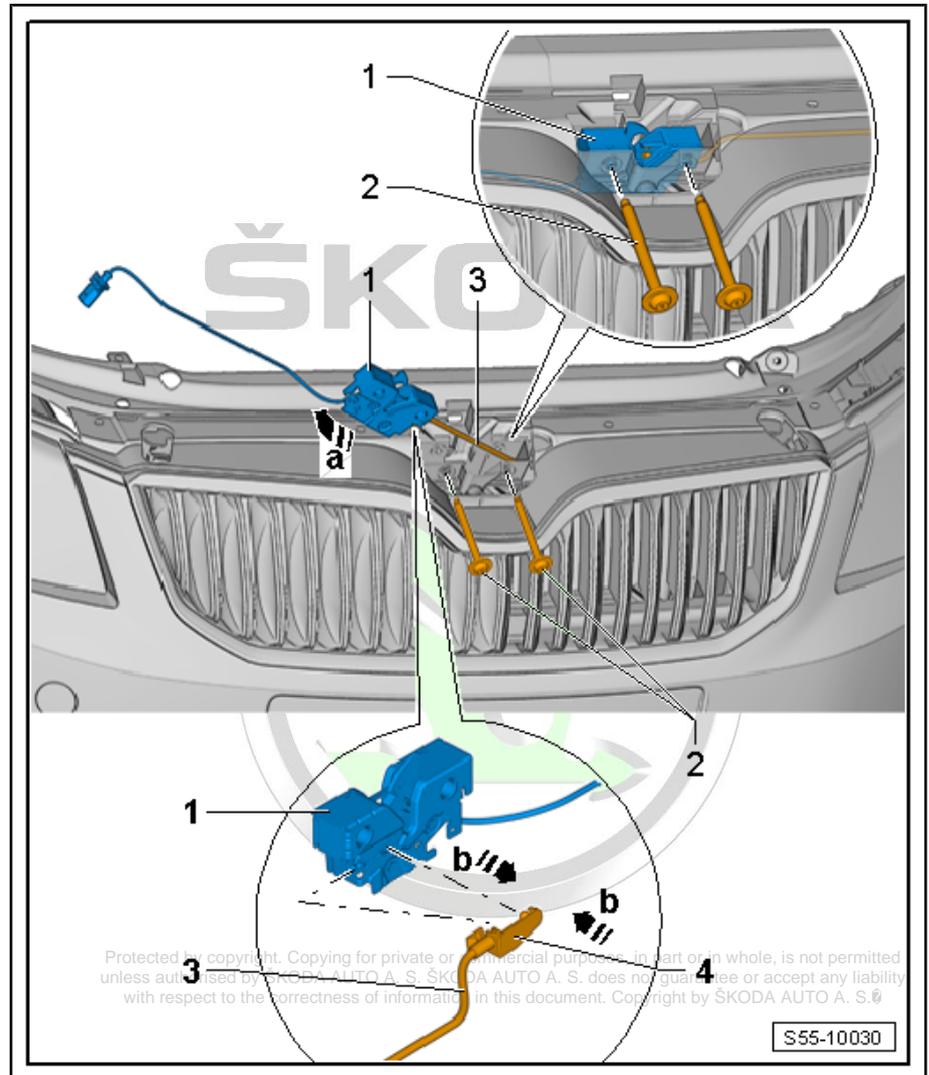
Note

Depending on the model version, slight differences must be taken into consideration when removing and installing the front flap lock.

1.8.1 Removing:



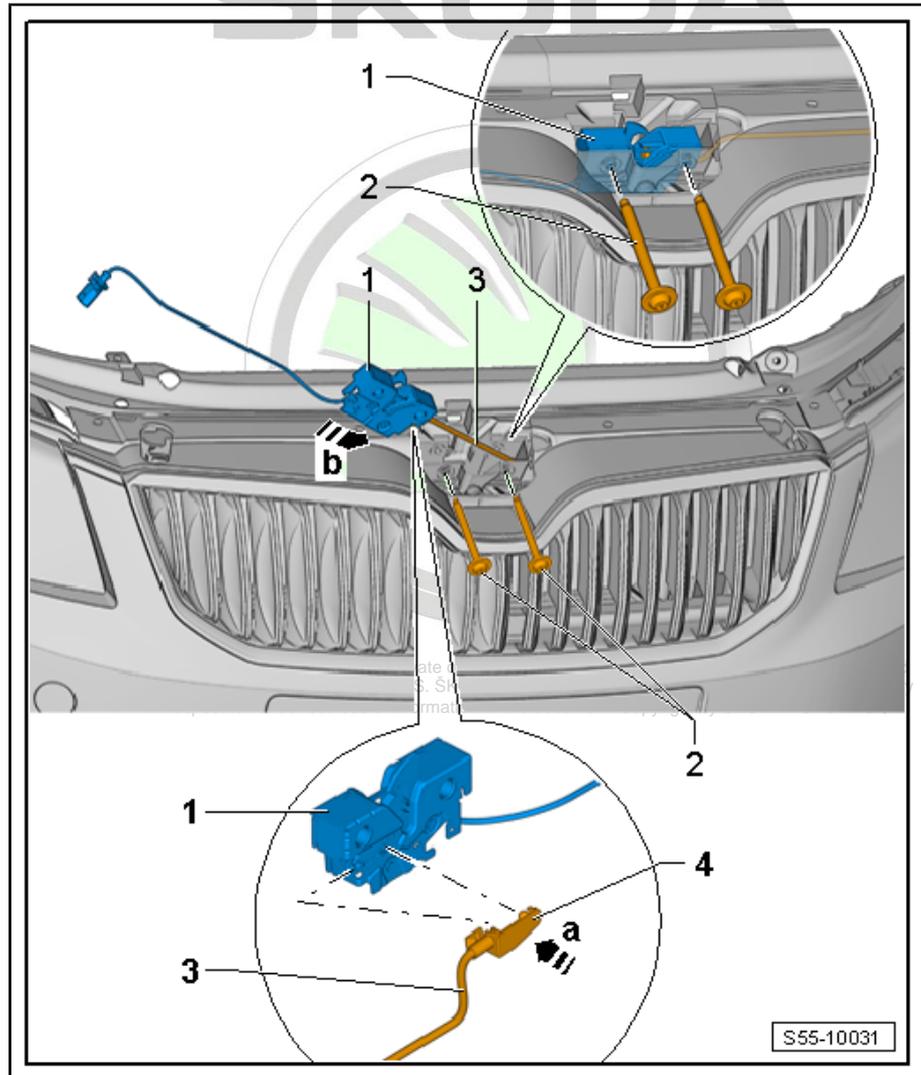
The Bowden cable -3- is not separated from the front flap lock.



- Open front flap.
- Separate the Bowden cable -3- in the Bowden cable coupling
=> [page 33](#) .
- Depending on the equipment installed, disconnect the plug connection for the contact switch of the engine hood.
- Release the screws - 2 - (12 Nm) and remove the flap lock
- 1 - in - direction of arrow a - from the lock carrier.
- You may need to unclip the end part - 4 - of the Bowden cable
- 3 - from the flap lock - 1 - - arrow a - .

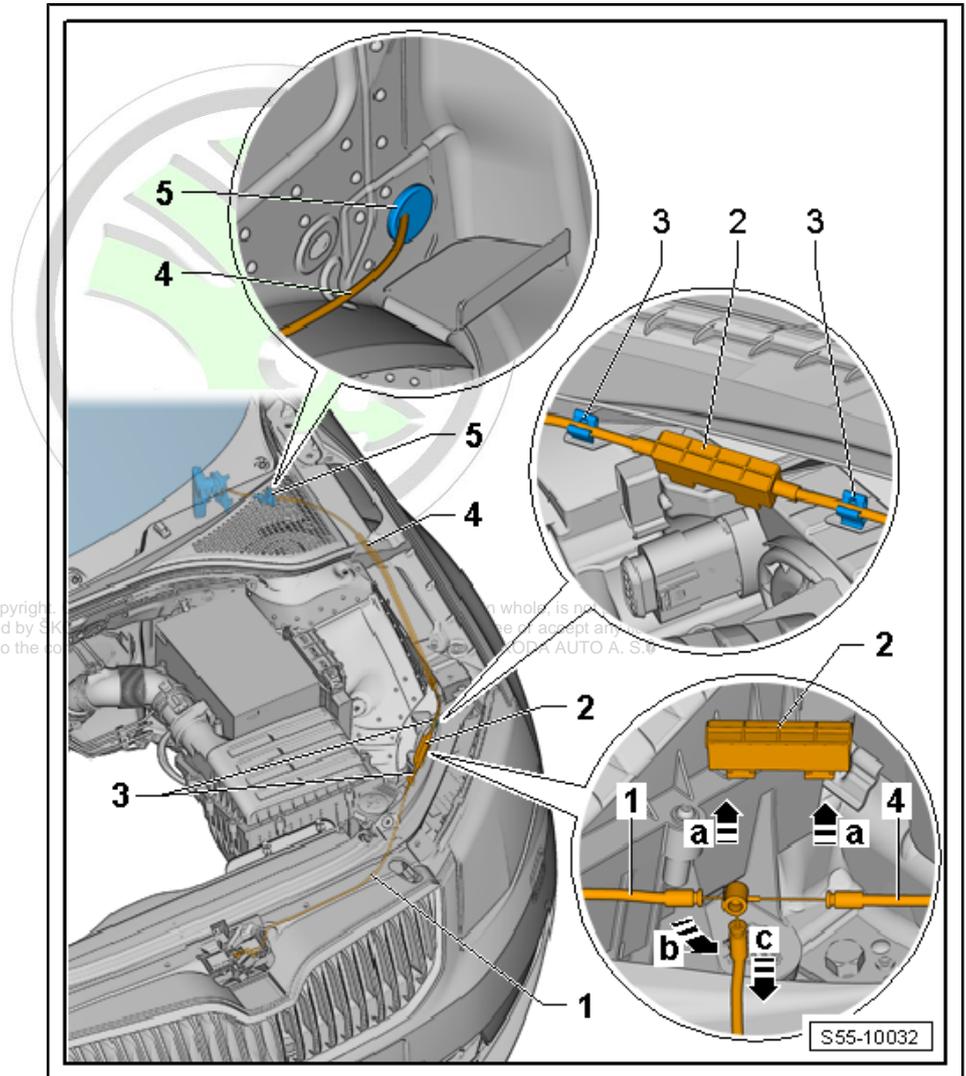
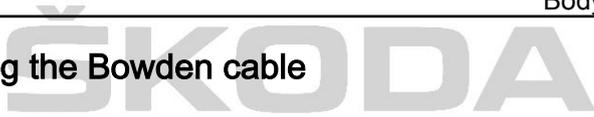

Note

Depending on the equipment installed, remove and install the contact switch for the engine hood at the flap lock ⇒ *Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96* .

1.8.2 Installing:


- Clip the end part - 4 - of the Bowden cable - 3 - into the flap lock (if it was removed) - arrow a -.
- Guide the flap lock - 1 - into the lock carrier -arrow b-.
- Depending on the additional equipment, connect the plug connection for the contact switch of the engine hood.
- Tightening torque of screws -2- (12 Nm).
- Install the Bowden cable -3- in the Bowden cable coupling ⇒ [page 33](#) .
- Adjust flap lock ⇒ [page 38](#) .

1.9 Separating the Bowden cable



Removing:

- Open front flap.
- Unclip the Bowden cable coupling - 2 -, located above the headlight on the driver's side, out of the lock carrier -arrow a-.
- Take the Bowden cables - 1 - and - 4 - out of the Bowden cable coupling - 2 - in -arrows a-.
- Swivel the Bowden cable -1- about 90° in -direction of arrow b- and take the Bowden cable -c- out of the support of the Bowden cable.

Installing:

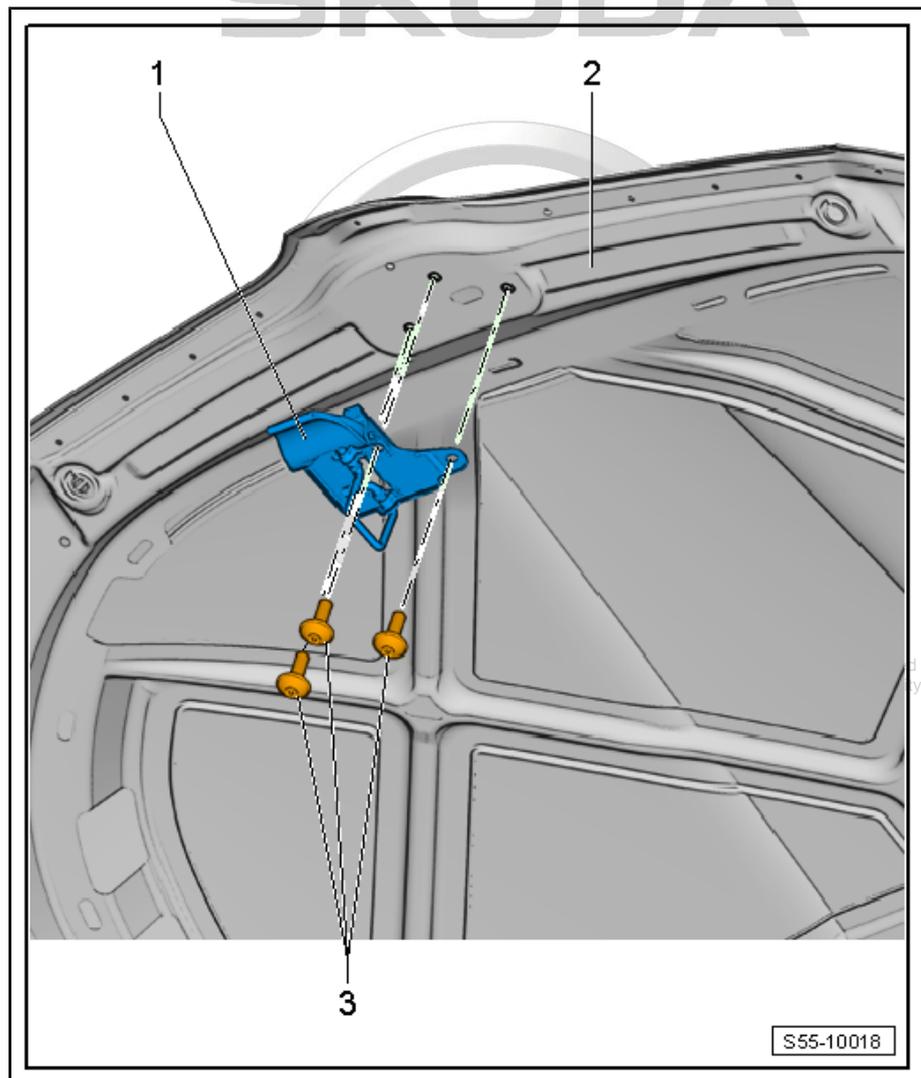
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

- ◆ When installing the Bowden cable - 4 -, ensure that the grommet - 5 - is correctly secured.
- ◆ When attaching the Bowden cable - 4 -, pay attention to the mandatory clipping - 3 -.

1.10 Removing and installing the locking clamp



Removing:

- Unscrew screws -3-.
- Remove the locking clamp - 1 - from the front flap - 2 -.

Installing:

- Tightening torque of screws -3- (9 Nm).
- Adjust the locking clamp to the flap lock ⇒ [page 39](#) .

1.11 Removing and installing the operating lever

1.11.1 Summary of components:

1 - Bearing bracket

2 - Bowden cable

Removing:

- Take Bowden cable - 2 - out of the bearing bracket - 1 -.
- Turn the Bowden cable so that the ball of the Bowden cable can be removed from the bearing bracket lever.
- Remove the ball from the bearing bracket lever.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

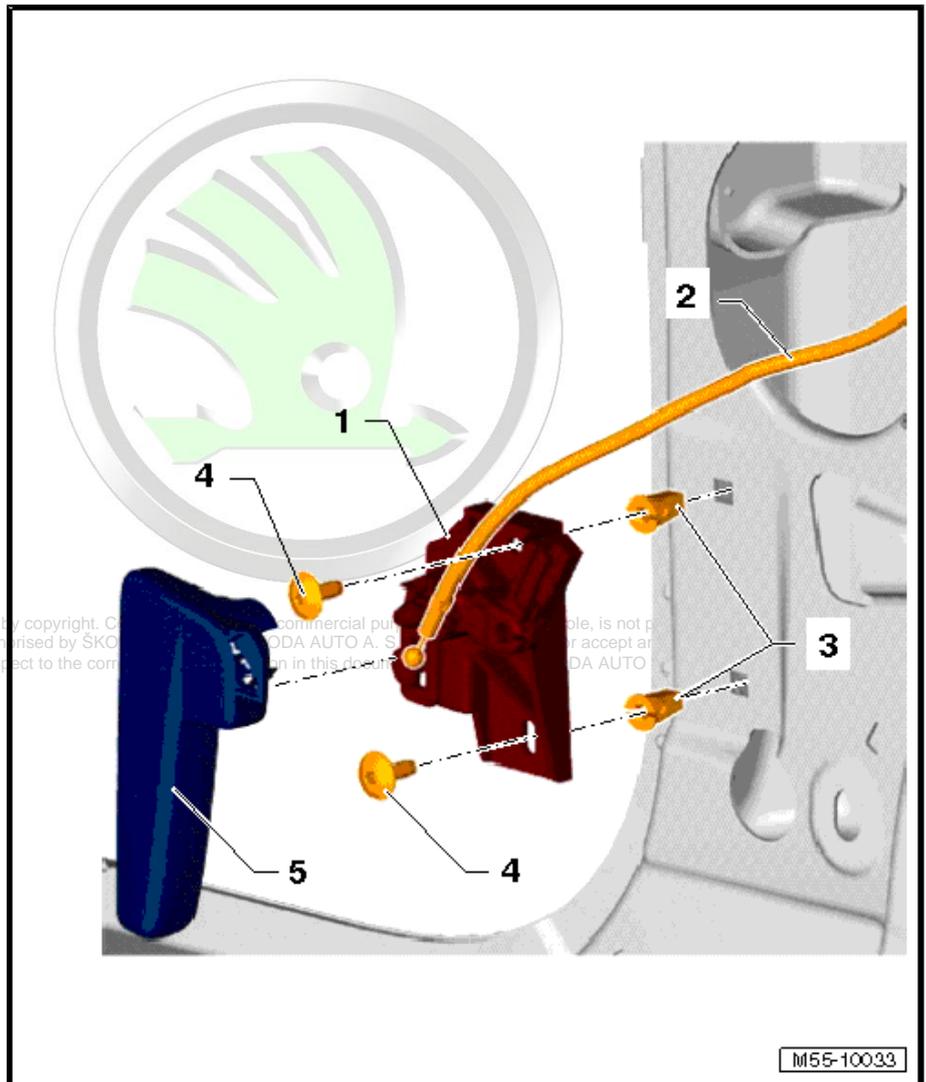
3 - Adjusting nut

4 - Screw

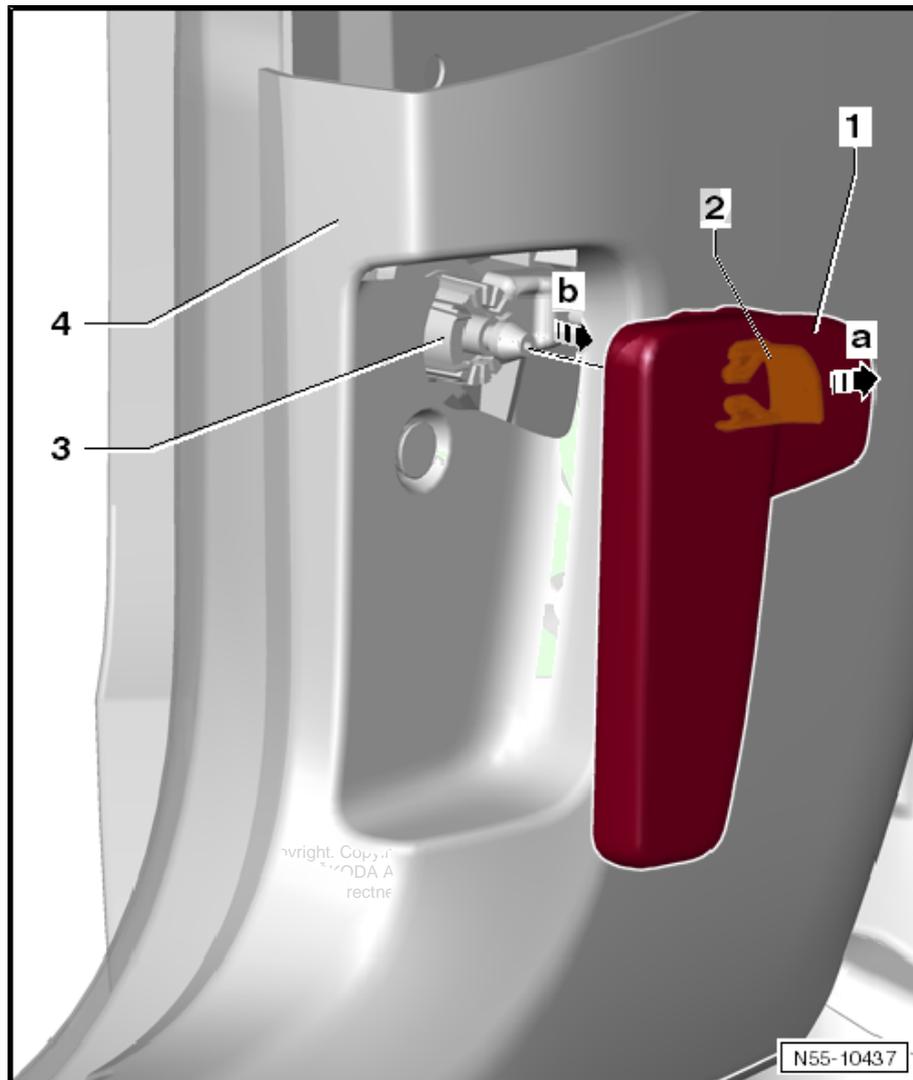
- Tightening torque: 2 Nm.

5 - Release handle

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 36](#) .



1.11.2 Removing and installing:



Removing:

- Tighten the operating lever -1- and unlock the front flap.
- Fit a small screwdriver into the gap between the operating lever - 1 - and the retaining clip - 2 -.
- Lever the retaining clip -2- out of the operating lever (Pos.1) -arrow- and detach the operating lever from the bearing bracket -3-.

When carrying out further work on the bearing bracket - 3 -, remove the bottom A pillar trim panel - 4 -.

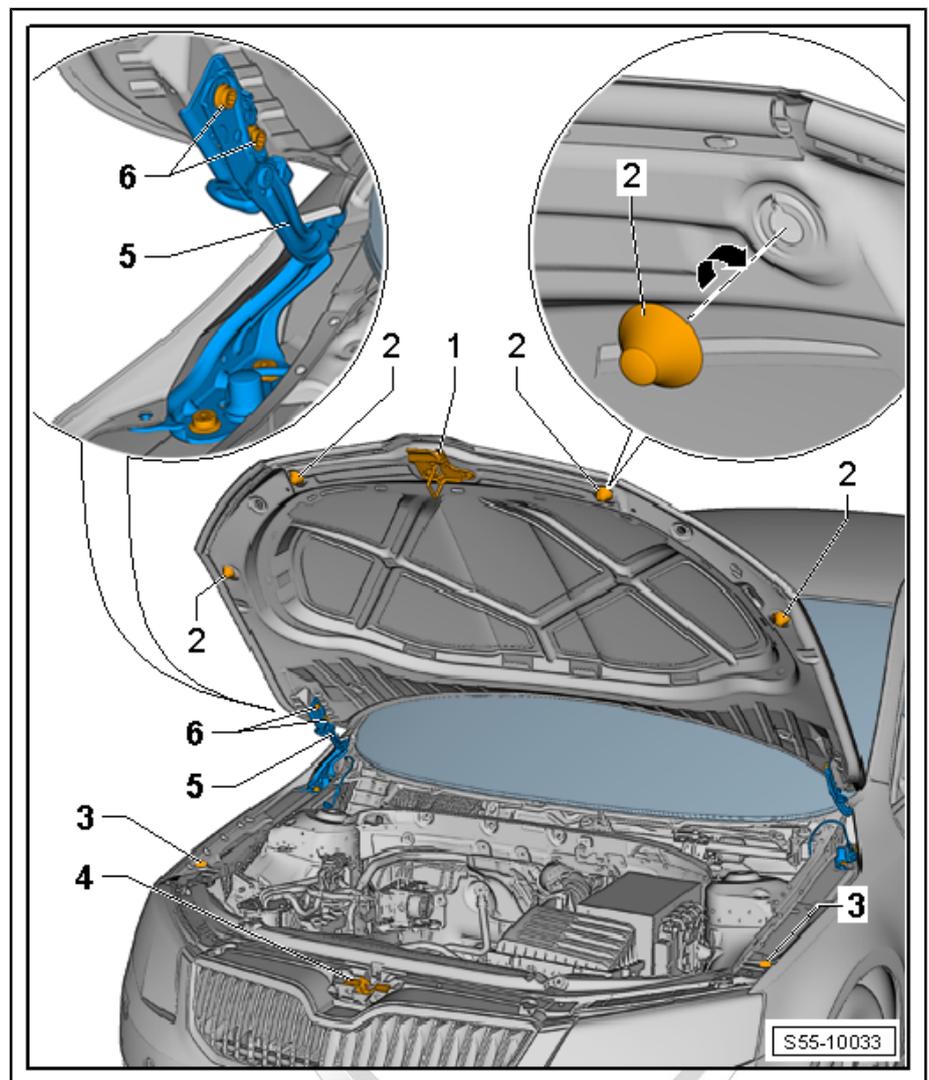
Installing:

- Push the retaining clip -2- into the operating lever.
- Press the operating lever - 1 - onto the bearing bracket - 3 -.

1.12 Adjusting the front flap

i Note

- ◆ The vehicle must be positioned on the flat ground in order to adjust the front flap.
- ◆ The adjusting buffers -2- on the left and right are not used for the adjustment. They have the function to stabilise or dampen the front flap.
- ◆ The front flap is correctly adjusted if in the closed state it has an overall even gap size, is not positioned too far outwards or inwards and the contours are aligned.
- ◆ The front flap must latch in the flap lock without using increased force.
- ◆ The screws are not unscrewed, only slackened.



– Remove locking clamp - 1 - ⇒ [page 34](#) .

– The mean of the front flap can be taken between the wings by loosening the screws -6- on the left and right hinges -5-

– Ensure that the gap sizes are uniform: ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Technical data; body gaps; front body .



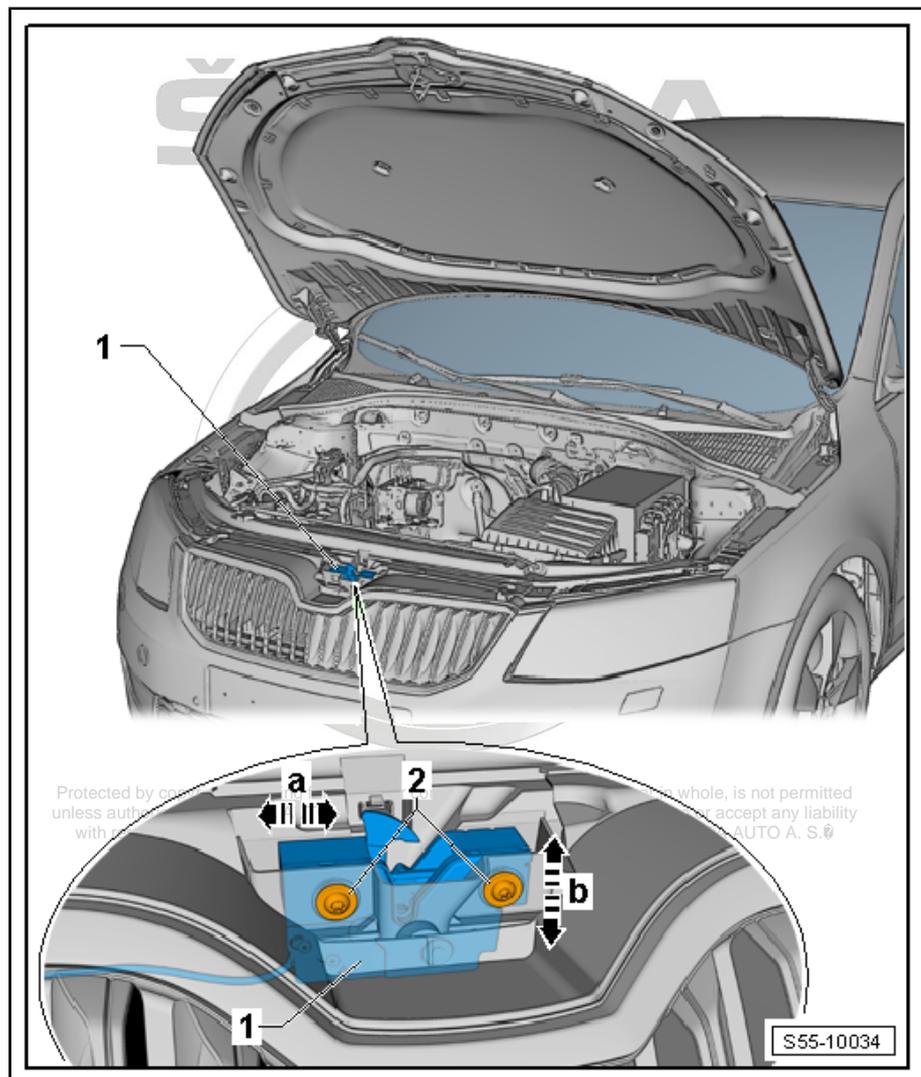
Adjusting the adjusting buffer:



Note

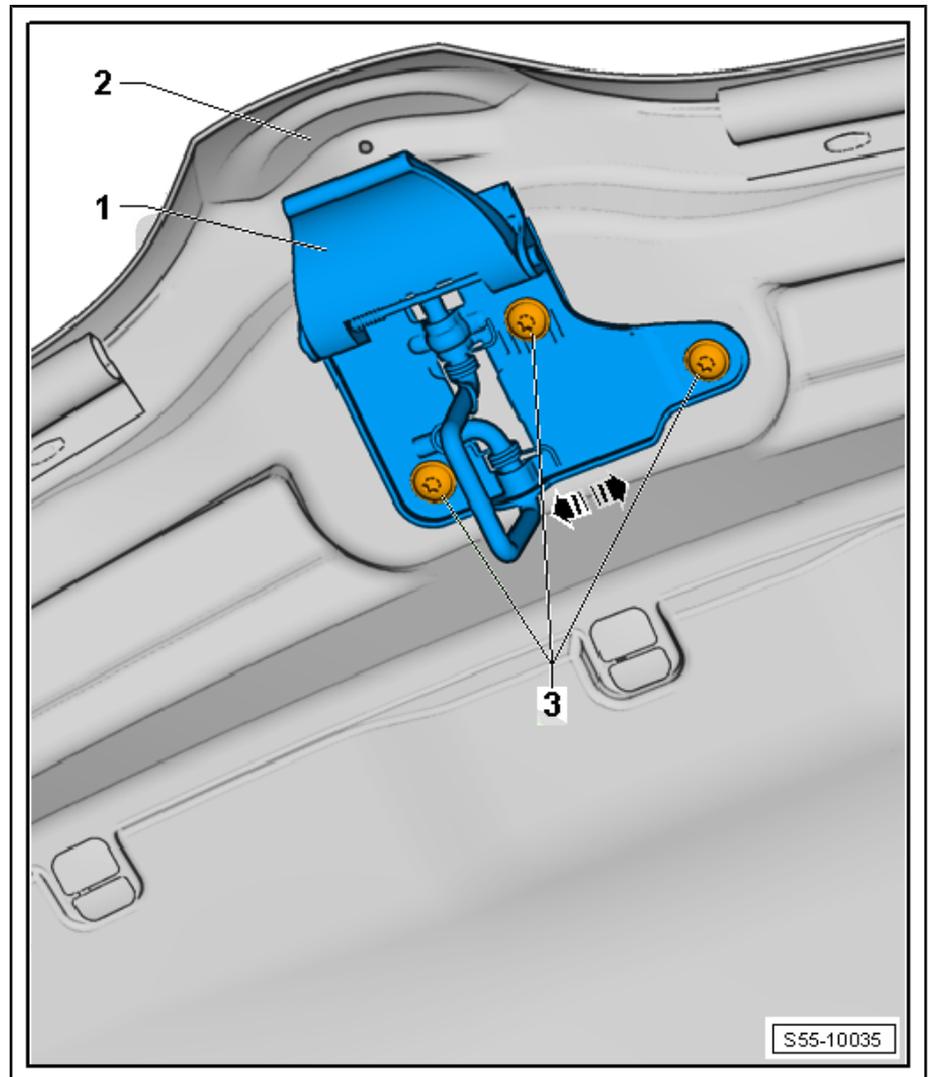
- ◆ *Install the adjusting buffer -2- on the left and right up to the stop.*
- ◆ *Turn the adjusting buffers by 90° if required, in order to pretension the flap.*
- After the front flap has been adjusted, the locking clamp -1- can once again be mounted and adjusted ⇒ [page 39](#) .
- The front flap can be adjusted in the front area to the height of the wings with the flap lock -4- ⇒ [page 38](#) .
- After the flap has been adjusted, the locking clamp has been installed and all the connections have been tightened, the adjusting buffers can be turned if required.
- After carrying out adjustment work, perform corrosion protection measures on the hinges - 6 - and the screws - 5 -.

1.12.1 Adjusting the flap lock



- If the screws -2- are loosened, the front flap lock -1- can be adjusted to the front flap laterally -arrow a- and in height -arrow b- → Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; body gaps; front body .
- Tightening torque of screws (Pos. 2) - 12 Nm.

1.12.2 Adjusting the locking clamp



- Release screws - 3 - .
- The locking clamp -1- can now be adjusted in the oversized holes.
- Tightening torque of screws (Pos. 3) - 10 Nm.



2 Tailgate

2.1 Summary of components:

1 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.

2 - Wedge buffer

- 3 - Tailgate trim panel**
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 381](#) .

4 - Tailgate

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 41](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 42](#) .

5 - Rubber buffer

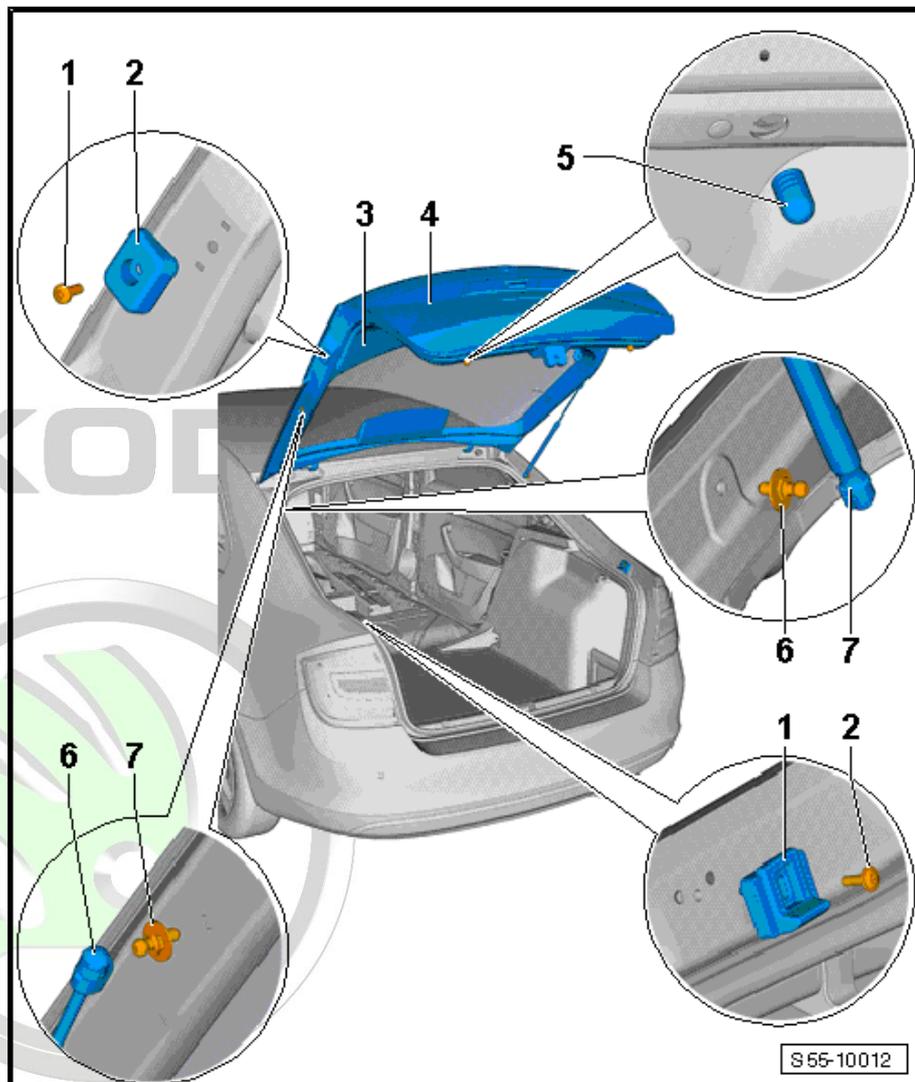
- Setting ⇒ [page 44](#) .

6 - Ball pin

- Tightening torque:
20 Nm.

7 - Pressurized gas strut

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 45](#) .

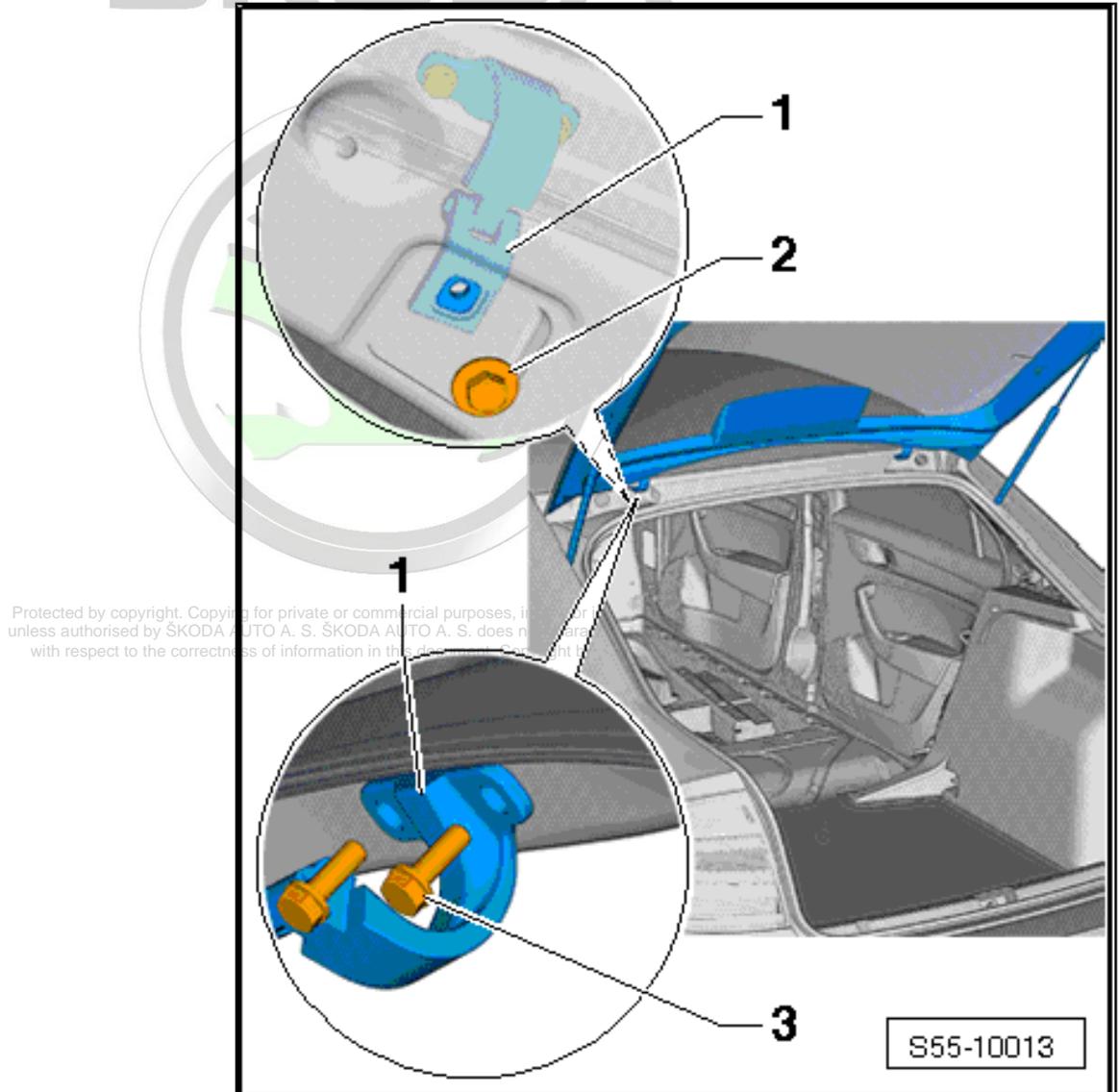


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.2 Removing and installing tailgate

2.2.1 Removing:

ŠKODA



- Remove the tailgate trim panel ⇒ [page 381](#) .
- Disconnect the plug connections of the existing electrical components.
- Thread the electrical cables out of the tailgate.
- Slacken the screws - 3 - (10 Nm) on the left and right hinges but do not yet unscrew.

Carry out further removal only with the assistance of a second mechanic.

- Only now unscrew the screws - 3 - and remove the tailgate.
- Only if the complete hinge for the tailgate must be removed, release the nuts - 2 - (20 Nm). In this case the moulded headliner must be unhooked ⇒ [page 395](#) .



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Adjust the tailgate after installing ⇒ [page 42](#) .

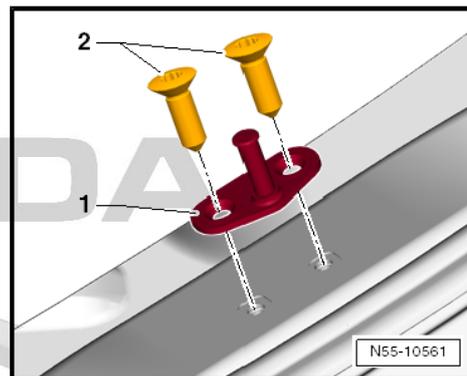
2.3 Removing and installing the closing wedge

2.3.1 Removing:

- Unscrew screw -2- and remove the closing wedge -1- from the luggage compartment wall.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Adjust closing wedge ⇒ [page 44](#) .



2.4 Adjusting tailgate



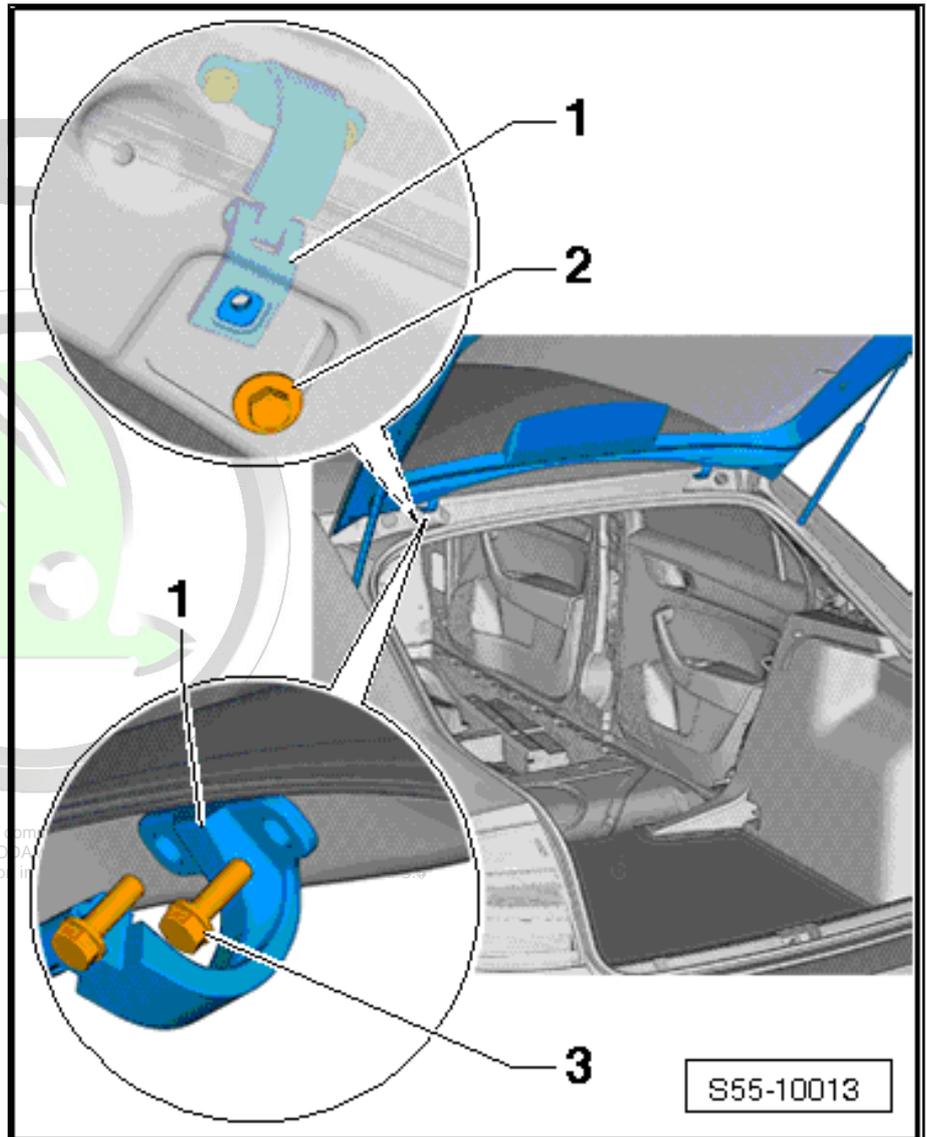
Note

- ◆ *The vehicle must be standing on its wheels in order to adjust the tailgate.*
- ◆ *The flap lock is directly screwed onto the tailgate. It has no elongated holes and therefore it cannot be adjusted.*
- ◆ *The adjusting buffers on the left and right are not used for the adjustment. They have the function to stabilise or dampen the tailgate.*
- ◆ *The tailgate is correctly adjusted if in the closed state it has an overall even gap size, is not positioned too far inwards or outwards and the contours are aligned.*
- ◆ *The tailgate must latch in the flap lock without using increased force.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

ŠKODA

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. reserves the right with respect to the correctness of information.



Use a setting gauge for setting or checking the gap sizes ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; body gaps; rear body .

- The tailgate can be adjusted in the oversized bores of the hinges horizontally and vertically by slackening the screws - 3 - .

Tightening torque of screw -3- (10 Nm).

- After carrying out adjustment work, perform corrosion protection measures at the hinges and screws.
- Adjust the tailgate on the closing wedge ⇒ [page 44](#) .
- Adjust the rubber buffer on the left and right ⇒ [page 44](#) .

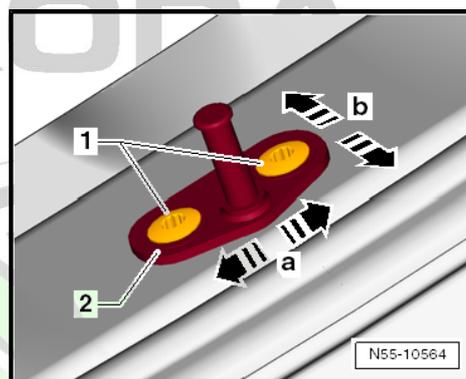
2.4.1 Adjusting the closing wedge

Note

- ◆ *The closing wedge - 2 - can be moved in the oversized bores -arrows a- and -arrows b- by loosening the screws - 1 -.*
- ◆ *Set the closing latch -2- in such a way that the recess of the tailgate lock with the catch engages centrally in the closing latch -2-.*

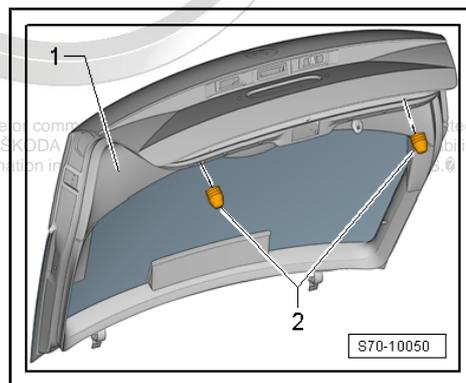
- Release screws - 1 -.
- Bring the closing wedge - 2 - into the upper position and tighten the screws - 1 -.
- Close the tailgate and check the setting.

Tightening torque of screws -1- (20 Nm).



2.4.2 Adjusting the rubber buffer

- Adjust the rubber buffer -2- in such a way that no excessive forces must be used when closing the tailgate -1- and that it engages in the lock.



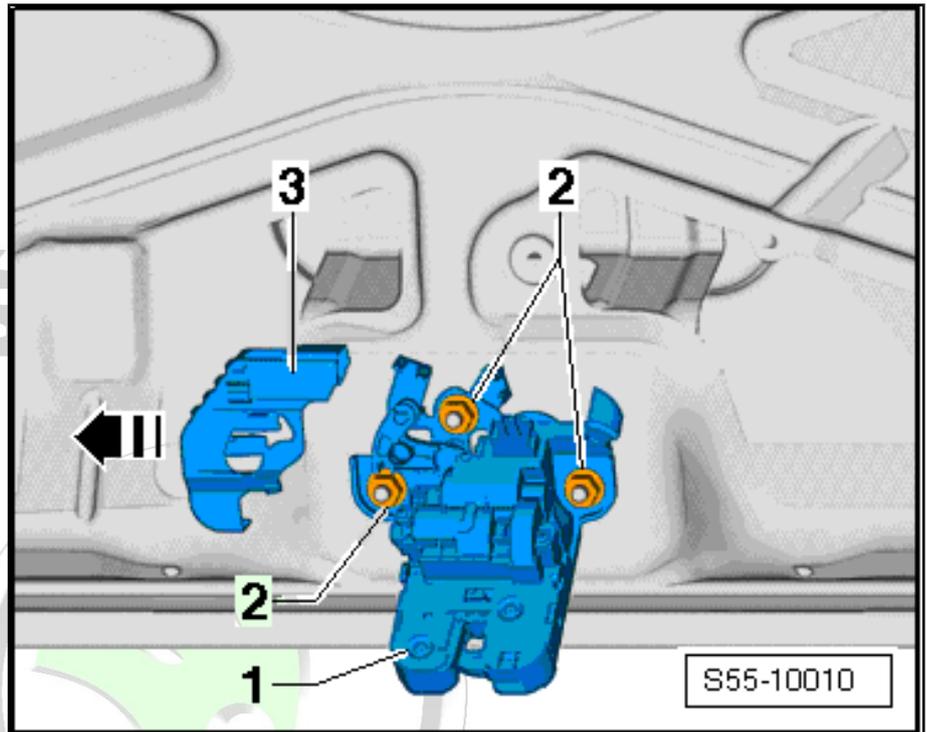
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or company use is permitted without charge, unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA is not responsible for the accuracy of information with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.5 Removing and installing the tailgate lock

Note

If the tailgate does not open, its emergency release can be opened mechanically from the outside via the lock cylinder => Owner's manual .

2.5.1 Removing and installing:



Removing:

- Removing trim panel for tailgate ⇒ [page 381](#) .
- Remove lock cover - 3 - .
- Disconnect the plug connection from the tailgate lock control - 1 - .
- Release the nuts -2- (21 Nm) and remove the flap lock -1- from the tailgate.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this manual. Copyright © 2013 SKODA AUTO A. S.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2.6 Removing and installing pressurized gas strut of tailgate

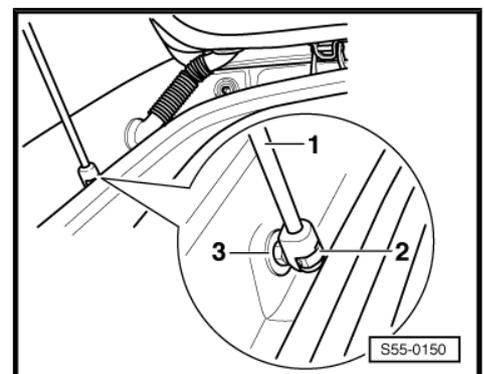
Removing:

- Open tailgate, support and lock it into position.
- Use a screwdriver to raise the locking element -2- and pull the pressurized gas strut - 1 - off the ball stud - 3 - .

i Note

If the strut is to be re-used, do not remove the release pin fully from the ball socket, otherwise it will be damaged.

- 1 - Pressurized gas strut
- 2 - Release pin
- 3 - Ball stud



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



2.7 Removing and installing the spindle drive of the tailgate (Octavia III - Combi)



Note

Functional description of the system e.g. ⇒ *Vehicle Operating Instructions*.

Removing:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical components.
- Open tailgate, support and lock it into position.
- Disconnect the plug connections of the spindle drive under the trim panel D ⇒ [page 379](#) and pull the wiring -3- through the grommet.
- Use a screwdriver to unlock the locking element - 4 - and pull the spindle drive - 1 - off the ball stud - 2 -.



WARNING

Always move the release pin into the first stage. Never fully lever it out of the ball socket. There is risk of injury to the mechanic and risk of damage to the release pin!

Commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Ball stud (20 Nm) -2-.

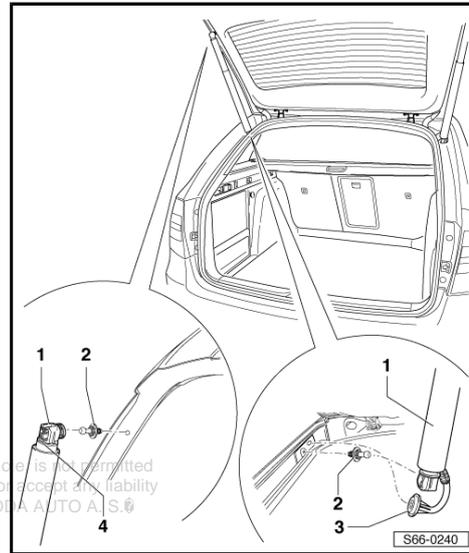
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

The end positions must be adjusted with ⇒ *Vehicle diagnostic tester* after installing the spindle drive.

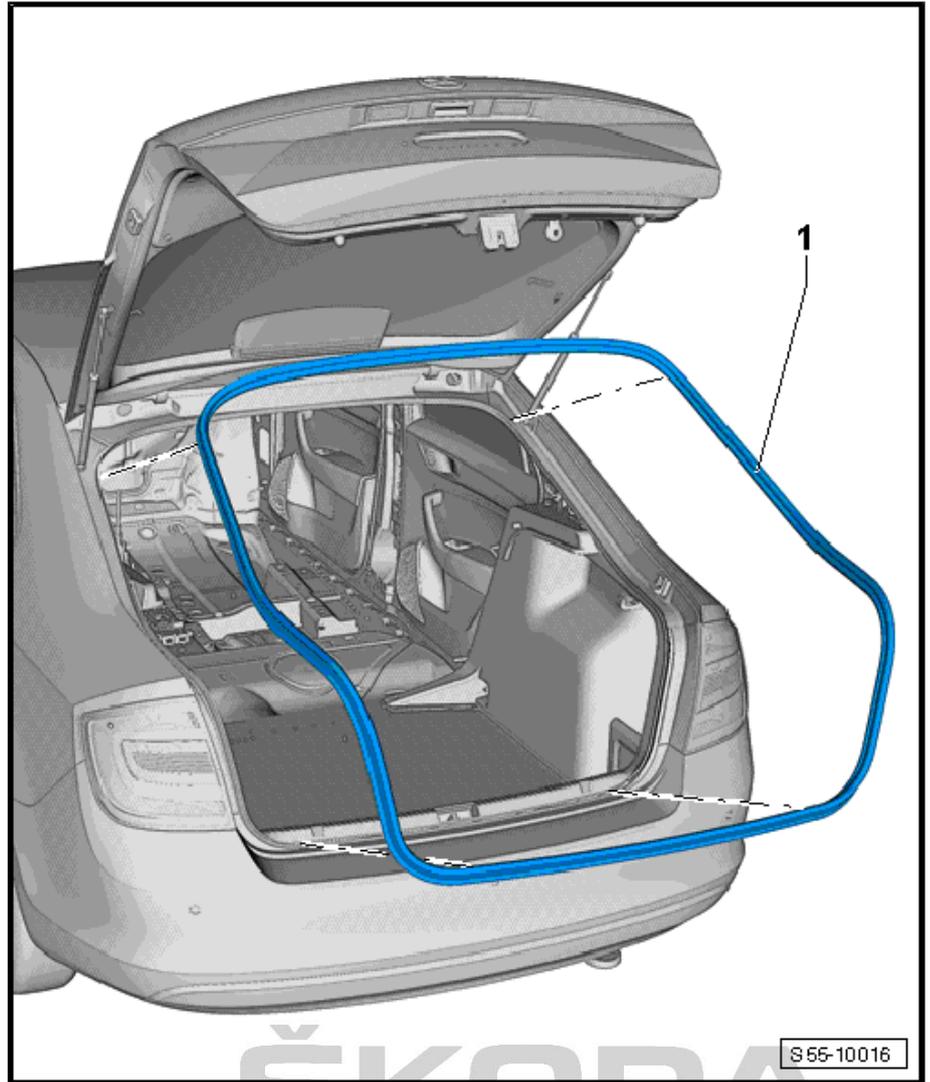


2.8 Seal for tailgate

2.8.1 Installation instructions

- ◆ If the seal is re-installed, tightness and tight fit can no longer be guaranteed.
- ◆ For this reason, each seal which was completely removed must be replaced with a so-called “hammer finish seal”.
- ◆ If the seals were detached partially, press together the sides of the seal before installing.

2.8.2 Removing and installing the seal for the tailgate

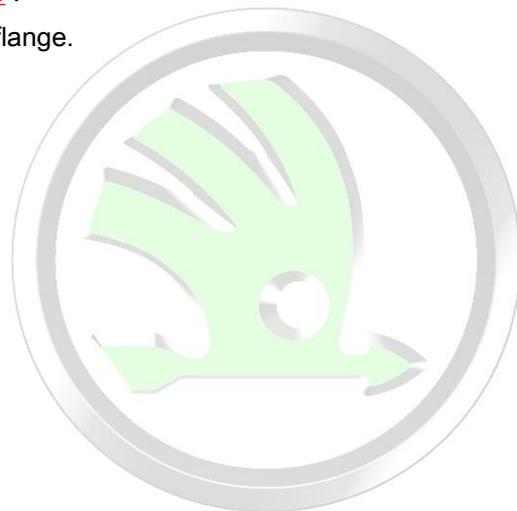


Removing:

- Pay attention to installation instructions ⇒ [page 46](#) .
- Detach the seal for the tailgate -1- from the body flange.

Installing:

- Press the seal -1- evenly onto the body flange.



3 Fuel tank lid unit

3.1 Fuel-tank lid unit - Summary of components

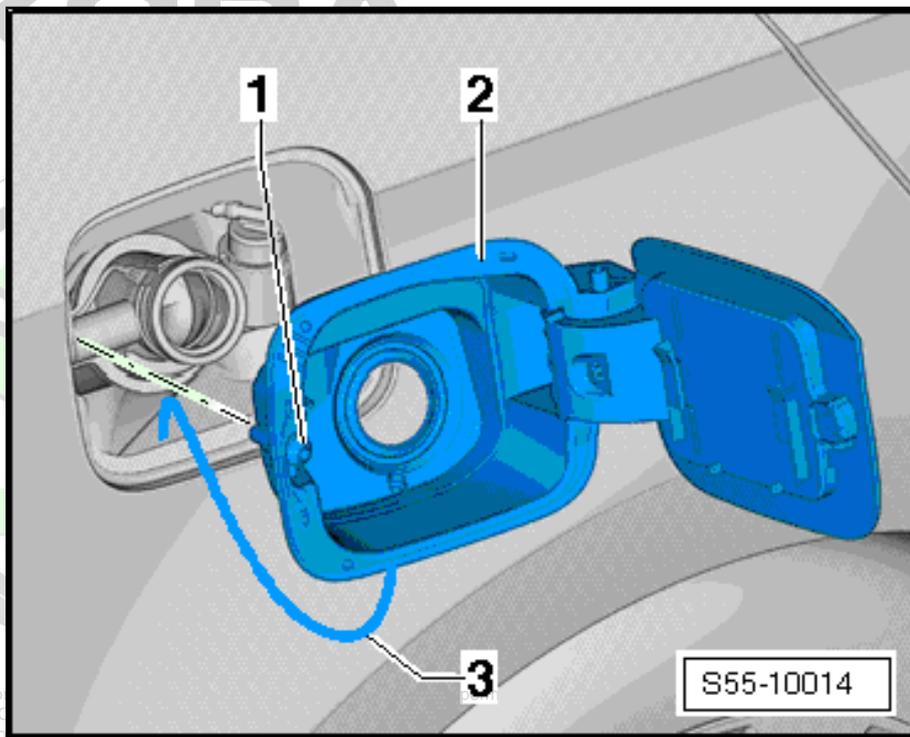
1 - Locking mechanism

2 - Fuel tank lid unit

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 48](#) .

3 - Water drain hose

- Laid between the wheel-house and the wheel-house liner.

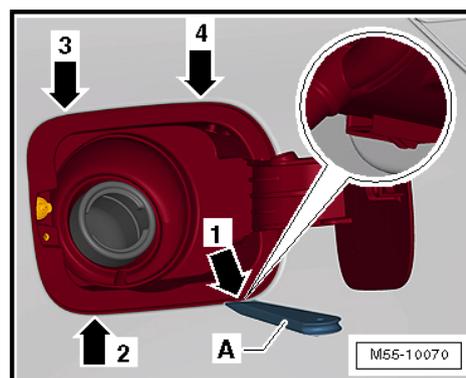


Protected by copyright. Copying for
unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO
with respect to the correctness of

3.2 Removing and installing fuel tank lid unit

3.2.1 Removing:

- Lever out the fuel tank lid unit in steps using a plastic wedge -A-.
- Remove the rubber grommet from the tank filler neck.
- Pull out the fuel tank lid unit.



3.2.2 Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

57 – Front doors, door components, central locking

1 Front door

1.1 Door hinges - Summary of components

1 - Door

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 50](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 53](#) .

2 - Screw with internal serrations

- 40 Nm.

3 - Door hinge

- The hinge is divided.
- The top part is connected to the bottom part of the hinge by the screw - 4 -.

4 - Screw

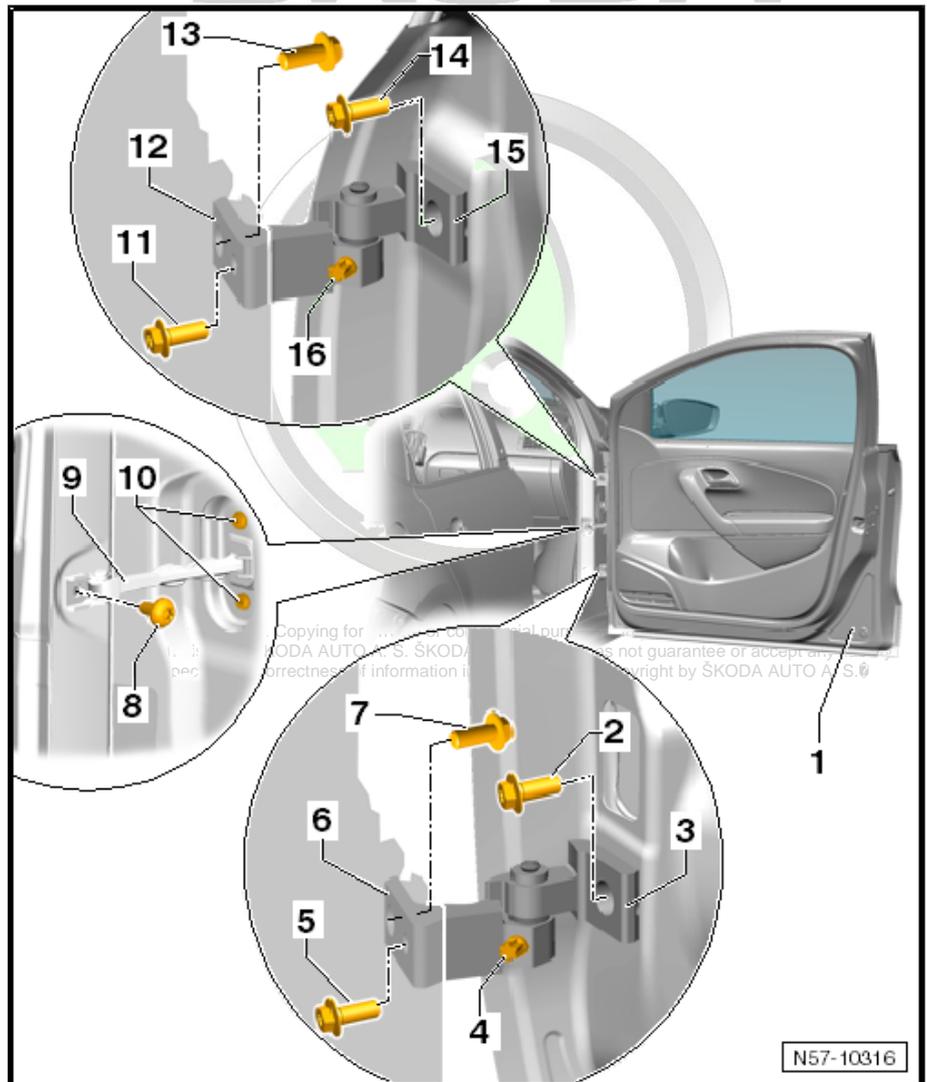
- This screw must be unscrewed in order to remove the door from the hinge.
- 23 Nm.

5 - Screw with internal serrations

- Installed from the inside of the vehicle.
- Remove bottom A-pillar trim panel.
- 25 Nm.

6 - Door hinge

- The hinge is divided.
- The bottom part is connected to the top part of the hinge by the screw - 4 -.



7 - Screw with internal serrations

- 25 Nm.

8 - Screw

- 30 Nm.
- This screw must be unscrewed in order to remove the door.

9 - Door arrester

10 - Screw

- 9 Nm.

11 - Screw with internal serrations

- Installed from the inside of the vehicle.
- Remove and install the dash panel for loosening or tightening the screw on the driver's side.



- Remove and install the dash panel for loosening or tightening the screw on the front passenger side.
- 25 Nm.

12 - Door hinge

- The bottom part is connected to the top part of the hinge by the screw - 16 -.
- The hinge is divided.

13 - Screw with internal serrations

- 25 Nm

14 - Screw with internal serrations

- 40 Nm.

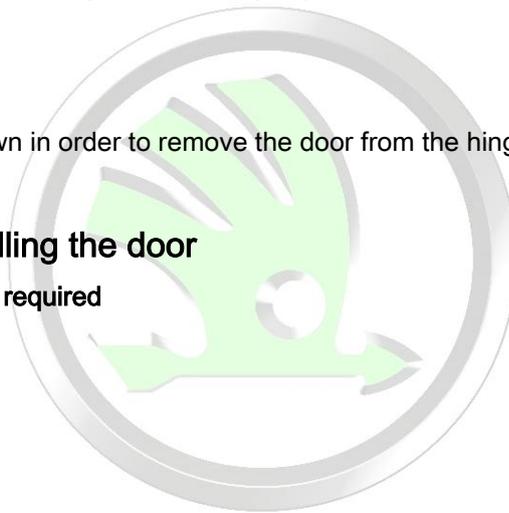
ŠKODA

15 - Door hinge

- The top part is connected to the bottom part of the hinge by the screw - 12 -.
- The hinge is divided.

16 - Screw

- 23 Nm.
- This screw must be screwed down in order to remove the door from the hinge bolt.



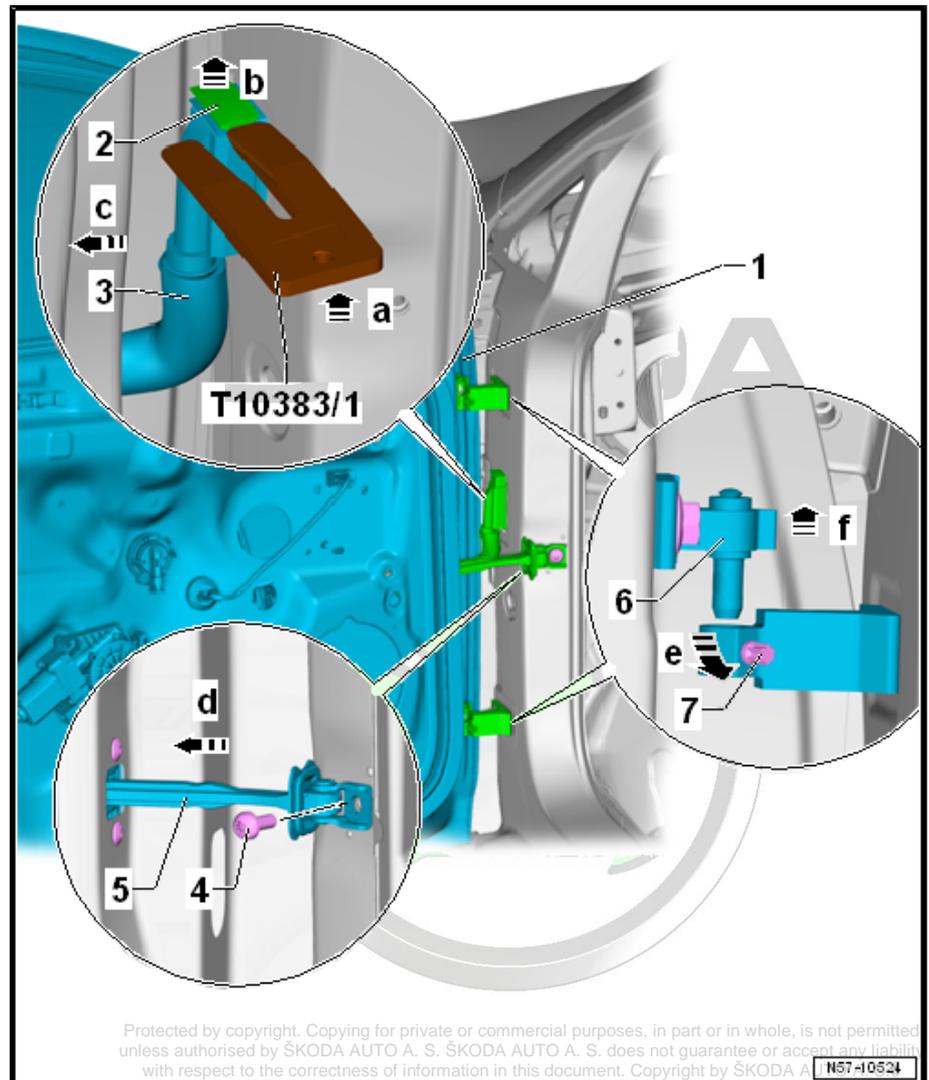
1.2 Removing and installing the door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge - T10383/1-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.2.1 Removing:

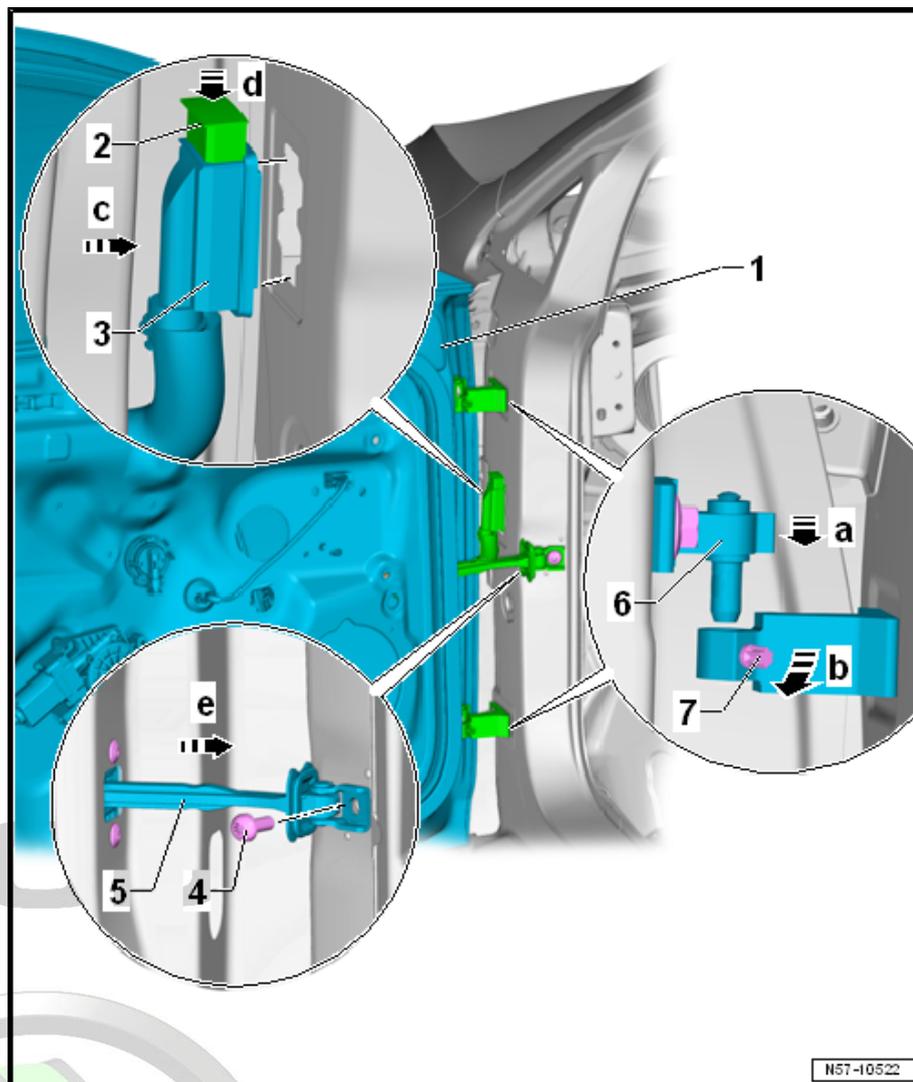


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA A. S. N57-10524

- Press the wedge - T10383/1- between the collar - 3 - and catch - 2 -, - arrow a -.
- Press out catch - 2 - with the wedge - T10383/1- upwards - arrow b - and disconnect the plug connection.
- Slacken the screws - 7 - at the hinges -arrows e-.
- Remove the screws -4- for the door retaining strap -5-.
- Push the door retaining strap-6- in - the direction of arrow d - towards the inside.
- Lift out the door - 1 - from the hinges in - the direction of the arrow f -.



1.2.2 Installing:



Installing:

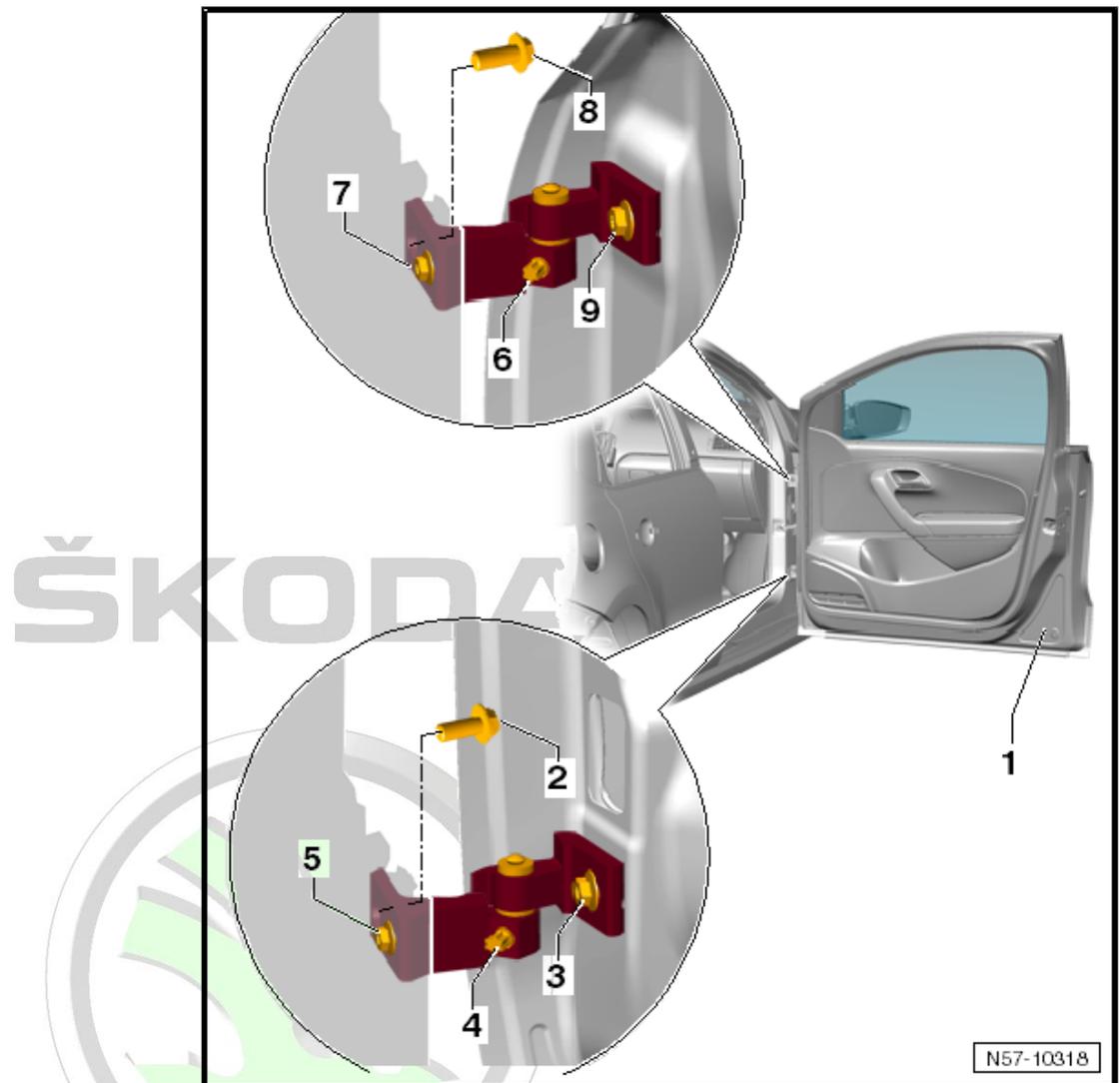
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Tightening torque screws (Pos. 7) - 23 Nm.
- Tightening torque screws (Pos. 4) - 30 Nm.
- Observe the gap sizes of the front door ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; technical data; body gaps; front body .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.3 Door adjustment

Note

- ◆ The vehicle must be standing on its wheels in order to adjust the door.
- ◆ The door is correctly adjusted if in the closed state it has an overall even gap size, is not positioned too far inwards or outwards and the contours are aligned.
- ◆ To check the gap size: ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Technical data; body gaps; front body .
- ◆ After carrying out removal and installation or adjustment work, perform corrosion protection measures at the screws and hinges.



Setting the gap sizes:

In order to correctly set the gap sizes, the screws -2, 5, 7, and 8- must be slackedened at the A pillar.

- The bottom A pillar trim panel must be removed for slacking the screw - 5 -.
- The dash panel must be removed on the driver's side for the screw - 7 -.



- The glove compartment must be removed on the front passenger side for the screw - 7 -.

Setting the gap sizes:

The screws -3 and 9- must be released for correctly setting the flushness.

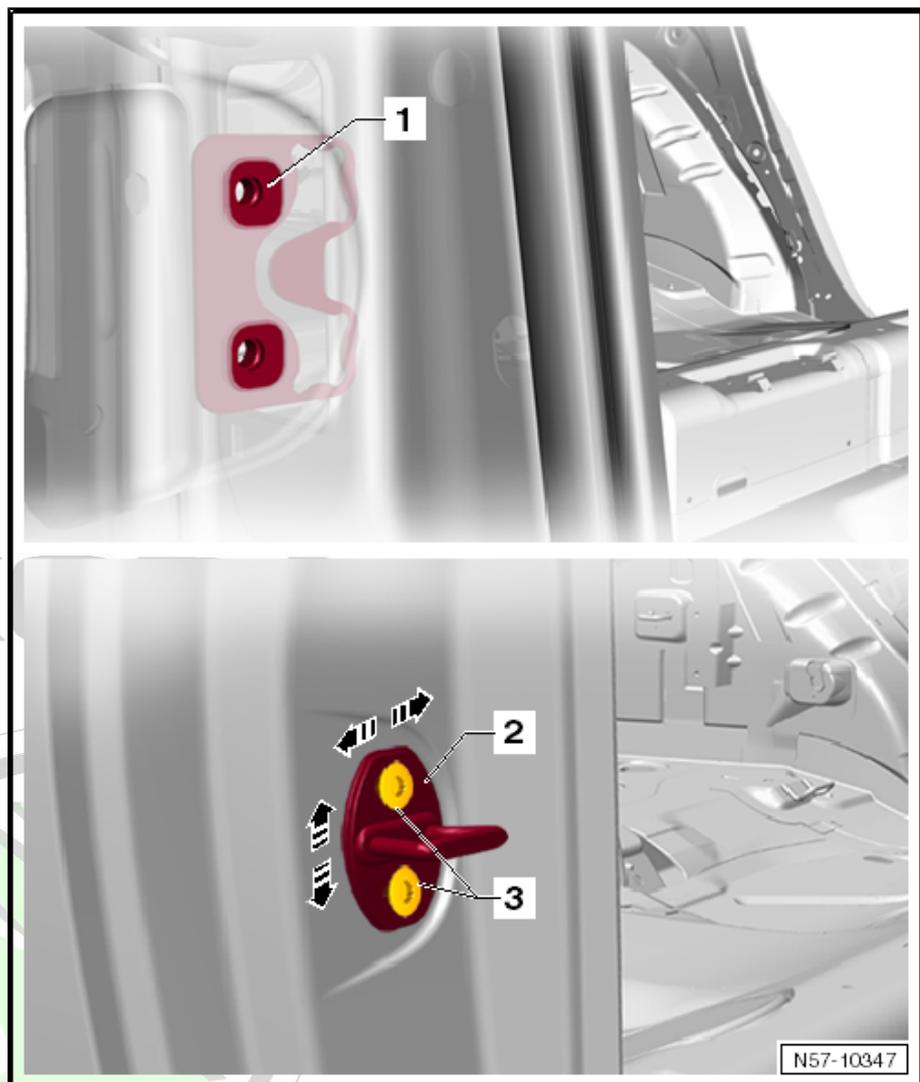


Note

Other measures, such as aligning the doors towards the top are ineffective. The door will drop again at the following overpressures.

Adjusting the locking clamp: ⇒ [page 54](#) .

1.3.1 Adjusting the locking clamp



 **Note**

- ◆ *The arc outside the threaded plate must be firmly welded to the pillar. The lands to the threaded plate are malleable.*
- ◆ *In order to adjust the locking clamp -2- once the screws -3- are loosened, increased force must be applied.*

 **Note**

- ◆ *When closing the door it must lock completely without using additional force and must have no play.*
- ◆ *When adjusting the locking clamp, the door must not be pressed upwards or downwards.*

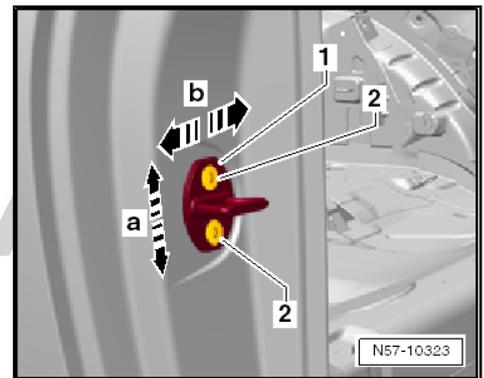
The locking clamp is used for adjusting the following:

- If the front door adjustment is not flush with the rear door or the side part.

Carry out the following tasks:

- Slacken the locking clamp -1- by loosening the screws -2- at the B pillar.
- Adjust the door with the locking clamp -2- in such a way that the front door when in the closed state is flush with the rear door (wind noise).
- Tighten screws - 2 - of locking clamp - 1 -.

Tightening torques: Screws -2- (20 Nm).

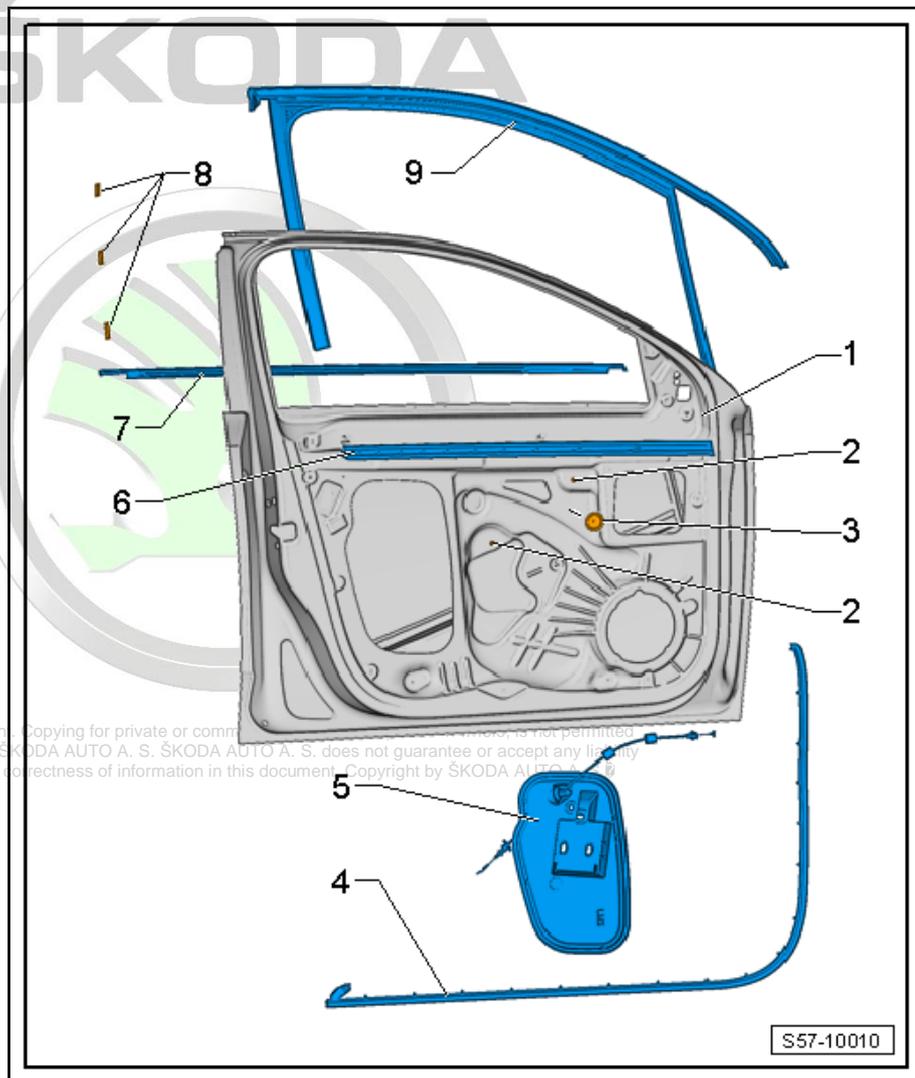


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

2 Door internal parts

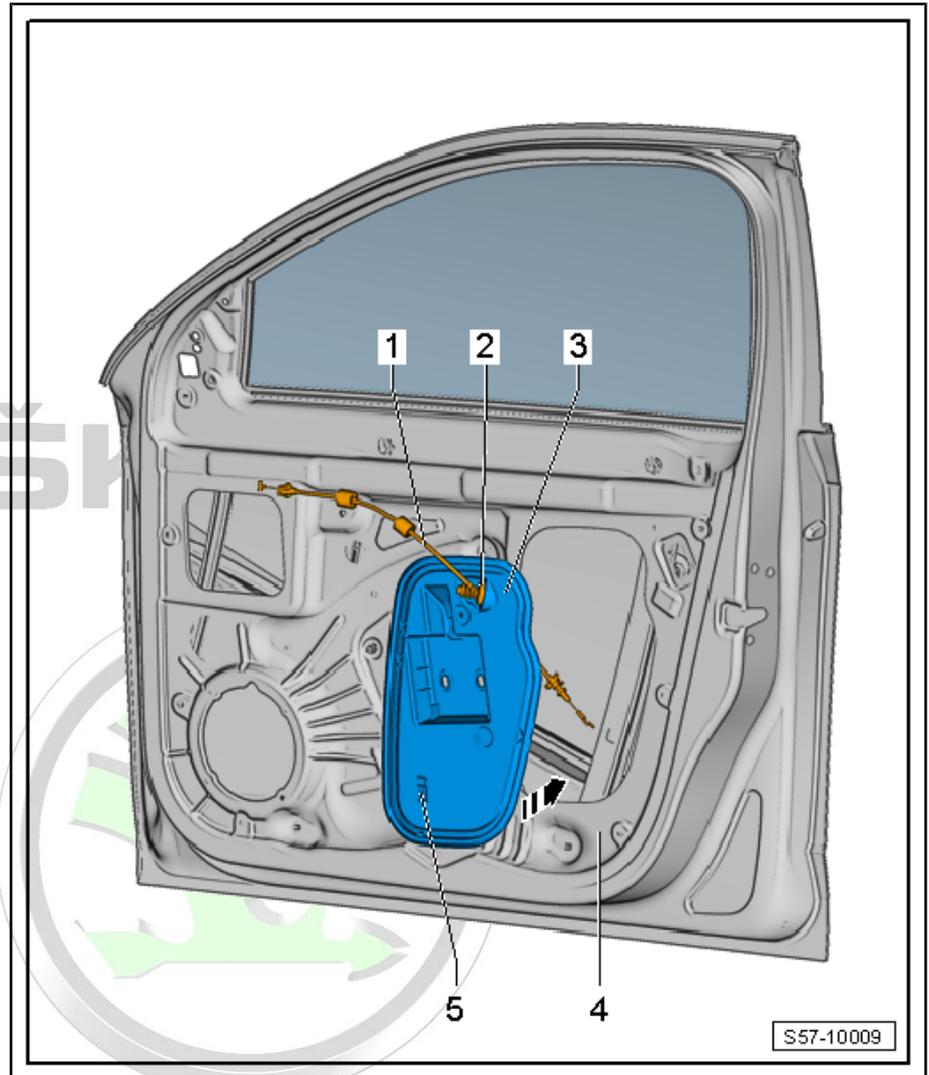
2.1 Front door - Summary of components

- 1 - Door
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 50](#) .
 - Setting ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- 2 - Riveted nut
- 3 - Adhesive pad
- 4 - Outside door seal
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 90](#) .
- 5 - Cover
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- 6 - Inside window shaft seal
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 85](#) .
- 7 - Outside window shaft seal
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 86](#) .
- 8 - Foam piece
- 9 - Window run
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 81](#) .



2.2 Removing and installing the door cover

2.2.1 Removing:



- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#).
- Lift off the cover -3- in the bottom area.
- Pull the cover - 3 - downwards and remove it from the door - 4 -.

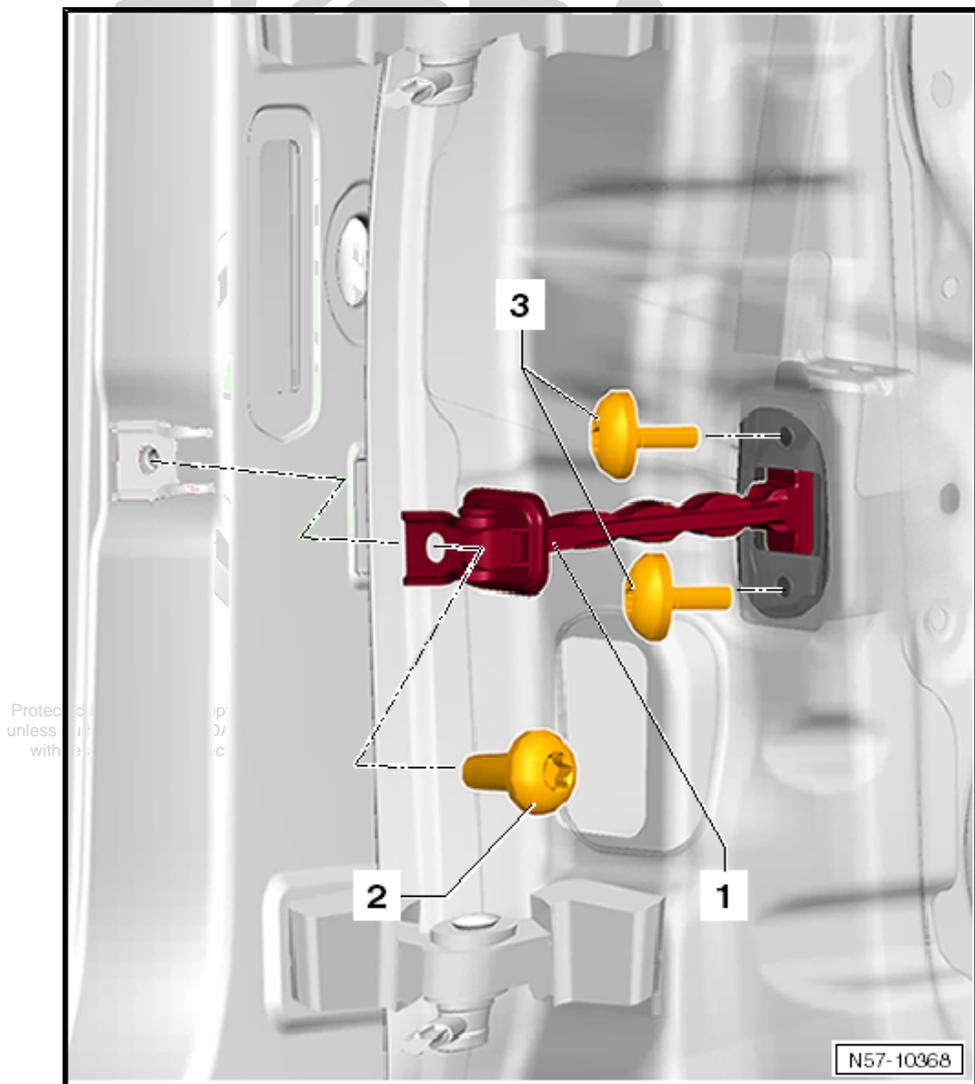
Note

If the following operations are necessary, pull the Bowden cable - 1 - with the grommet - 2 - out of the cover - 3 -.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2.2.2 Removing and installing the door retaining strap



Removing:

- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Remove the screw - 2 - at the A pillar.
- Unscrew screws -3-.
- Remove the plastic door cover above the loudspeaker and remove the door retaining strap - 1 - .
- Remove the door retaining strap through the opening.

Installing:

- Insert the door retaining strap through the opening for the door cover.
- Install screws - 3 -, tightening torque 9 Nm.
- Install screw -2-, tightening torque 30 Nm.
- Fit plastic door cover above the loudspeaker.
- Installing door trim panel at front ⇒ [page 359](#) .

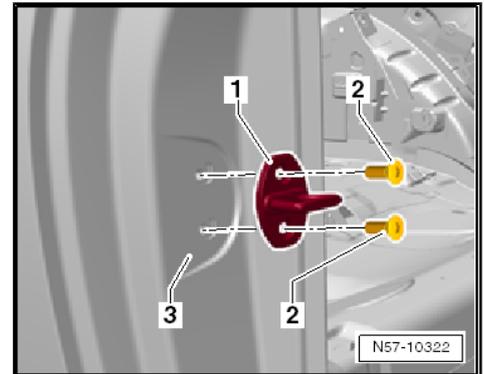
2.2.3 Removing and installing the locking clamp

Removing:

- Release screws - 2 - and remove locking clamp - 1 -.

Installing:

- Position the locking clamp - 1 - at the B pillar - 3 - and tighten the screws - 2 -, tightening torque: 25 Nm.
- Adjusting the locking clamp.



2.3 Door handle and door lock - Summary of components

1 - Door lock

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 69](#) .

2 - Screw

- For lock cylinder.
- Tightening torque:
2.2 Nm.

3 - Bearing bracket

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 71](#) .

4 - Lock cylinder

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 61](#) .
- A lock cylinder is located
only on the driver's door.

5 - Base

6 - Cap

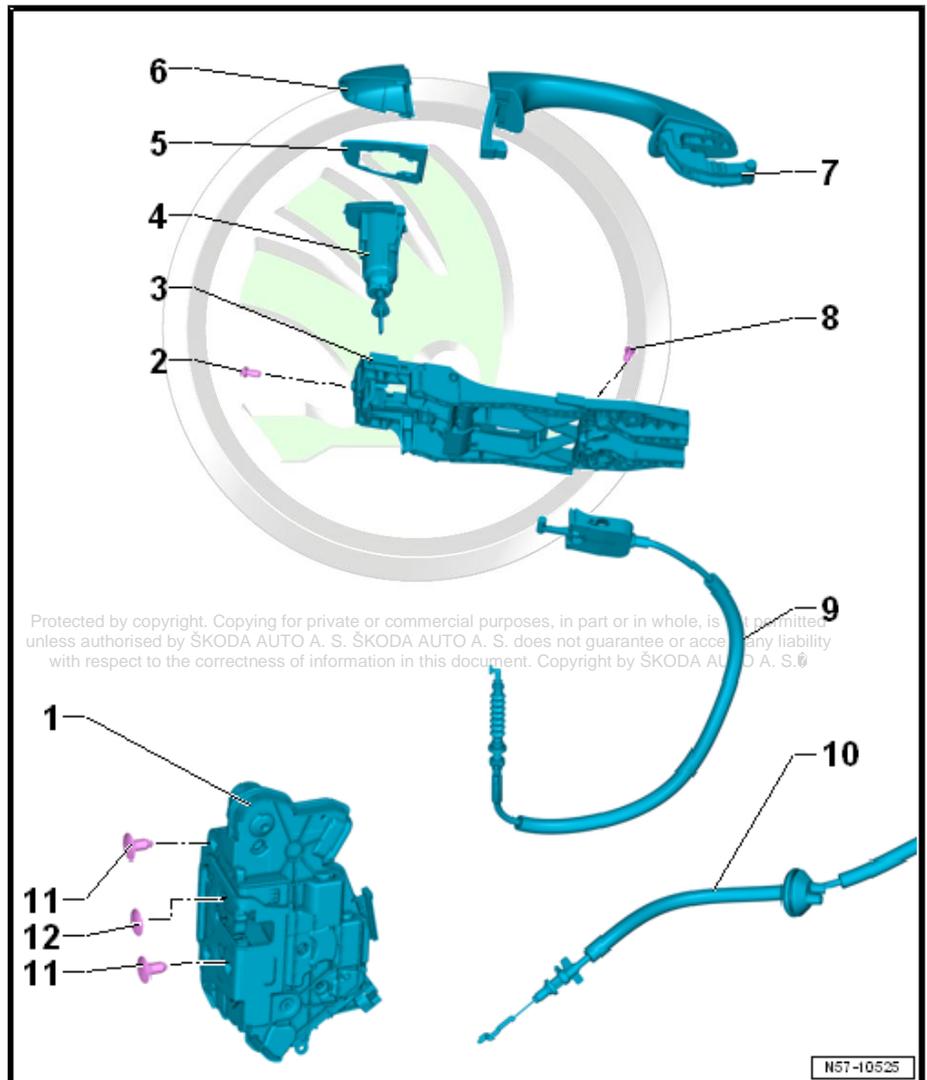
- different versions, as-
signment ⇒ Electronic
Catalogue of Original
Parts .
- Remove and install with
lock cylinder
⇒ [page 60](#) .
- Remove and install
without lock cylinder
⇒ [page 64](#) .

7 - Door handle

- Different versions, as-
signment ⇒ Electronic
Catalogue of Original
Parts .
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 67](#) .

8 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 1.7 Nm.





- The bearing bracket is released from the door by loosening the screw.

9 - Control cable

- From door lock to bearing bracket.

10 - Control cable

- From inner door control to lock release.
- With grommet for feeding through at the cover.

11 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm.

12 - Cap

2.4 Removing and installing cap for lock cylinder

2.4.1 Removing:

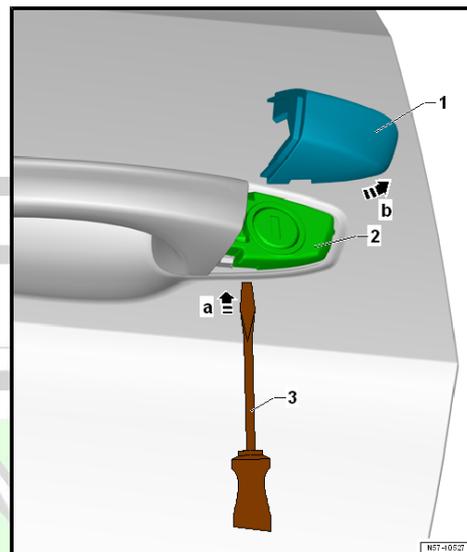


Note

When removing the cap for the lock cylinder, do not turn the screwdriver and lever with it.

Carry out the following tasks:

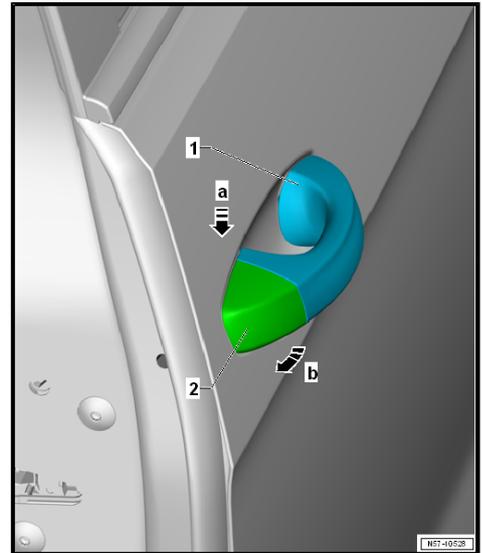
- Detach door handle.
- Press a small screwdriver -3- slightly -arrow a- into the opening on the bottom side of the cap for the lock cylinder.
- Slightly pull off the cap of the lock cylinder - 1 -, together with the screwdriver, at the bottom side from the door -arrow b-.
- Slide the cap upwards from the lock cylinder.



2.4.2 Installing:

Carry out the following tasks:

- Remove door handle - 1 -.
- Place the cap of the lock cylinder -2- slightly angled from the top -arrow a- onto the lock cylinder.
- Press the cap of the lock cylinder - 2 - onto the door -arrow b-, until the cap with the lock cylinder locks into position.



2.5 Removing and installing lock cylinder



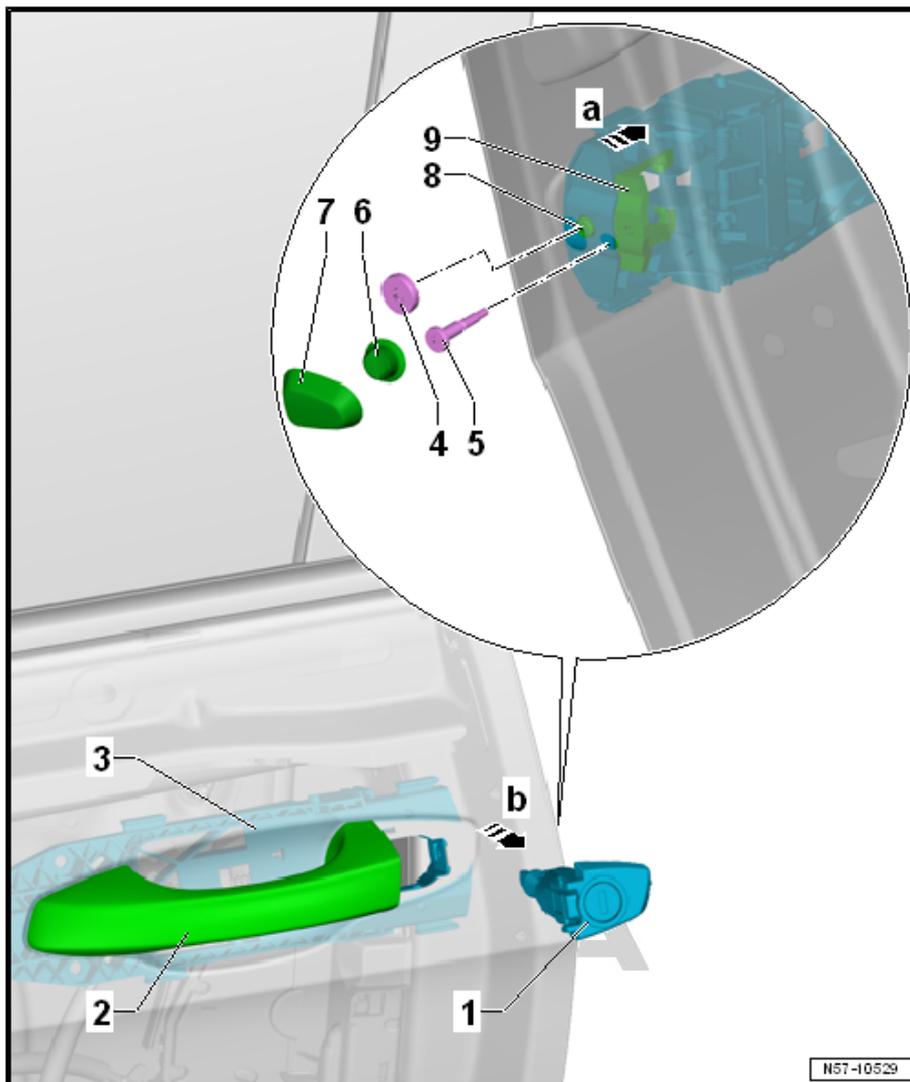
Note

A lock cylinder is installed only on the driver's door.

2.5.1 Removing:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Lift off the covers -4 and 6- or cover - 7 -.
- Unscrew screw - 5 -.
- Fully unscrew the screw -8- so that it exposes the lock cylinder.
- Remove door handle - 2 -.
- Pull the lock cylinder housing -1- out of the bearing bracket -3- at a right angle -arrow b- to the door.

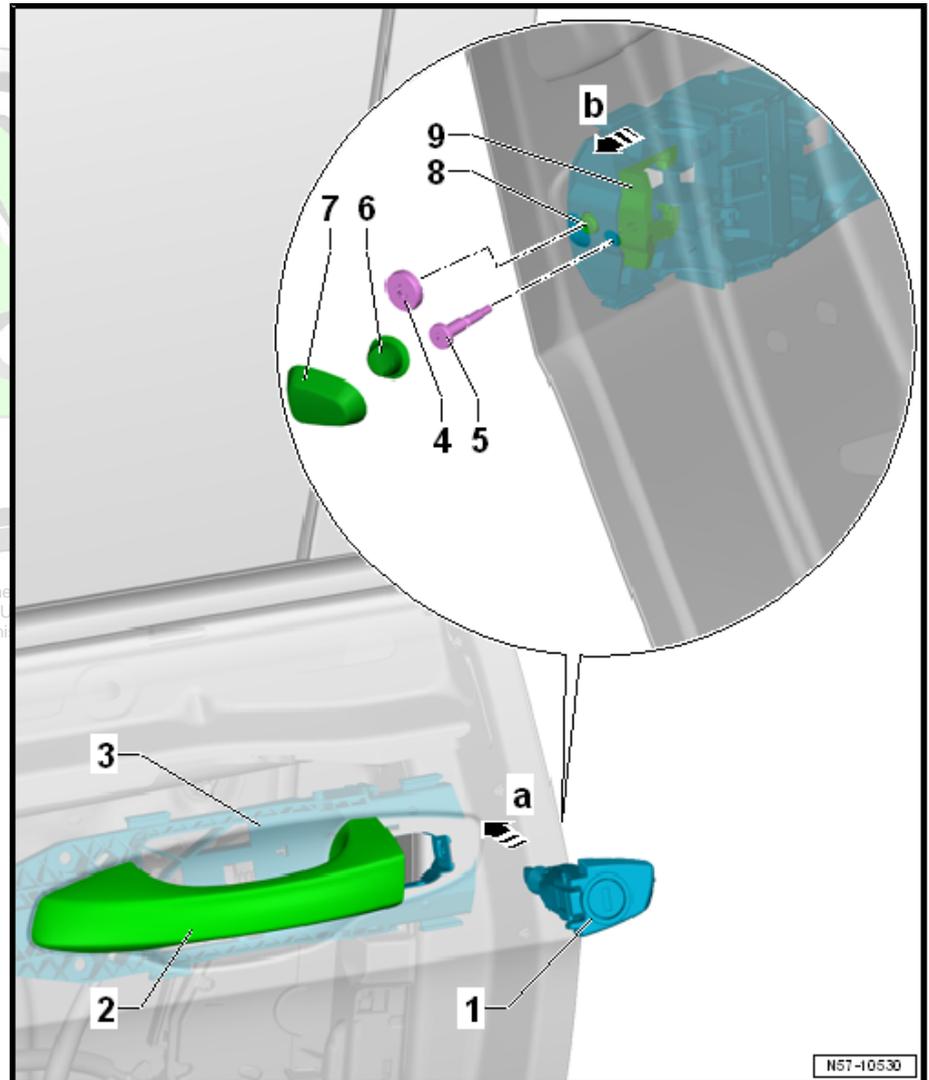
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.5.2 Installing:

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use without authorisation by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. is not permitted. We accept no responsibility for the correctness of information in this manual.



- Remove door handle - 2 - -arrow a-.
- Fit the lock cylinder housing - 1 - at a right angle -arrow b- into the bearing bracket - 3 -.
- Screw the screws -5 and 8- into the bearing bracket.
- Tightening torque of screws -5 and 8- (2.2 Nm).

Note

During the assembly the lock cylinder housing must be pressed against the outer door panel.

Further installation occurs in reverse order.

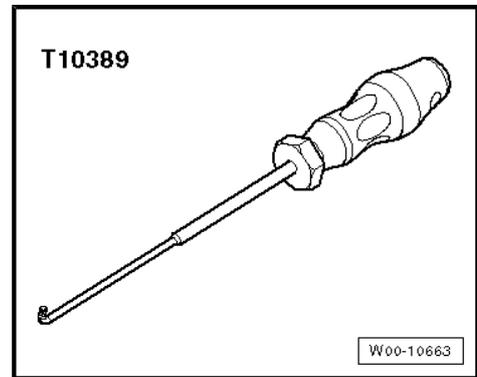


2.6 Removing and installing cap (without lock cylinder)

2.6.1 Tools

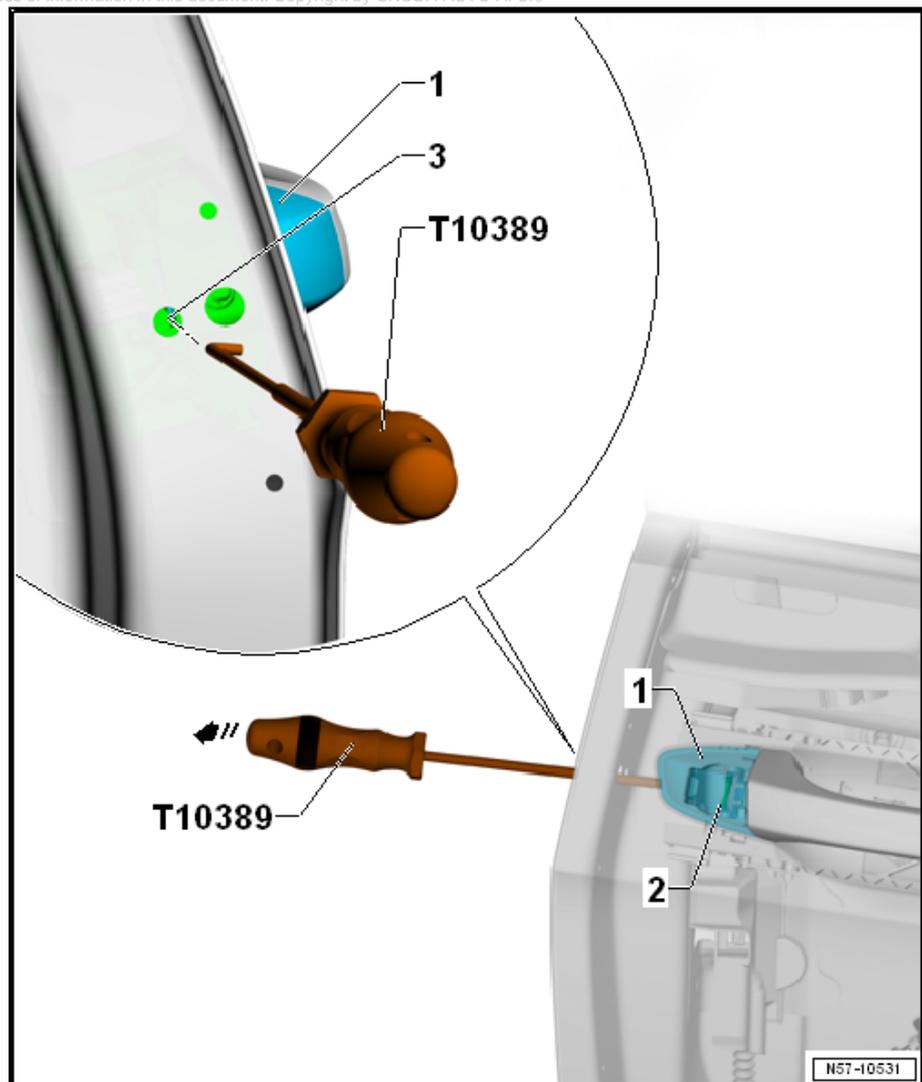
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly tool - T10389-

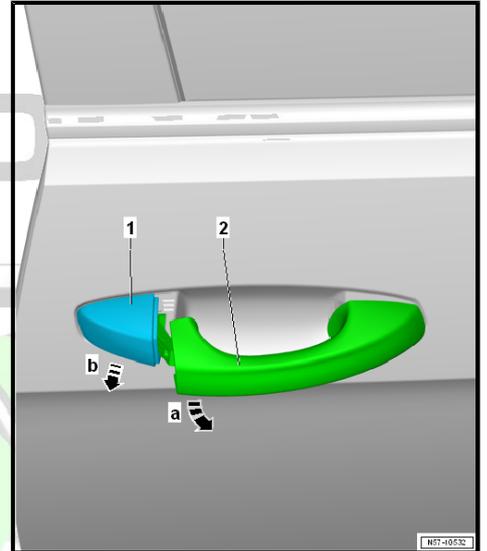


2.6.2 Removing:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



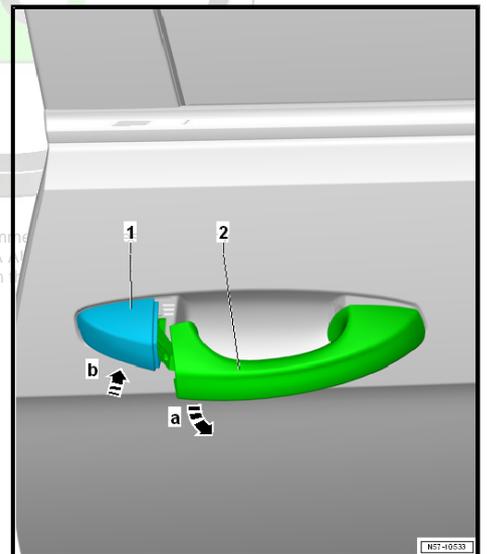
- Remove the plugs from the rear openings - 3 -.
- Guide the assembly tool - T10389- by approx. 55 mm into the door behind the lock hooks -2- of the bearing bracket.
- Pull the assembly tool - T10389- as far towards the rear -arrow-, until the hook on the bearing bracket unlocks.
- Detach the door handle -2- in -direction of arrow a- from the door.
- Pull the cap - 1 - out of the bearing bracket -arrow b-.

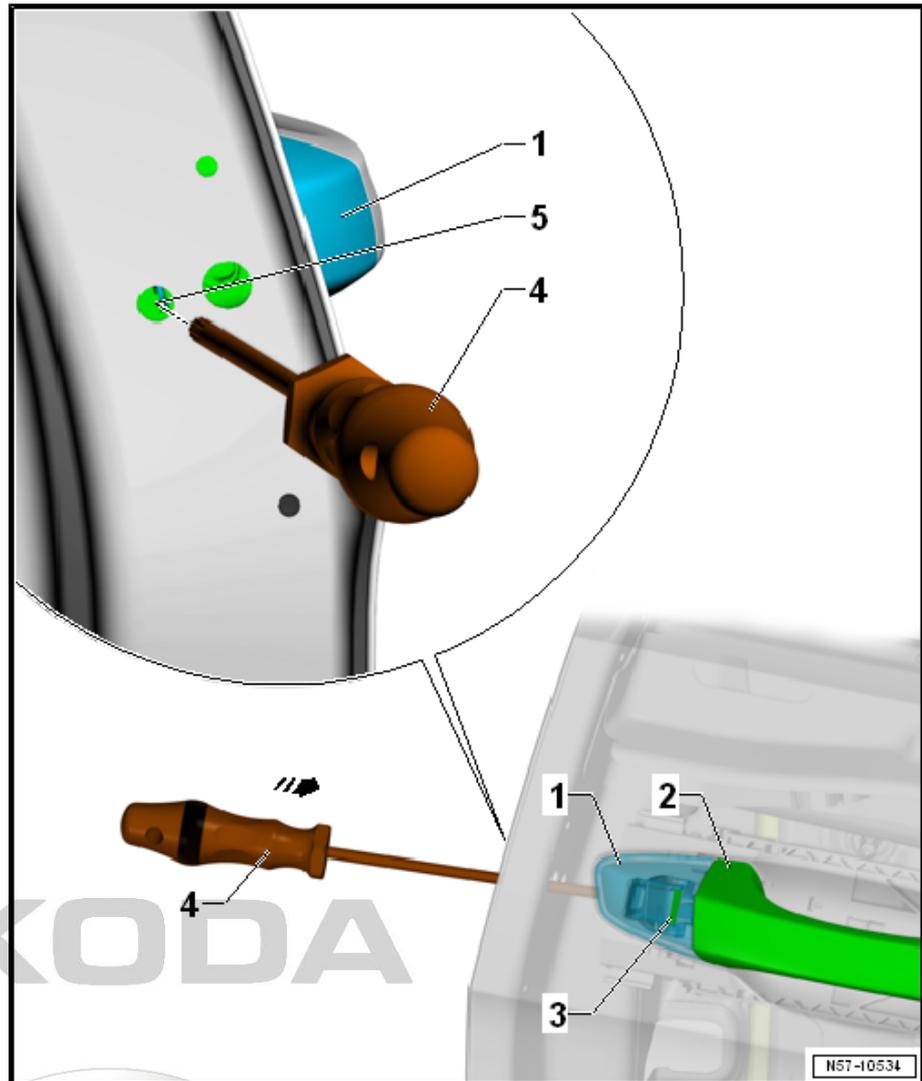


2.6.3 Installing:

- Detach the door handle -2- in -direction of arrow a- from the door.
- Push the cap -1- into the bearing bracket -arrow b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this manual.



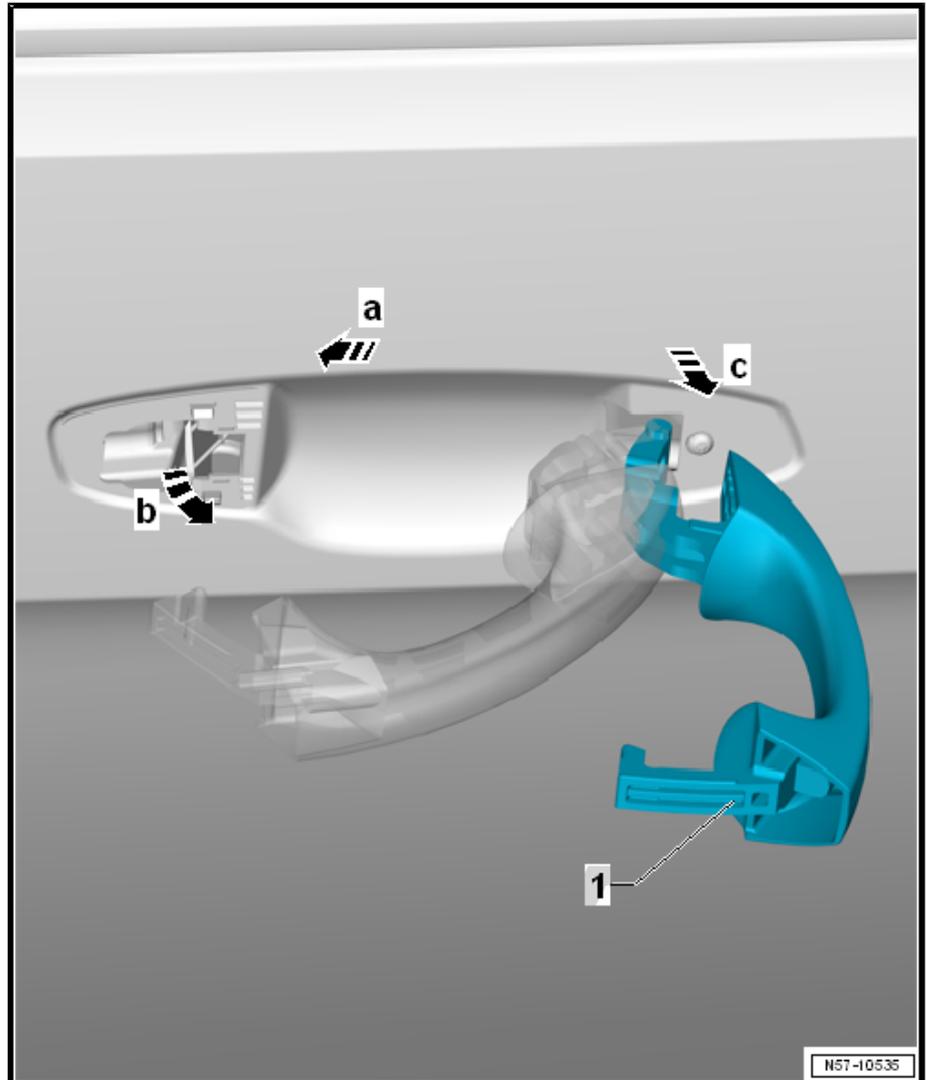


- Guide the screwdriver -4- at the lock hook -3- of the bearing bracket.
- Press the cap -1- on the door.
- Press in the screwdriver -arrow- until the hook locks.
- Attach plug - 5 -.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

2.7 Removing and installing the door handle

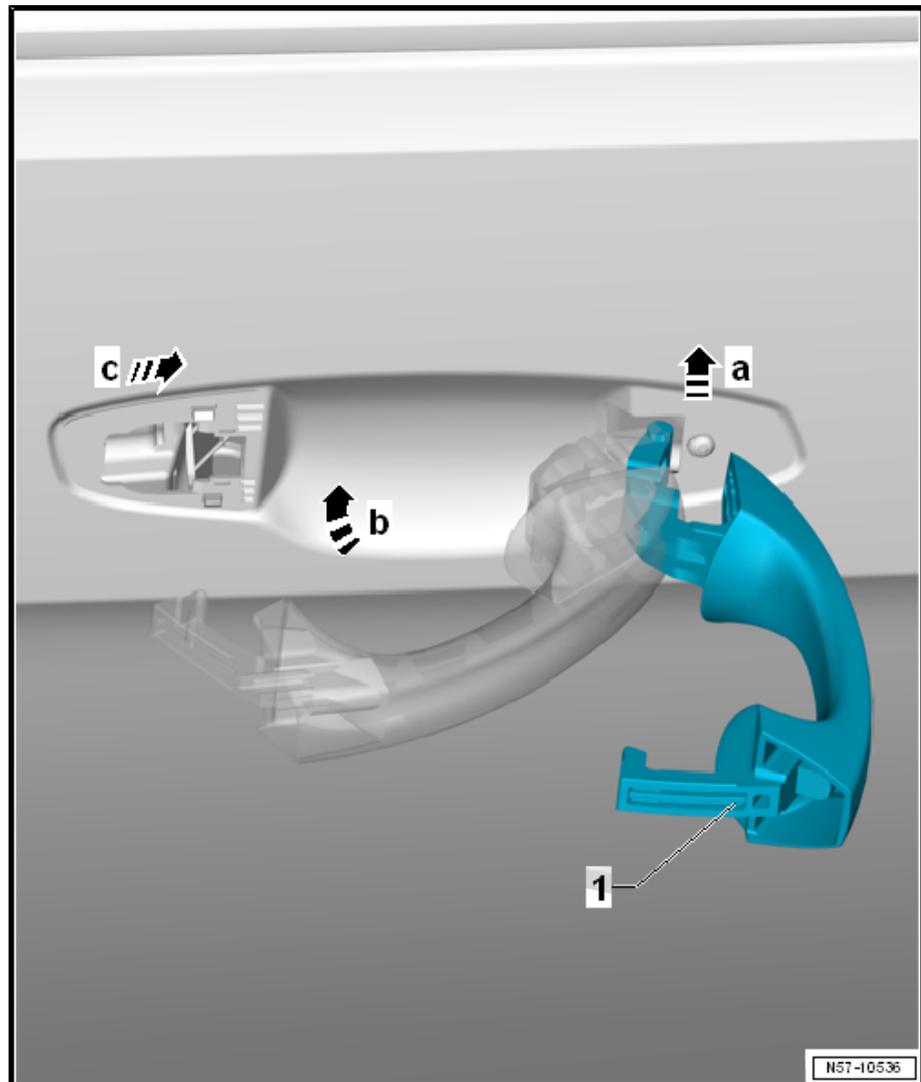
2.7.1 Removing:



- Remove the lock cylinder ⇒ [page 61](#) or the cap ⇒ [page 64](#) .
- Pull the door handle -1- slightly towards the rear -arrow a- out of the support of the bearing bracket.
- Swivel the door handle in -direction of arrow b-.
- Remove the door handle at a right angle -arrow a- out of the bearing bracket - 2 -.



2.7.2 Installing:



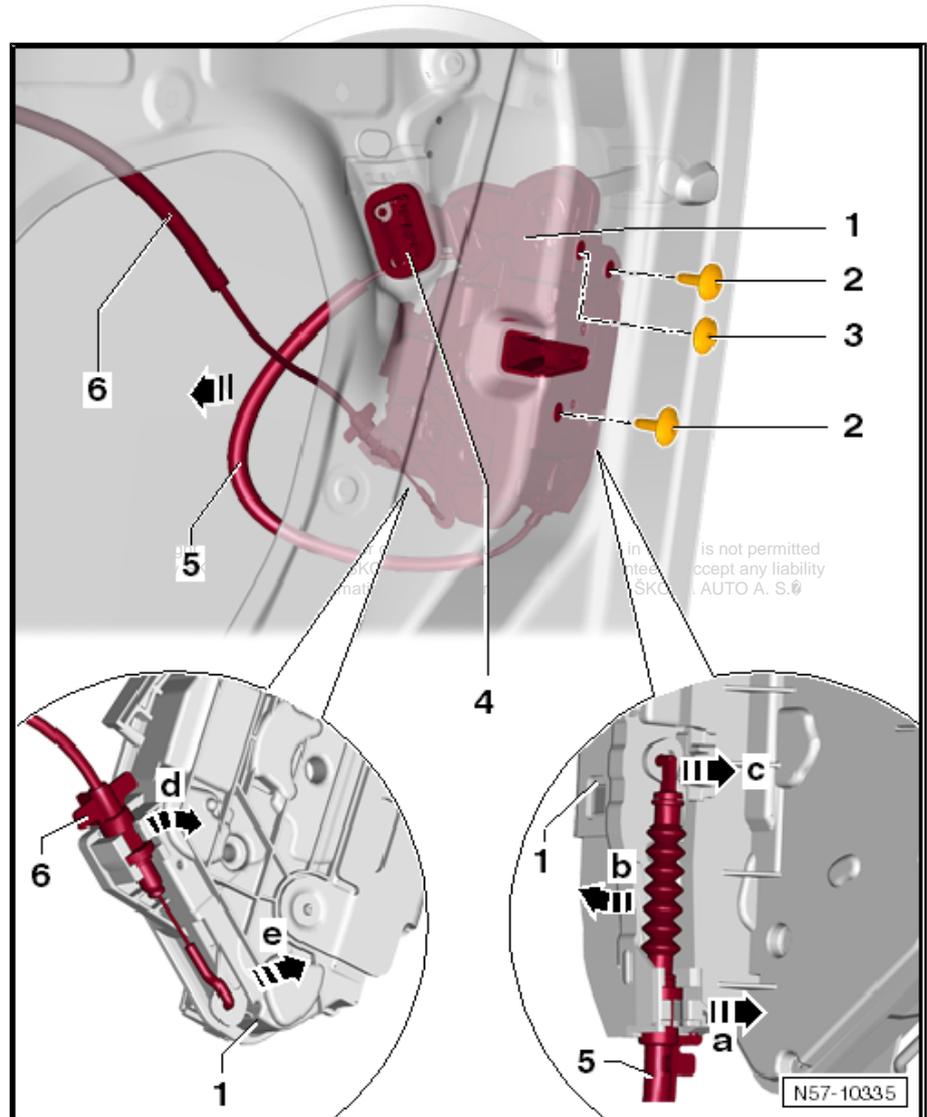
- Fit the door handle -1- at a right angle -arrow b- into the bearing bracket.
- Swivel the door handle -1- into the door -arrow b-.
- Forcefully press the door handle forwards -arrow c- into the support of the bearing bracket.

Install the lock cylinder ⇒ [page 61](#) or the cap ⇒ [page 64](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.8 Removing and installing the door lock

2.8.1 Removing:



- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Remove the cover ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Unclip cap - 3 -.
- Disconnect plug connection - 4 -.
- Remove lock cylinder ⇒ [page 61](#) .
- Unscrew screws -2-.
- Remove the lock -1- from the door.

i Note

If it is necessary for the following operations, you can slacken the Bowden cable.

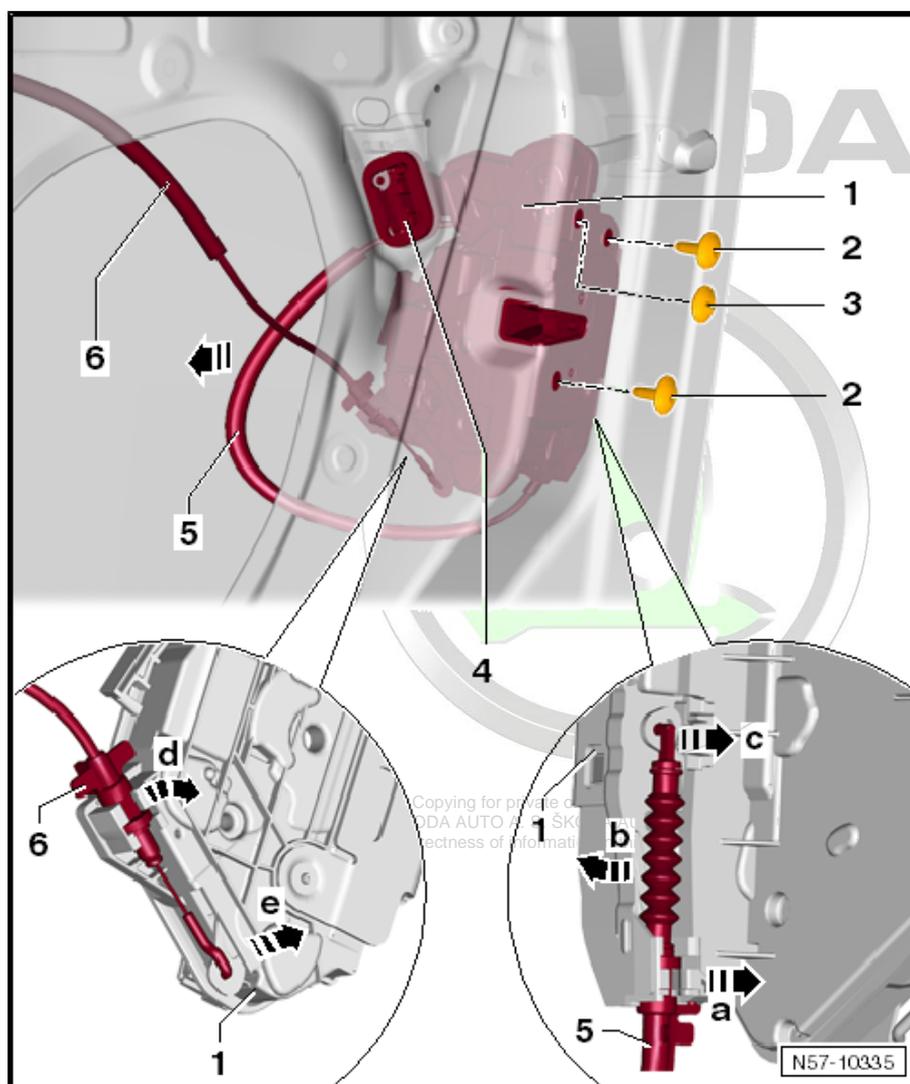
Slacken Bowden cable to bearing bracket

- Twist the Bowden cable -5- by 45° and remove it from the bracket -arrow a-.
- Turn the Bowden cable -arrow b- until it can be guided out of the lug in the door lock (Pos. 1) -arrow c-.

Slacken the Bowden cable to the inner door control

- Twist the Bowden cable -6- by 45° and remove it from the bracket.
- Turn the Bowden cable -arrow d- until it can be guided out of the lug in the door lock (Pos.1) -arrow e-.

2.8.2 Installing:



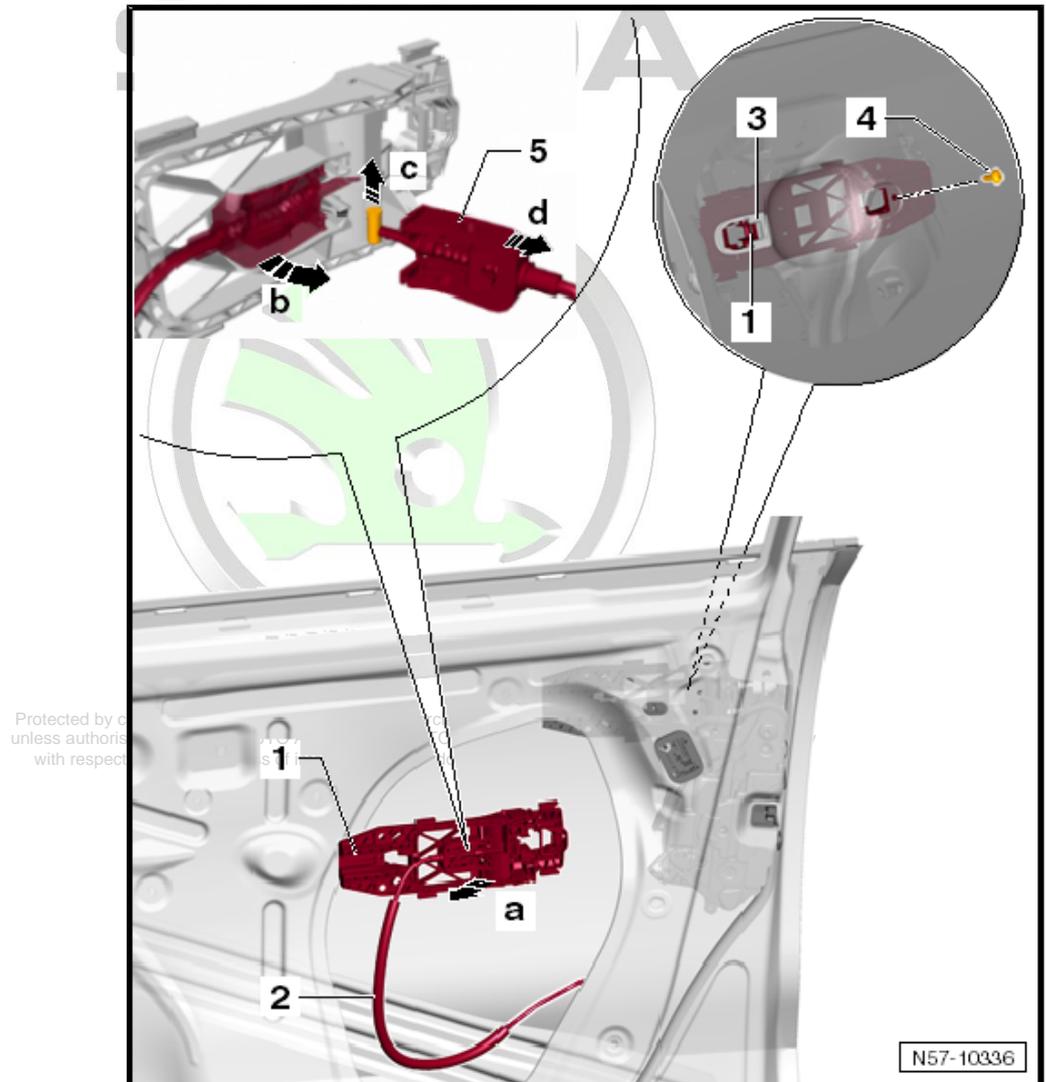
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Tightening torque of screws (Pos. 2) - 20 Nm.

It is absolutely necessary to perform a functional check because the door cannot be opened if the adjustment of the Bowden cables is not accurate and if they are not correctly locked.

2.9 Removing and installing bearing bracket

2.9.1 Removing:



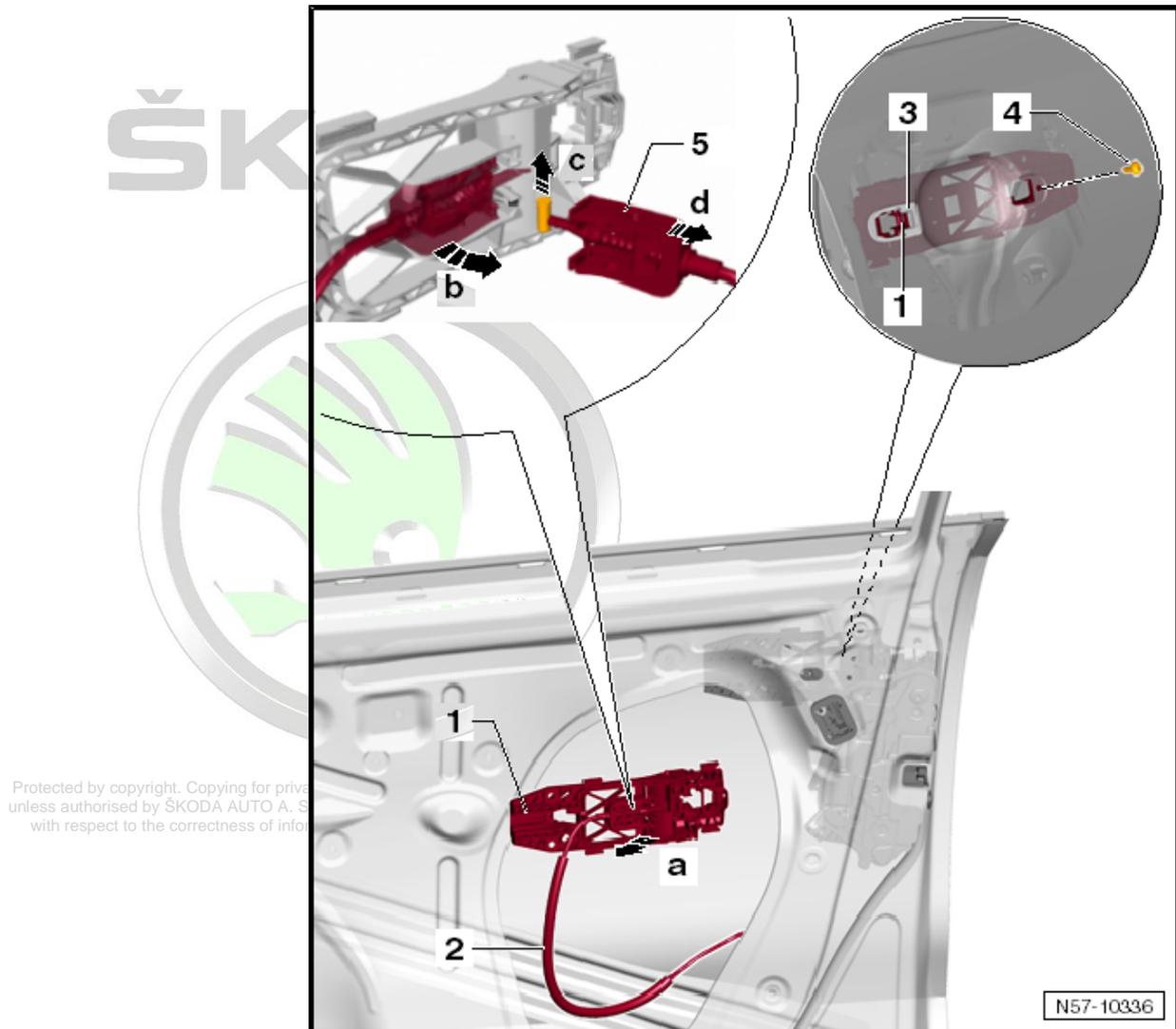
- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Remove the door ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Remove the lock cylinder ⇒ [page 61](#) or the cap ⇒ [page 64](#) .
- Removing the door handle ⇒ [page 67](#) .
- Release screw - 4 - and remove gasket - 3 -.
- Take the bearing bracket -1- out of the door -arrow a-.

Slacken Bowden cable:

- Unlock the bracket - 5 - and swivel out of the support in the bearing bracket -arrow b-.
- Lift the bolt of the control cable out of the support -arrow c-.
- Take the control cable -2- out of the bearing bracket (Pos.1) -arrow d-.



2.9.2 Installing:



- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Install screws - 2 -, tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

2.10 Front door window

2.10.1 Summary of components:

1 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 74](#) .

2 - Window lifter

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 80](#) .

3 - Nuts

- ❑ 6 Nm.

4 - Door

5 - Window lifter motor

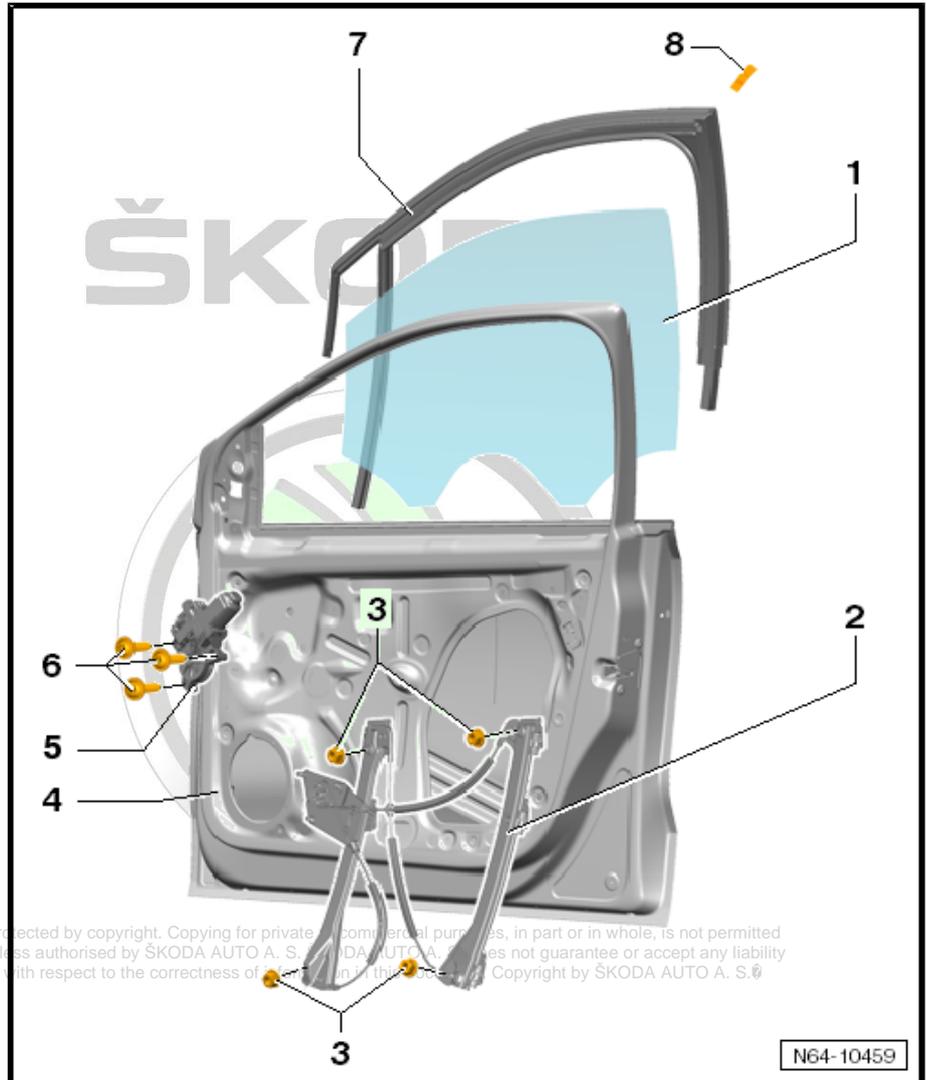
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 78](#) .

6 - Screw

- ❑ 3 Nm.

7 - Window run

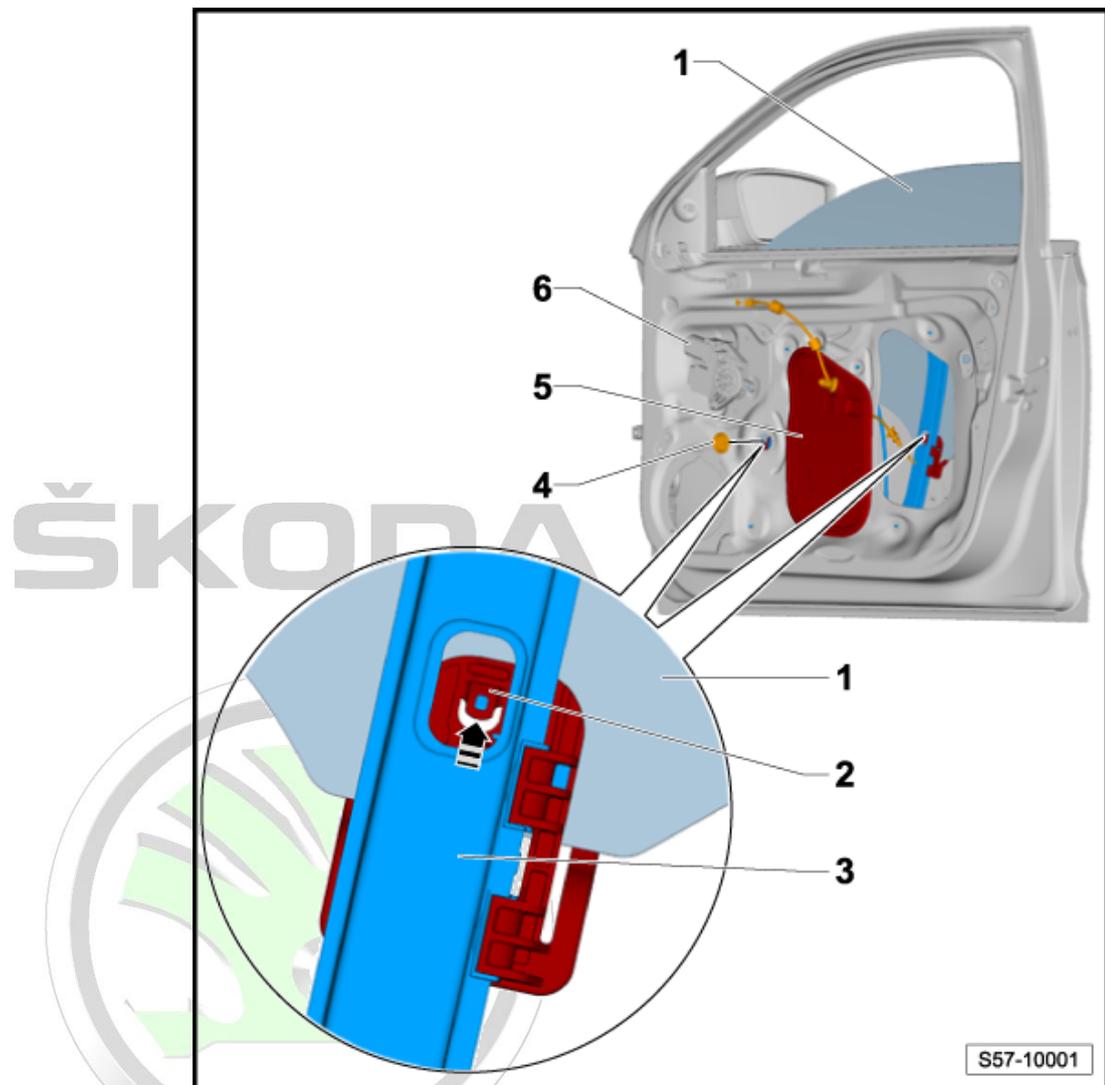
- ❑ Fitted on the flange.
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 81](#) .





2.11 Removing and installing door window

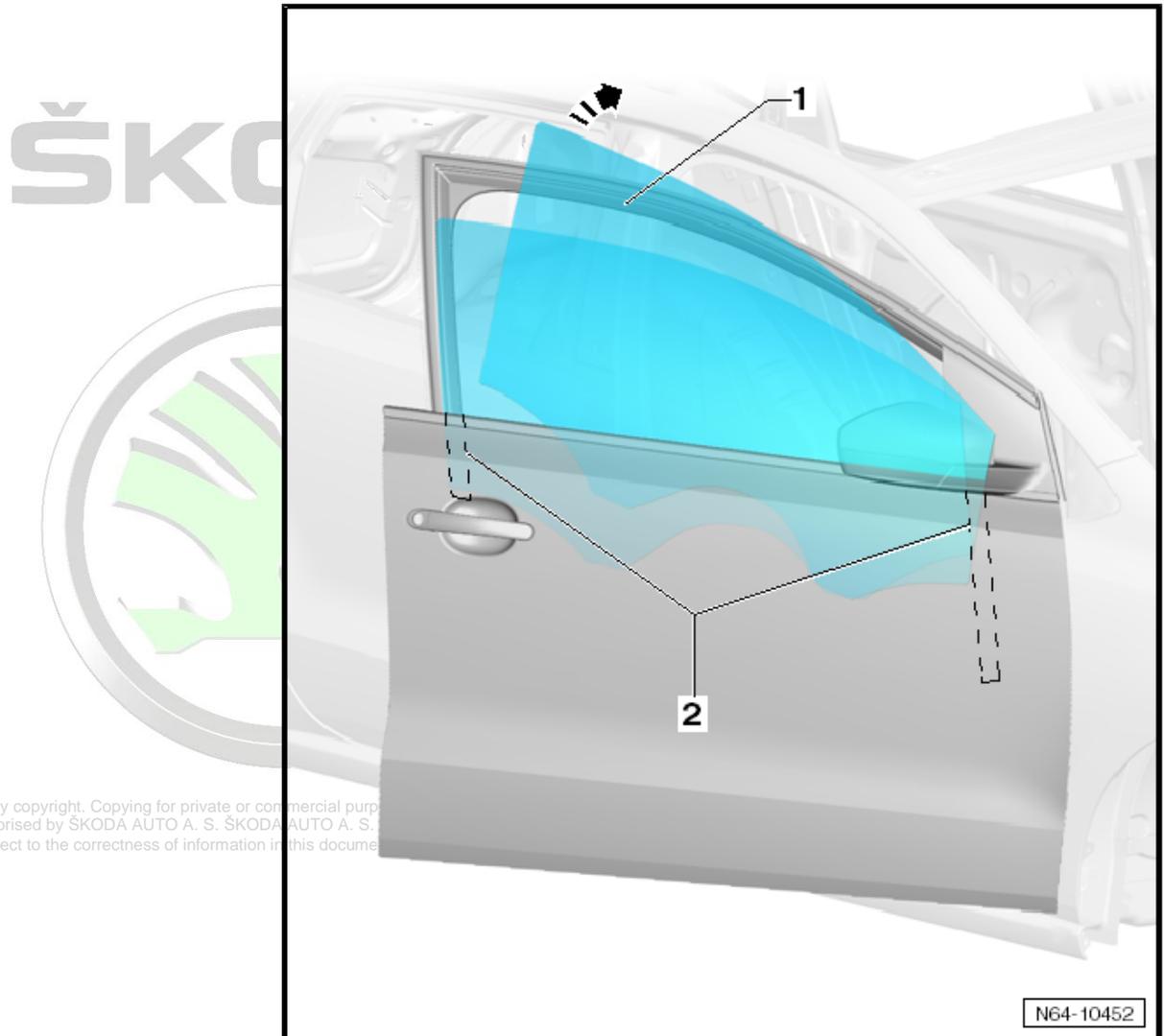
2.11.1 Removing:



- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Remove inside window shaft seal ⇒ [page 85](#) .
- Release cap - 4 -
- Remove cover - 5 - ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Lower the door window - 1 - so that the catches - 2 - are visible in the openings on the impellers of the runners - 3 - .
- Press the catch -at the point of the arrow- towards the inside and thereby unlock the door window -2- using for example a screwdriver. Perform the same at the second catch.

 Note

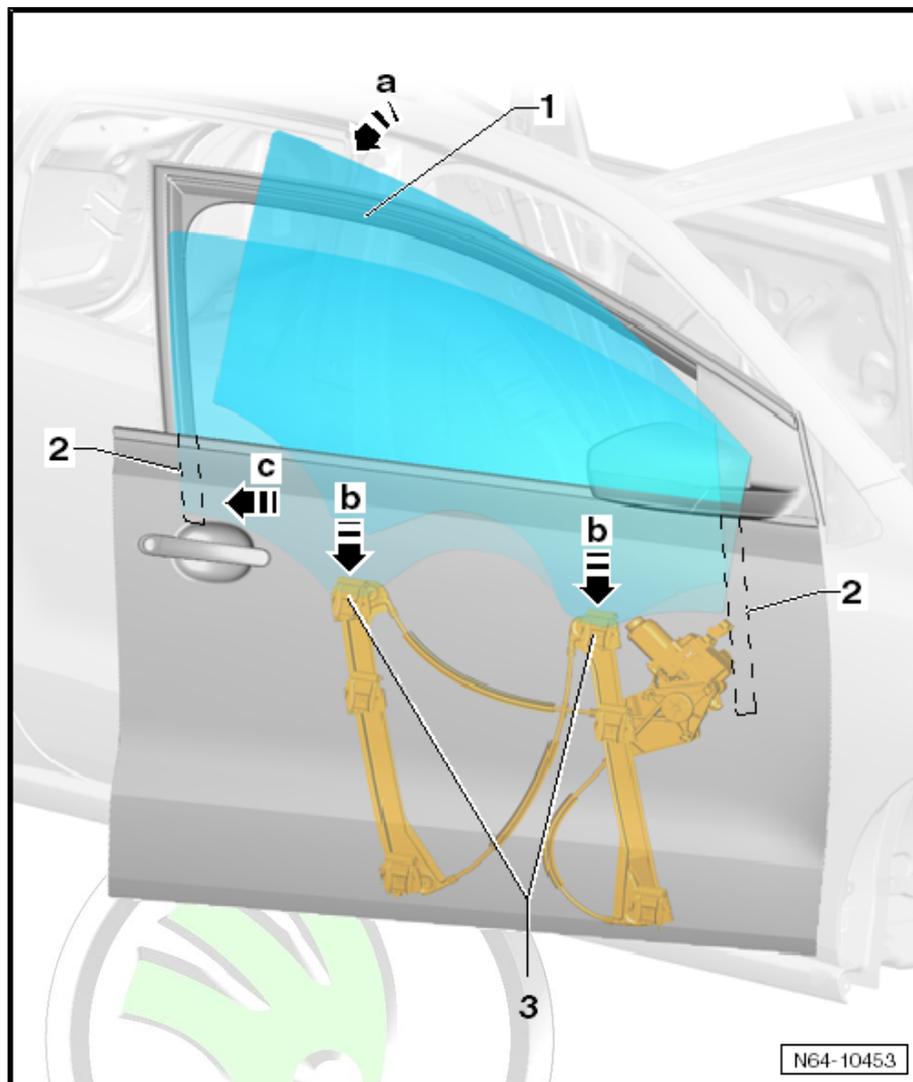
- ◆ If this operation cannot be performed due to a failure at the power-window lifter, remove the motor ⇒ [page 78](#) (depending upon vehicle equipment).
- ◆ Then the door window can be pushed to the required working height.



- Lift up the door pane -1- at the rear and swivel it forwards out of the window run -2- in -direction of arrow-.



2.11.2 Installing:



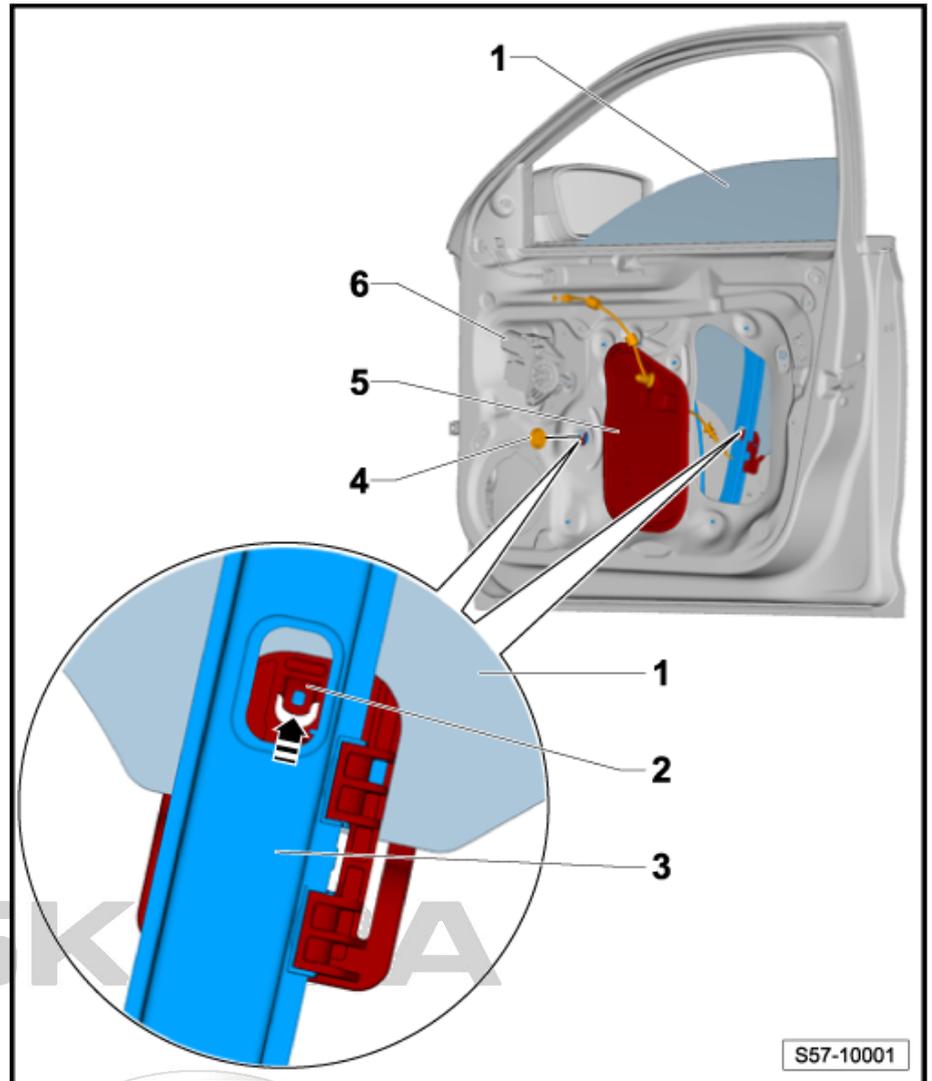
- Insert the door window - 1 - into the window run - 2 - in -direction of arrow a-.



Note

Ensure that the door window is correctly inserted in the window run. in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Guide the door window pressureless into the clamping jaws -arrow b-.
- Align the door window to the window frame -arrow c-.



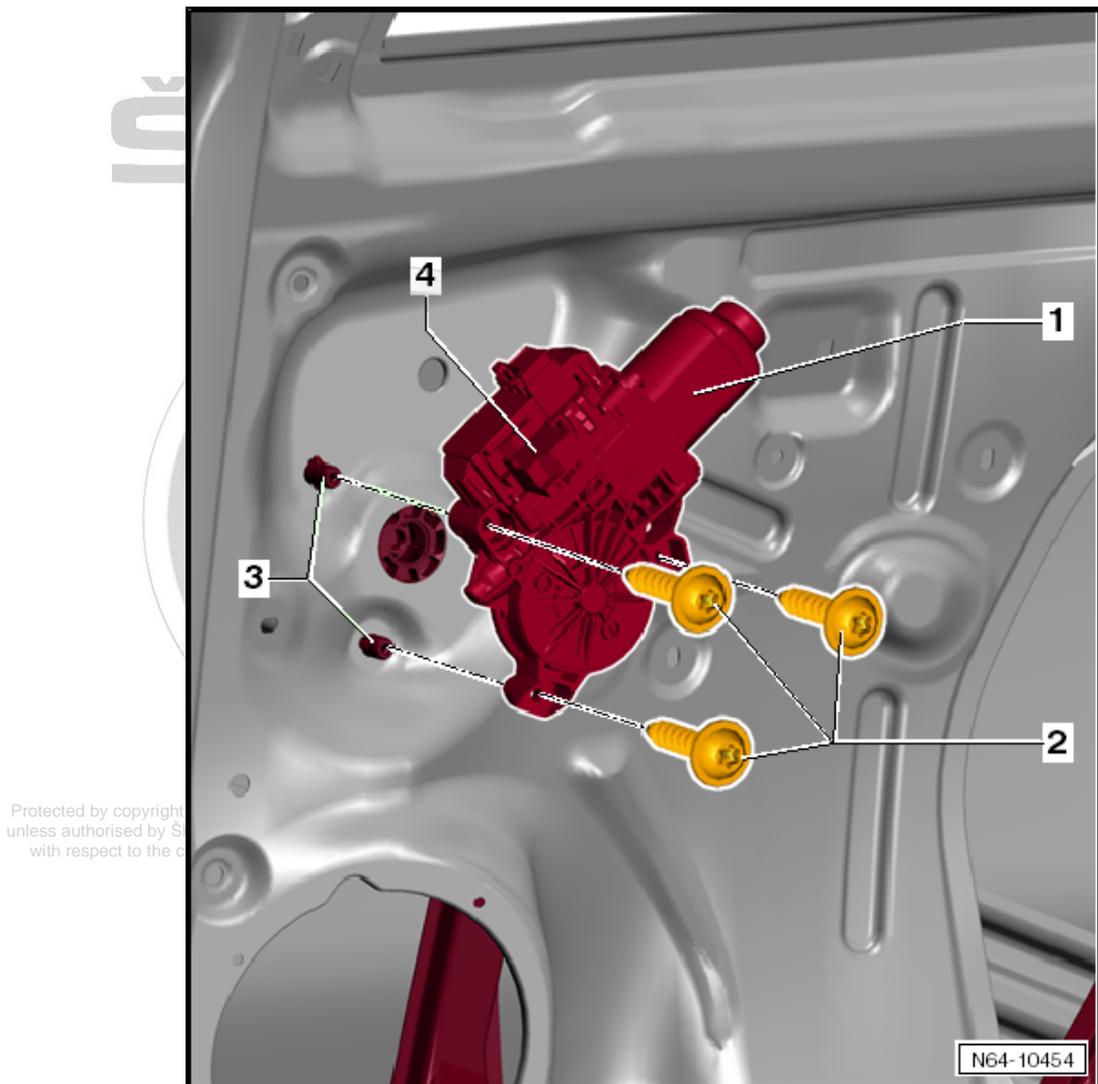
- Apply gentle pressure to both sides of the door window while pressing evenly into the catches until it audibly locks into place.
- Subsequently proceed in reverse order to removing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®



2.12 Removing and installing window lifter motor

2.12.1 Removing:



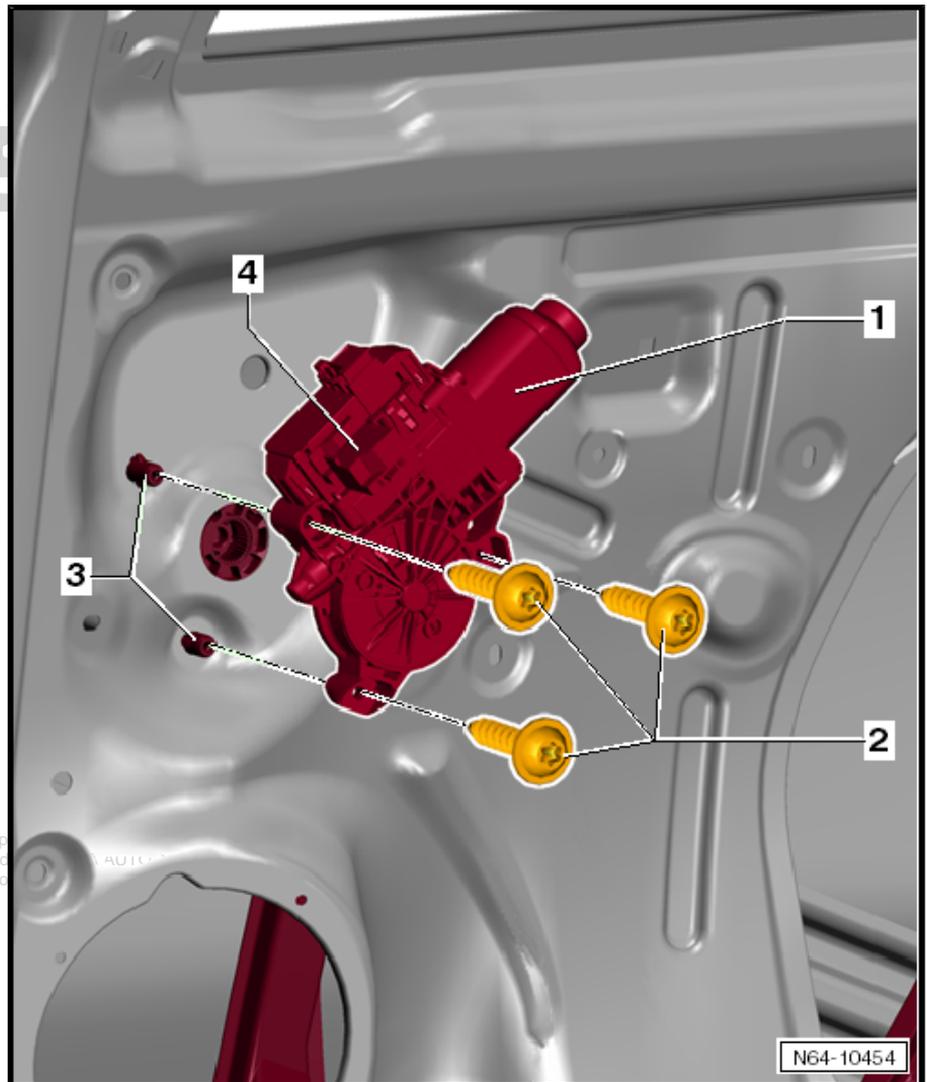
- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Secure the door window with adhesive tape so that it does not slide off.
- Disconnect plug connection - 4 -.
- Unscrew screws -2-.
- Remove the window lifter motor with the control unit - 1 - from the supports - 3 -.

2.12.2 Installing:



WARNING

On a newly installed window lifter motor (door control unit), the auxiliary functions and the closing force limitation must be coded!

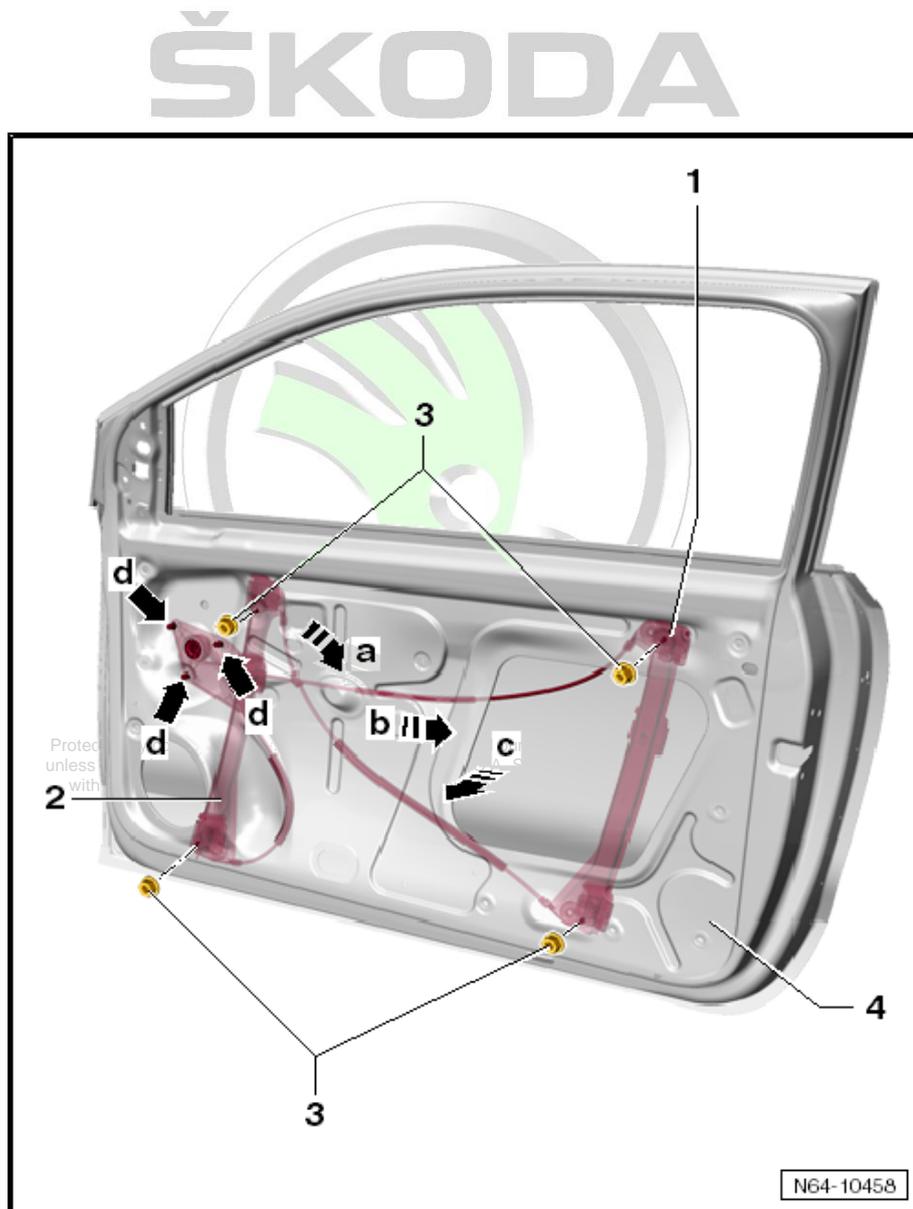


- Fit the window lifter motor - 1 - into the supports - 3 -. Raise the door window and then lower it so that the serration can slide in better between the motor and the hoisting drum.
- Screw in screws - 2 - (3 Nm).
- Secure the plug connection - 4 -.
- The new window lifter motor is coded.
- After the coding, the window lifter motor can be automatically raised up to the stop. Pull out the switch once more for 2 seconds. The window lifter motor can detect its upper stop through this.

- The further work procedure occurs in the reverse order to the removal.

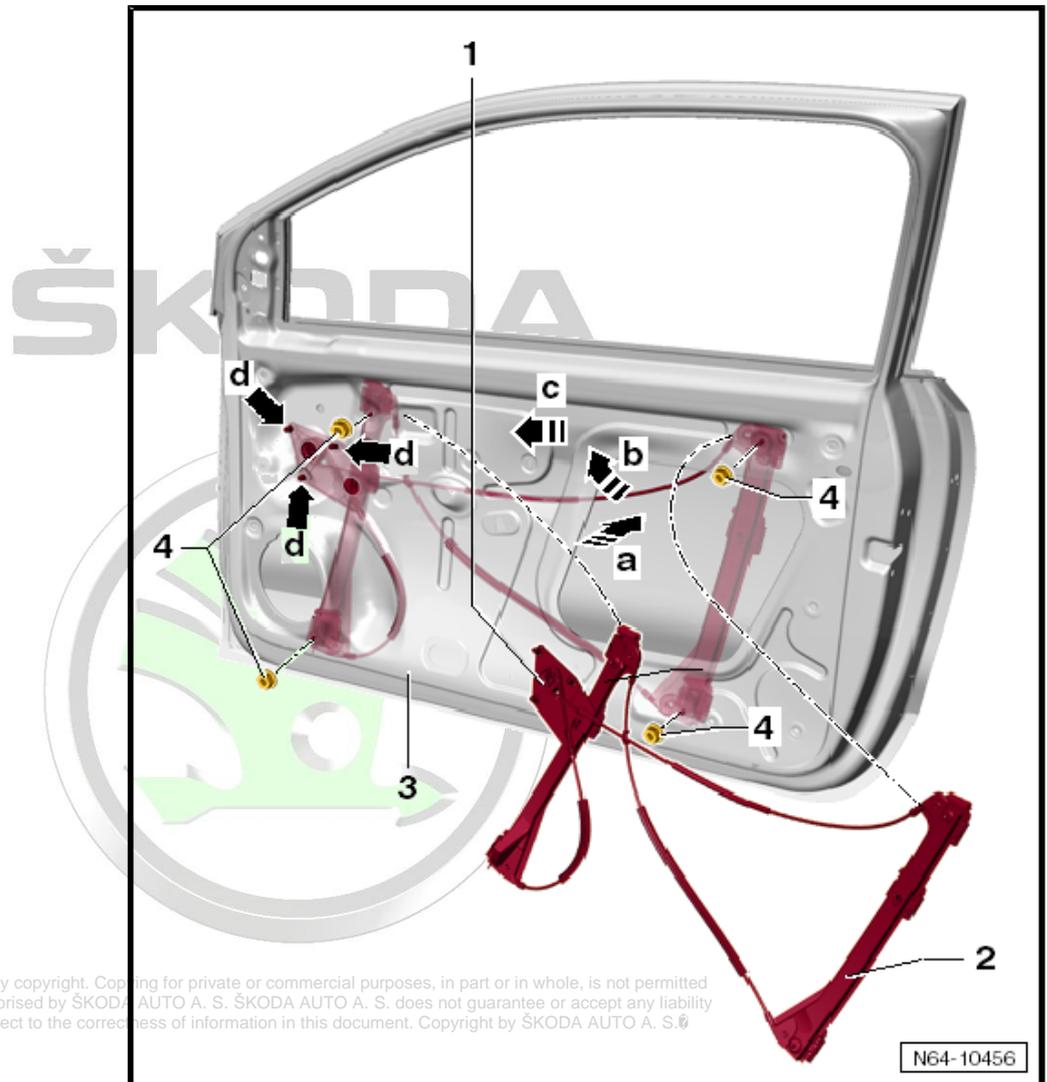
2.13 Remove and install window lifter

2.13.1 Removing:



- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Remove door window ⇒ [page 74](#) .
- Remove window lifter motor ⇒ [page 78](#) .
- Unscrew nuts - 3 -.
- Unlock the catches of the hoisting drum -arrows d- and fit them into the door.
- Slide the window lifter - 1 - into the door and slightly turn it in -direction of arrow a-.
- Remove the window lifter through the door cutout -arrow b- and -arrow c-.

2.13.2 Installing:



- Insert the window lifter - 2 - through the door cutout -arrow a-.
- Put the window lifter in its fitting position -arrow b-.
- Push the window lifter thread through the door -arrow c- and tighten the nuts - 4 -. Tightening torque: 8 Nm.
- Press the hoisting drum -1- through the holes in the door until the catch hooks -arrow d- lock.

2.14 Removing and installing the window run



Note

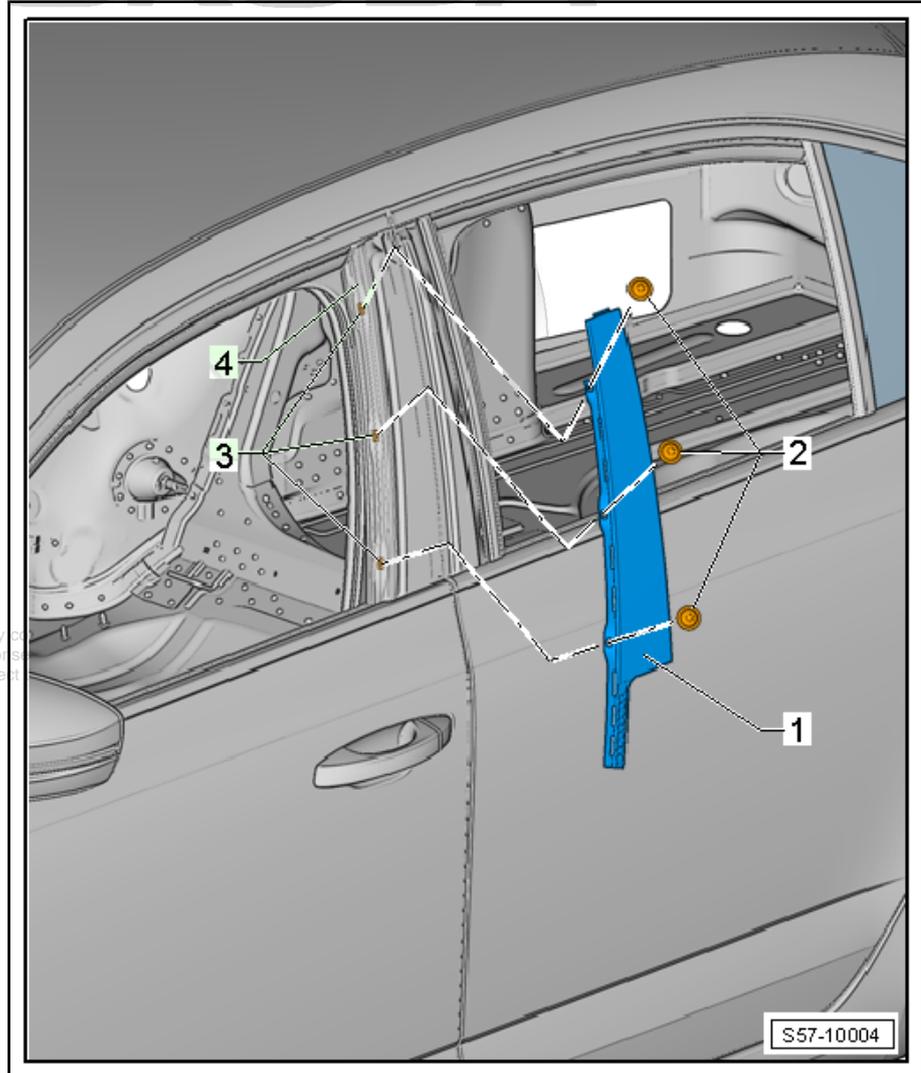
Do not bend the window seal while removing!

2.14.1 Removing:

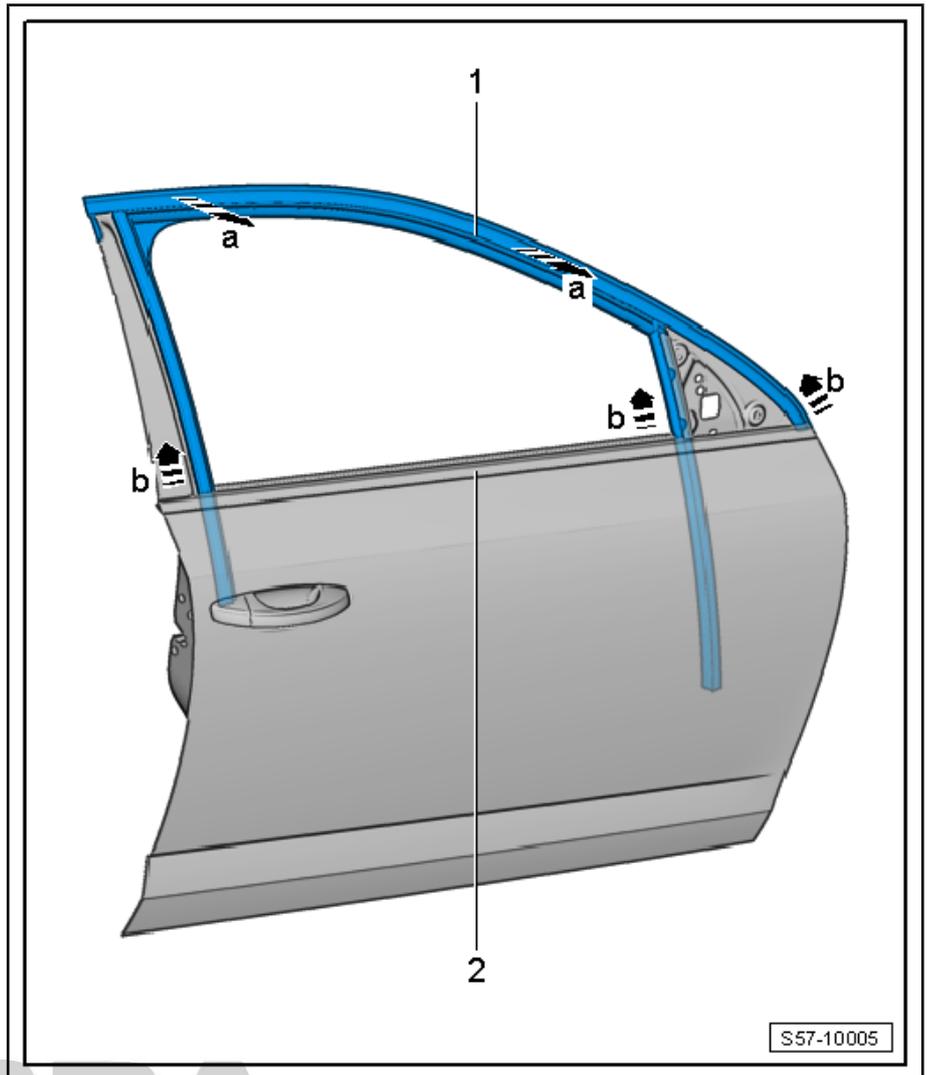
- Remove exterior mirror => [page 247](#) .
- Lower door window into the lower position.



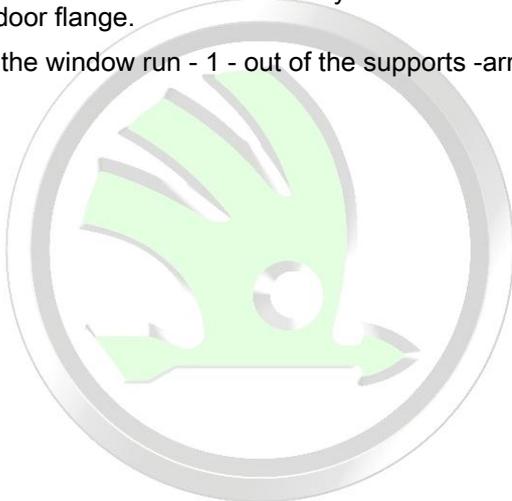
- Remove window run from the pillar and remove the screws
 - 2 -.



- Remove B-pillar trim - 1 -.

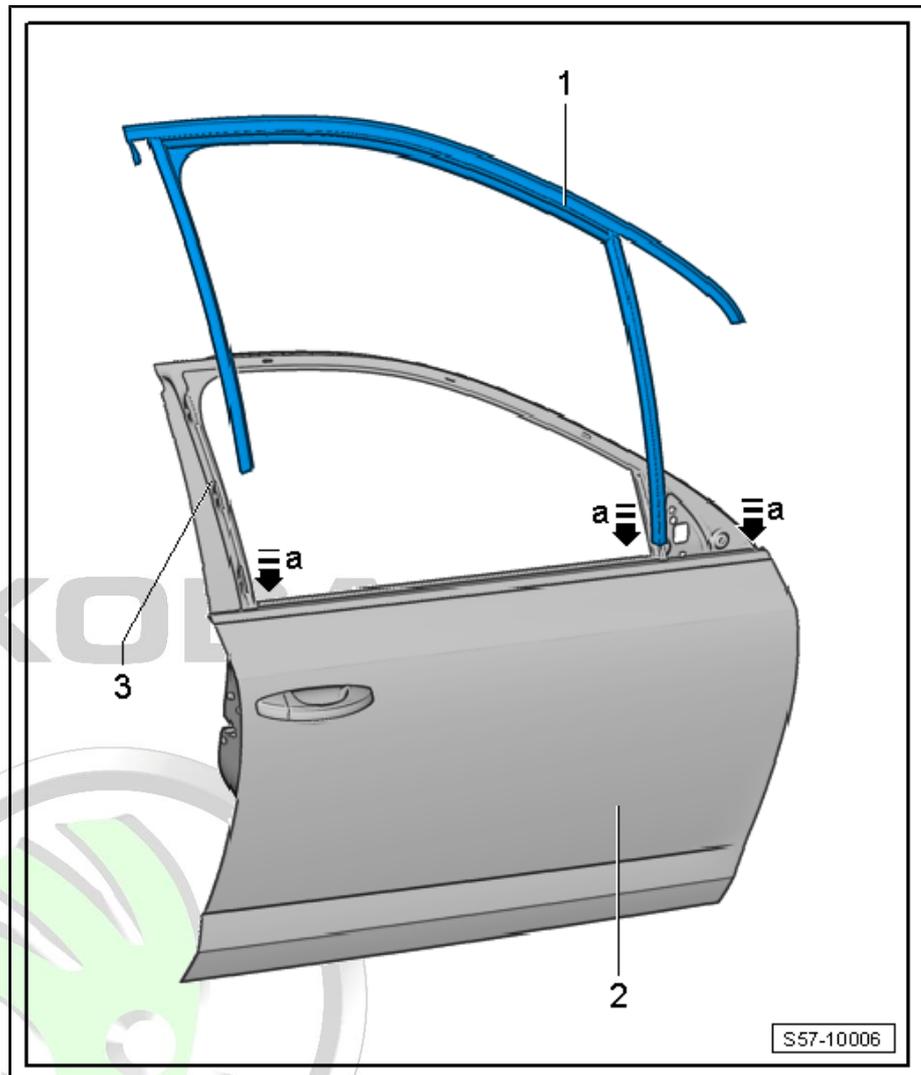


- Push away the sealing lip of the window run -1- from the inside out of the door flange.
- Detach the window run -1- evenly all around -arrows a- from the door flange.
- Pull the window run - 1 - out of the supports -arrows b-.

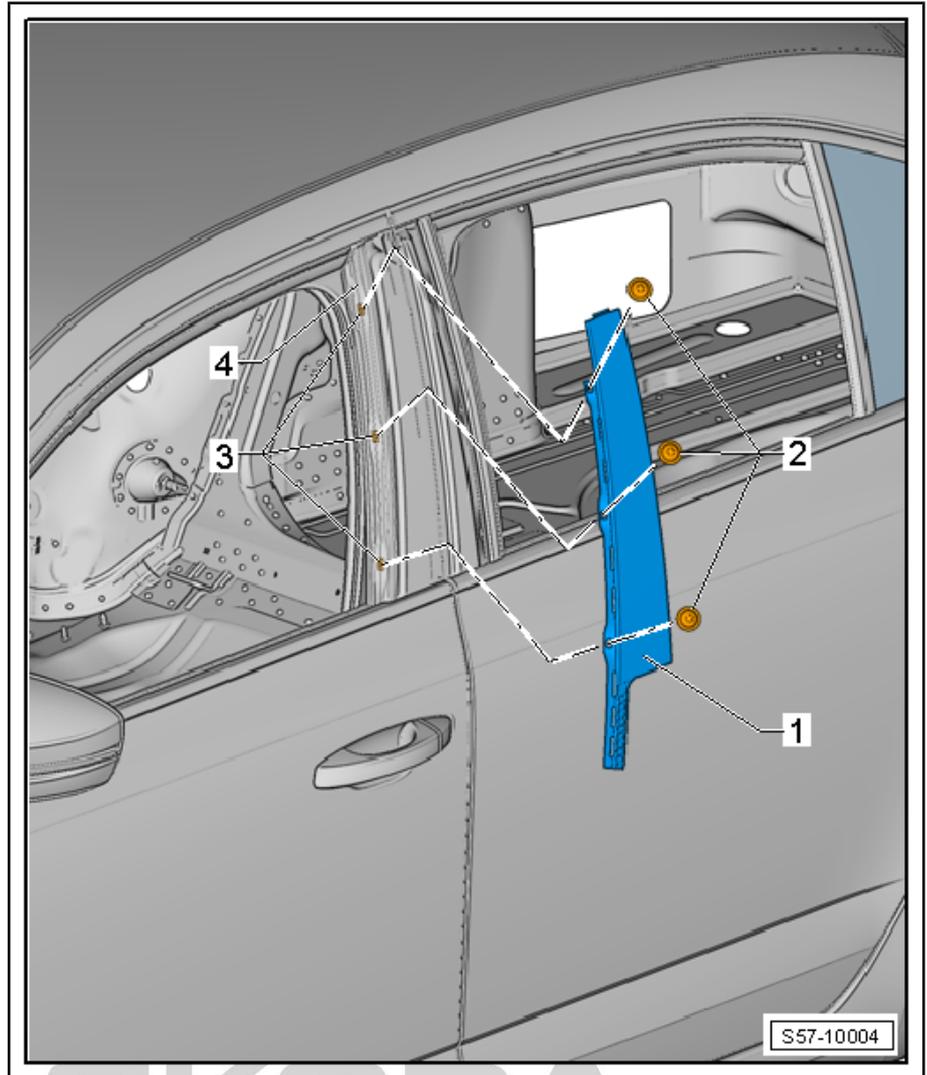




2.14.2 Installing:



- Slide the window run into the supports -arrows a-.
- Press the window run evenly all around against the door flange -3-.
- Press the sealing lip of the door run from the inside against the door flange - 3 -.
- Remove window run in column compartment.
- Insert column trim -1- and install screws -2- (2.5 Nm).



- Mount window run to door flange in the column compartment.

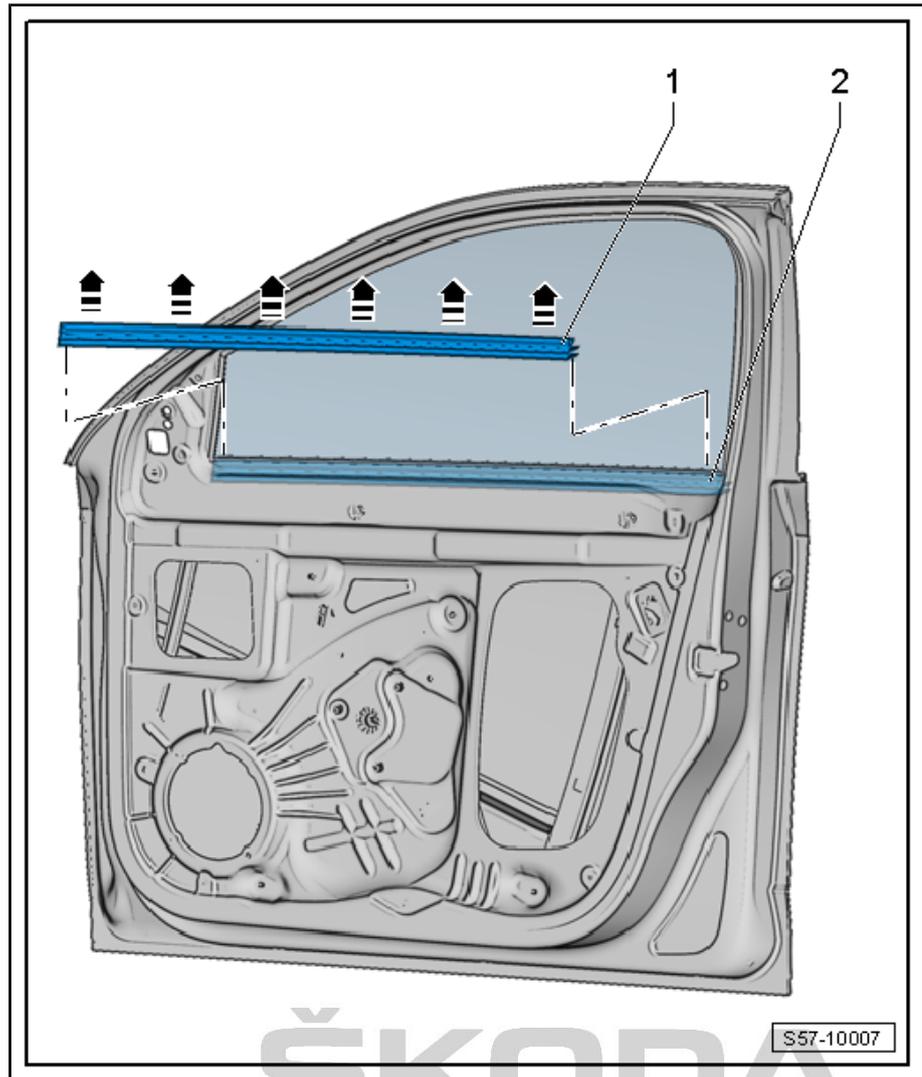
i Note

Pay attention to evenly fitting the window run when installing it (wind noise).

2.15 Removing and installing the inner window shaft seal

i Note

Remove the seal evenly and without bending it towards the top.



Removing:

- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Detach the seal -1- evenly -arrows- from the flange -2-.

Installing:

Press the seal - 1 - uniformly by hand onto the flange - 2 -.

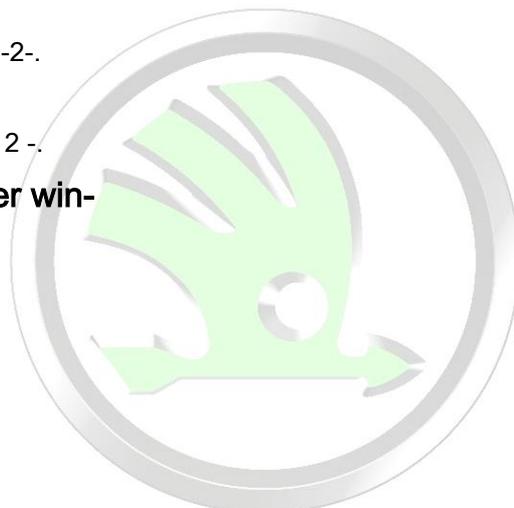
2.16 Removing and installing the outer window shaft seal

2.16.1 Removing:

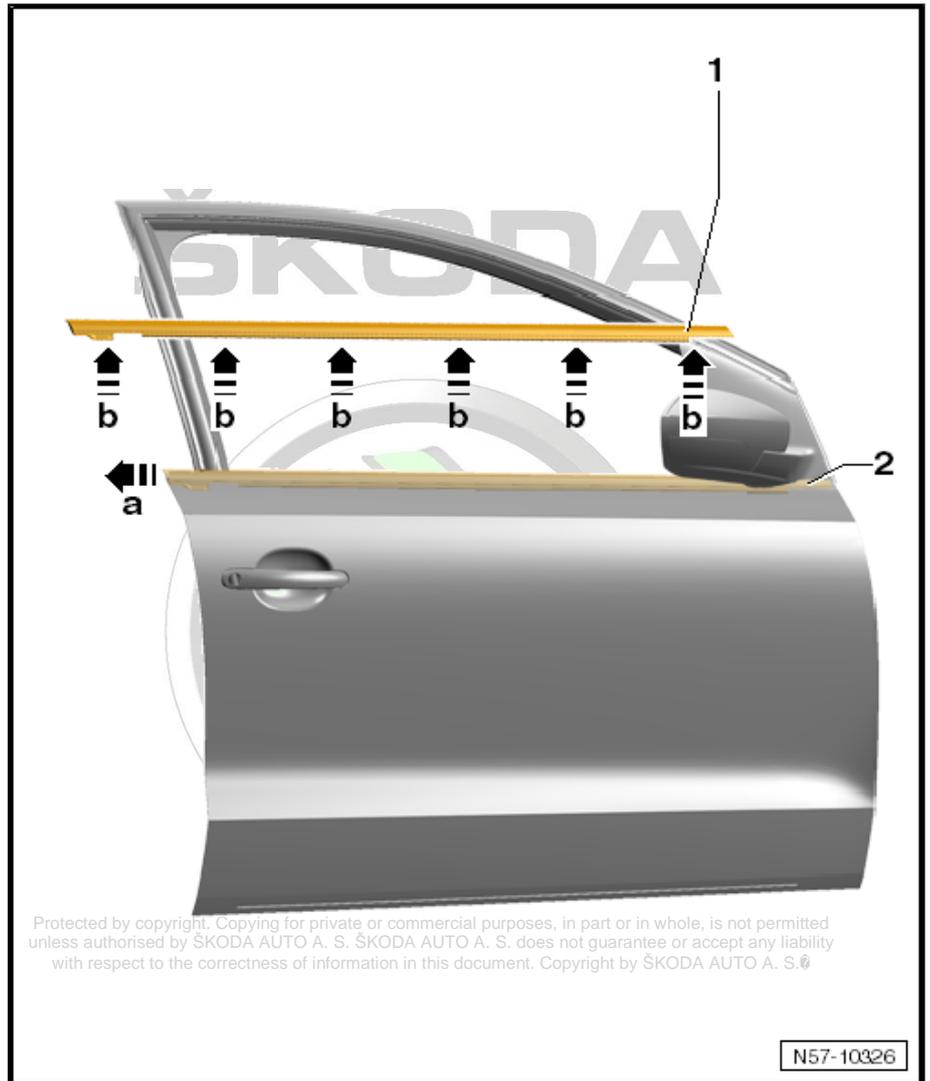


Note

- ◆ *The core of the seal consists of a metal insert.*
- ◆ *If it is bent, the seal can no longer be straightened. It remains "warped".*
- ◆ *Therefore the seal must be fitted on uniformly and without bending it.*

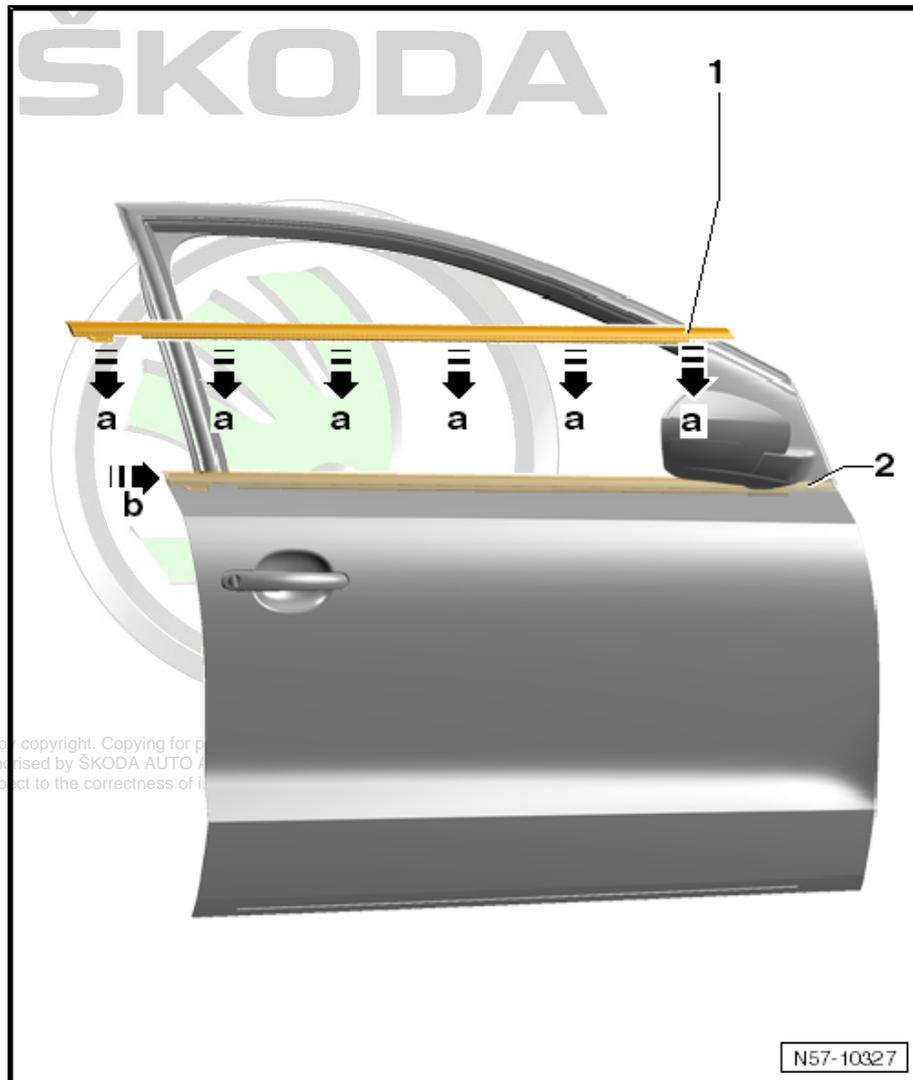


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Remove the seal - 1 - uniformly -arrows b- out of the door
- 2 - up to the exterior mirror.
- Pull out the seal from underneath the exterior mirror
-arrow a-.

2.16.2 Installing:



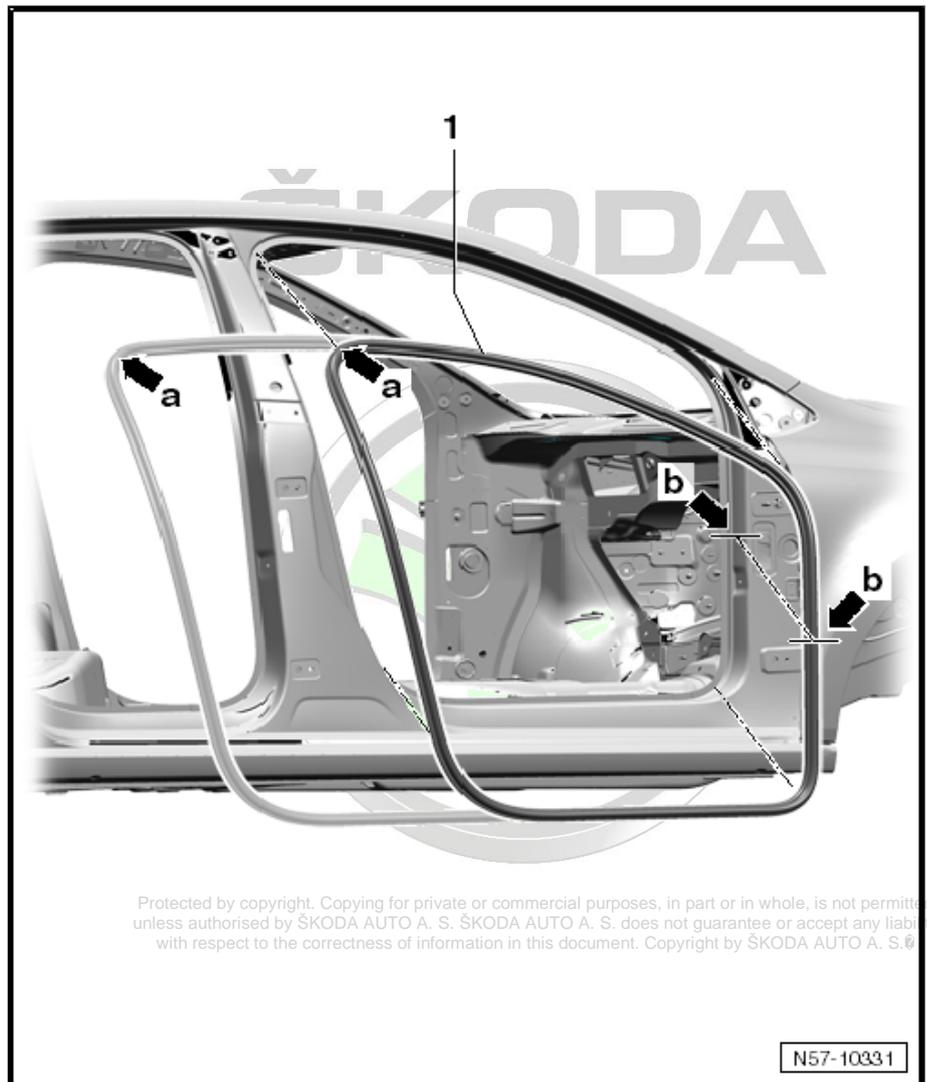
- Slide the seal under the exterior mirror -arrow b-.
- Press the seal - 1 - uniformly -arrows a- by hand onto the flange - 2 -.

2.17 Removing and installing the inside door seal

During the installation in series, the inside door seals are provided with a sealing compound which is placed on the door flange and subsequently rolled up.

i Note

- ◆ *During the removal of the seal, the sealing mass is distributed on the inside of the seal. While doing so, the sides are slightly bent open. If the seal is re-installed, tightness and tight fit can no longer be guaranteed.*
- ◆ *For this reason, each seal which was completely removed must be replaced with a so-called "hammer finish seal".*
- ◆ *If the seals were detached partially, press together the sides of the seal before installing.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Removing:

- Remove the trim panels of the pillars for removing the inside door seal ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Detach the inside door seal -1- from the body flange.

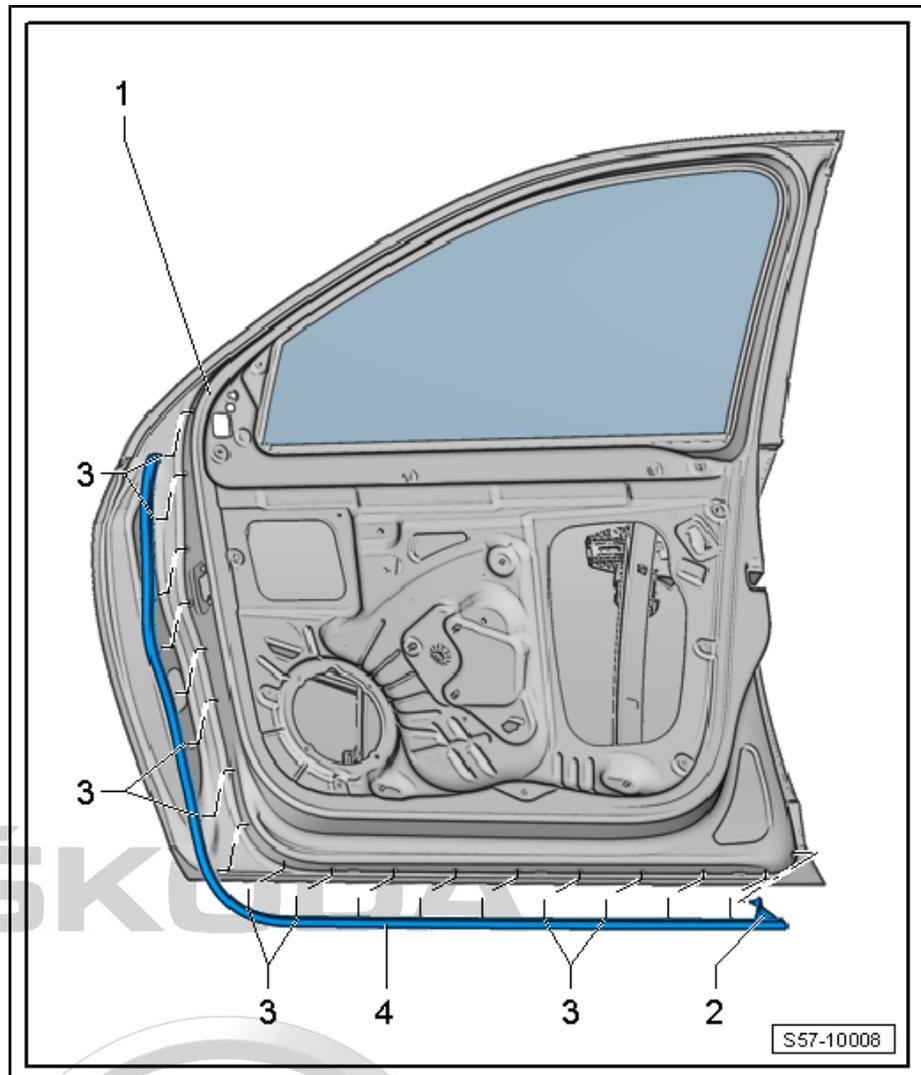
Installing:

- Align the inside door seal - 1 - with the vulcanization point -arrow b- at the top bonnet hinge -arrow b-.



- When installing the inside door seal, start in the top radius of the door cutout -arrow a-.

2.18 Removing and installing the outside door seal



Removing:

- Unclip the outside door seal - 4 - with the clips - 3 - and clip - 2 - from the door - 1 -.

Installing:

- Press the outside door seal - 4 - with the clips - 3 - and clip - 2 - from the door - 1 -.



Note

Check the clips -3- and -2- for damage, if necessary replace them.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

3 Central locking system

Note

The control motors of the front and rear doors central locking are component parts of the door locks and cannot be replaced individually.

- Removing and installing the door lock ⇒ [page 69](#) .
- After replacing the door lock with central locking motor, interrogate the fault memory and erase ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester Self-Diagnosis for Convenience System.

3.1 Adaptation of keys with radio remote control

3.2 Summary of components of battery for the keys with radio remote control (foldable)

1 - Key with transponder alternating code

2 - Radio container - top part

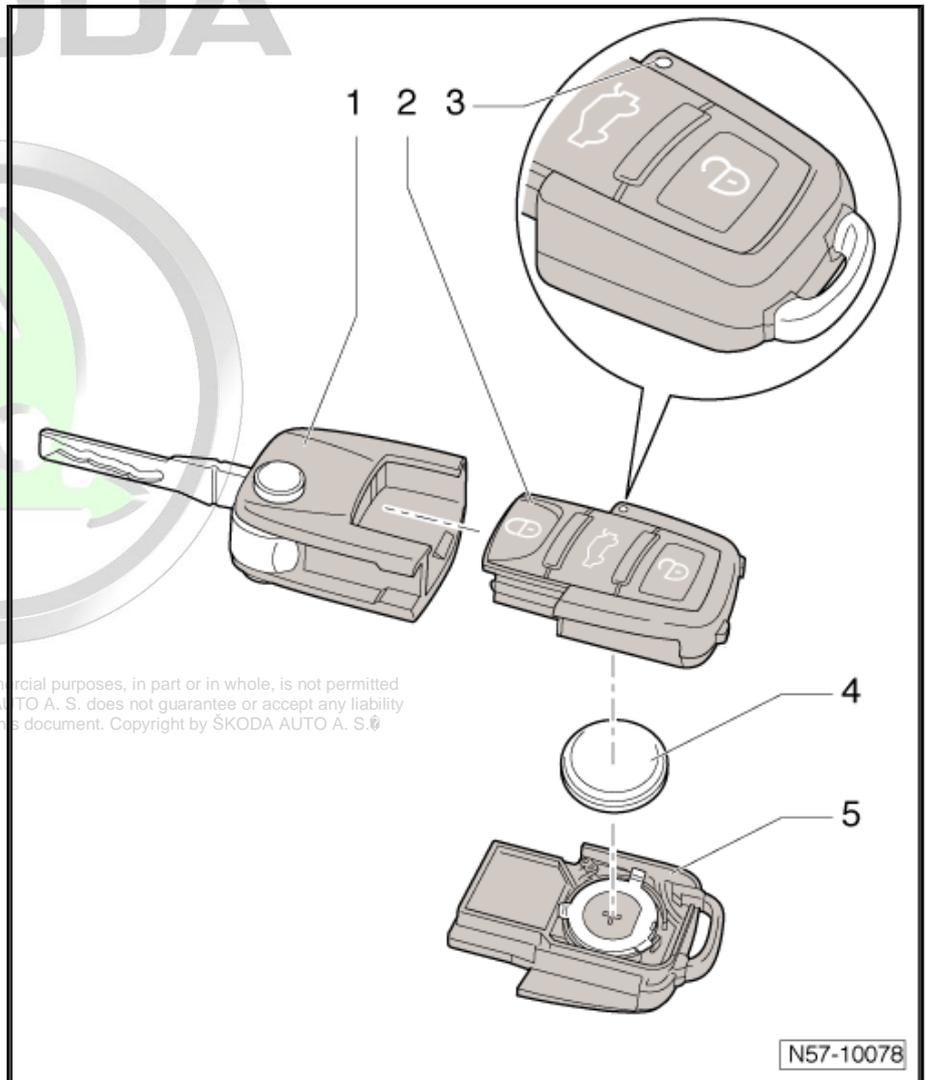
3 - LED

- This LED must flash when operating the radio remote control.
- If the LED does not flash when operating the radio remote control, the battery is discharged and must be changed.

4 - Battery

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 92](#) .

5 - Radio container - bottom part



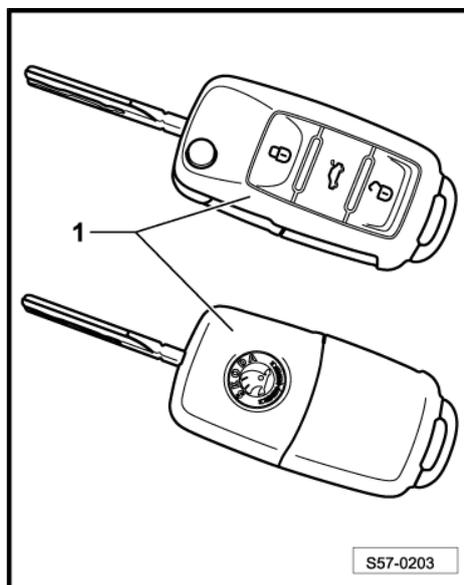
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

N57-10078

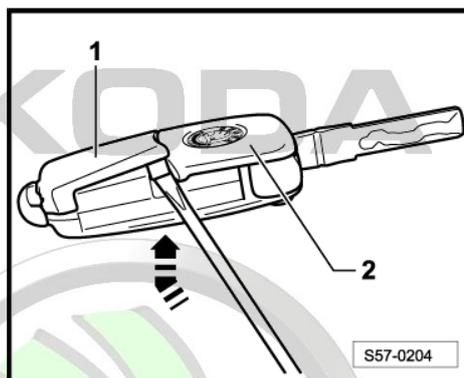
3.3 Removing and installing the battery for the foldable key with radio remote control

- Key shape of the foldable radio remote control key (Pos.1).

Removing:



- Insert a screwdriver under the catch peg in -direction of arrow- and lever the battery cover (Pos. 1) off the key (Pos. 2).



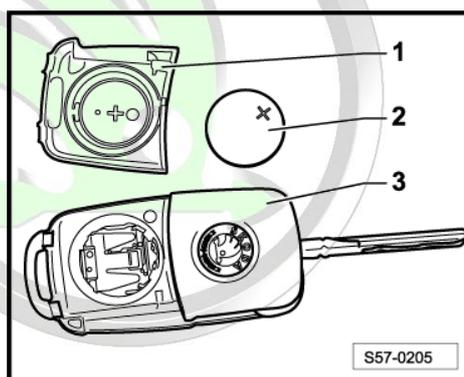
- Unclip the battery (Pos. 2) from the catches using a screwdriver.

Installing:



Note

- ◆ *Before installing the battery, it is absolutely necessary to press a random button once. Thus, the radio container is reset to as-new condition and can only now detect a new battery.*
- ◆ *Observe the polarity and the fitting location when installing the battery.*



- Insert the battery on the provided point and press slightly until it locks into position between the contacts.
- Clip in the battery cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

58 – Rear doors, door components

1 Rear door

1.1 Summary of components:

1 - Door

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 95](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 97](#) .

2 - Screw with internal serrations

- 40 Nm.

3 - Door hinge

- The top part is connected to the bottom part of the hinge by the screw - 4 - .
- The hinge is divided.

4 - Screw

- This screw must be unscrewed in order to remove the door from the hinge.
- 23 Nm.

5 - Screw with internal serrations

- Installed from the inside of the vehicle.
- Remove bottom trim panel of B pillar.
- 25 Nm.

6 - Door hinge

- The bottom part is connected to the top part of the hinge by the screw - 4 - .
- The hinge is divided.

7 - Screw with internal serrations

- 25 Nm

8 - Screw

- 30 Nm.
- This screw must be unscrewed in order to remove the door.

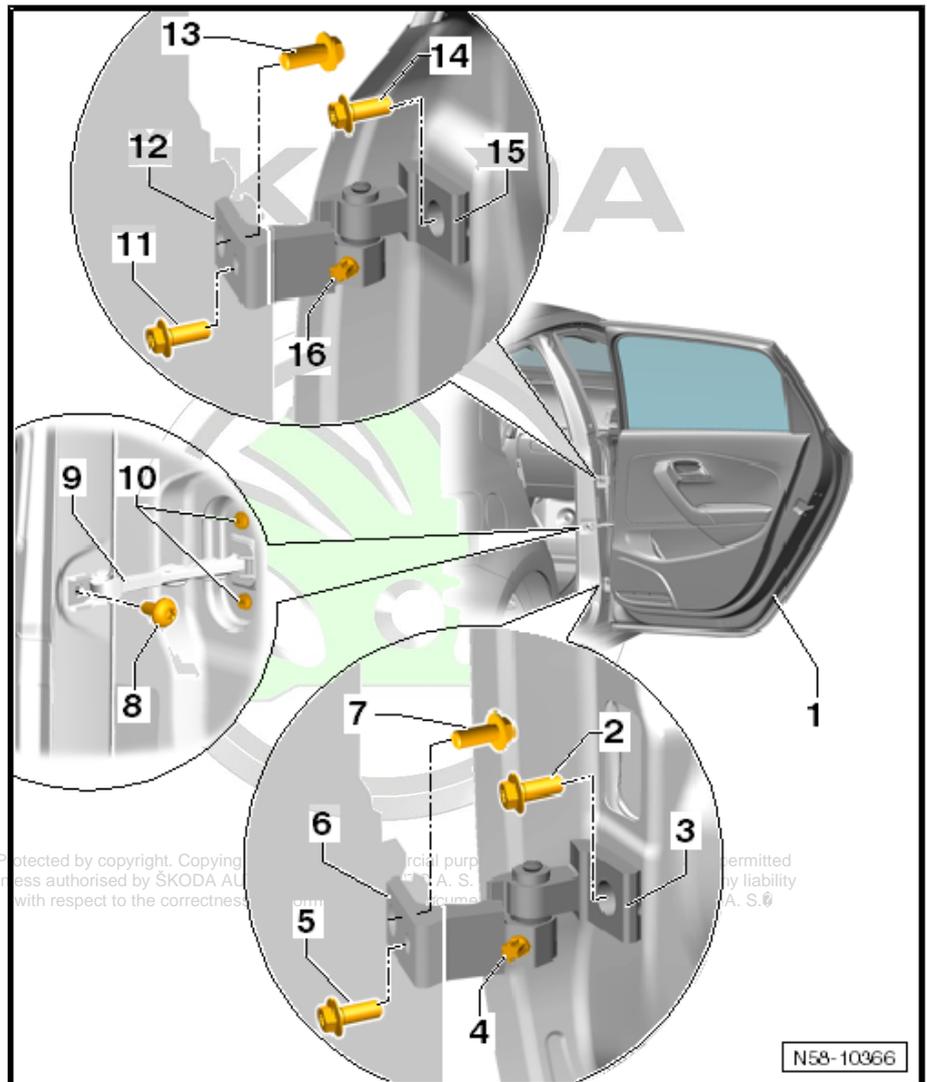
9 - Door arrester

10 - Screw

- 9 Nm.
- For door arrester.

11 - Screw with internal serrations

- Installed from the inside of the vehicle.





- 25 Nm.

12 - Door hinge

- The bottom part is connected to the top part of the hinge by the screw - 16 -.
- The hinge is divided.

13 - Screw with internal serrations

- 25 Nm.

14 - Screw with internal serrations

- 40 Nm.

15 - Door hinge

- The top part is connected to the bottom part of the hinge by the screw - 16 -.
- The hinge is divided.

16 - Screw

- 23 Nm.
- This screw must be screwed down in order to remove the door from the hinge bolt.

ŠKODA

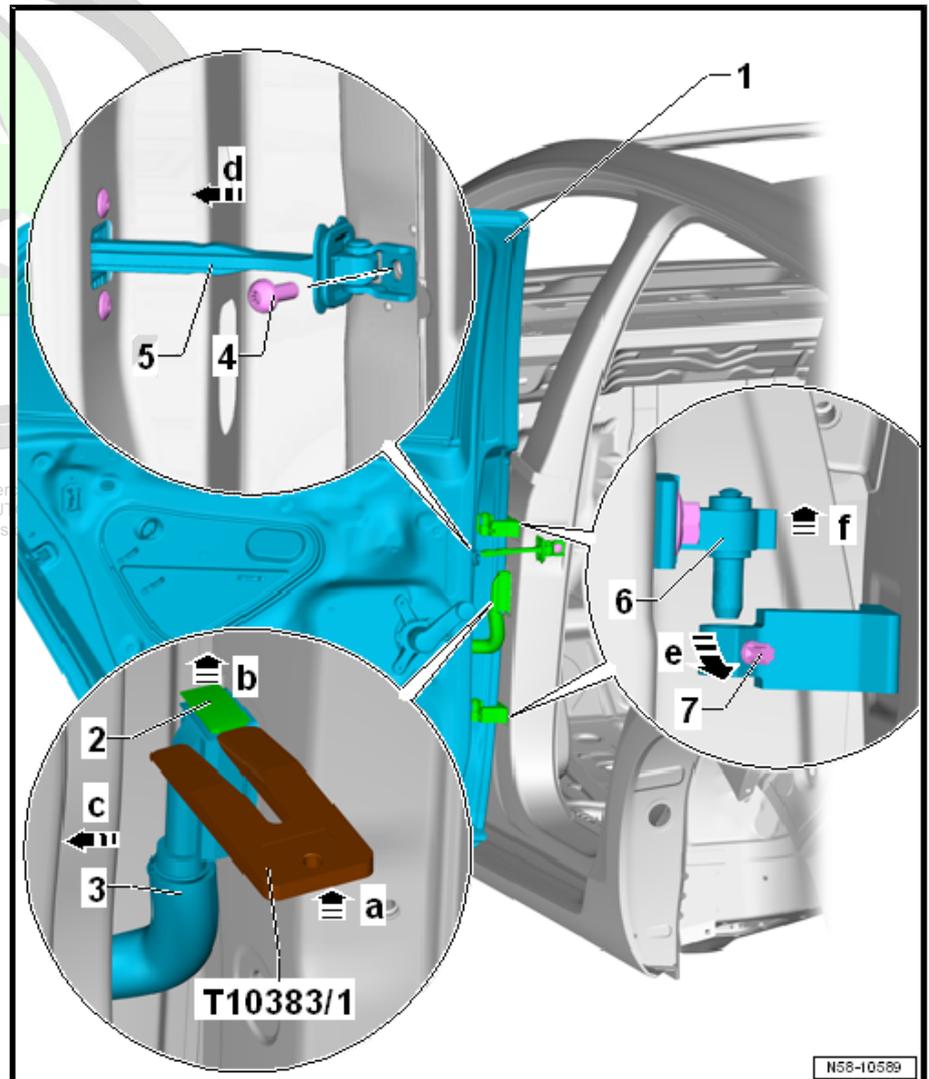


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.2 Removing and installing the door

1.2.1 Removing:

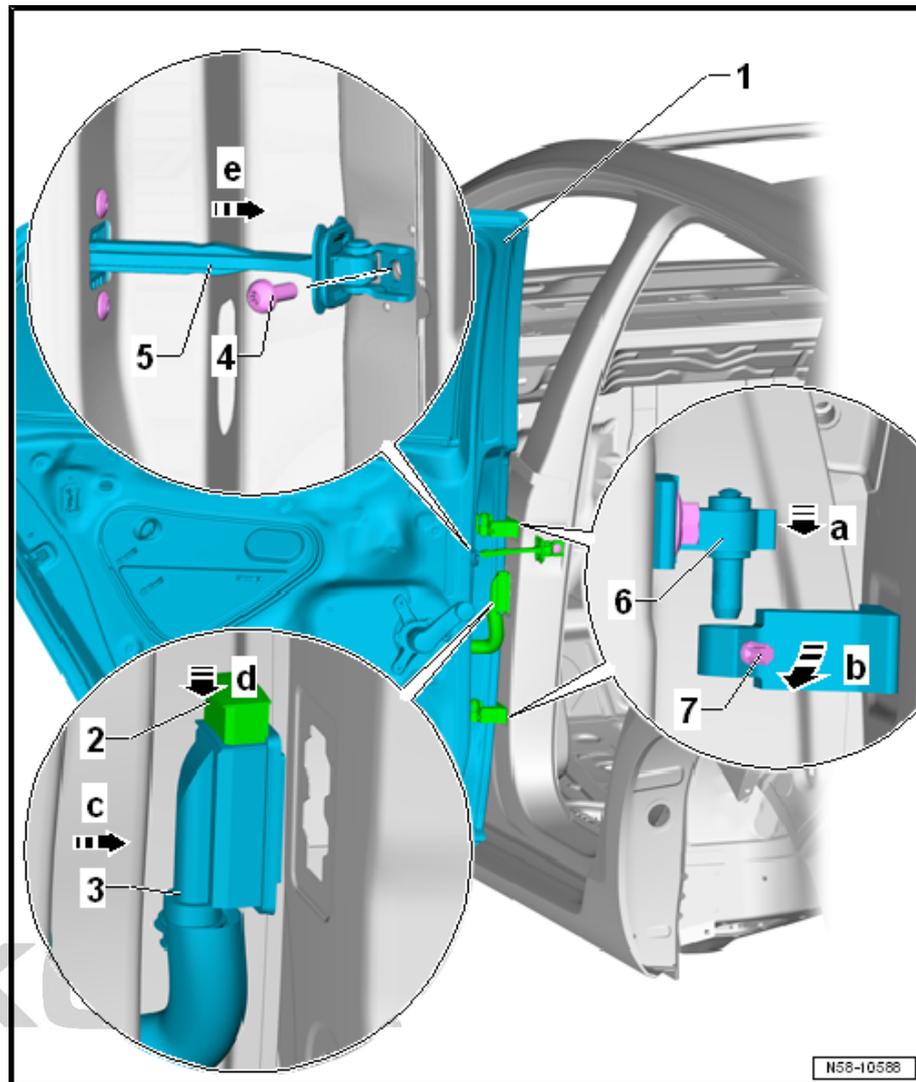
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use without authorisation by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO reserves the right to change the technical specifications and the content of this manual without notice. The manufacturer is not responsible for any damage or injury caused by the use of this manual.



- Press the wedge - T10383/1- between the collar - 3 - and catch - 2 -, - arrow a -.
- Press out catch - 2 - with the wedge - T10383/1- upwards - arrow b - and disconnect the plug connection.
- Slacken the screws -7- at the hinges -arrows e-.
- Remove the screws - 4 - for the door retaining strap - 5 -.
- Push the door retaining strap-6- in - the direction of arrow d - towards the inside.
- Lift out the door - 1 - from the hinges in - the direction of the arrow f -.



1.2.2 Installing:



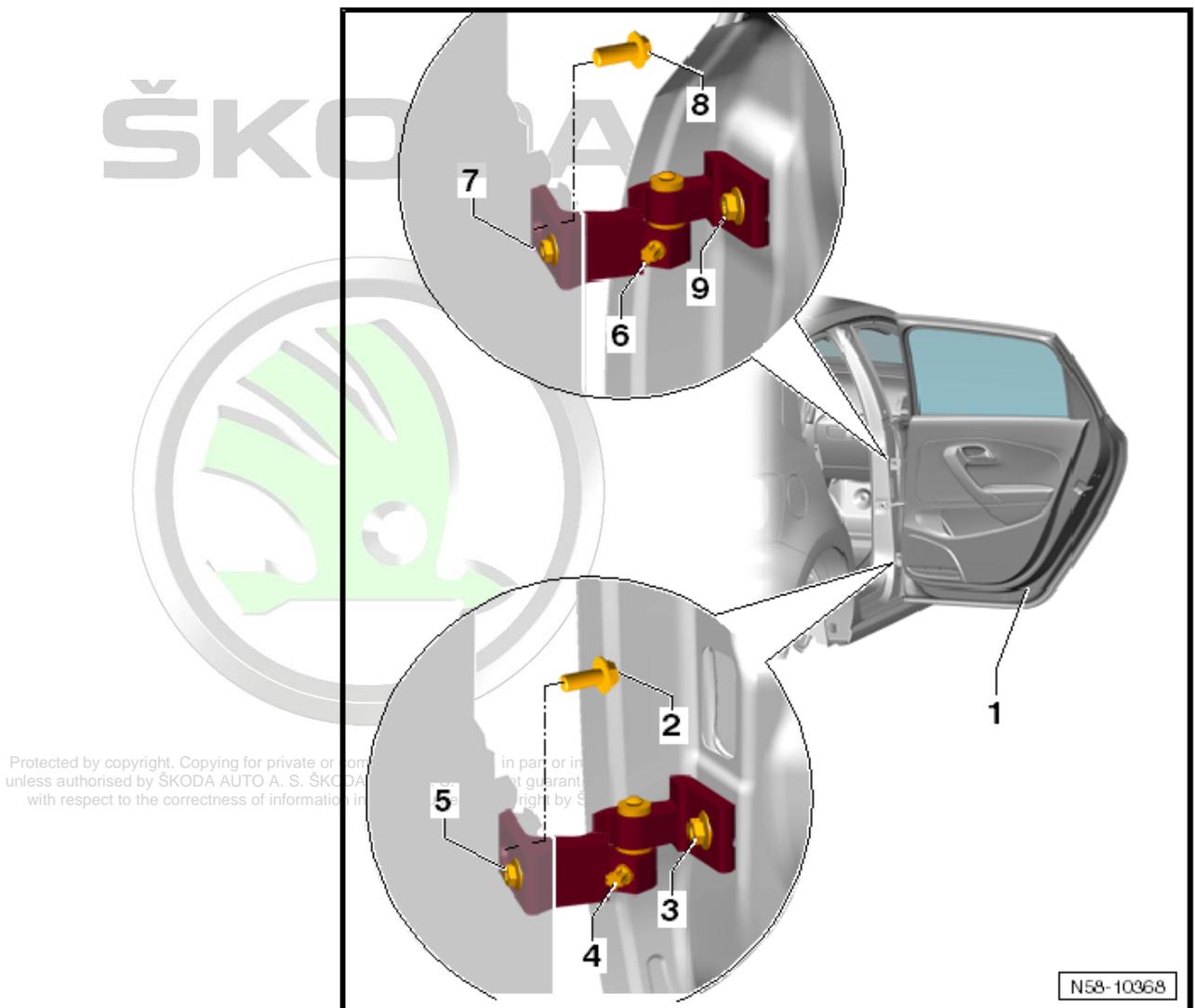
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Tightening torque screws (Pos. 7) - 23 Nm.
- Tightening torque screws (Pos. 4) - 30 Nm.
- Observe the gap sizes of the front door ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; technical data; body gaps; front body .

1.3 Door adjustment



Note

- ◆ *The vehicle must be standing on its wheels in order to adjust the rear door.*
- ◆ *The rear door is correctly adjusted if in the closed state it has an overall even gap size, is not positioned too far inwards or outwards and the contours are aligned.*
- ◆ *Observe the gap sizes of the front door ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; technical data; body gaps; front body .*
- ◆ *After carrying out removal and installation or adjustment work, perform corrosion protection measures at the screws and hinges.*



Setting the gap sizes:

In order to correctly set the gap sizes, the screws -2, 5, 7, and 8- must be slackened at the A pillar.

- The bottom B pillar trim panel must be removed for the screw -5- ⇒ [page 370](#) .



- The bottom B pillar trim panel must be removed for the screw
-7- ⇒ [page 370](#) .

Setting the gap sizes:

Slacken the screws -3 and 9- for correctly setting the flushness.

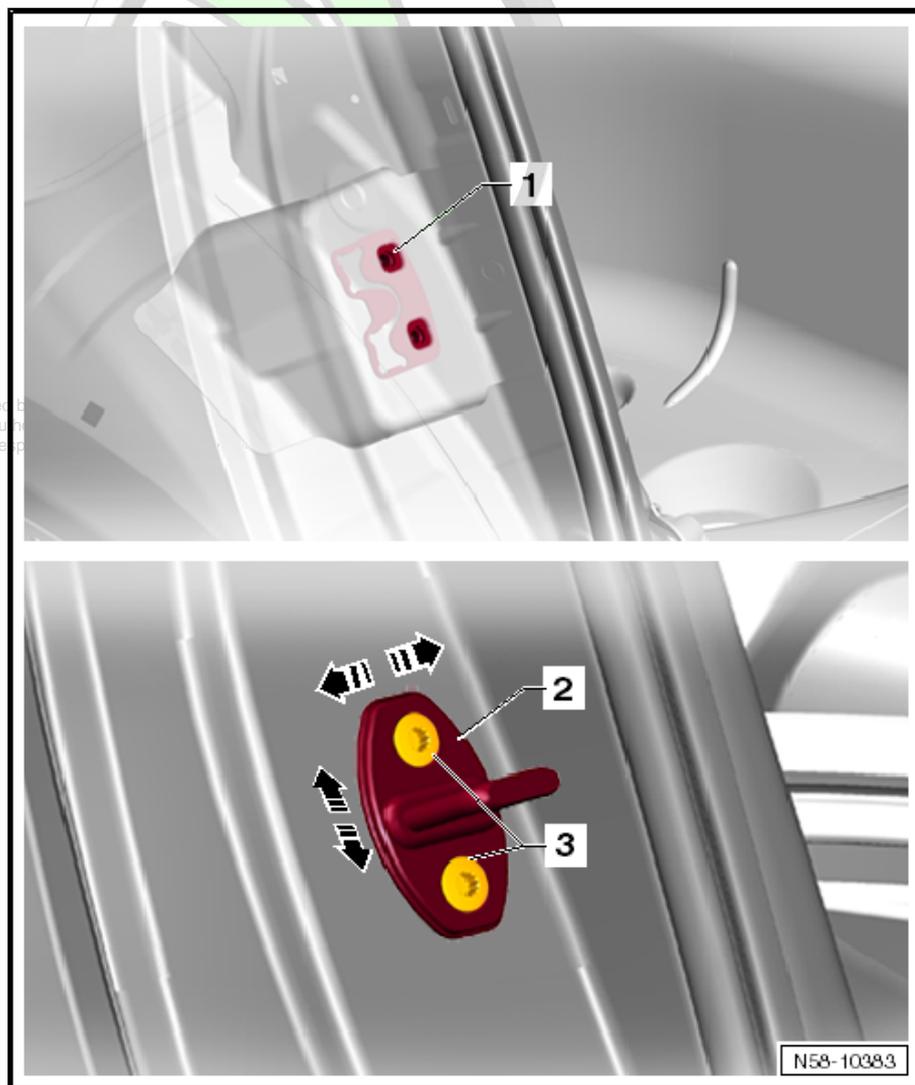


Note

Other measures, such as aligning the doors towards the top are ineffective. The door will drop again at the following overpressures.

Adjusting the locking clamp ⇒ [page 98](#) .

1.3.1 Adjusting the locking clamp





Note

- ◆ *The arc outside the threaded plate must be firmly welded to the pillar.*
- ◆ *In order to adjust the locking clamp -2- once the screws -3- are loosened, increased force must be applied.*
- ◆ *The adjustment is carried out only for the right door. The same applies for adjusting the left door.*
- ◆ *When closing the door it must lock completely without using additional force and must have no play.*
- ◆ *When adjusting the locking clamp, the door must not be pressed upwards or downwards.*

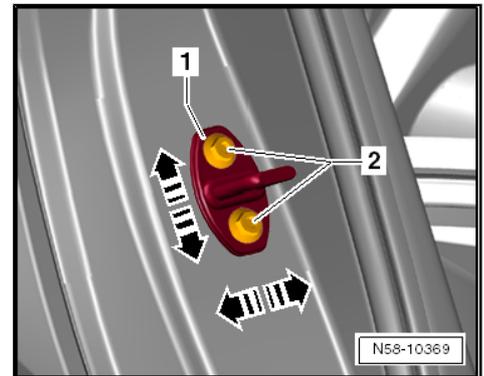
The locking clamp is used for adjusting the following:

- If the rear door adjustment is not flush with the side part.

Carry out the following tasks:

- Slacken the locking clamp -1- by loosening the screws -2- at the C pillar.
- Adjust the door with the locking clamp -1- in such a way that the rear door when in the closed state is flush with the side part (wind noise).
- Tighten screws - 2 - of locking clamp - 1 -.

Tightening torques: Screws (Pos. 2) - 25 Nm.



ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2 Door internal parts

2.1 Summary of components:

1 - Door

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 95](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 97](#) .

2 - Inside window shaft seal

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 129](#) .

3 - Door gap seal

4 - Riveted nuts

5 - Cap

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 111](#) .

6 - Cover

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 101](#) .

7 - Outside door seal

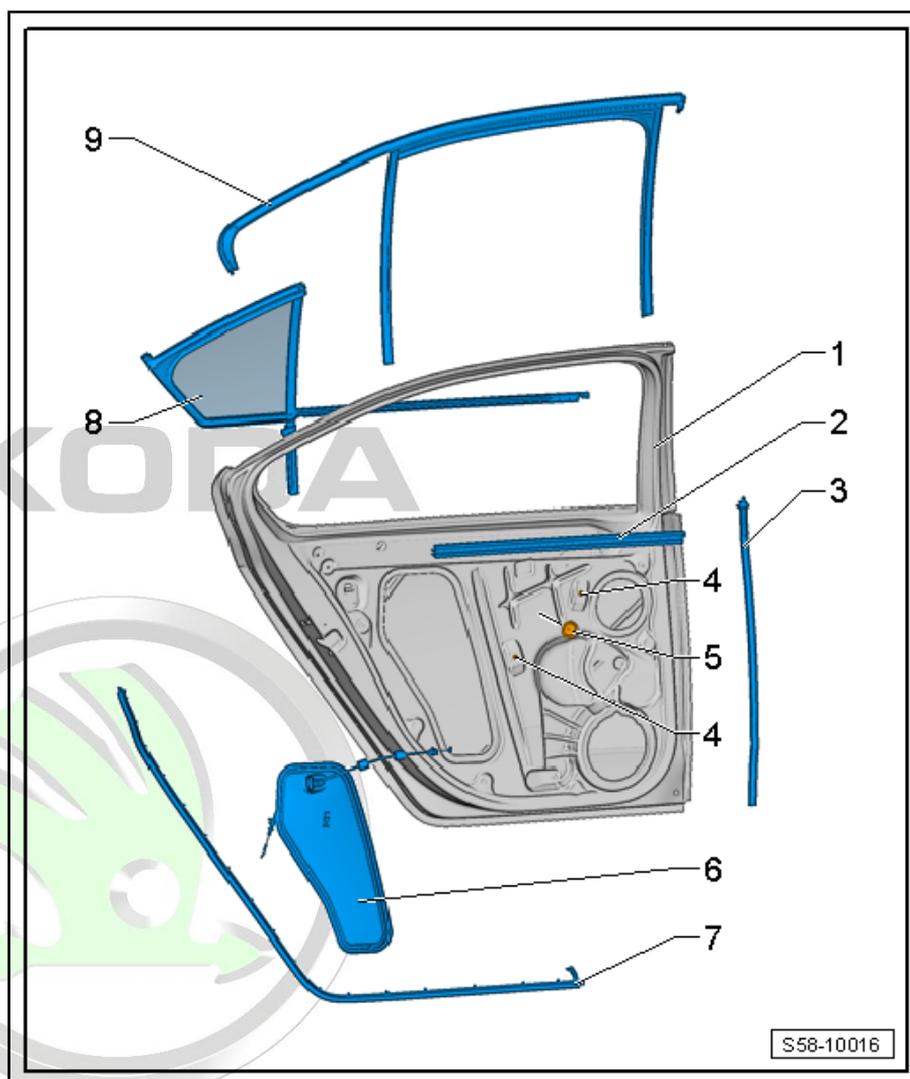
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 133](#) .

8 - Fixed glass with outer seal

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 127](#) .

9 - Window run

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 122](#) .

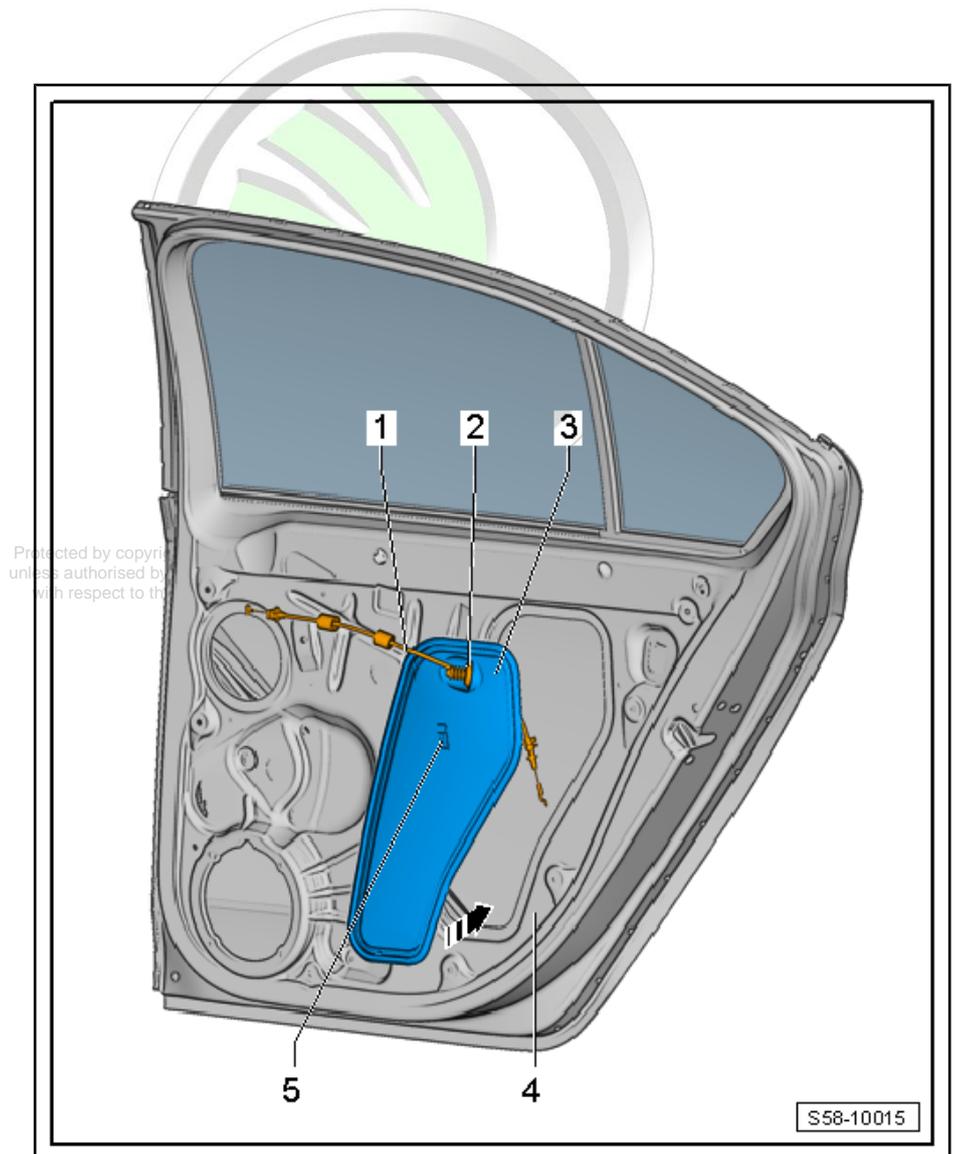


S58-10016

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.2 Removing and installing the cover

2.2.1 Removing:



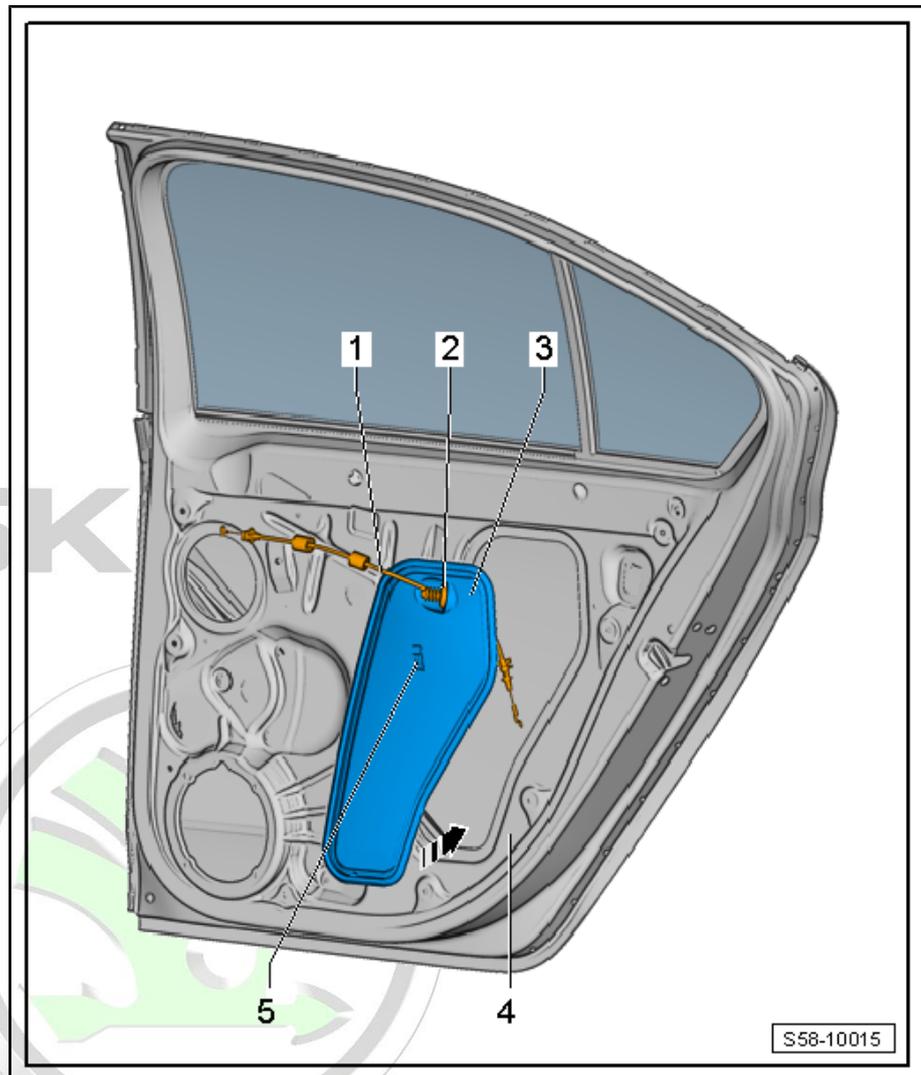
- Removing door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Lift off the cover -3- in the bottom area.
- Pull the cover - 3 - downwards and remove it from the door
- 4 - in -direction of arrow-.

Note

- ◆ *If the following operations are necessary, pull the Bowden cable - 1 - with the grommet - 2 - out of the cover - 3 -.*
- ◆ *The cables are slackened in the holder - 5 -.*



2.2.2 Installing:



- Pull the Bowden cable - 1 - through the cover - 3 - and secure the grommet - 2 -.

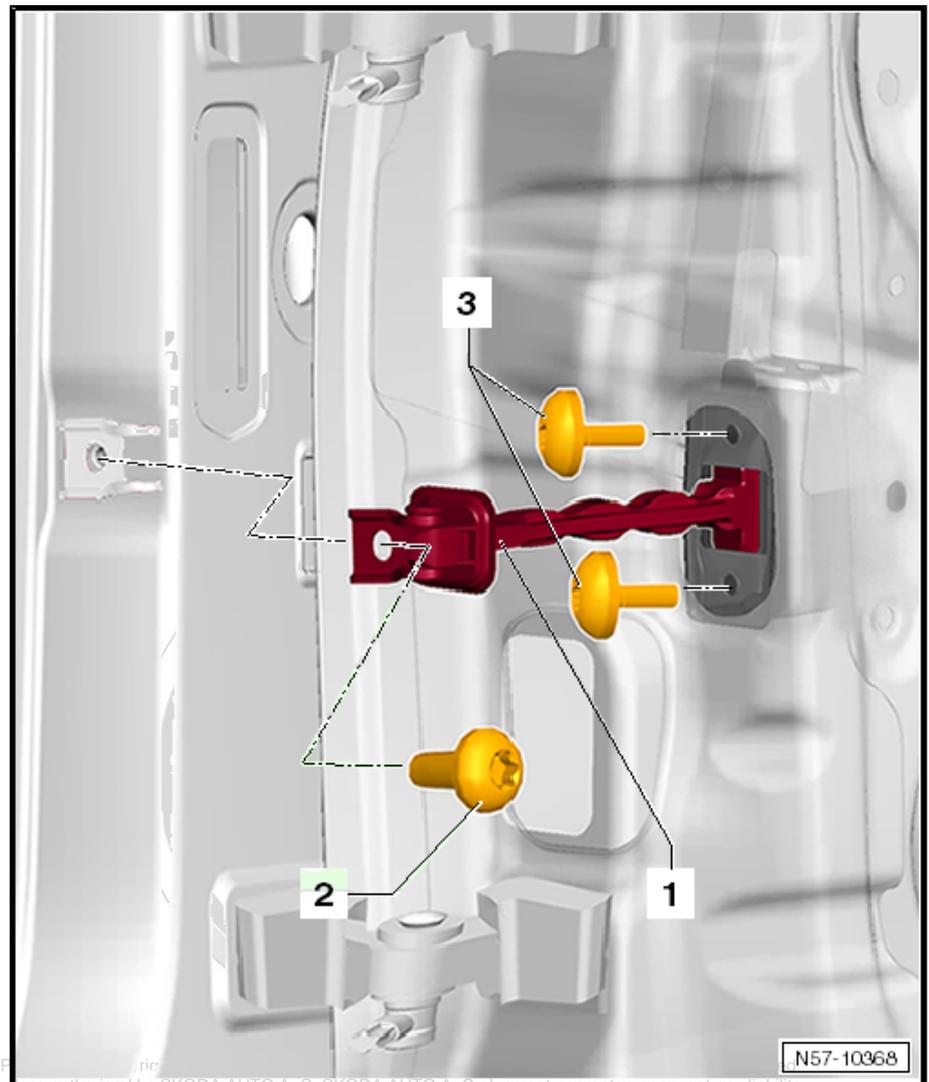
- Insert the cover - 3 - upwards into the door - 4 -.
- Press the cover at the bottom in the door.



Note

The cables are secured in the holders - 5 -.

2.3 Removing and installing the door retaining strap



with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Removing:

- Removing door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Unscrew screw - 2 - at the B-pillar.
- Unscrew screws -3-.
- Remove the plastic door cover above the loudspeaker and remove the door retaining strap - 1 -.

Installing:

- Insert the door retaining strap -1- through the opening for the door cover.
- Install screws - 3 -, tightening torque 9 Nm.
- Install screw -2-, tightening torque 30 Nm.
- Fit plastic door cover above the loudspeaker.
- Install door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .

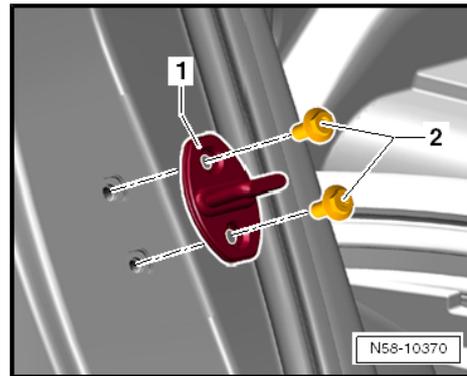
2.4 Removing and installing the locking clamp

Removing:

- Release screws - 2 - and remove locking clamp - 1 -.

Installing:

- Fit the locking clamp - 1 - at the D pillar and position the screws - 2 - . Tightening torque: 25 Nm.
- Adjusting the locking clamp => [page 98](#) .



2.5 Door handle and door lock - Summary of components

1 - Bearing bracket

- Removing and installing => [page 104](#) .

2 - Base

3 - Cap

- Removing and installing => [page 104](#) .

4 - Door handle

- Removing and installing => [page 107](#) .

5 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 1.7 Nm.
- The bearing bracket is released from the door by loosening the screw.

6 - Control cable

- From door lock to bearing bracket.

7 - Door lock

- Removing and installing => [page 109](#) .

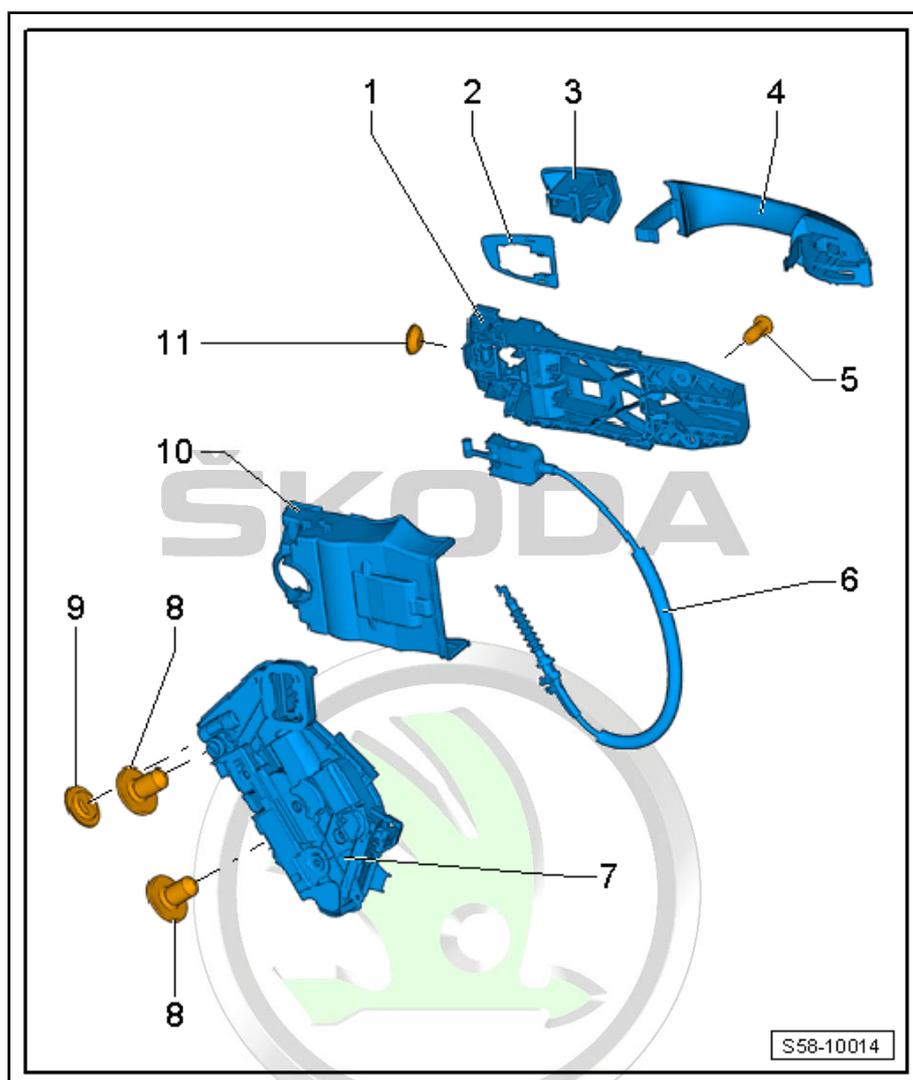
8 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm.

9 - Cover

10 - Cover for grip reinforcement

11 - Cover



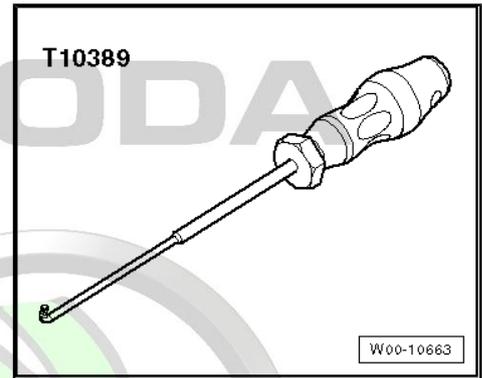
2.6 Removing and installing the cap

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

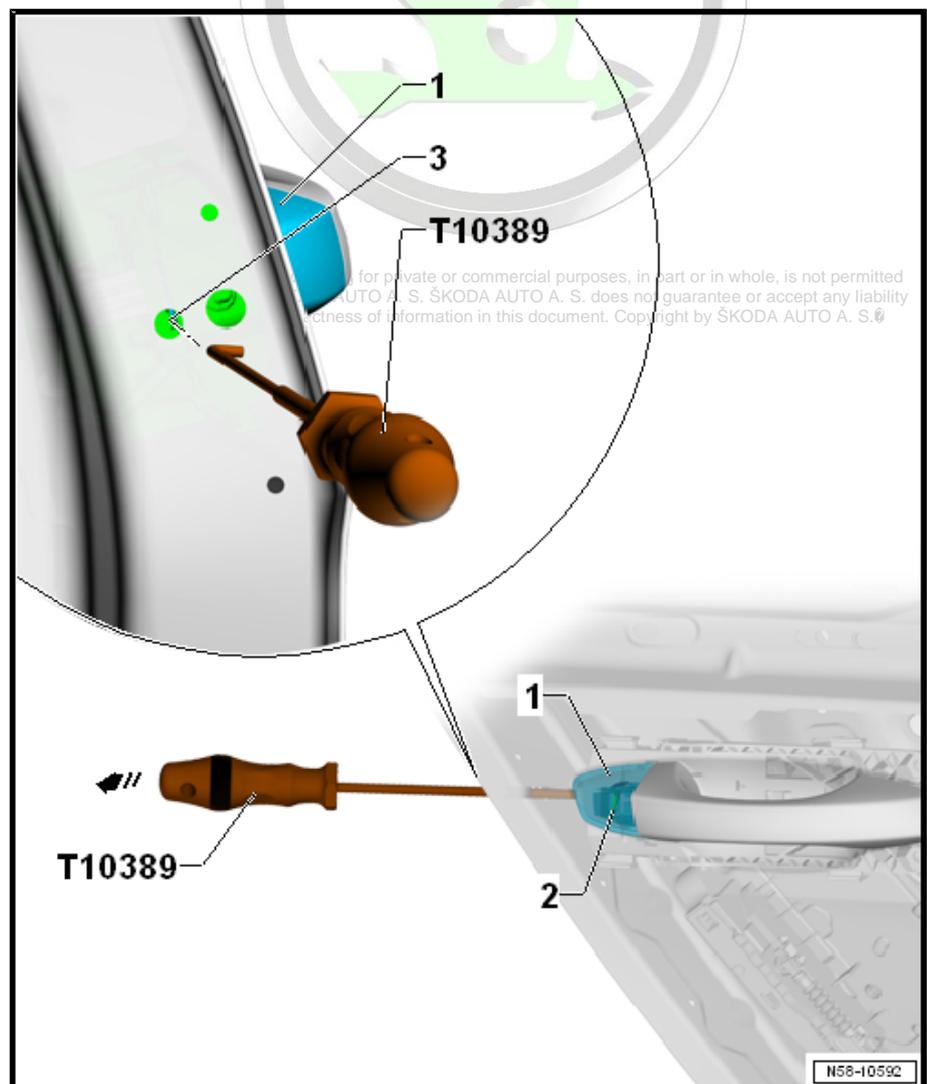
2.6.1 Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly tool - T10389-



2.6.2 Removing:



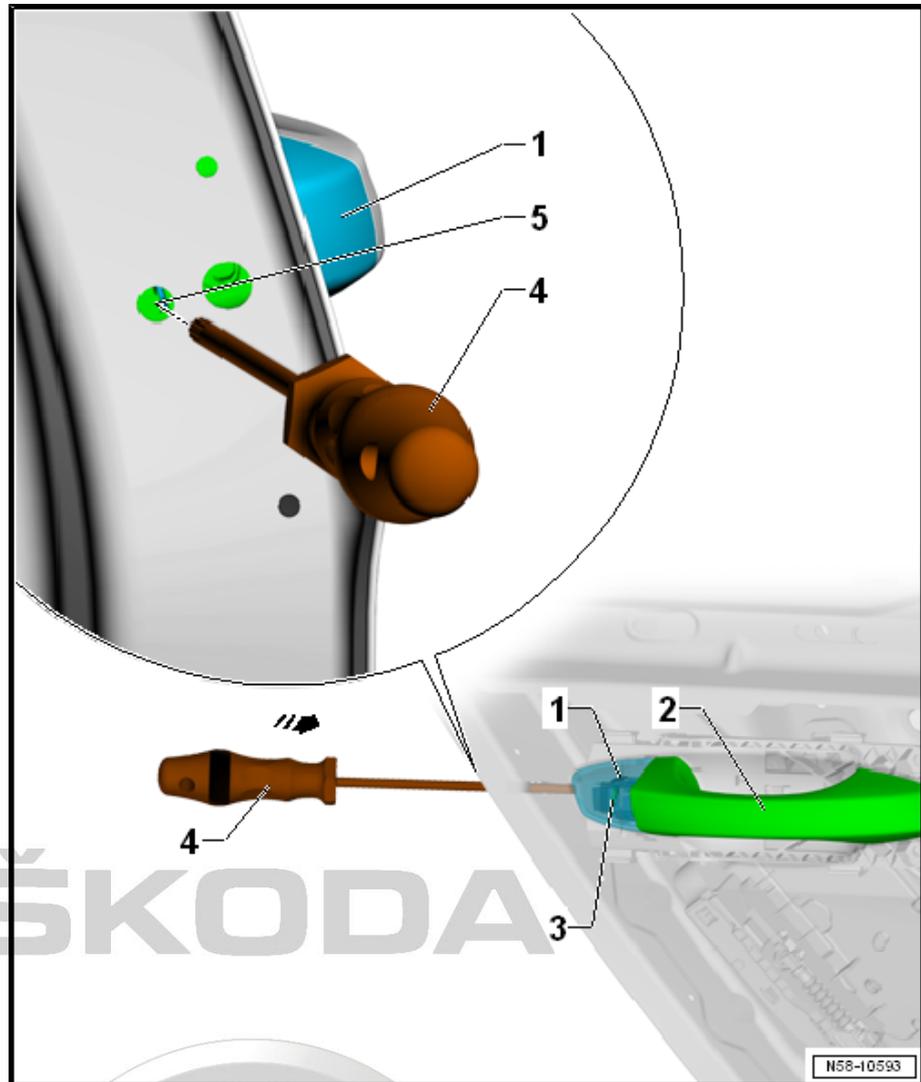
- Remove the plugs -3- from the rear openings.
- Guide the assembly tool - T10389- by approx. 38 mm into the opening behind the lock hooks -2- of the bearing bracket.
- Pull the assembly tool - T10389- as far towards the rear -arrow-, until the hook unlocks.
- Detach the door handle from the door.



- Pull the cap -1- out of the bearing bracket.

2.6.3 Installing:

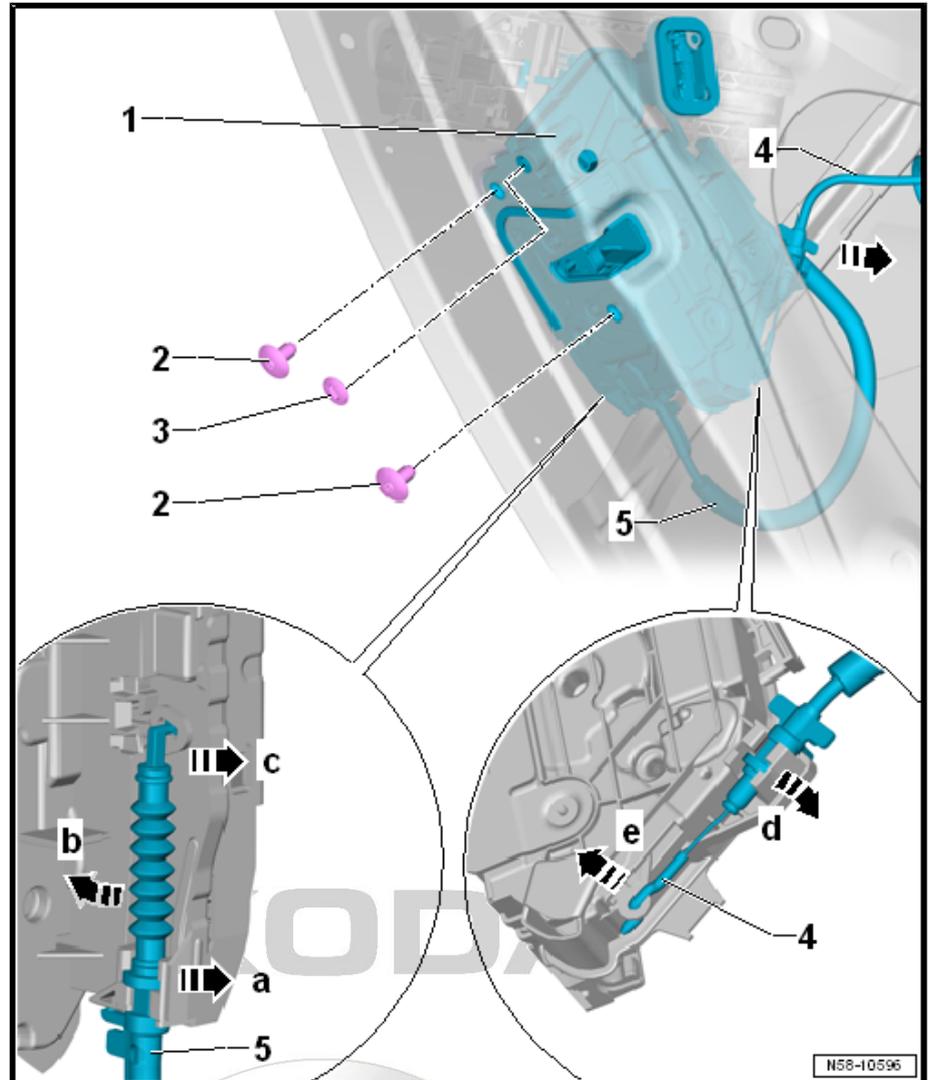
- Detach the door handle -2- from the door.
- Push the cap -1- into the bearing bracket.



- For example guide a screwdriver -4- at the lock hooks -3- of the bearing bracket.
- Press the cap -1- on the door.
- Press in the screwdriver -arrow-, until the hook locks.
- Attach plug - 5 -.

2.7 Removing and installing the door handle

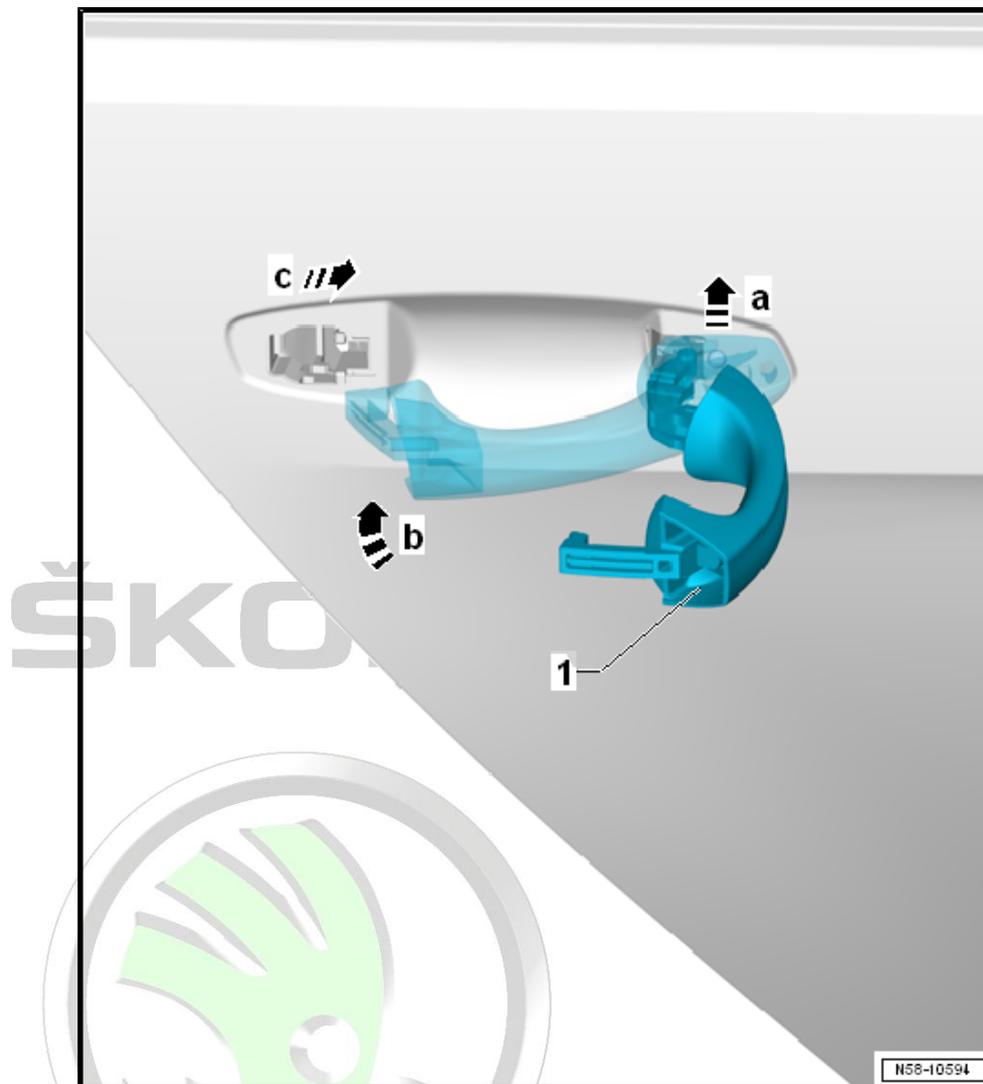
2.7.1 Removing:



- Remove the cap ⇒ [page 104](#) .
- Pull the door handle -1- slightly towards the rear -arrow a- out of the support of the bearing bracket.
- Swivel the door handle in -direction of arrow b-.
- Remove the door handle at a right angle -arrow c- out of the bearing bracket.



2.7.2 Installing:

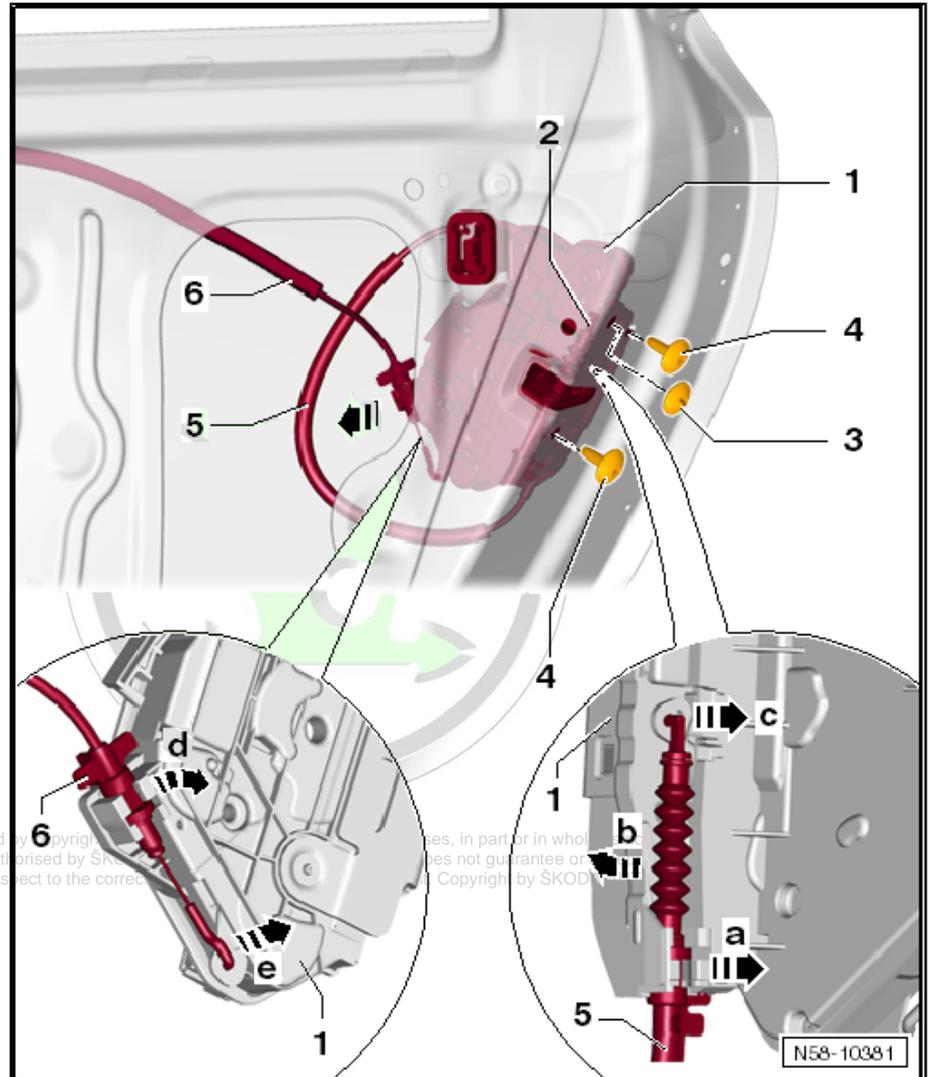


- Fit the door handle -1- at a right angle -arrow a- into the bearing bracket.
- Swivel the door handle -1- into the door -arrow b-.
- Forcefully press the door handle forwards -arrow c- into the support of the bearing bracket.

Install the cap ⇒ [page 104](#) .

2.8 Removing and installing the door lock

2.8.1 Removing:



- Remove rear door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove the cover ⇒ [page 101](#) .
- Unscrew screws - 4 -.
- Remove the lock - 1 - from the door - 2 -.

Slacken the Bowden cable to the bearing bracket:

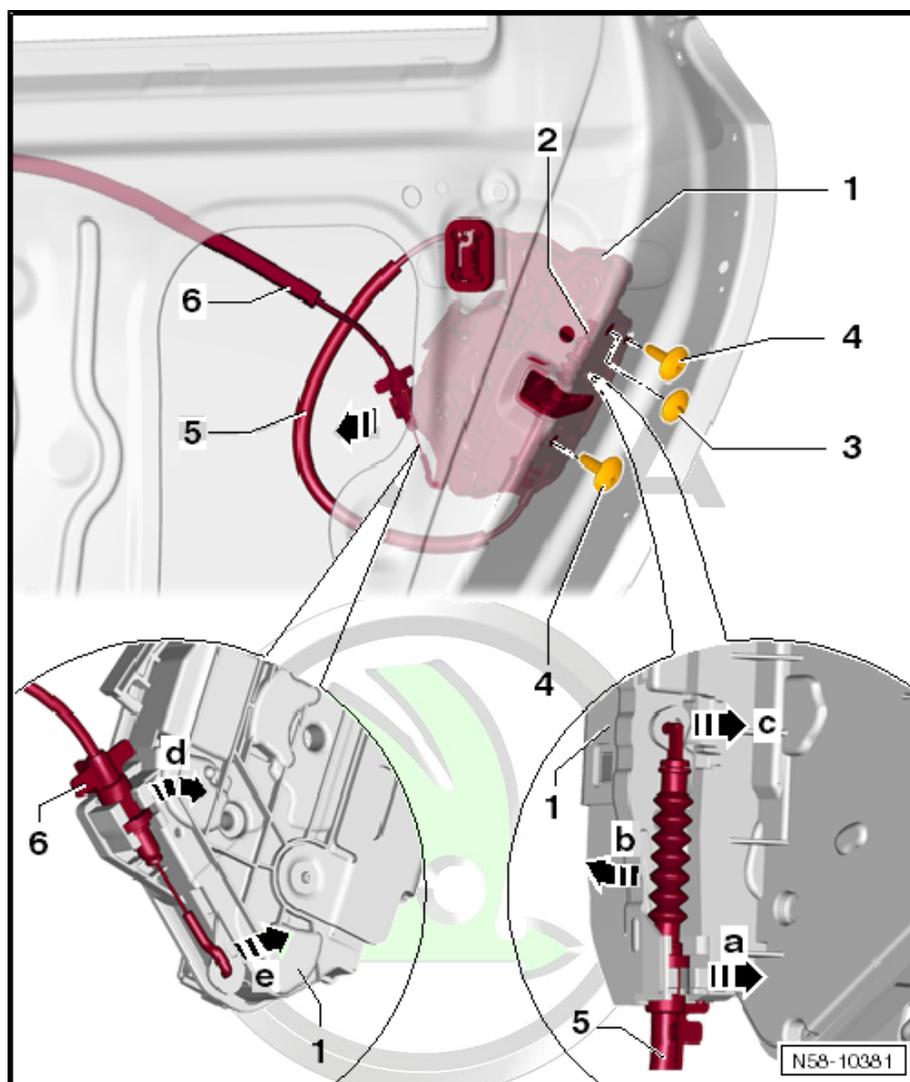
- Twist the Bowden cable -5- by 45° and remove it from the bracket -arrow a-.
- Turn the Bowden cable -arrow b- until it can be guided out of the lug in the door lock (Pos. 1) -arrow c-.

Slacken the Bowden cable to the inner door control:

- Twist the Bowden cable -6- by 45° and remove it from the bracket.

- Turn the Bowden cable -arrow d- until the Bowden cable can be guided out of the lug in the door lock (Pos.1) -arrow e-.

2.8.2 Installing:

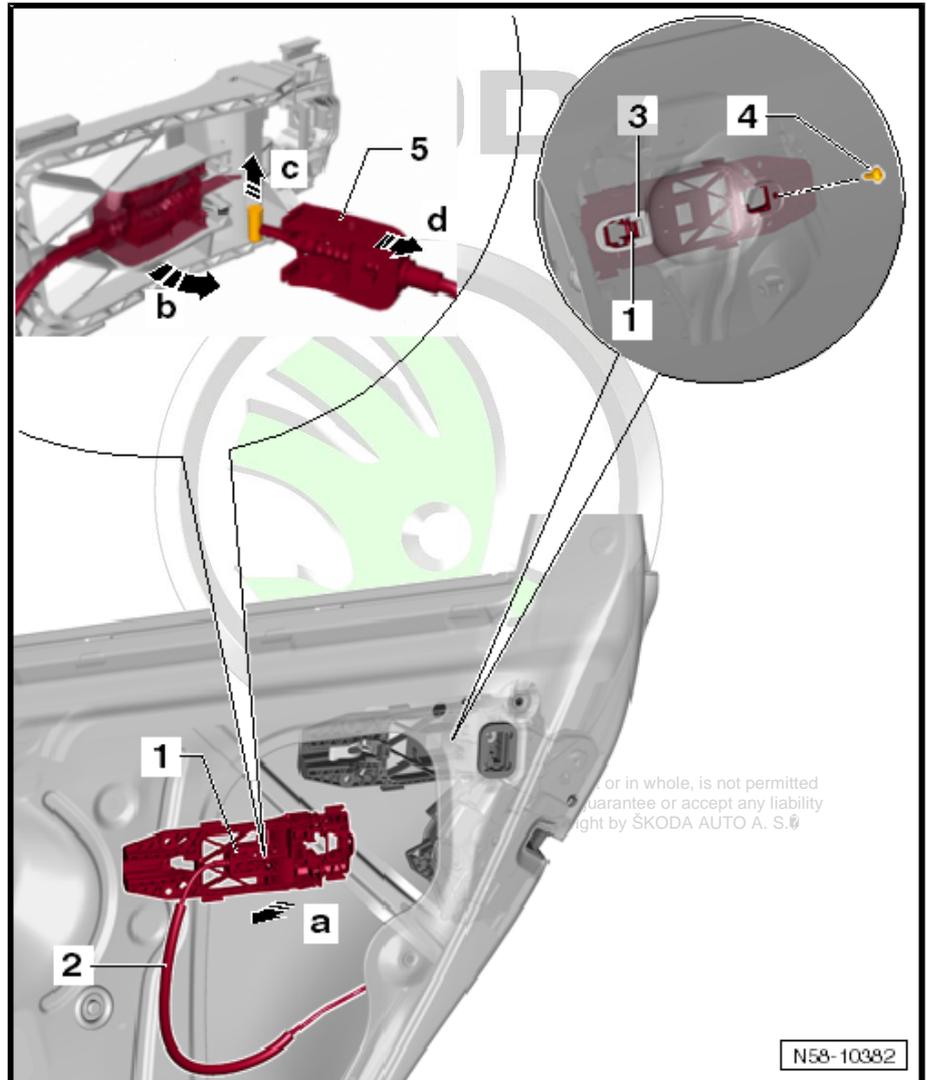


- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Tightening torque of screw (Pos. 4) - 18 Nm.

It is absolutely necessary to perform a functional check because the door cannot be opened if the adjustment of the Bowden cables is not accurate and if they are not correctly locked.

2.9 Removing and installing bearing bracket

2.9.1 Removing:



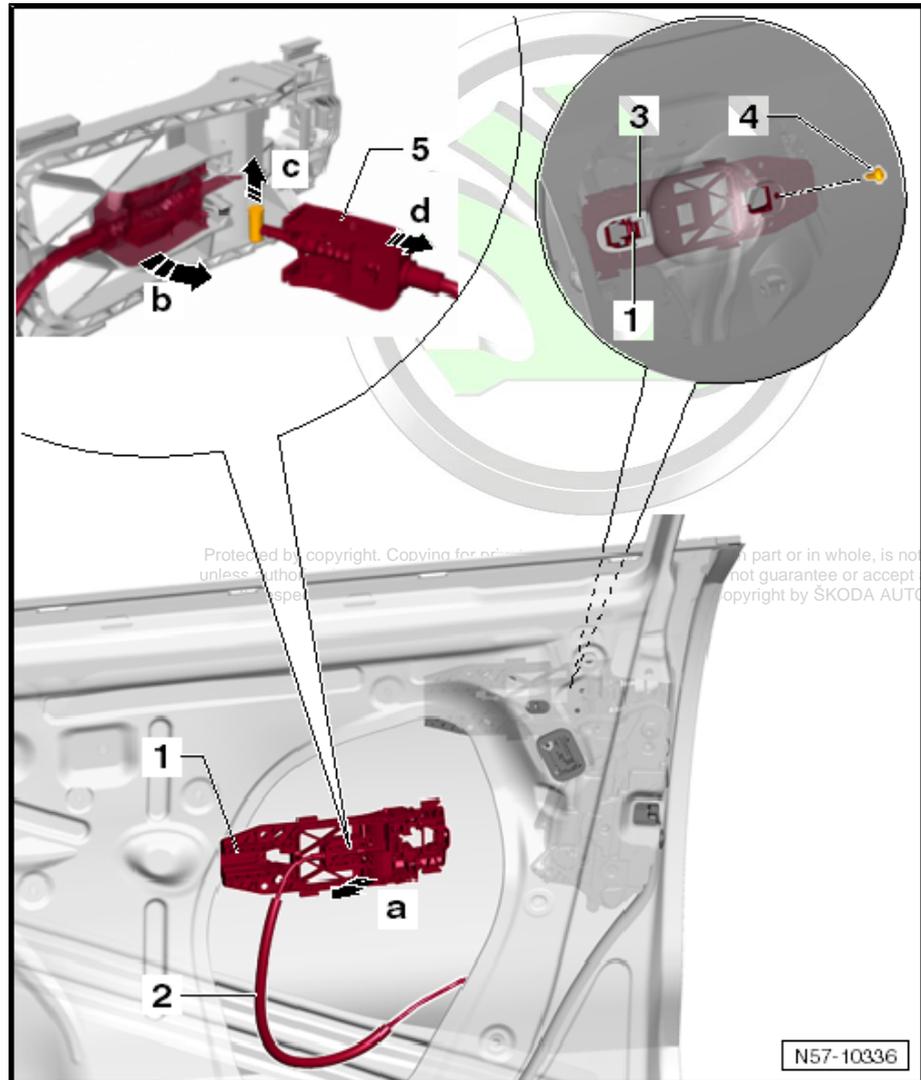
- Remove rear door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove the cover ⇒ [page 101](#) .
- Removing the door handle ⇒ [page 107](#) .
- Release screw - 4 - and remove gasket - 3 -.
- Take the bearing bracket -1- out of the door -arrow a-.

Slacken Bowden cable:

- Unlock the bracket - 5 - and swivel the bracket out of the support in the bearing bracket -arrow b-.
- Lift the bolt of the control cable out of the support -arrow c-.
- Remove the control cable from the bearing bracket -arrow d-.



2.9.2 Installing:



- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Install screws - 4 -, tightening torque: 1.7 Nm.

2.10 Rear door window

2.10.1 Summary of components:

1 - Door

2 - Door window

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 114](#) .

3 - Window run

- Inserted in the flange.
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 122](#) .

4 - Fixed door window

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 127](#) .

5 - Adjusting pin and straddling dowel

- For securing the door window.

6 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.

7 - Nuts

- Tightening torque:
7 Nm.

8 - Adhesive pad

9 - Window lifter

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 121](#) .

10 - Washer

11 - Window lifter motor

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 117](#) .

12 - Manuel drive

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 119](#) .

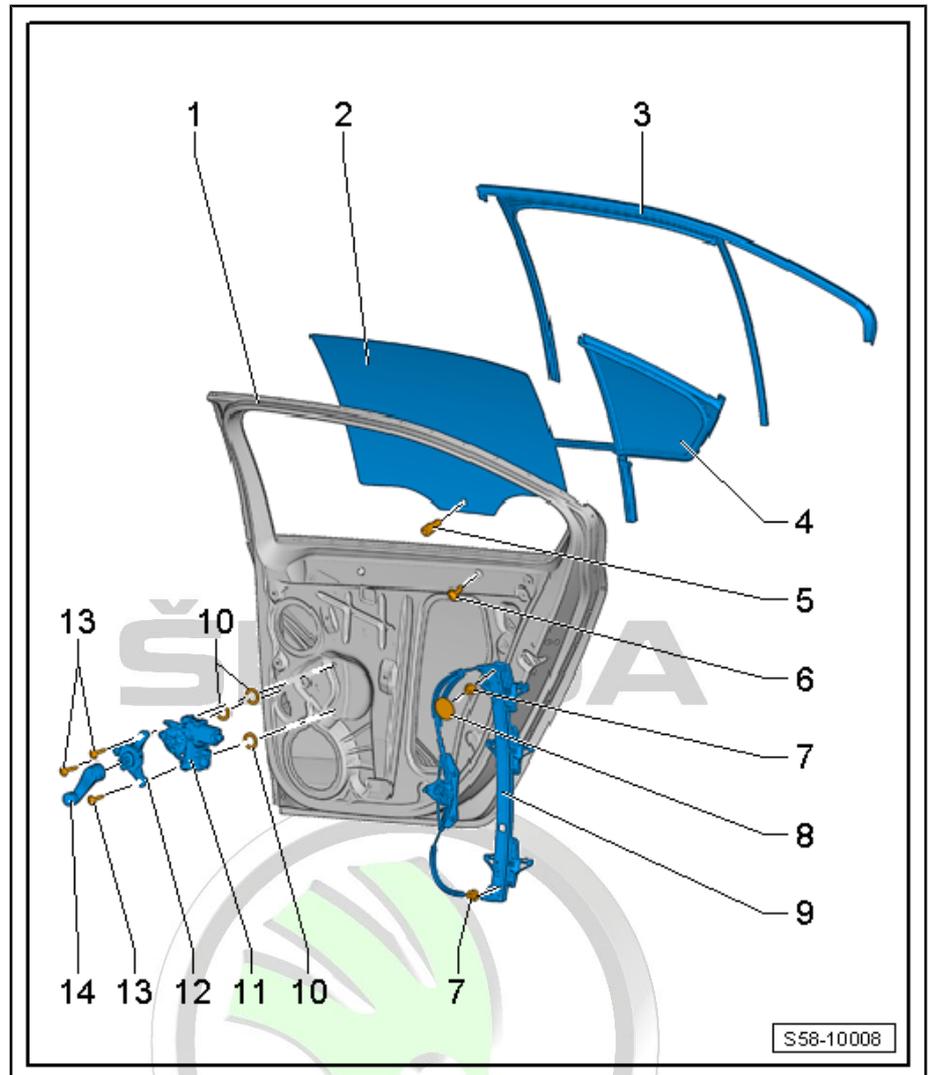
13 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 3 Nm.

14 - Window crank

- For manual operation.

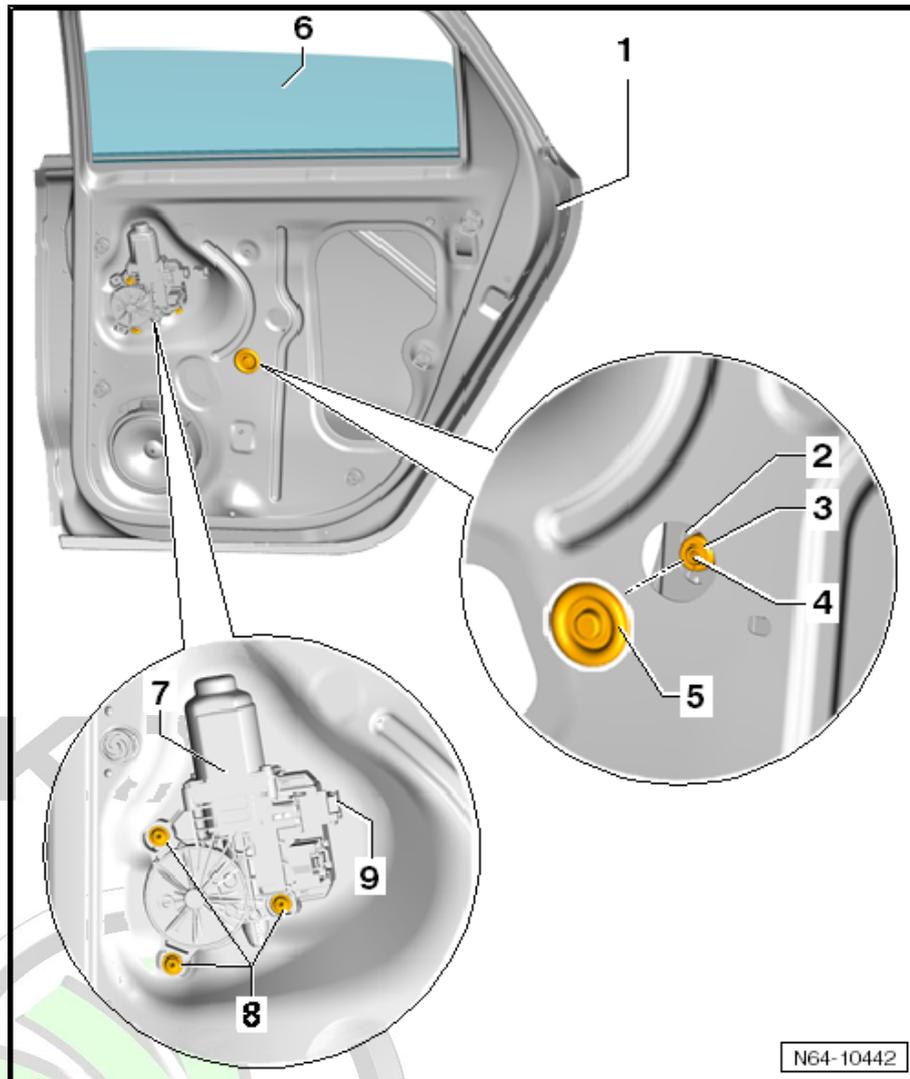
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 120](#) .



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.11 Removing and installing door window

2.11.1 Removing:



- Remove rear door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove inside door seal ⇒ [page 129](#) .
- Release cap - 5 -.
- Lower the door window - 6 - until the straddle pin - 4 - and the straddling dowel - 3 - can be reached in the window lifter opening - 2 -.



Note Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

If this operation cannot be performed due to a failure at the window lifter motor, remove the window lifter motor - 7 -. Then the door window can be pushed to the required working height.

- Screw a 5 mm screw (approx. 70 mm long) into the adjusting pin - 4 - and pull the adjusting pin from the straddling dowel - 3 -.

- Screw an 8 mm screw (approx. 80 mm long) into the straddling dowel -3- and pull out of the pane.

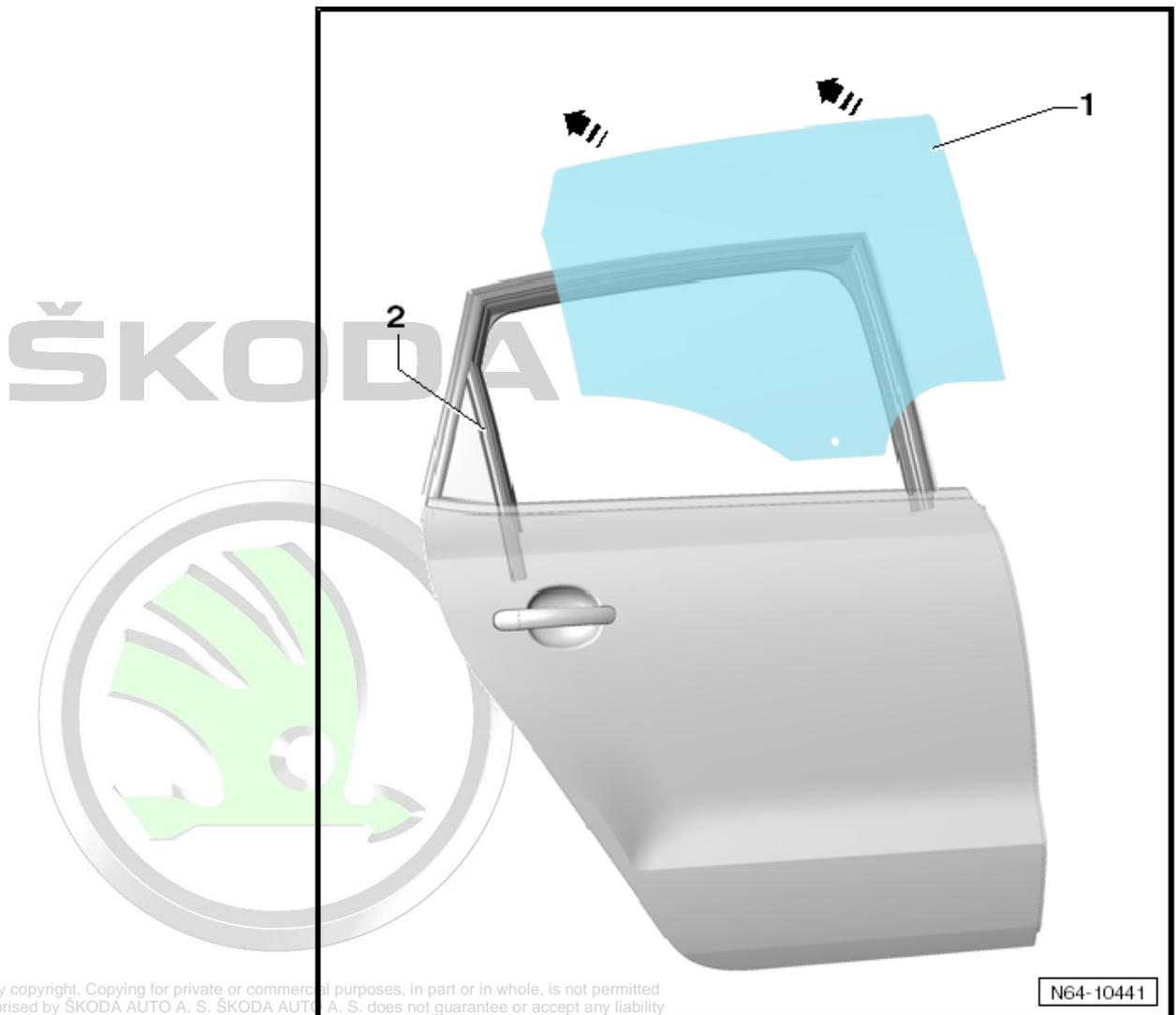
i Note

Do not use excessive force when screwing the screw into the straddling dowel as it may fall into the door.

- Withdraw the straddling dowel -3- from the window lifter guide -1- and hence from the door window.

i Note

Hold the door window when pulling out the straddling dowel so that the door does not fall down and get damaged.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

N64-10441

- Pull the rear part of the window run -2- out of the supports.
- Pull the door window -1- upwards at an angle -arrows- towards the outside of the vehicle and out of the window channel.

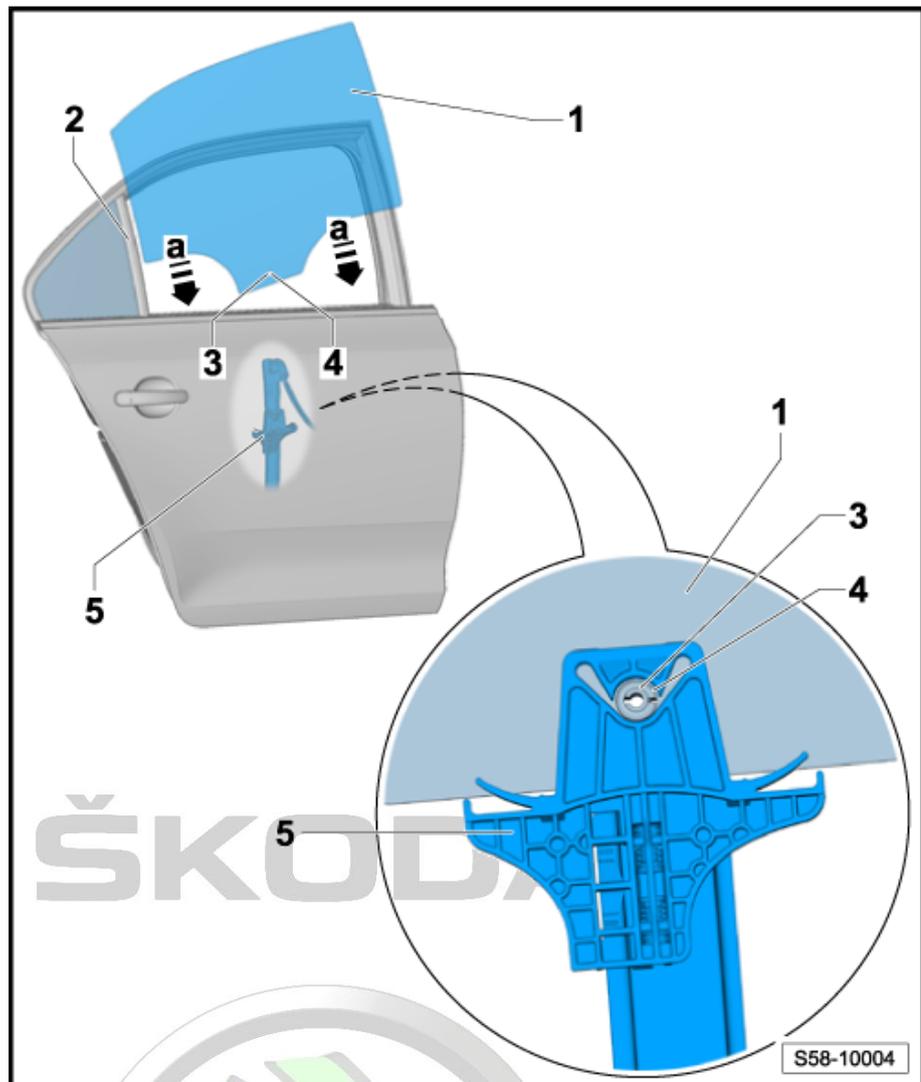


2.11.2 Installing:



Note

Before inserting the straddling dowel - 3 - and the straddle pin - 4 -, check the door window - 1 - for damage.

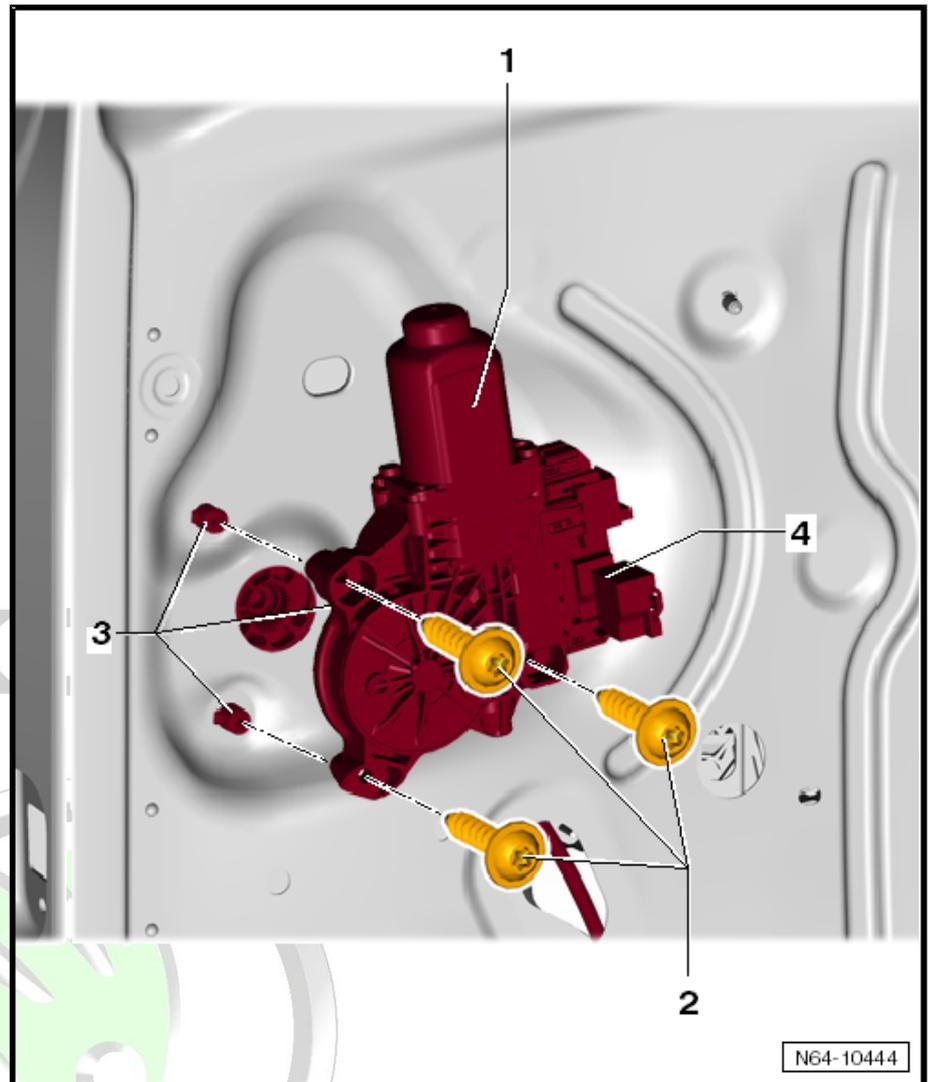


- Take the mean of the centre straddling dowel - 3 - and insert it when the door window is removed - 1 -.
- Press the straddle pin - 4 - into the straddling dowel - 3 -.
- Guide the pane - 1 - into the door - 2 - -arrows a- and insert the window lifter guide - 5 -.
- Gently tap on the pane - 1 - to lock it from above into the window lifter - 5 -.
- It must be pressed until the catch locks audibly into place.
- The further work procedure occurs in the reverse order to the removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

2.12 Removing and installing window lifter motor

2.12.1 Removing:



- Removing door trim panel => [page 361](#) .
- Secure the door window with adhesive tape so that it does not slide off.
- Disconnect plug connection - 4 - .
- Unscrew screws -2- .
- Remove the window lifter motor with the control unit - 1 - from the supports of the hoisting drum - 3 - .

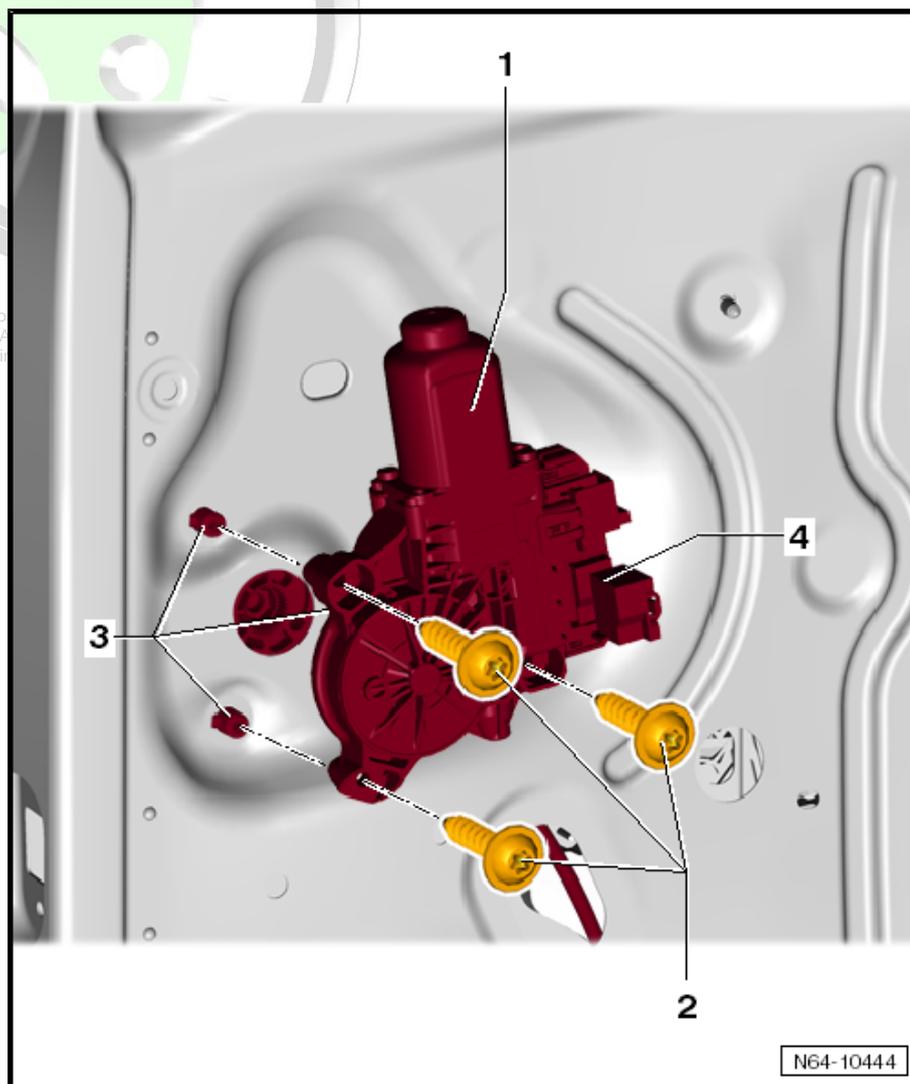


2.12.2 Installing:



WARNING

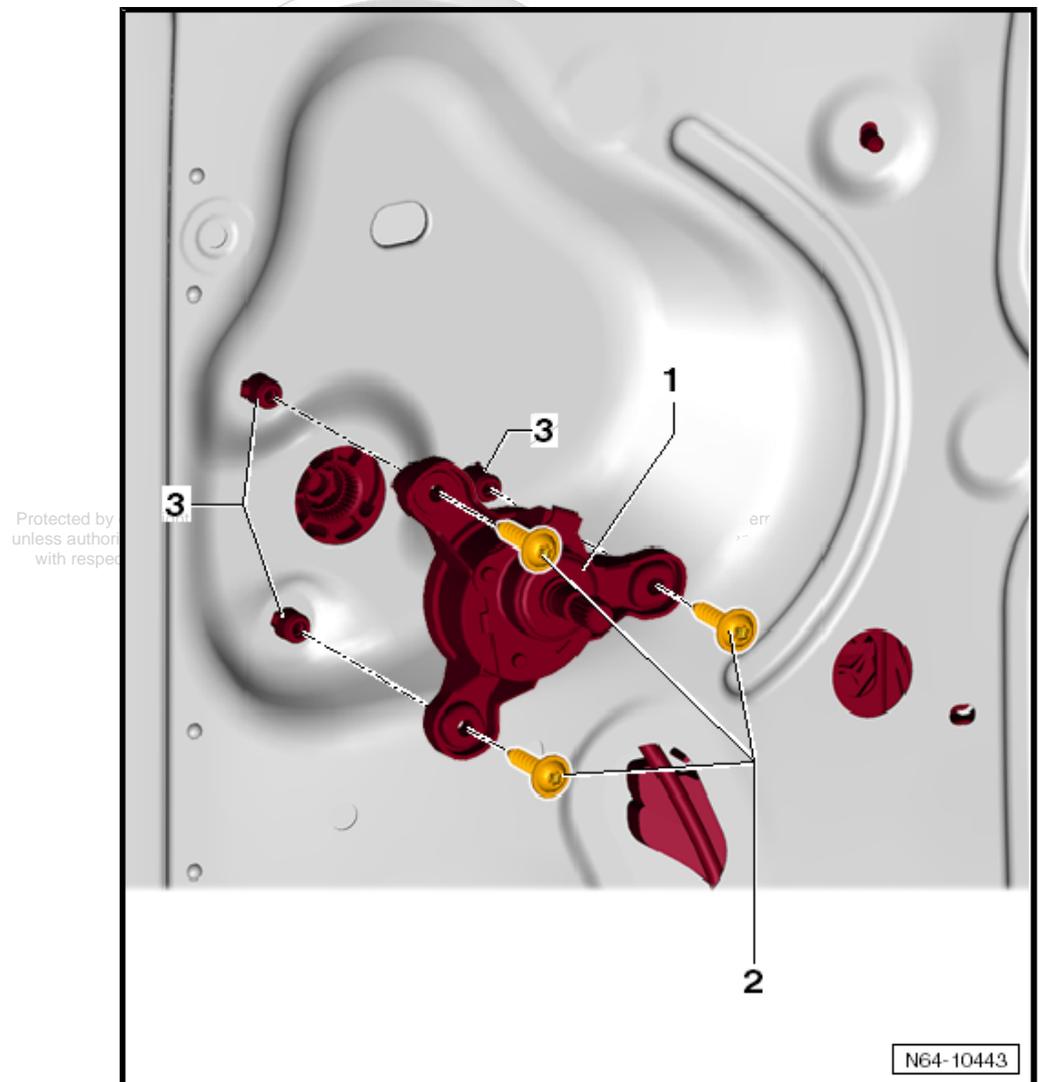
On a newly installed window lifter motor (door control unit), the auxiliary functions and the closing force limitation must be coded!



- Fit the window lifter motor - 1 - on the supports of the hoisting drum - 3 -. Raise the door window slightly and then lower it so that the serration can slide in better between the motor and the hoisting drum.
- Screw in screws - 2 - (3 Nm).
- Secure the plug connection - 4 -.
- The new window lifter motor is coded.
- After the coding, the window lifter motor can be automatically raised up to the stop. Then pull out the switch once more for 2 seconds. The window lifter motor can detect its upper stop through this.

- The further work procedure occurs in the reverse order to the removal.

2.13 Removing and installing the manual drive



Removing:

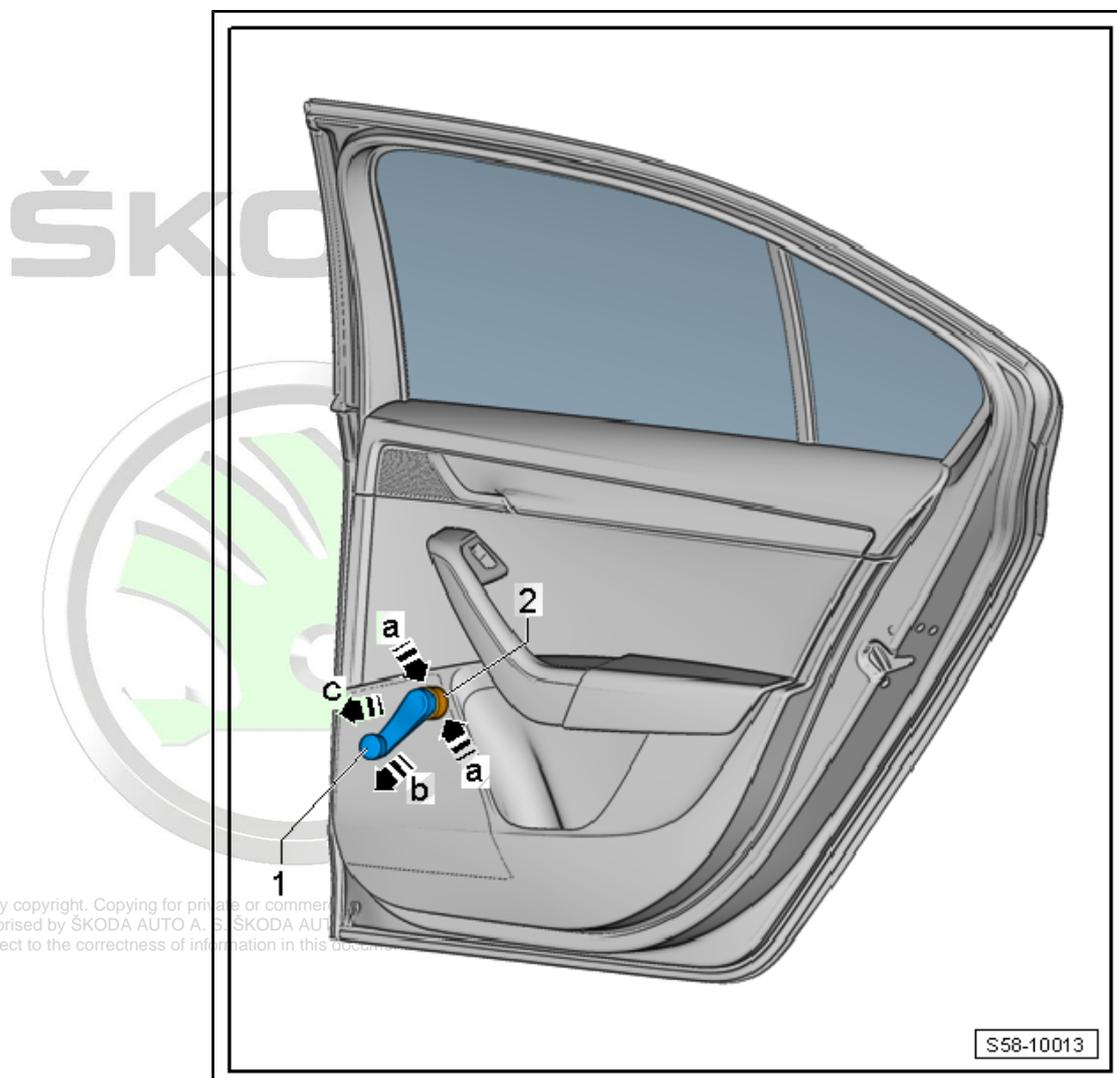
- Remove window crank ⇒ [page 120](#) .
- Removing door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Secure the door window with adhesive tape so that it does not slide off.
- Unscrew screws -2-.
- Remove the manual drive - 1 - from the supports of the hoisting drum - 3 -.

Installing:

- Fit the manual drive - 1 - on the supports of the hoisting drum - 3 -. Raise the door window slightly and then lower it so that the serration can slide in better between the manual drive and the hoisting drum.
- Screw in screws - 2 - (3 Nm).

- The further work procedure occurs in the reverse order to the removal.

2.14 Removing and installing window crank



Removing:

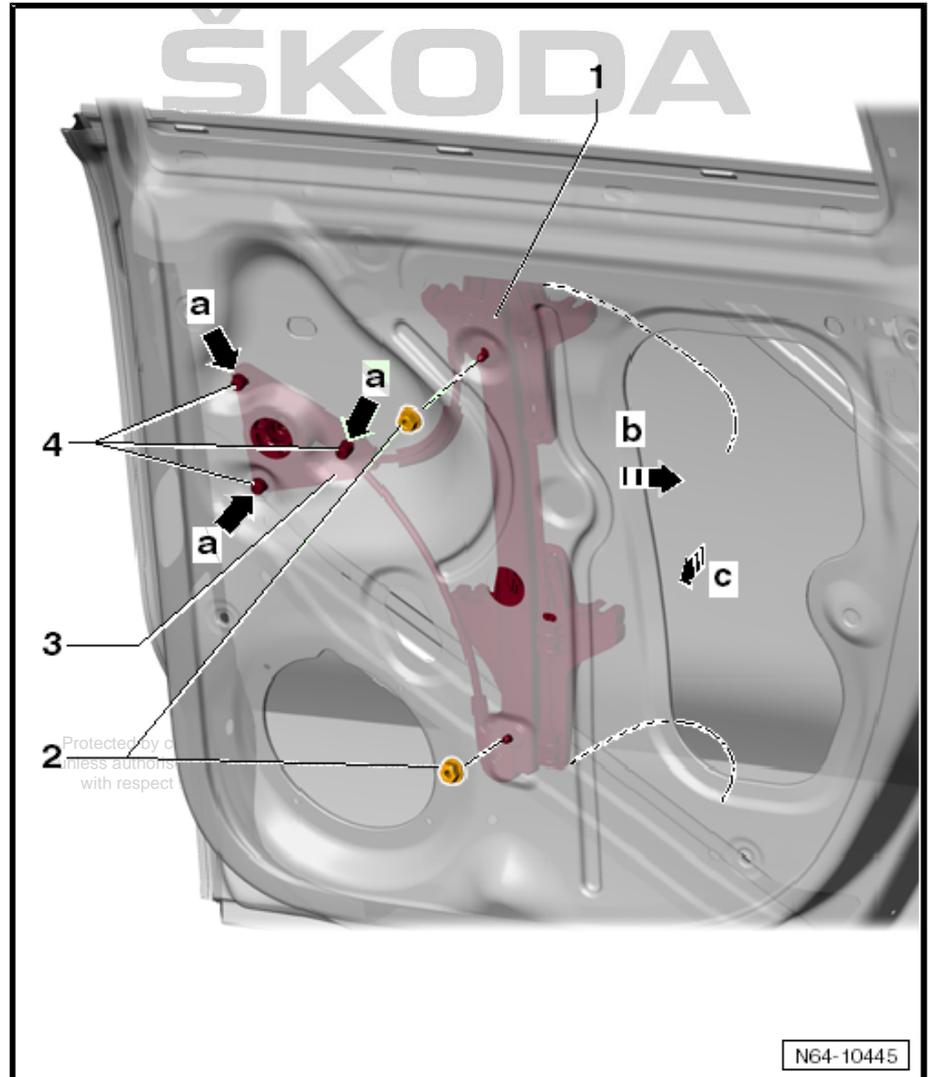
- Press together the circlip - 2 - -arrows a-.
- Pull the circlip - 2 - a little from below the window crank (Pos. 1) -arrow b-.
- Pull off window crank - 1 - -arrow c-.

Installing:

- Insert circlip - 2 -.
- Press on window crank - 1 -.

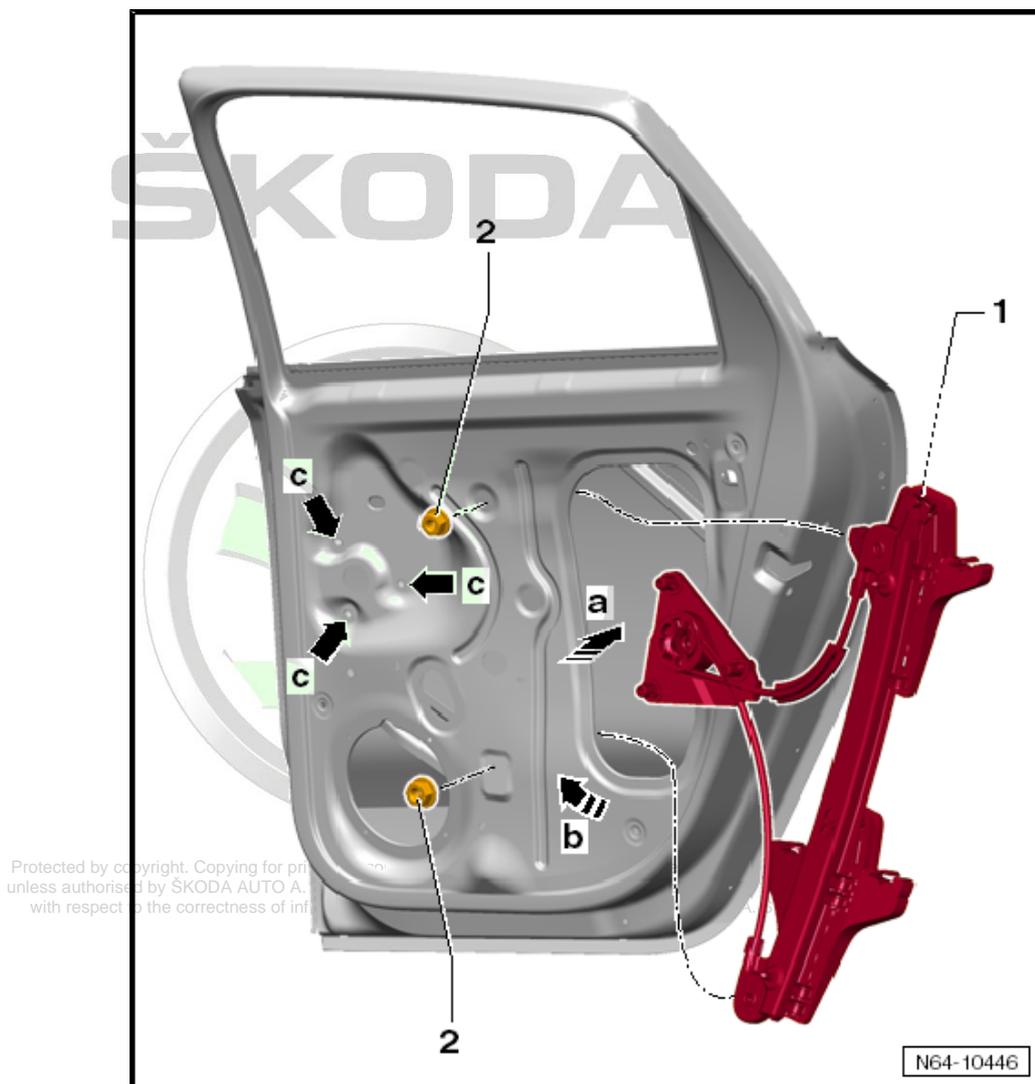
2.15 Remove and install window lifter

2.15.1 Removing:



- Removing door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove door window ⇒ [page 114](#) .
- Remove the window lifter motor ⇒ [page 117](#) or remove the manual drive ⇒ [page 119](#) .
- Unscrew nuts - 2 -.
- Unlock the catches - 4 - of the hoisting drum - 3 - and slide them into the door -arrows a-.
- Slide the window lifter - 1 - into the door.
- Slide the window lifter to the door cutout -arrow b- and take it out -arrow c-.

2.15.2 Installing:



- Insert the window lifter - 1 - through the door cutout -arrow a-.
- Put the window lifter in its fitting position -arrow b-.
- Push the window lifter thread through the door and tighten the nuts - 2 - (6 Nm).
- Press the hoisting drum through the door openings -arrows c-, until the catches lock into position.

2.16 Removing and installing the window run



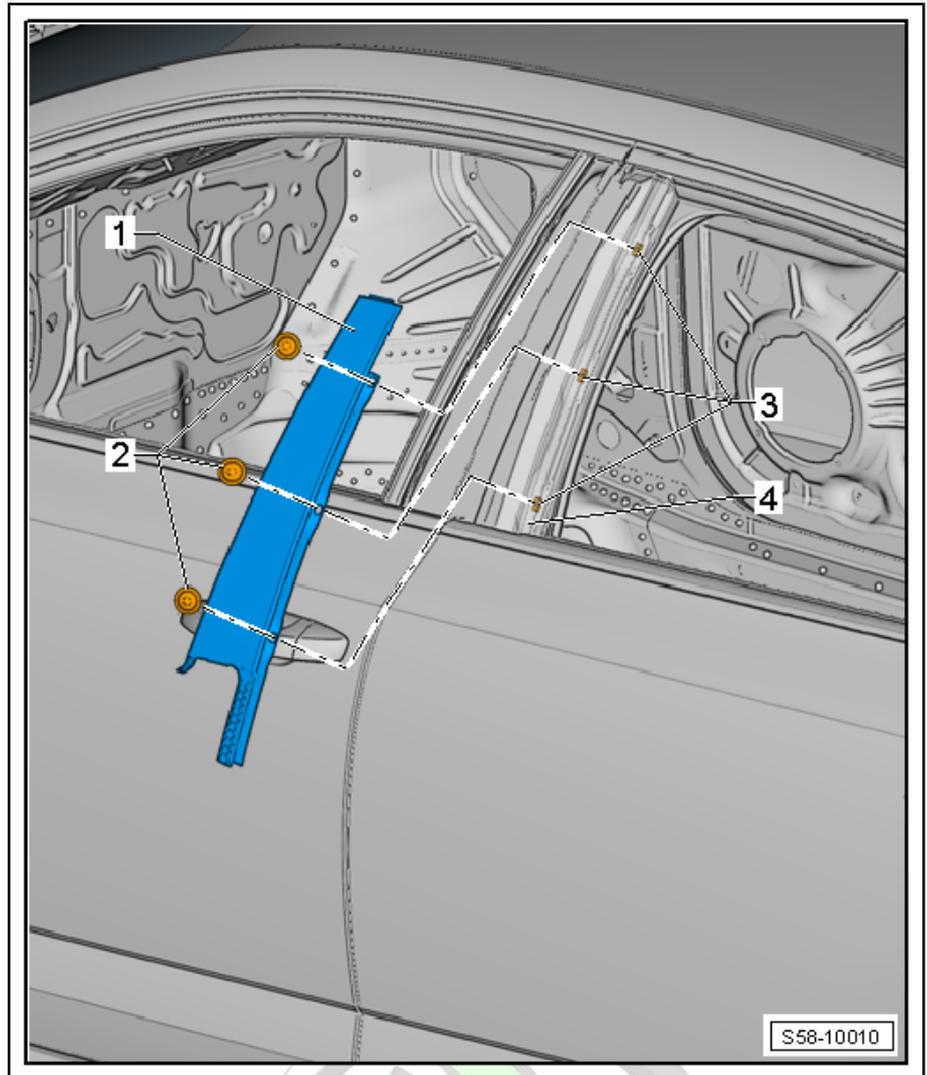
Note

Do not bend the window run when removing!

2.16.1 Removing the window run

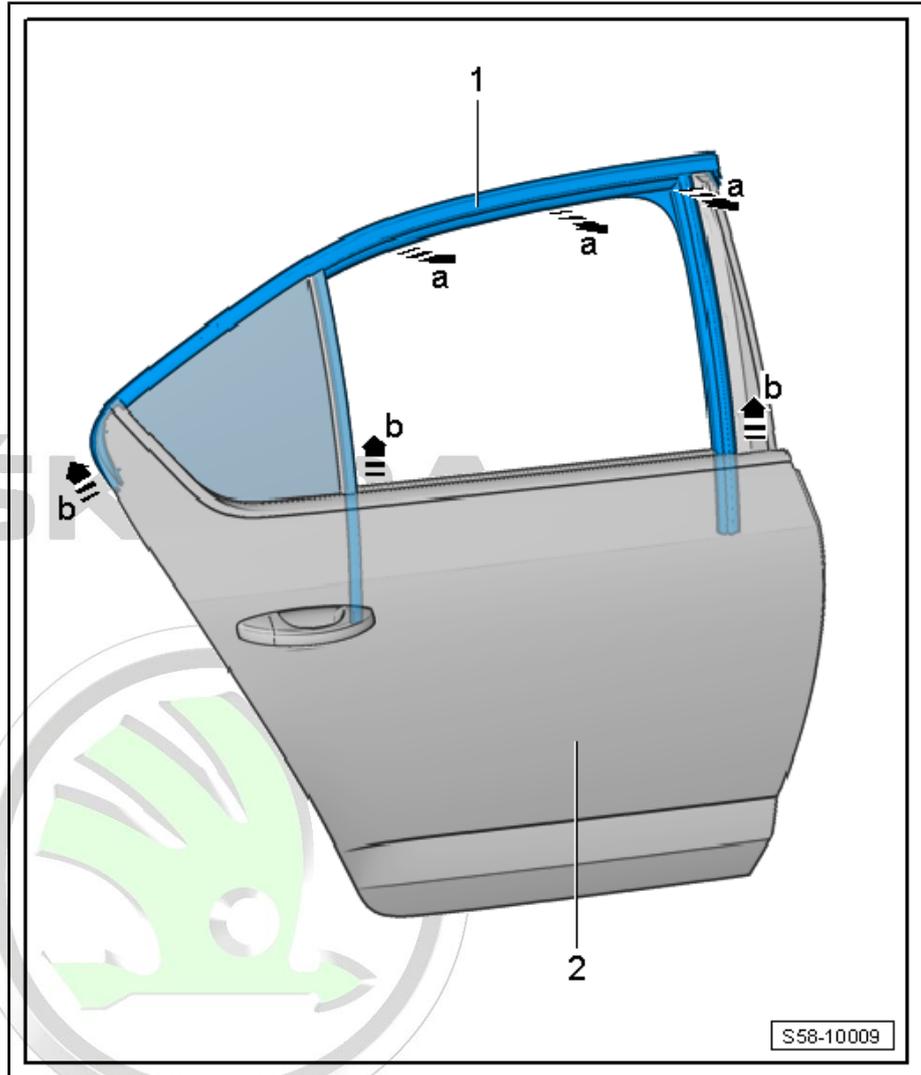
- Removing door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove inside window shaft seal ⇒ [page 129](#) .

- Lower door window into the lower position.
- Remove the window run in the column compartment and unscrew the screws - 2 - on the cover - 1 - (2.5 Nm).



- Remove cover.
- Take the window run seal -1- out of the door frame -arrows a-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

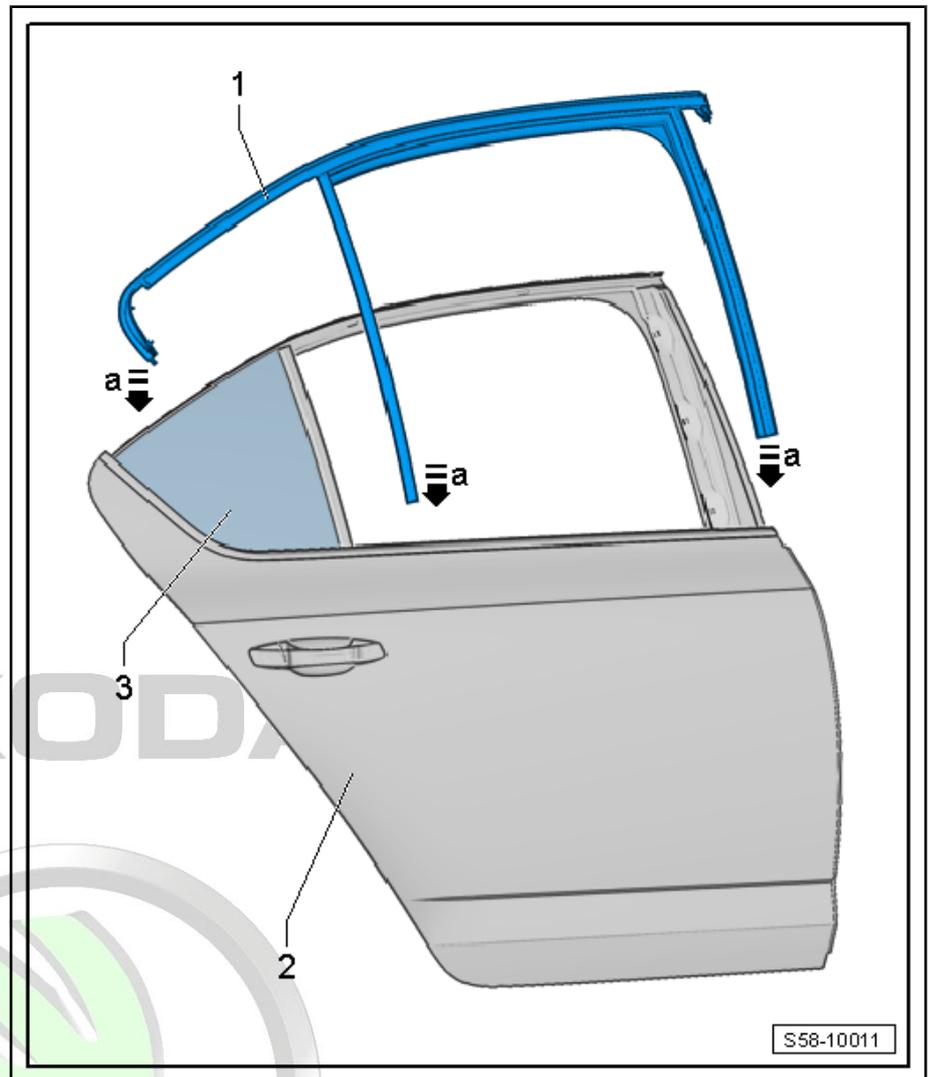


- Pull the window run -1- out of the supports in the door -arrows b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

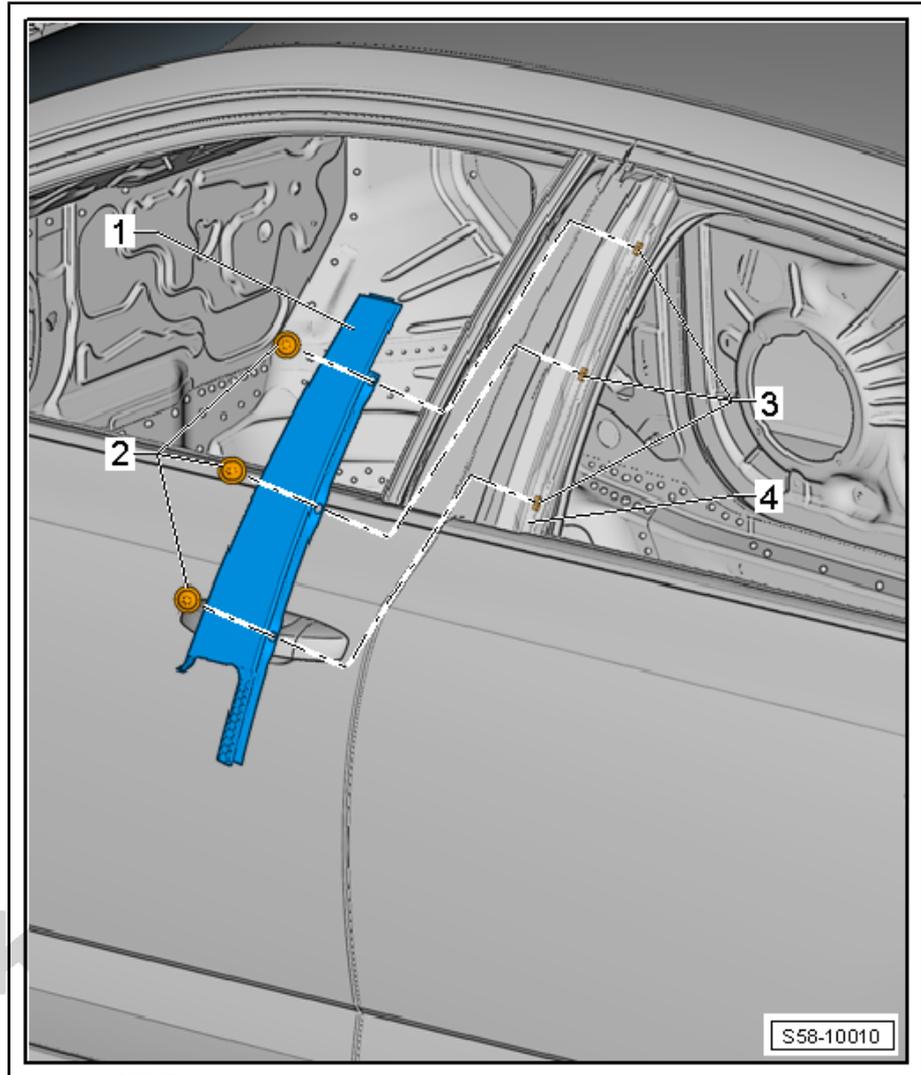
2.16.2 Installing:

- Lower door window into the lower position.



- Slide the window run - 1 - into the supports -arrows a-.
- Press the window run - 1 - evenly all around against the door flange - 2 -.
- Press the sealing lip of the door run from the inside against the door flange.
- Remove window run in column compartment.

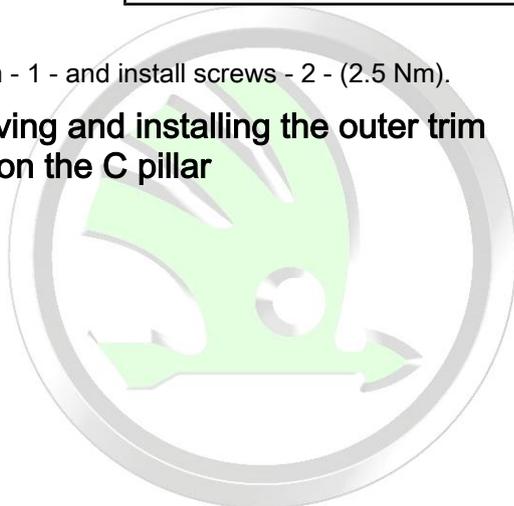
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®



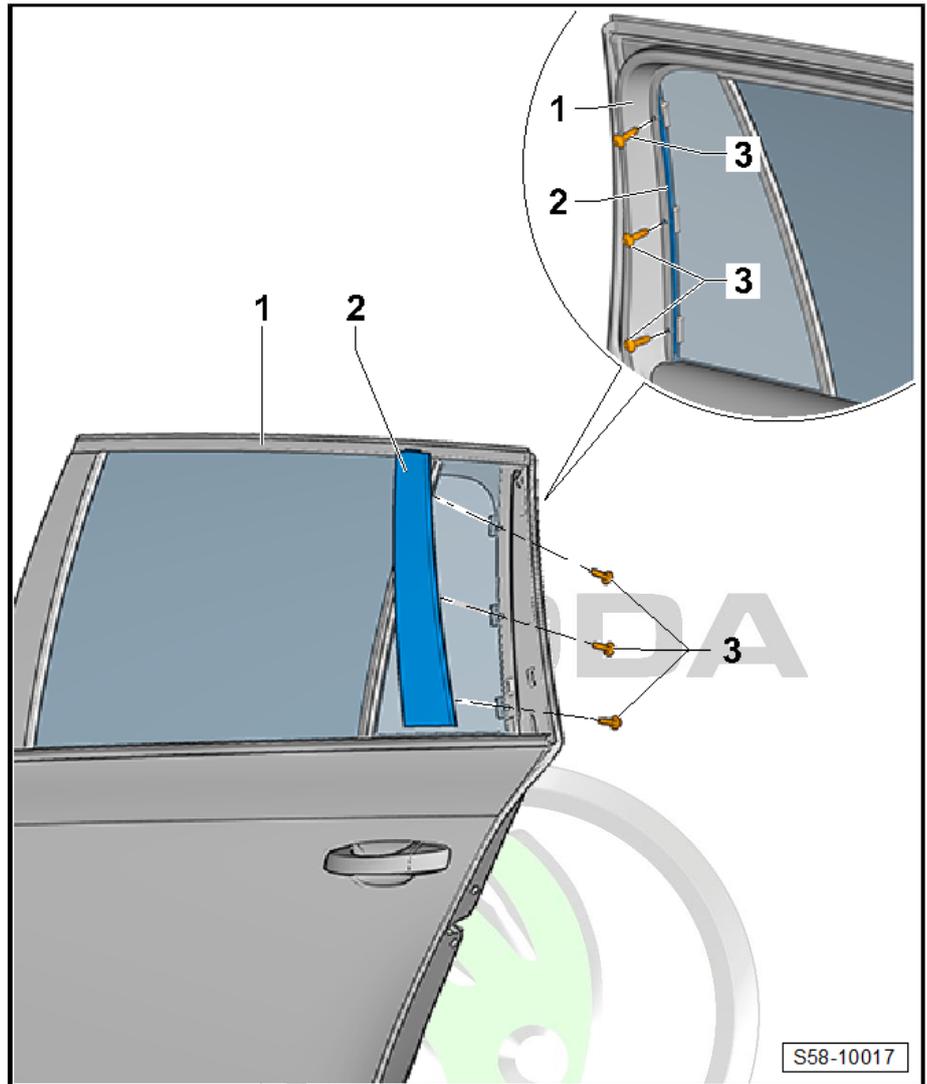
- Install column trim - 1 - and install screws - 2 - (2.5 Nm).

2.16.3 Removing and installing the outer trim panel on the C pillar

Removing:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Removing:

- Partially remove the window guide seal in screw positions - 3 - from the inside of the door.
- Remove screws -3- (2 Nm).
- Partially slide out the outside window shaft seal ⇒ [page 131](#)
- Remove the outer C pillar trim - 2 - from the window run.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.17 Removing and installing the rear fixed door window

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release tool - T30116-

Removing:

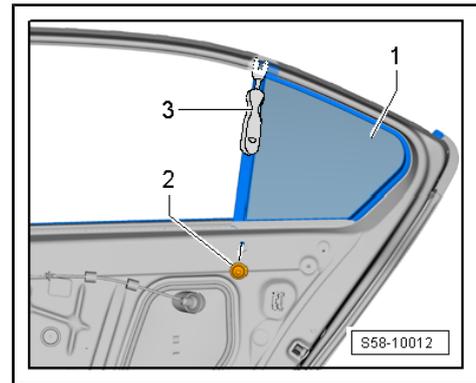
- Remove door window ⇒ [page 114](#) .
- Removing the window run ⇒ [page 122](#) .
- Detach inside window shaft seal ⇒ [page 129](#) .
- Mask off the protective foil from the bolt hole -2-.
- Unscrew screw -2-.



- Slide the seal on the inside of the fixed door window below the leg of the door frame so that the tool T30116 - 3 - can be inserted on the provided point.
- Insert the tool T30116 - 3 - between the pane and the door frame towards the unlocking bolt (in position as shown in the illustration).
- Unlock the fixed pane - 1 - from the vehicle outwards by gently lifting it out using tool T30116.
- Detach the fixed pane - 1 - with the seal on the outer pane slightly after releasing from the door frame.

Installing:

- Slide fixed pane with the seal on the outer pane into the door frame.
- Clip in the securing bolts into the opening in the door frame.
- Push the seal of the fixed pane over the door frame and correctly insert the pane.
- Install screws - 2 -.
- Stick protective foil over bolt hole - 2 -.
- The further work procedure occurs in the reverse order to the removal.



Note

ŠKODA

The securing bolts is a component part of the fixed pane. In case of damage, the fixed pane must be completely replaced.

2.18 Removing and installing the fixed door window (Octavia III - Combi)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

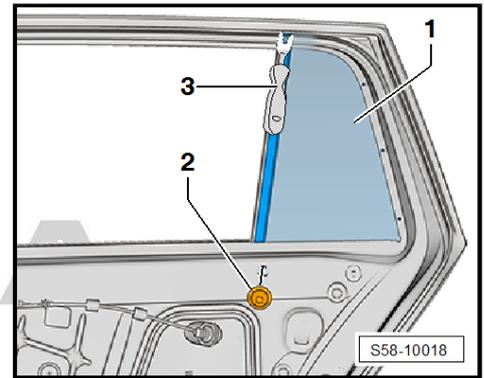
- ◆ Release tool - T30116-

Removing:

- Remove door window ⇒ [page 114](#) .
- Removing the window run ⇒ [page 122](#) .
- Detach inside window shaft seal ⇒ [page 129](#) .
- Mask off the protective foil from the bolt hole -2-.
- Remove screw -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Slide the seal on the inside of the fixed door window below the leg of the door frame so that the tool T30116 - 3 - can be inserted on the provided point.
- Insert the tool T30116 - 3 - between the pane and the door frame towards the unlocking bolt (in position as shown in the illustration).
- Unlock the fixed pane - 1 - from the vehicle outwards by gently lifting it out using tool T30116.
- Detach the fixed pane - 1 - with the seal on the outer pane slightly after releasing from the door frame.



Installing:

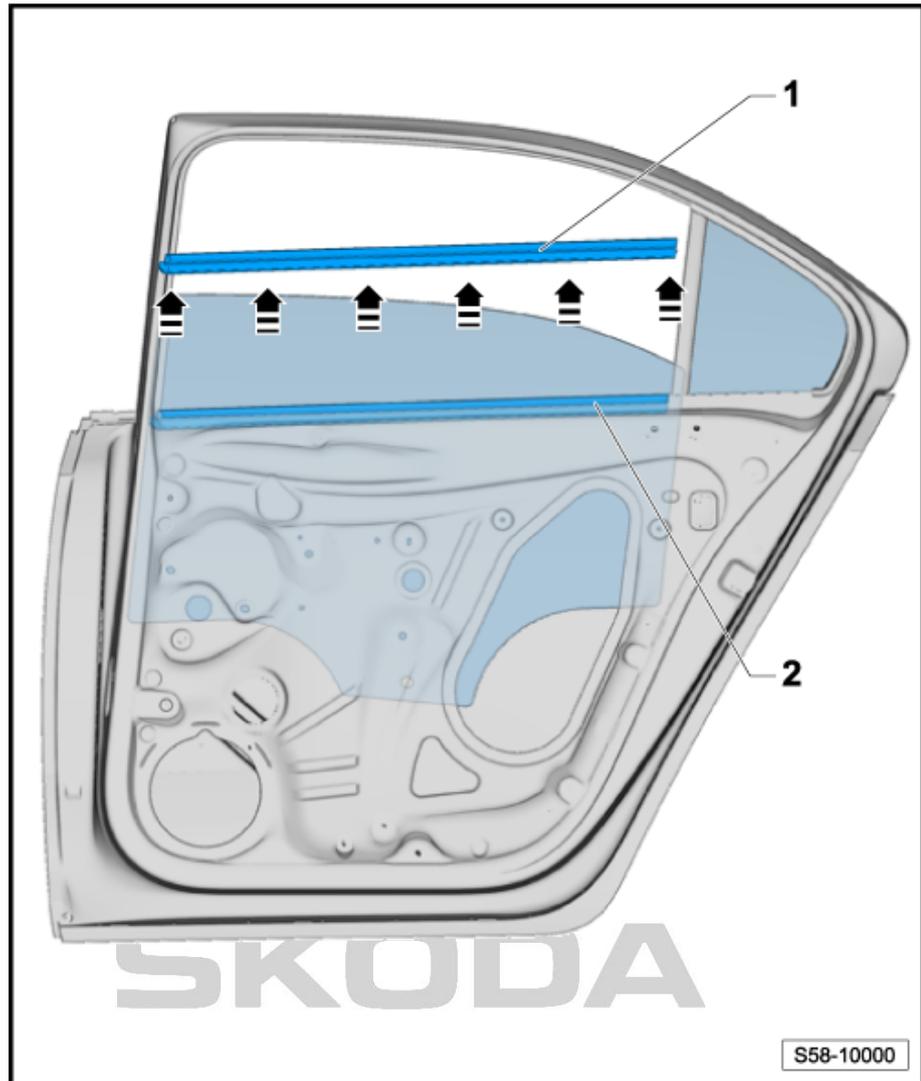
- Slide fixed pane with the seal on the outer pane into the door frame.
- Clip in the securing bolts into the opening in the door frame.
- Push the seal of the fixed pane over the door frame and correctly insert the pane.
- Install screws -2-.
- Stick protective foil over bolt hole - 2 -.
- The further work procedure occurs in the reverse order to the removal.

Note

The securing bolts is a component part of the fixed pane. In case of damage, the fixed pane must be completely replaced.

2.19 Removing and installing the inner window shaft seal

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. © ŠKODA AUTO A. S.



Removing:

- Remove rear door trim panel ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Detach the seal -1- evenly -arrows- from the flange -2-.

Installing:

- Press the seal - 1 - uniformly by hand onto the flange - 2 -.

2.20 Removing and installing the outer window shaft seal



Note

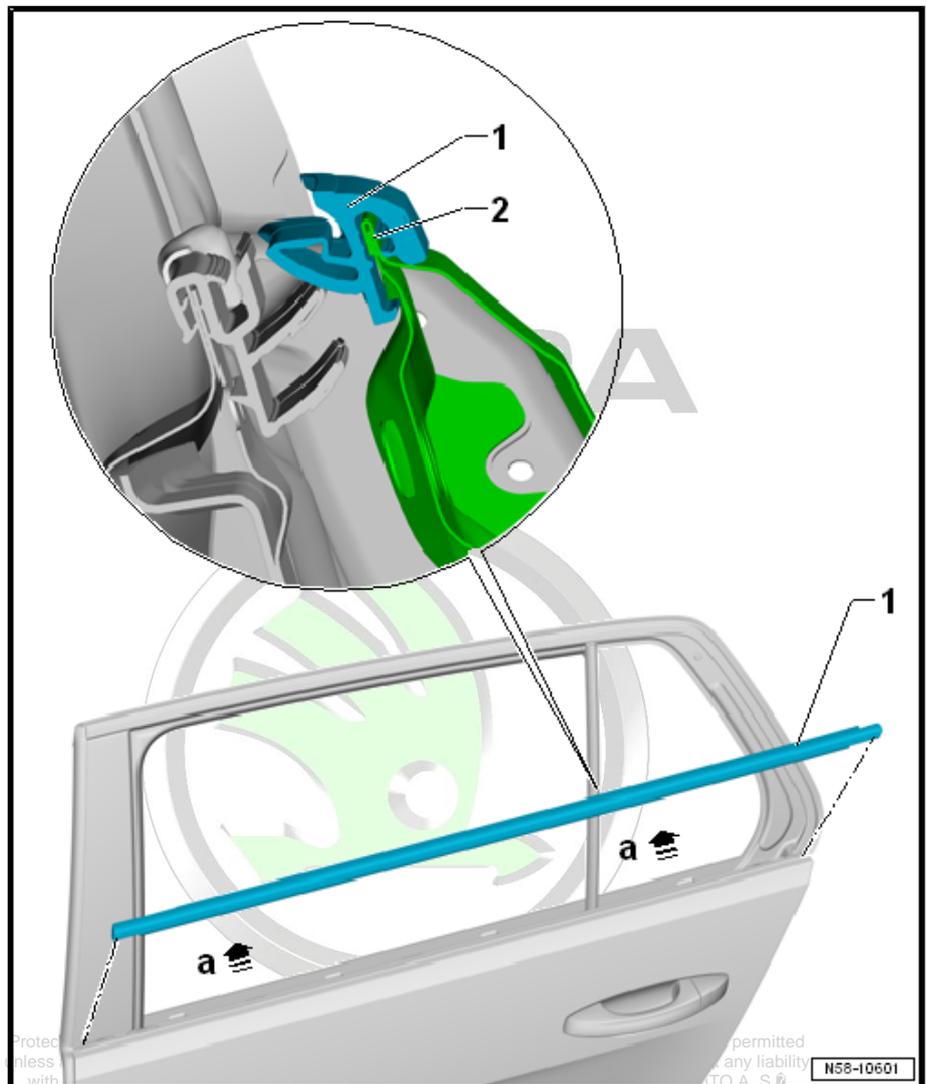
The window shaft seal is a component part of the fixed window and is removed with it at the same time ⇒ [page 127](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.21 Removing and installing the outside window shaft seal (Octavia III - Combi)

Note

- ◆ *The core of the outer window shaft seal consists of a metal insert.*
- ◆ *If the core is bent, the seal can no longer be straightened. It remains "warped".*
- ◆ *Therefore the seal must be removed uniformly and without bending it.*



Removing:

- Remove the seal evenly in - the direction of arrow a - from the door flange - 2 - towards the top.

Installing:

- Mount the outer window shaft seal onto the door flange and press it evenly.

**Note**

Do not use any impact tools!

2.22 Removing and installing the inside door seal

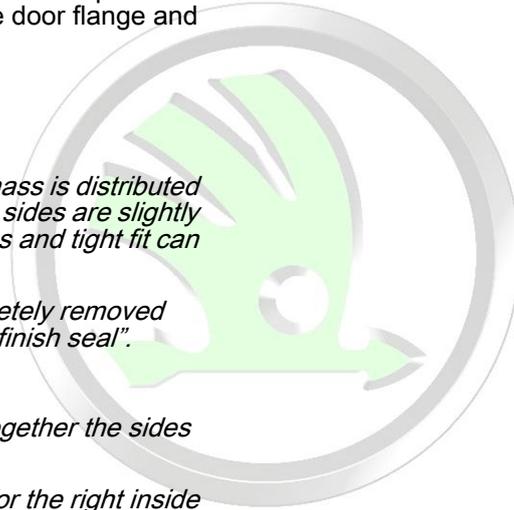
During the installation in series, the inside door seals are provided with a sealing compound which is placed on the door flange and subsequently rolled up.

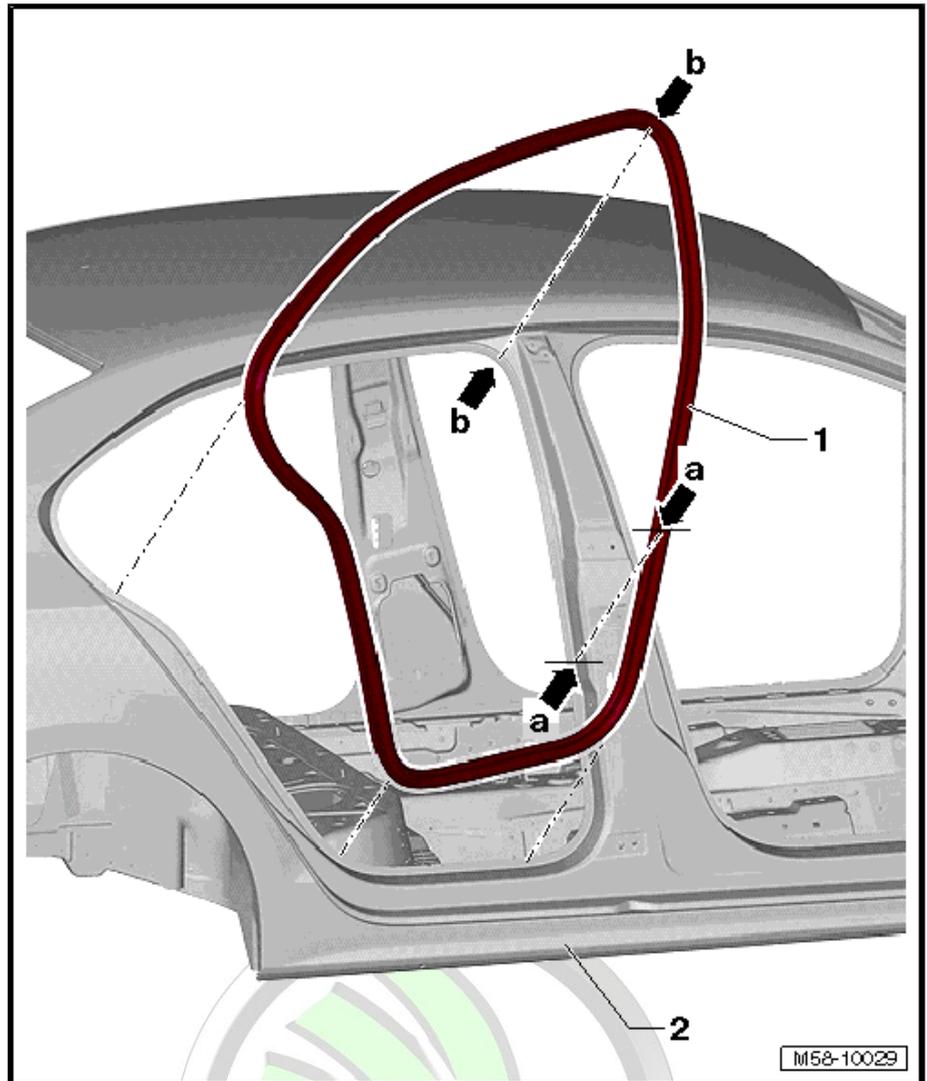
**Note**

- ◆ *During the removal of the seal, the sealing mass is distributed on the inside of the seal. While doing so, the sides are slightly bent open. If the seal is re-installed, tightness and tight fit can no longer be guaranteed.*
- ◆ *For this reason, each seal which was completely removed must be replaced with a so-called "hammer finish seal".*
- ◆
- ◆ *If the seals were detached partially, press together the sides of the seal before installing.*
- ◆ *Removing and installing is only carried out for the right inside door seal. The same applies therefore when removing and installing the left inside door seal.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

ŠKODA





Removing:

- Remove trim panels of pillars ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Detach the inside door seal - 1 - from the body flange - 2 -.

Installing:

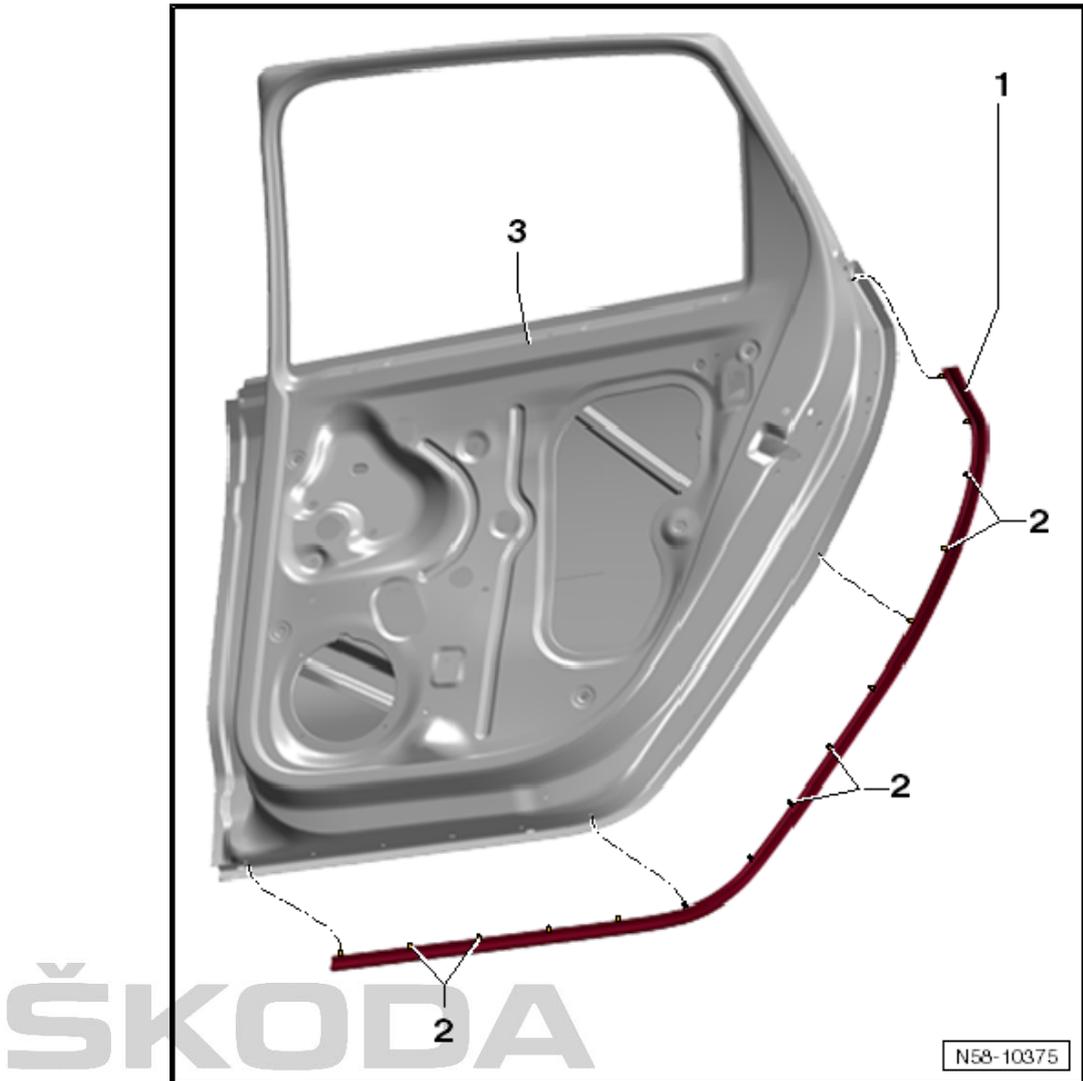
- When installing the inside door seal, start in the top radius of the door cutout -arrows b-.
- Sealing joint at the point -arrows a-.

2.23 Removing and installing the outside door seal

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

i Note

Check the clips - 2 - for damage, if necessary replace them.



Removing:

- Unclip the clips - 2 - and remove the seal - 1 - from the door - 3 -.

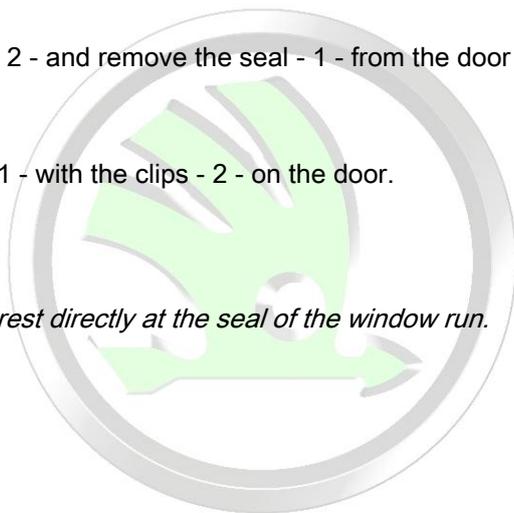
Installing:

- Press the seal - 1 - with the clips - 2 - on the door.



Note

The seal - 1 - must rest directly at the seal of the window run.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

60 – Sunroof

1 Summary of components Sliding/tilting roof

Note

To ensure the Sliding/tilting roof works correctly after removal and re-installation of the motor, an adjustment is required ⇒ [page 150](#) .

1 - Sliding/tilting roof frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 150](#) .

2 - Gasket

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 142](#) .

3 - Front cover

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 150](#) .

4 - Trim panel

5 - Screw

- 2 Nm

6 - Screw

- 3 Nm

7 - Engine (control unit for sliding roof - J245-)



WARNING

After replacing the motor, the coding must be carried out via Guided Functions in the Targeted fault finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 149](#) .

8 - Water drain hose

9 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm

10 - Frame for sliding block guide

- With sliding block guide and Bowden cables.
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 159](#) .

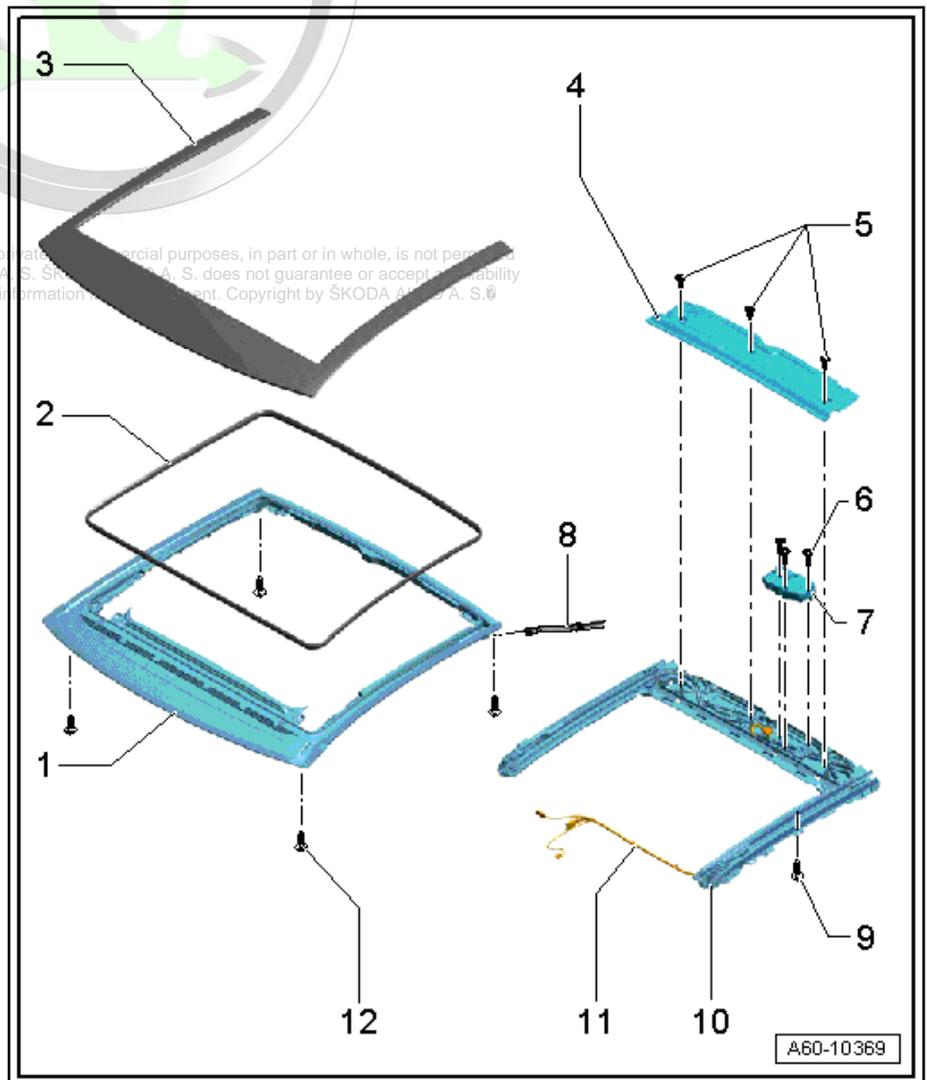
11 - Wiring loom

12 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm

- Note assembly sequence of screws.

- Tighten the front screws first on the right then on the left.





- Tighten the rear screws first on the right then on the left.

Summary of components, glass cover, spoiler

1 - Spoiler

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 136](#) .

2 - Spring

- During installation, insert spring into the holder towards the rear.

3 - Screw

- 1.5 Nm

4 - Screw

- 5.5 Nm

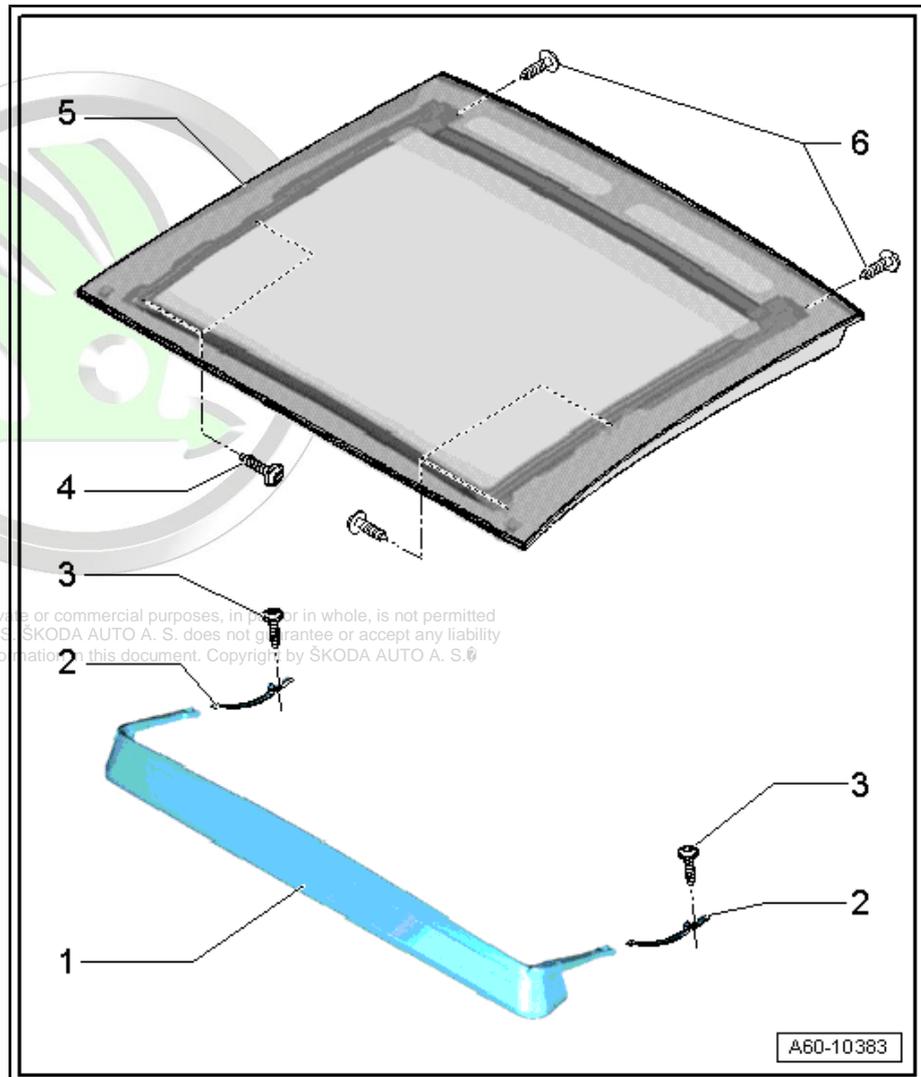
5 - Glass for sliding roof

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 139](#) .

6 - Screw

- 5.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



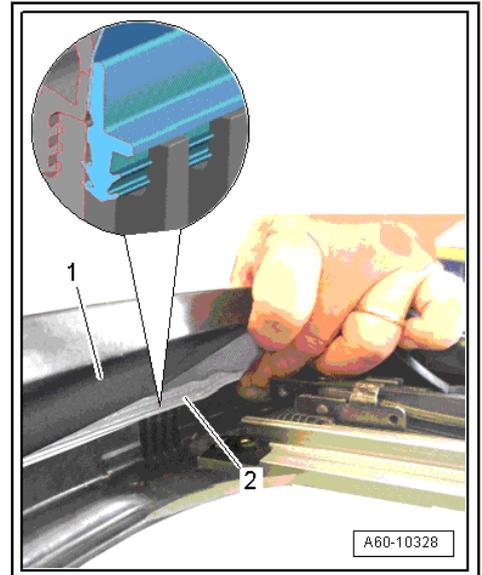
A60-10383

1.1 Removing and installing spoiler

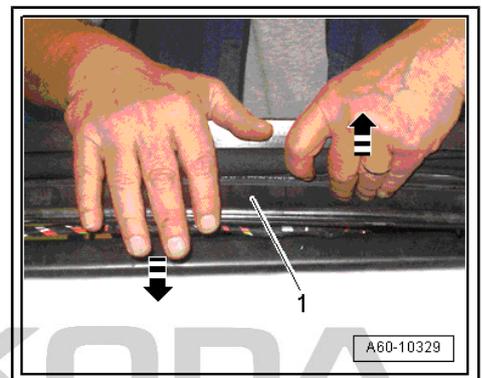
Removing:

- Open up the sliding roof in full.

- Press the spoiler - 1 - down and take out the profile seal - 2 - from the mount at the edges.



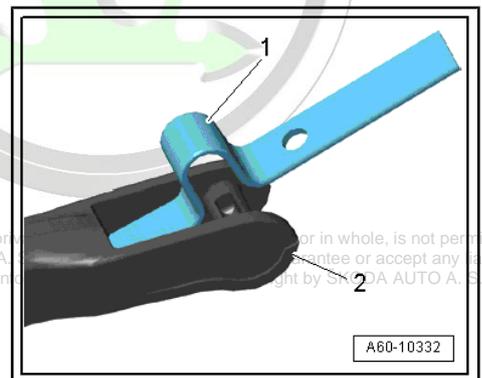
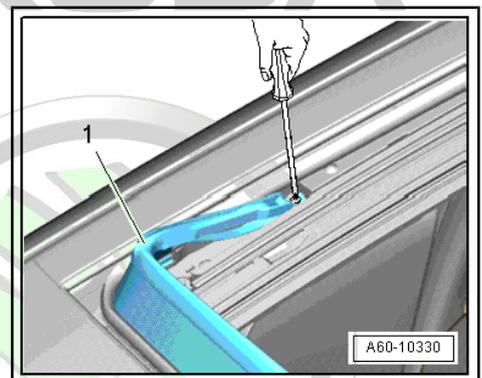
- Push the spoiler further downwards and take out the profile seal - 1 - upwards out of the catches out of the mount.



- Remove the screws from the mounting left and right.
- Lift out the spoiler from the bracket towards the front and lift it upwards.

Installing:

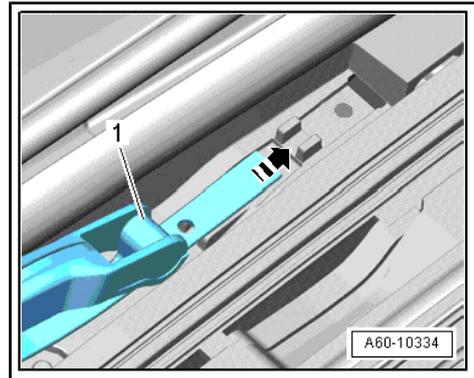
- Place the spring - 1 - into the spoiler.



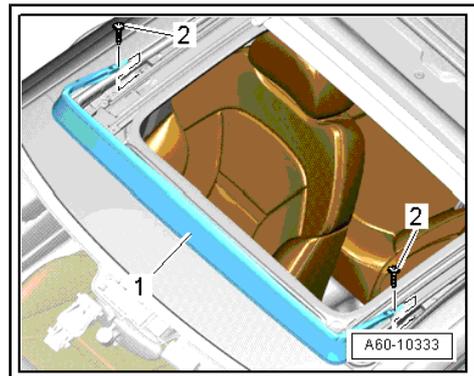
Protected by copyright. Copying for private use, or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A.S. or its subsidiaries. ŠKODA AUTO A.S. does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information published in this manual. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A.S. 2013



- Push the spoiler with spring - 1 - into the holder moving it towards the rear.



- Tighten screws - 2 - to the tightening torque
=> [Item 3 \(page 136\)](#) .

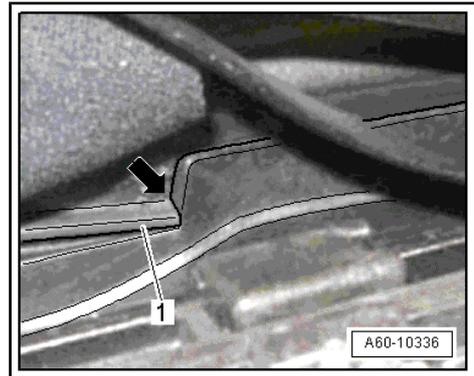


- Align the centric-formed seal - 1 - and allow it to rest against the stop - arrow -.



Note

The profile seal must rest against the stop otherwise it will warp when pressed into the securing frame.

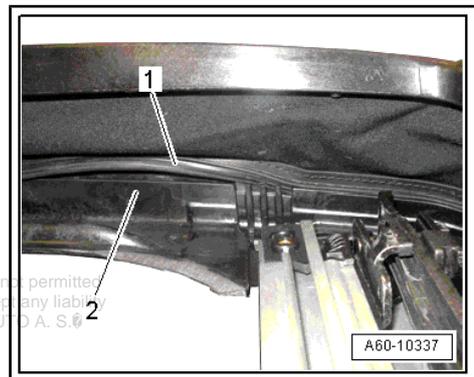


- Press the profile seal - 1 - into the securing frame - 2 -.



Note

Press the profile seal evenly and completely into the securing frame to prevent warping.



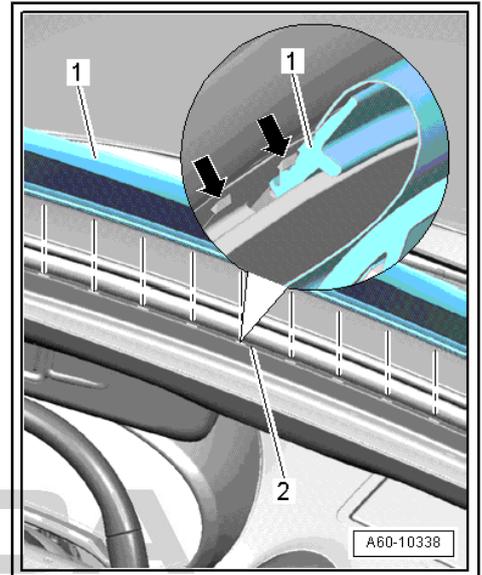
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Press the profile seal - 1 - with the assembly lever into the locking lugs - arrows - on the securing frame - 2 -.



Caution

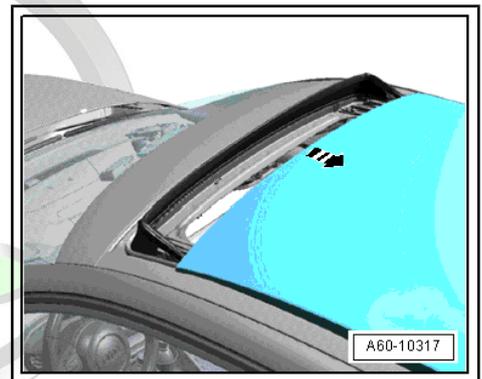
Do not use a screwdriver to press in the profile seal to avoid damaging the meshing.



1.2 Removing and installing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof

Removing:

- Open the glass panel approx. 150 mm towards the rear.

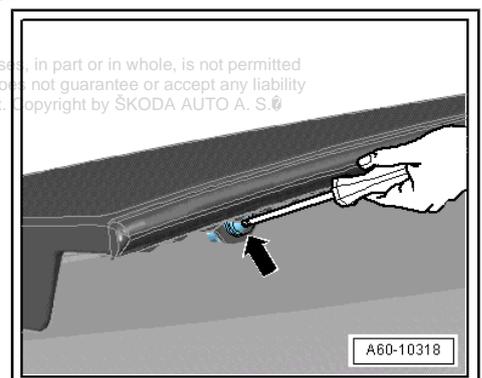


- Undo the screws on the rear of the glass cover on the left and right - arrow -.



Caution

Cover the opening between the A-pillar and sunroof frame in a suitable way (with a cloth or paper, etc.) to prevent the screws from falling into the vehicle.

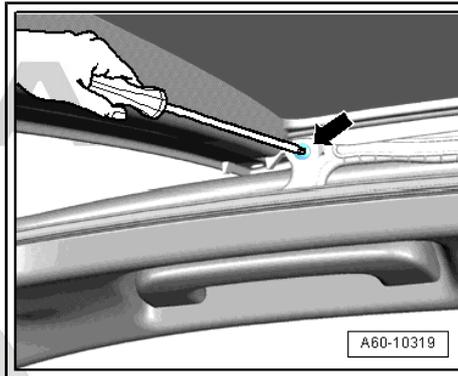


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by SKODA AUTO A. S.®

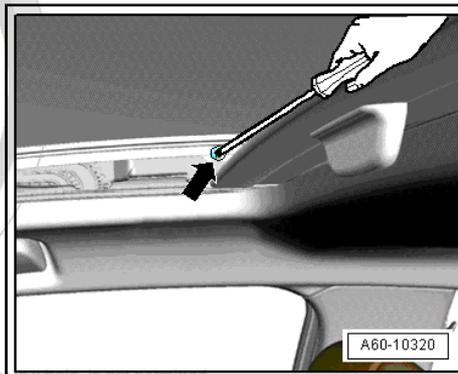


- Undo the front screws - arrow - from the glass cover on the left and right.

ŠKODA



- Only slacken the screws in the middle of the glass cover - arrow -.

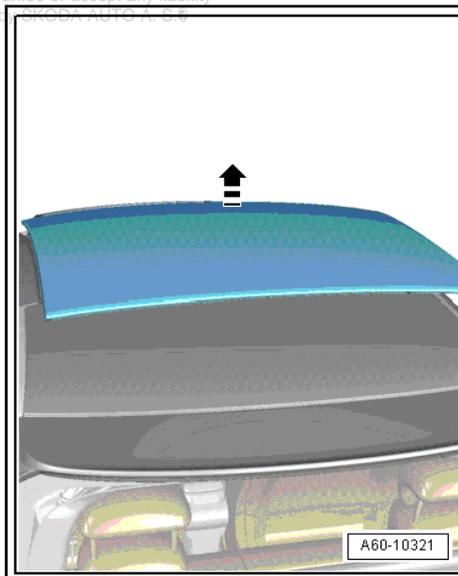


- Together with a second mechanic, lift out the glass cover from the sliding block guide.



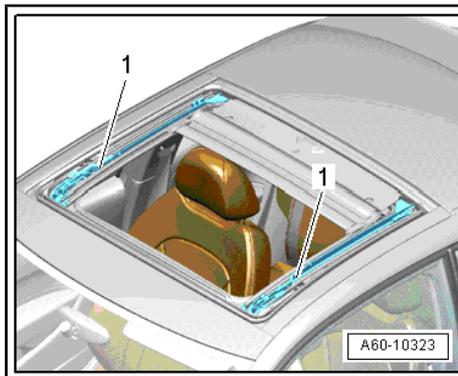
Note

The sliding blocks always drive into the position »Roof closed« to prevent damage to the sliding blocks after the glass cover is removed.

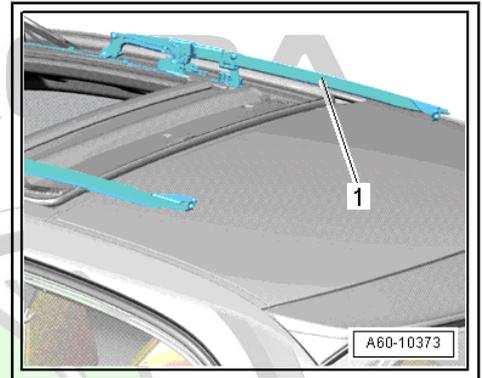


Retract the sliding blocks - 1 - into the position » Roof closed «.

Installing:



- Open the sliding blocks approx. 150 mm towards the rear.
- Together with a second mechanic, insert the glass cover into the sliding block guide.

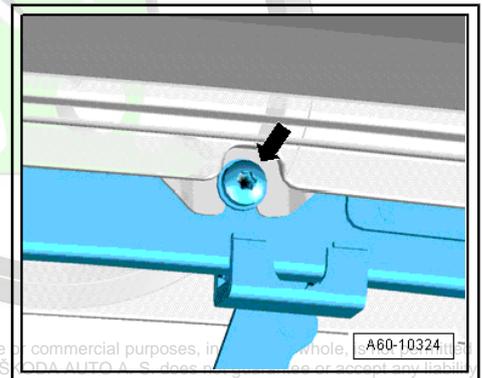


- Insert the glass cover frame with recess - arrow - over the slackened screws.

i Note

Note assembly sequence of screws.

- First tighten the screws at the rear and at the front, and then in the middle.
- Close the sliding roof and check its position vis-a-vis the roof.
- Open and adjust the glass cover if required.
- Tighten the screws to the prescribed tightening torque.

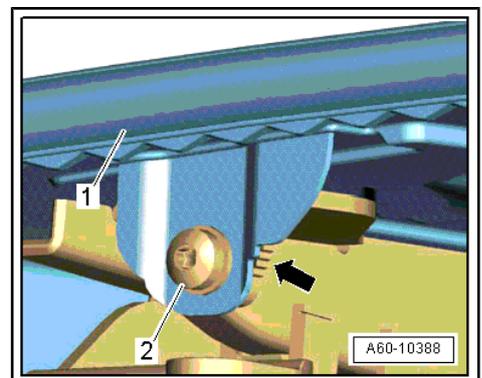


1.3 Adjusting the glass panel for sliding/tilting roof

i Note

Carry out a height adjustment for the glass cover using the rear edge alone.

- Tilt the glass cover - 1 - and undo the screws - 2 - on the rear edge.
- Undo the middle screws on the glass cover.
- Carry out a height adjustment of the glass cover with the markings - arrow -.
- Tighten the screws on the rear edge of the glass cover to the specified tightening torque.
- Close the sliding/tilting roof and tighten the middle screws to the specified tightening torque.



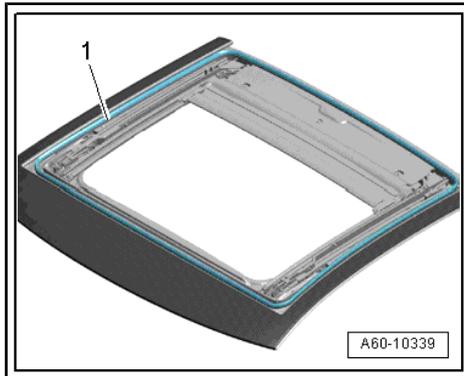


1.4 Replacing the glass roof pane seal

Remove top seal:

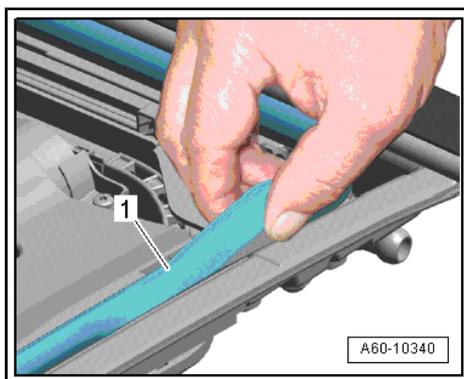
- Glass cover has been removed.

1 - Top seal.

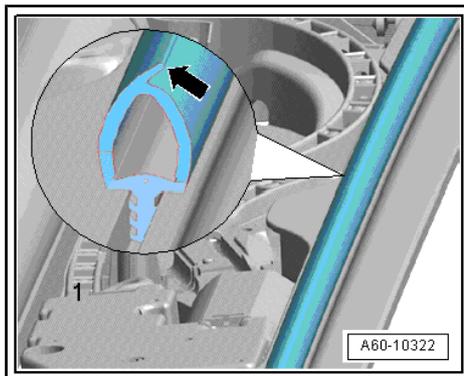


- Lift out the seal from the sealing channel upwards all the way around.

Install top seal:

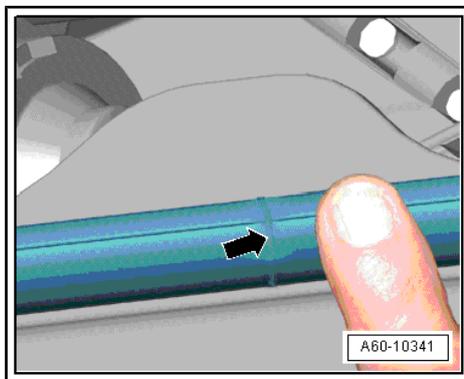
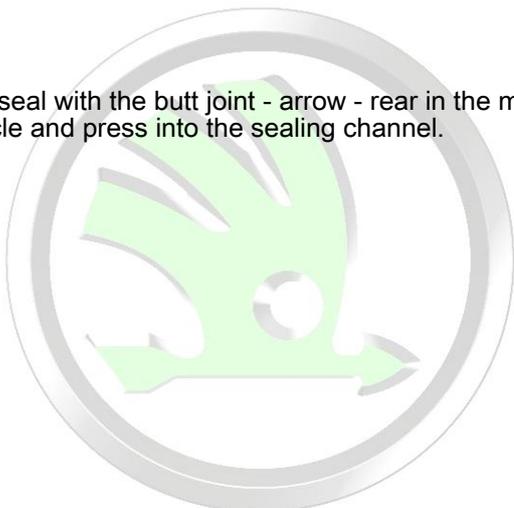


Place the seal in the sealing channel with the sealing lip facing out.



ŠKODA

- Centre the seal with the butt joint - arrow - rear in the middle of the vehicle and press into the sealing channel.



- Press the seal into the sealing channel all the way round.

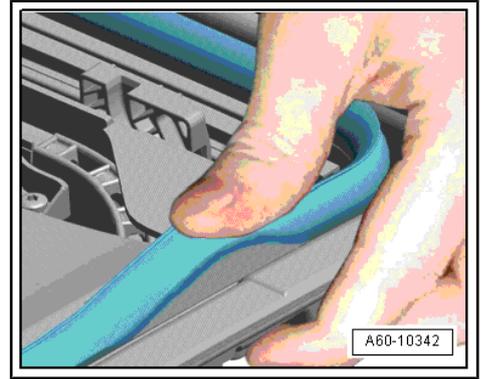


Caution

The seal must not be stretched otherwise it cannot be pressed into the sealing channel completely.

Replacing the glass roof pane seal

- Open sliding/tilting roof.



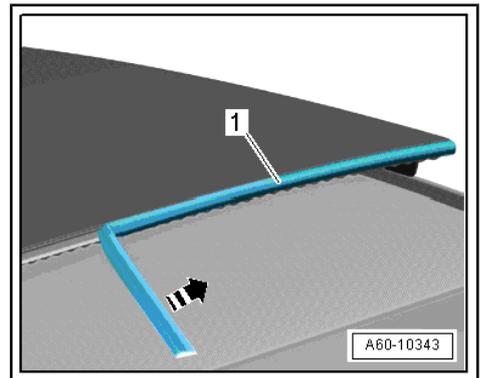
- Remove the rear glass cover seal from the sealing channel.

Installing:

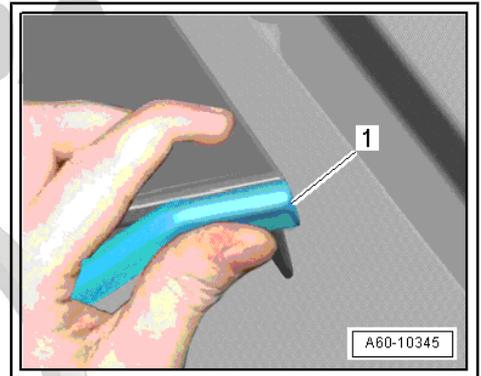


Note

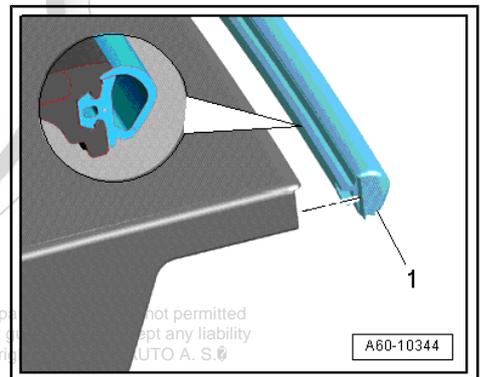
To make installation of the seal easier, you can coat it with a soapy solution.



- Insert the seal - 1 - on both sides flush to the glass.



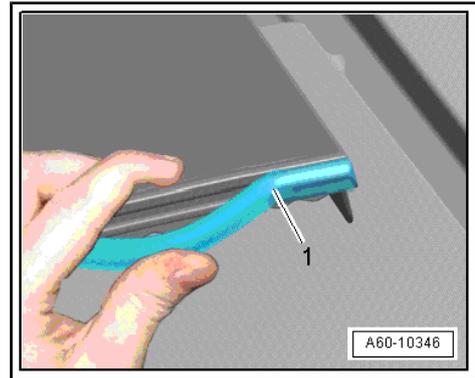
- Press the seal into the sealing channel as shown.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © ŠKODA AUTO A. S. 2013

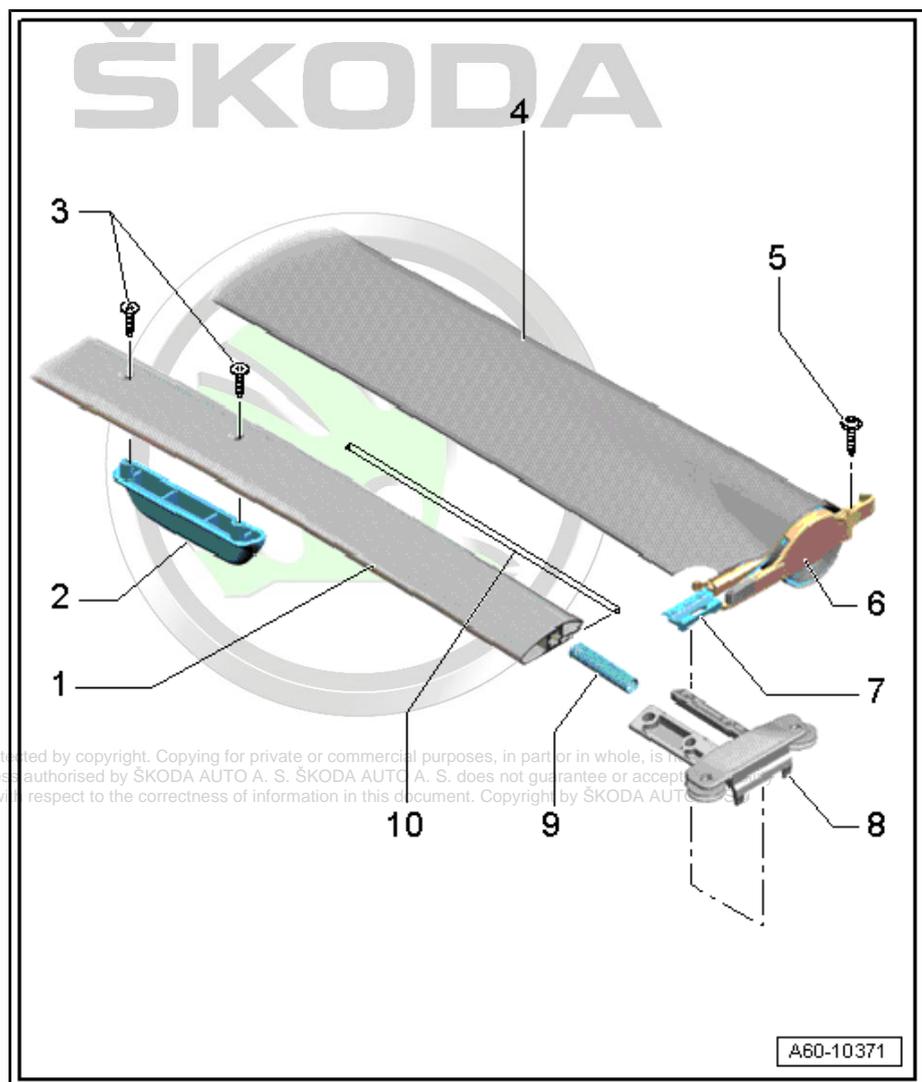


- Press the seal towards the middle into the sealing channel on both sides.



1.5 Summary of components - screen for sliding roof

- 1 - Diagonal ties
 - Removing and installing
=> [page 146](#) .
- 2 - Door handle
- 3 - Screw
 - 1 Nm
- 4 - Screen for sliding roof
 - Removing and installing
=> [page 144](#) .
- 5 - Screw
 - 2 Nm
- 6 - Centring
 - Is not as spare part.
- 7 - Guide part
 - Is not as spare part.
- 8 - Sliding block
 - Is not as spare part.
- 9 - Spring
 - Is not as spare part.
- 10 - Profile seal
 - Is not as spare part.
 - Insert into the diagonal tie from the side
=> [page 146](#) .

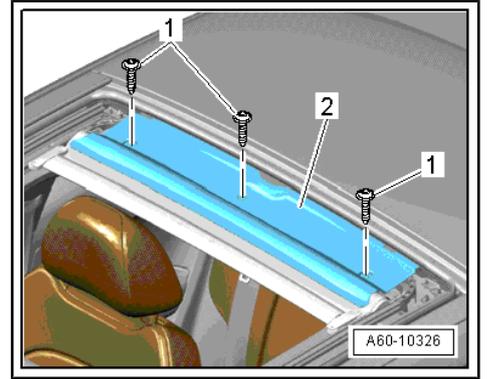


1.6 Removing and installing the sliding roof screen

Removing:

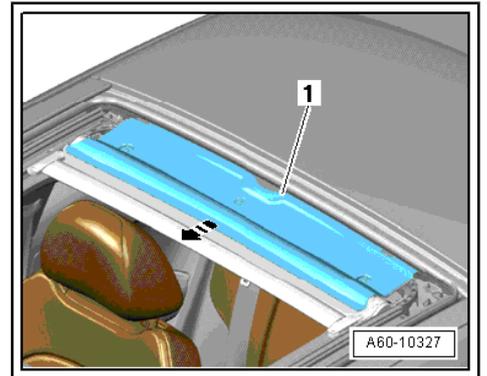
- Glass cover has been removed.

- Unscrew the screws - 1 - from the rear cover - 2 -.

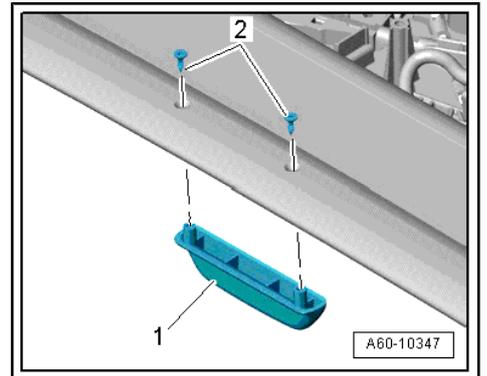


- Remove the cover - 1 - in - direction of arrow -.

ŠKODA

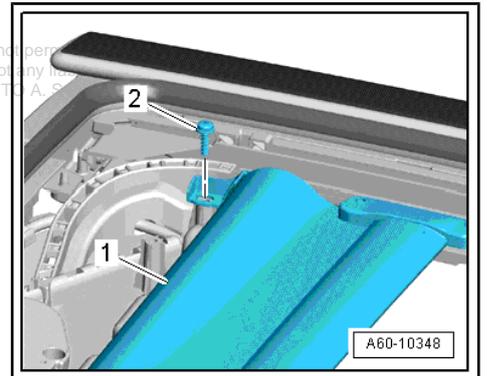


- Release screws -2- and unscrew and remove door handle -1-.



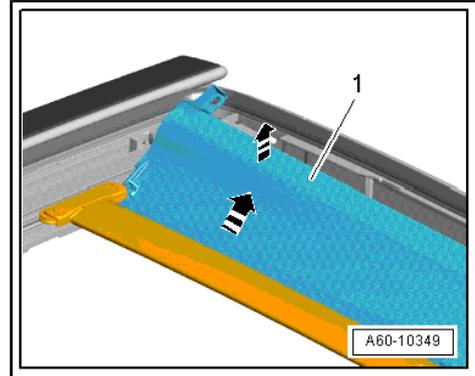
- Unscrew screws - 2 - from the screen - 1 - for the rear sliding roof.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

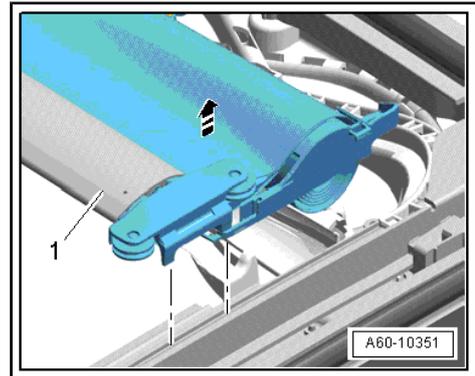




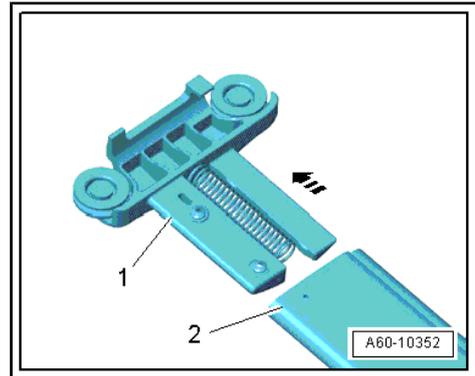
- Lift the screen for sliding roof - 1 -, at an angle to the rear as shown in the image, and push the diagonal tie with the sliding blocks towards the rear in - direction of the arrow - out of the guide.



- Lift the sunscreen with the diagonal tie.

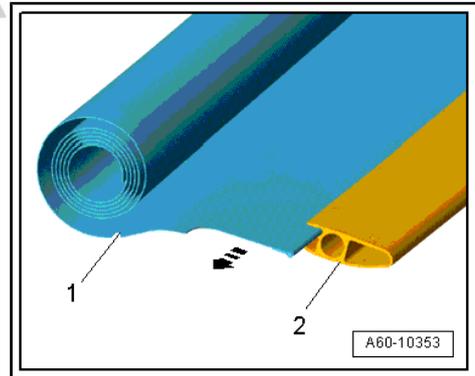


- Remove the sliding block - 1 - from the diagonal tie - 2 - on the left and right.

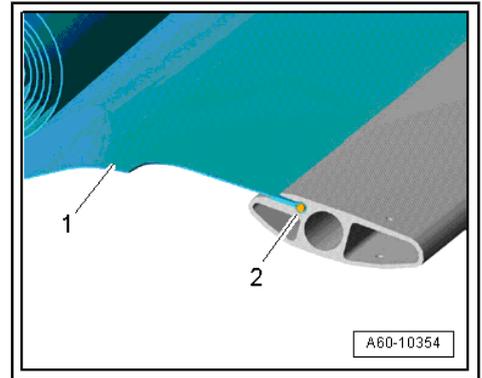


- Remove the material from the screen for sliding roof out of the diagonal tie from the side.

Installing the diagonal tie:

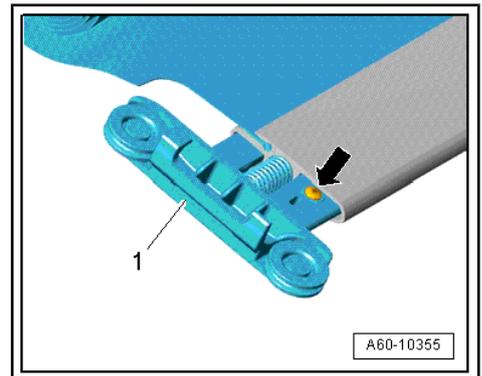


- Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:
- Carefully insert the screen material - 1 - into the profile seal channel of the diagonal tie - 2 -.



- Insert the sliding blocks - 1 - into the diagonal tie.

Caution
When inserting the sliding blocks, the rubber buffer - arrow - must not chafe.

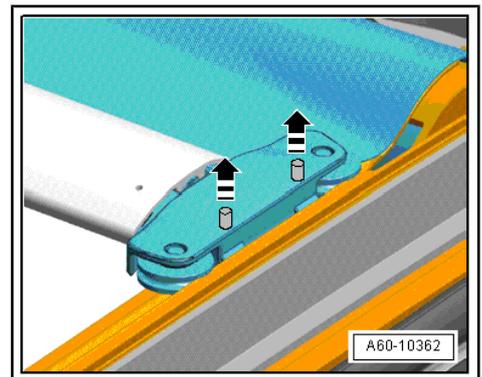


Install screen for sliding roof:

- The diagonal tie is inserted into the screen for sliding roof.

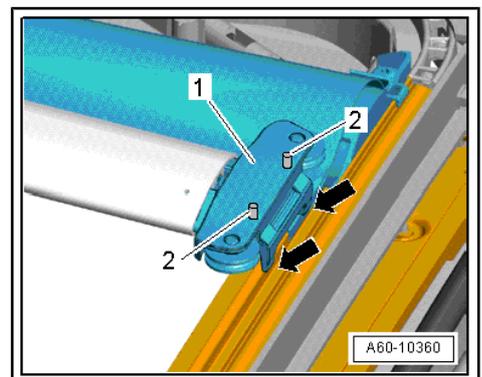
Note

Before installing the sliding block into the runner, the guide pins must be pressed out a little from the rear in the - direction of arrow -.



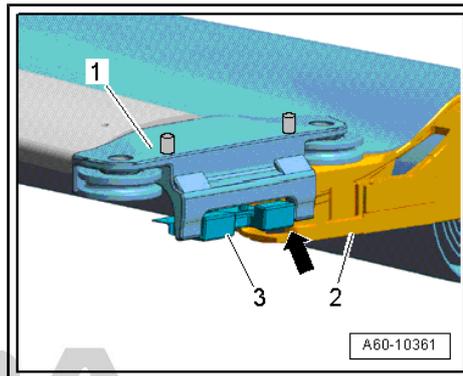
- Insert the screen for sliding roof into the sliding block of the runner.

Caution
The sliding block and its rollers must be able to be pushed into the guide part correctly.

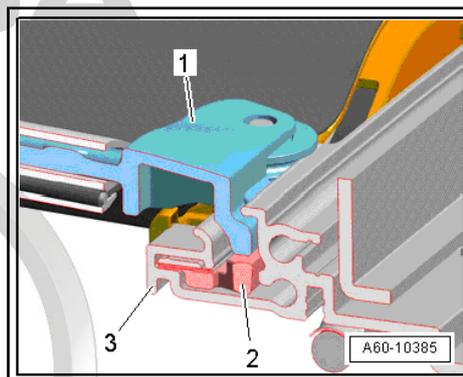


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

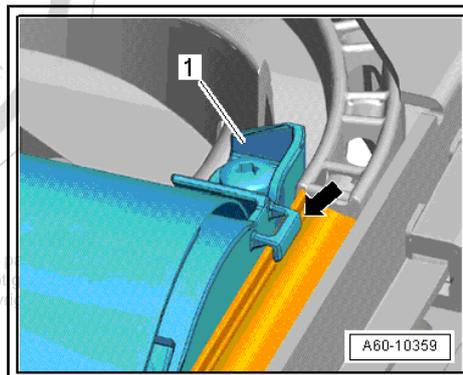
- The guide part is shown without a runner in the diagram for reasons of clarity.



- Slide in the driver - 2 - into the runner - 3 - as shown in the diagram.
- The sliding blocks - 1 - are slid onto the guide part - 2 - from the top.
- The driver - 2 - must engage in the sliding block - 1 - when installed correctly.

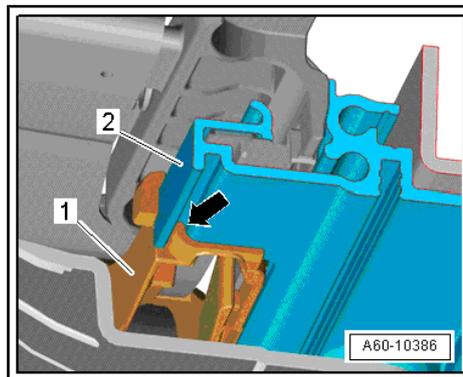


- The centering of the screen for sliding roof - 1 - must be slid into the runner - arrow - above on both sides.

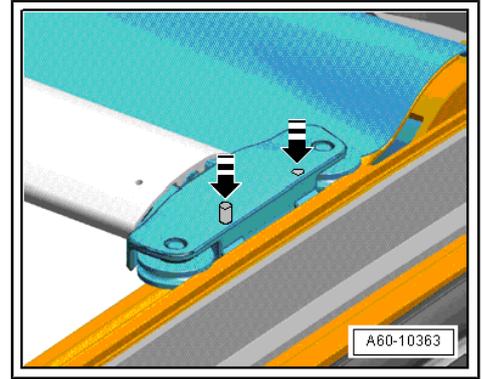


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

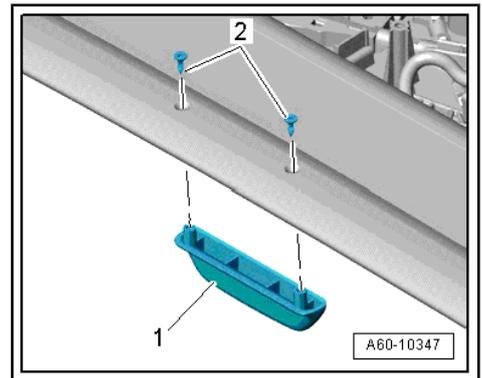
- The runner - 2 - below must be as shown in the diagram.
- The runners of the centering must be guided correctly in the runner - arrow -.
- Tighten to the specified tightening torque
 => [Item 5 \(page 144\)](#) .



- Press the guide pins flush into the sliding block.



- Re-assemble the handle onto the diagonal tie and check the function of the screen.
- Tighten the screws to the prescribed tightening torque
⇒ [Item 3 \(page 144\)](#) .



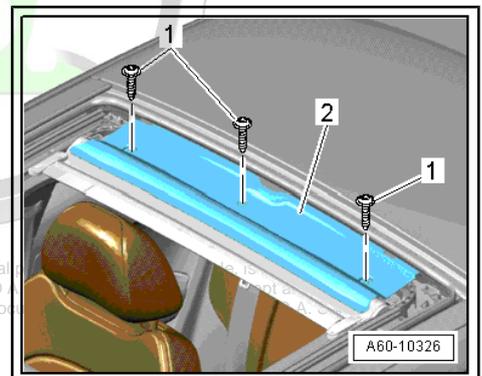
1.7 Removing and installing motor for sliding/tilting roof

Note

- ◆ If you need to remove the faulty motor while the sliding roof is closed, the moulded headliner in the region of the screws ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 136\)](#) in the rear edge of the cover must be lowered and the glass cover must be removed.
- ◆ To ensure the sliding/tilting roof works correctly after removal and re-assembly of the motor or replacement of the motor, an adjustment is required ⇒ [page 150](#) .

Removing:

- Glass panel removed ⇒ [page 139](#) .
- Remove screws - 1 - and remove rear cover - 2 - .
- Disconnect the electrical plug connector from the motor.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is prohibited without the written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. is not responsible for the correctness of information in this document.



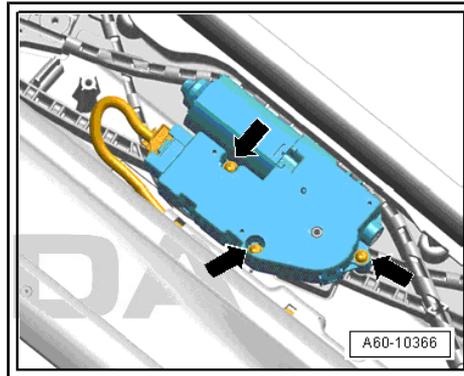
- Unscrew the screws on the motor and remove the motor upwards.

Installing:



WARNING

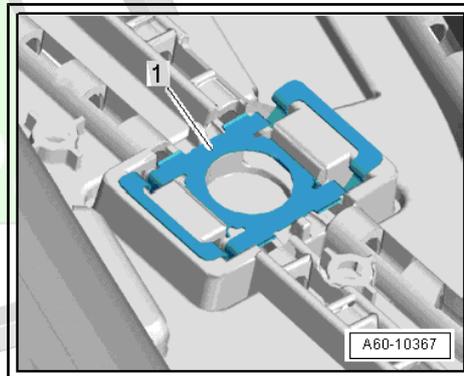
After replacing the control unit for the sliding roof - J245 - the coding must be carried out via Guided Functions in the Targeted fault finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



Note

During removal of the motor, the locking clip -1- may become loose. You will need to place it back into the correct position.

- Before installing the motor, place the locking clip into the correct position of the frame by pressing it in completely.
- Insert the motor and tighten the screws to the specified tightening torque ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 135\)](#) .
- Carry out the coding of the control unit for the sliding roof - J245 - .



1.8 Adjustment run of the motor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness or completeness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Note

To ensure the sliding/tilting roof runs correctly after removal and re-installation of the motor or after a motor replacement, an adjustment run is required.



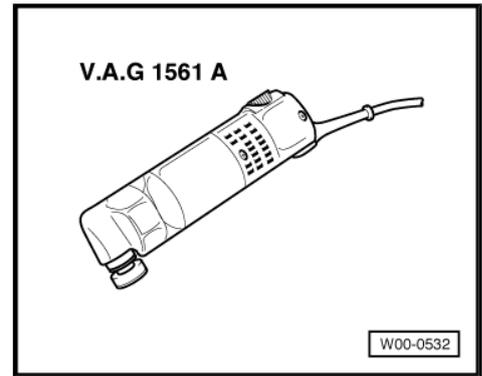
WARNING

- *The adjustment run may only be carried out while the glass is installed. Be careful not to damage it.*
- *After replacing the control unit for the sliding roof - J245 - or the control unit for the roof screen - J394 - the coding and adjustment must be carried out via the Guided Functions in the Targeted fault finding under diagnostics address word 19 ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

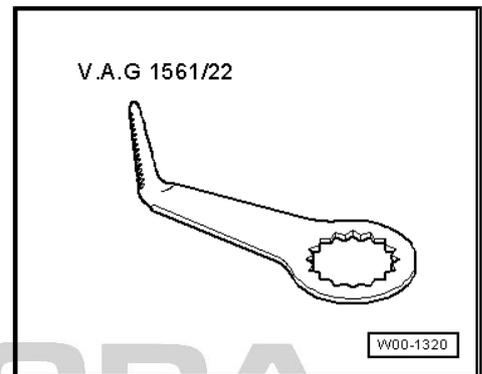
1.9 Removing and installing cover for sliding/tilting roof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

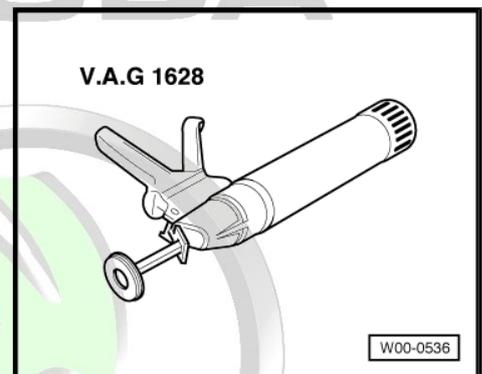
- ◆ Power knife, e.g. - V.A.G 1561A -



- ◆ Saw blade Ø 80 mm - e.g. - V.A.G 1561/26 -
- ◆ Cutting knife, L shaped, length 25.4 mm - e.g. - V.A.G 1561/22 -



- ◆ Manual cartridge gun, e.g. - V.A.G 1628 -



Materials:

- ◆ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04 -
- ◆ Glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02-
- ◆ Assembly glue - D 190 MKD A3-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Removing:

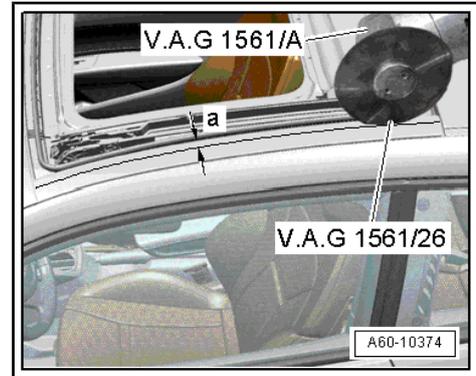


It cannot be removed without being destroyed!

**Caution**

Tape over the surfaces of the body around the sliding/tilting roof with adhesive tape to protect the paintwork.

- At a distance - a - = 10 mm from the inner edge, mark the separation cut along the entire length of the cover.



ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

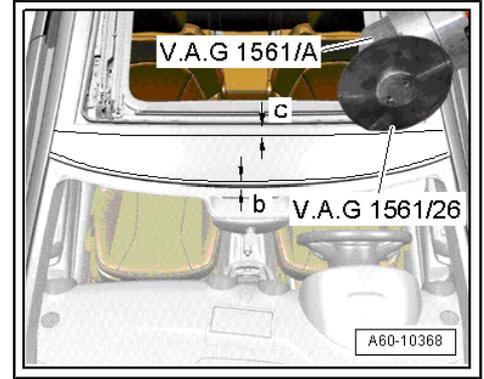
- Mark the separation cuts at a distance - b - = 10 mm from the front edge and at a distance - c - = 10 mm from the rear edge.



Caution

Set the depth stop to a depth of 5 mm, due to the small space between front cover and frame.

- Using the power knife - V.A.G 1561A- and saw blade, Ø 80mm - V.A.G 1561/26- separate the cover from the rear edge towards the front in the marked separation cut position.
- In the marked position, separate the cover on the front edge and the rear edge cross-ways.
- Remove the removed material to make the glue beads accessible.
- Using the electric knife - V.A.G 1561A- and cutting knife, L - shaped, length 25.4 mm - V.A.G 1561/22- cut through the glue beads from back to front on both sides.
- Also cut through the glue beads on the front cover.
- Cut through the glue beads on the middle of the cover with cutting wire and two handles. Remove the rest of the cover.



Installing:



Caution

- ◆ ***Clean the adhesive surfaces of dirt and grease.***
- ◆ ***Cut back old glue residues on the adhesive surface to the required extent just prior to glueing the new sliding roof.***
- ◆ ***Do not prime the adhesive surface and do not treat with cleaning solution.***



Note

- ◆ ***Carry out the installation while the sliding/tilting roof is closed.***
- ◆ ***The position of the glue beads is shown on the cover press part of the sliding roof.***
- Do not cut back the remaining glue bead on the sliding/tilting roof until just prior to installation.



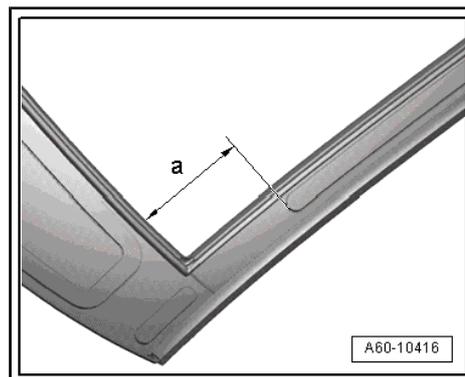
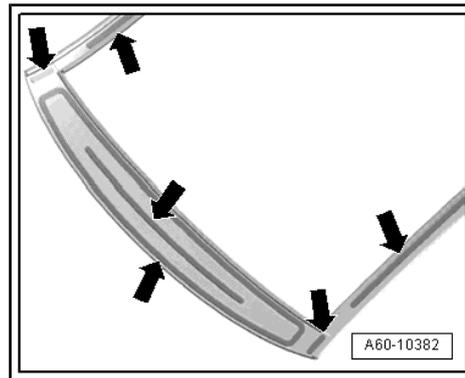
Caution

Gently sand the adhesive surface with very fine sandpaper.

- Clean the region around the glue bead with a cleaning solution.
 - D 009 401 04
- SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

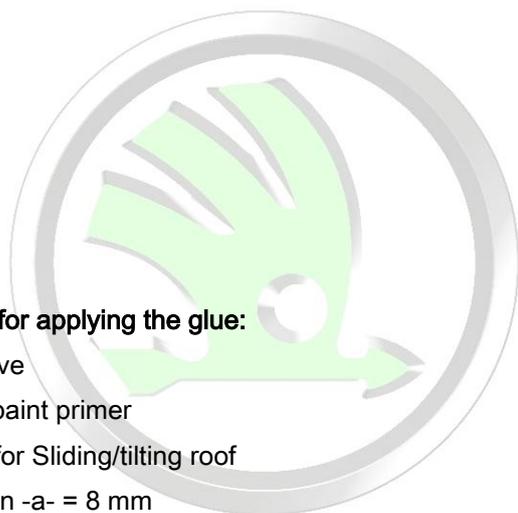


- Prime the glue bead - arrows - with glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02 - and allow to dry off.
- Apply the assembly glue - D 190 MKD A3 - - arrows - to the specified location.



- No adhesive may be applied to the cover left or right of length - a - = 10 cm.

ŠKODA

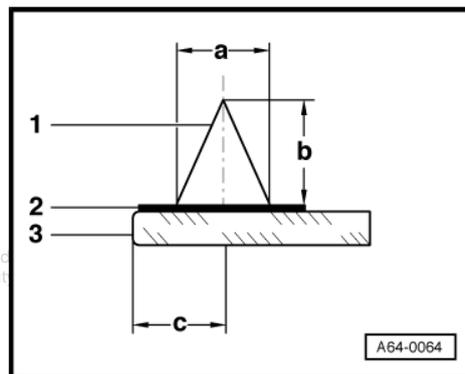


Dimensions for applying the glue:

- 1 - Adhesive
- 2 - Glass/paint primer
- 3 - Cover for Sliding/tilting roof

- Dimension -a- = 8 mm
- Dimension -b- = 12 mm

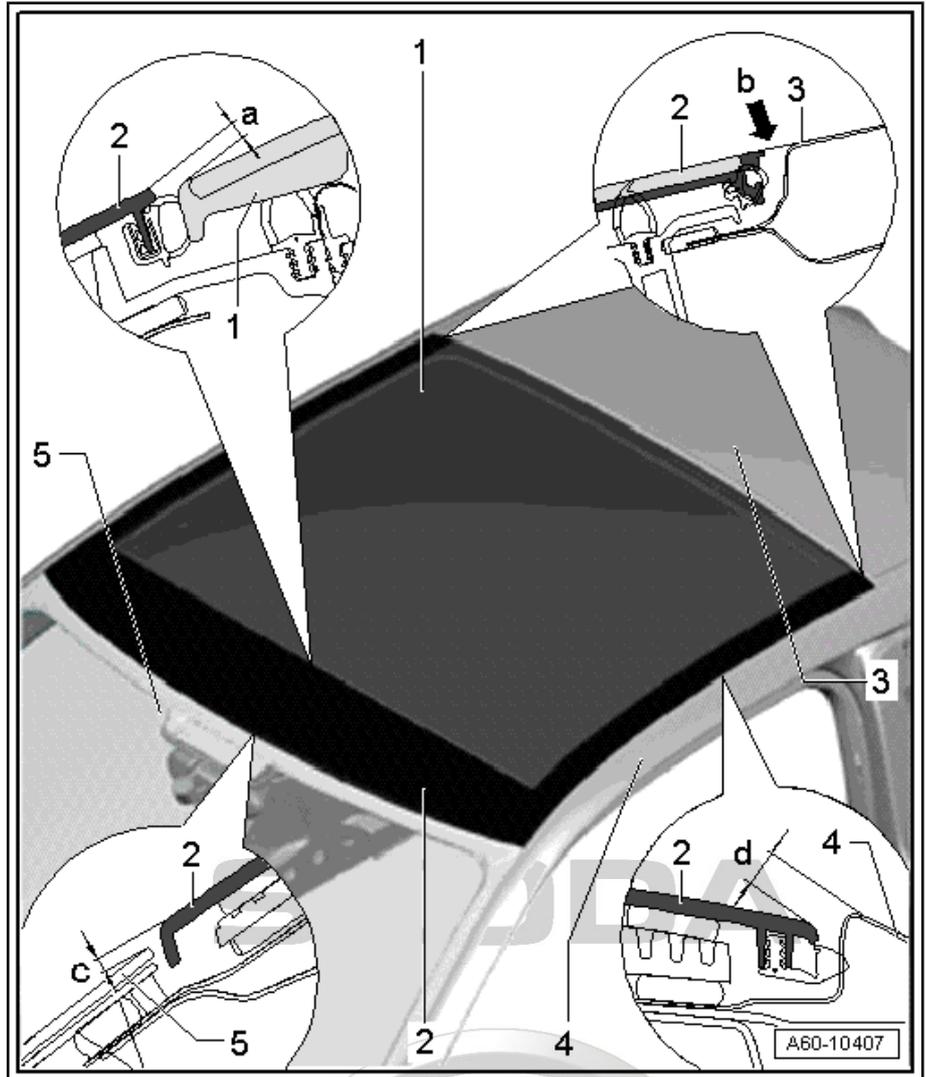
Dimension -c- = shown on the cover press part



- Insert the cover into the sliding/tilting roof cutout, press towards the glass of the sliding/tilting roof and secure with adhesive tape.

Installation position, front cover:

- 1 - Glass cover
- 2 - Front cover glass cover
 - ◆ Dimension a = 2 mm ± 1 mm
 - ◆ Dimension b = 0 + 0.5 mm rear cover to roof plane
 - ◆ Dimension c = 1.5 mm ± 0.5 mm
 - ◆ Dimension d = 3 mm ± 0.5 mm
 - Press the front cover into the plane with the glass cover towards the dimensions.
- 3 - Roof
- 4 - Frame for side wall (side part)
- 5 - Windscreen



Minimum hardening time:

⚠ WARNING

- ◆ To install the cover, only use one of the assembly glues listed below.
- ◆ This glue is adjusted on account of its elasticity and does not cause cracking in the painted cover after hardening.
- ◆ The vehicle is only safe for use after the minimum hardening time has expired.

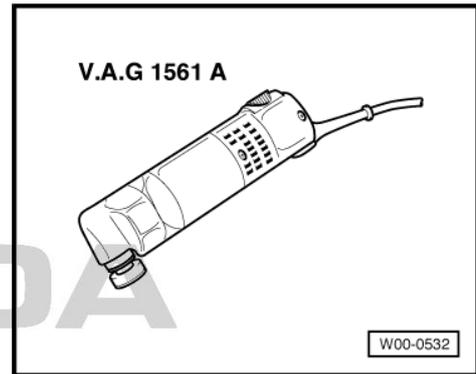
	Seal adhesive kit	Minimum hardening time in hours.
Cover for Sliding/tilting roof	Assembly glue - D 190 MKD A3 -	3

1.10 Installing and removing the sliding/tilting roof

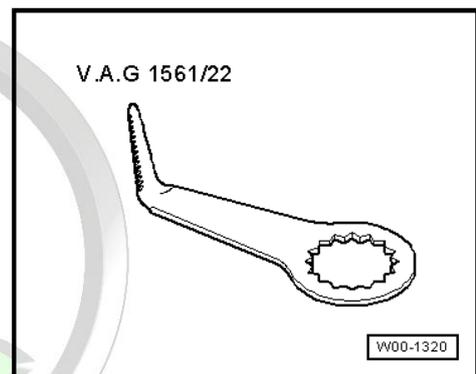
Special tools and workshop equipment required



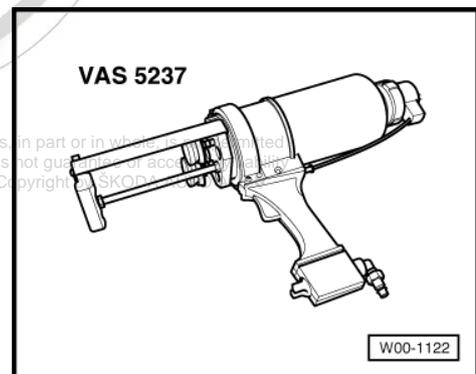
- ◆ Power knife, e.g. - V.A.G 1561A -



- ◆ Cutting knife, L shaped, 25.4 mm - e.g. - V.A.G 1561/22 -



- ◆ Double cartridge gun - e.g. - VAS 5237-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © ŠKODA

Materials:

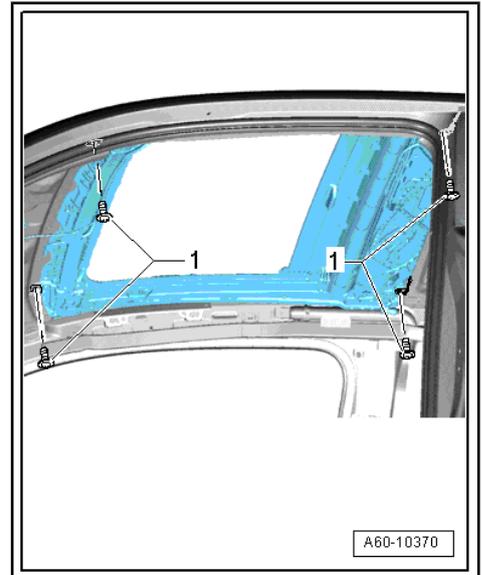
- ◆ 2K - window pane adhesive kit - DA 004 600 A2 - ¹⁾
- ◆ 1K - window pane adhesive - DH 009 100 03 - ³⁾

- 1) Observe minimum hardening time ⇒ [page 159](#) .
- 2) To work this material use a double cartridge gun - VAS 5237 - .
- 3) Small cartridge 110.

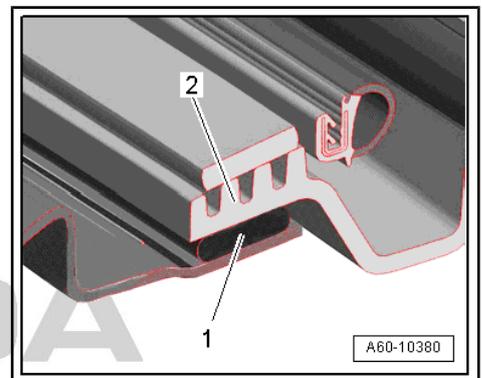
Removing:

- Glass cover has been removed.
- Front trim panel has been removed.
- Disconnect all electrical connections for the sliding/tilting roof.
- Remove the moulded headliner ⇒ [page 395](#) .

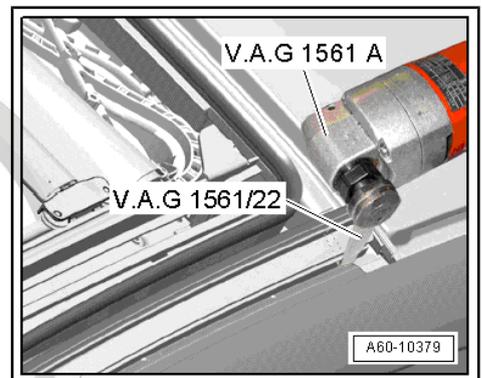
- Unscrew screws -1-.



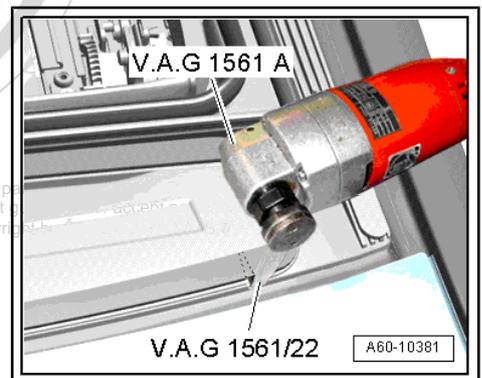
- To remove, cut through the adhesive joint - 1 - between the frame for the sliding roof - 2 - and the body.



- Cut through the bonding point between the body and the frame using an electric knife - V.A.G 1561A - and cutting knife, L-shaped, 25.4 mm - V.A.G 1561/22 - towards the front.



- Cut through the bonding point between the windscreen and body as shown.
- Cut through the bonding point on the rear side of the sliding roof as well.

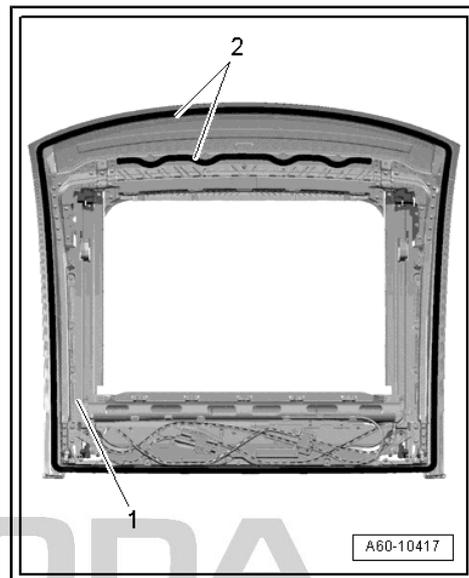
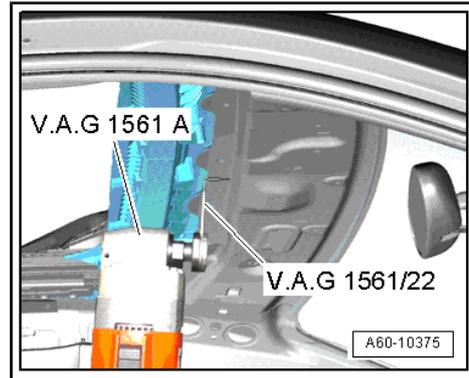


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © ŠKODA AUTO A. S. 2013

- Cut through the glue bead between the frame for the sliding roof and the body from the inside of the vehicle as shown in the figure.

Installing:

- Remove the glass cover before applying the glue.
- The frame for the front sliding/tilting roof is centralised with the glass cover.
- Carry out the centering at the rear with the centering pin in the middle of the vehicle roof => [page 159](#) .
- Clean the bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04 - .
- Apply the glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02 - described as follows.
- Begin with felt which has been fully absorbed.
- Apply the glass/paint primer evenly in one stroke with the applicator as shown on the roof frame.
- Width of primer coat, approx. 20 mm.
- The glass/paint primer must be applied underneath the entire glue bead.
- Airing time 10 minutes.

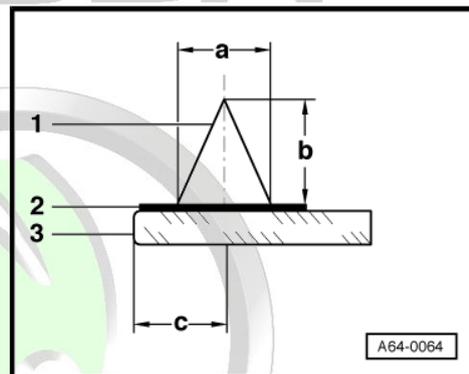


Caution

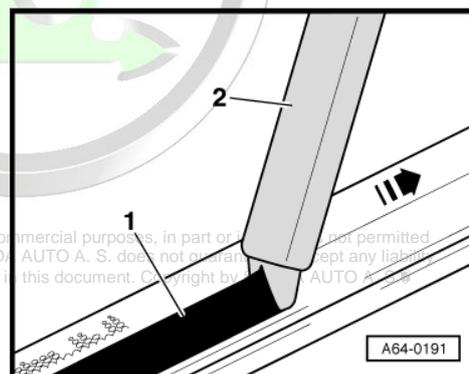
The frame for the sliding/tilting roof must be inserted within 10 minutes after applying the glue, as otherwise the adhesion of the glue sealing material may be impaired.

Dimensions for applying the glue:

- 1 - Adhesive
- 2 - Glass/paint primer
- 3 - Sliding/tilting roof frame
- Dimension -a- = 8 mm
- Dimension -b- = 12 mm
- Dimension - c - = shown on the cover press part.



- Set the nozzle - 2 - onto the frame with the entire surface.
- Direction of application - arrow - of the glue bead -1 - .
- Insert the sliding/tilting roof with the applied adhesive - 1 - into the roof cutout.

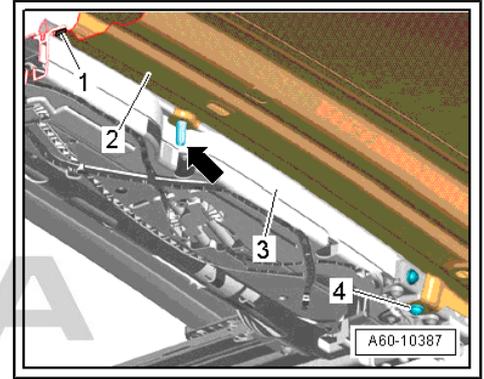


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

- Centralise the roof frame - 3 - with the centering pin - arrow -
- Tighten the screw - 4 - to the specified tightening torque => [page 135](#) .

Minimum hardening time:

	WARNING
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ <i>For safety reasons, only use a non-conducting 2K adhesive from those given below for the installation.</i> ◆ <i>The vehicle is only safe for use after the minimum hardening time has expired.</i> 	



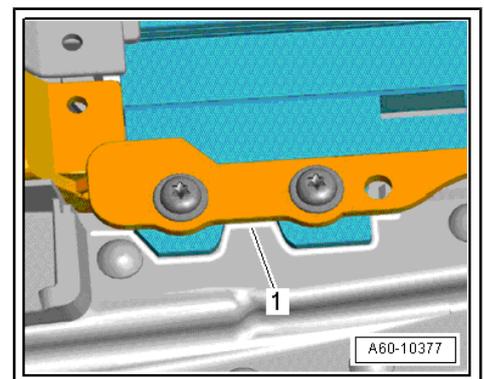
	Seal adhesive kit	Minimum hardening time in hours
Sliding/tilting roof frame	2K window pane adhesive kit - DA 004 600 A2-	3

1.11 Installing and removing the frame for the sliding block guide

Removing:

Note

- ◆ *Before removal, mark the fitting position of the frame.*
 - ◆ *A second mechanic is needed to remove the frame.*
 - ◆ *One of the fitters undoes the screw connection while the second one holds the frame and removes it from the vehicle.*
- The moulded header has been removed => [page 395](#) .
 - The cover for the screen for the sliding roof has been removed => [page 144](#) .
 - Mark the fitting position of the frame for the sliding block guide - 1 - to the frame of the sliding roof.



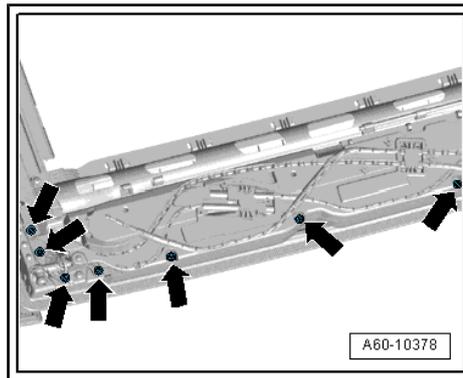


- First, undo the rear screws - arrow - on the frame.



Caution

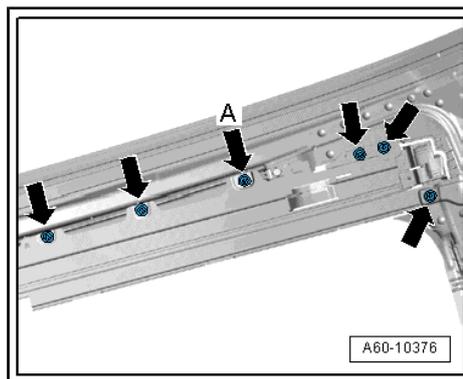
When removing, the screws - arrow A - initially remain fitted.



- Remove screws -arrows-.
- Hold the frame - now you can remove the screws - arrow A -.
- Remove the frame through the rear lid.

Installing:

- When installing, keep to the fitting position based on the markings and tighten the screws.
- Tighten the screws alternately from front to rear to the specified tightening torque => [Item 9 \(page 135\)](#) .



1.12 Removing and installing water drain hoses

Summary of components:

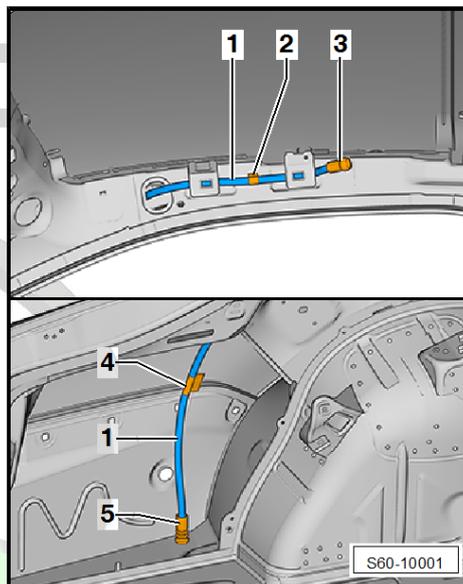
- Water drain hose - 1 - .
- Fixing clamp - 2 - (slid onto the rear retaining handle).
- Fixing angle piece - 3 - .
- Fixing clamp - 4 - (attached to side part).
- Drain valve - 5 - (in the opening in the side part) .

Removing:

- Lower the moulded headliner => [page 395](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim panel => [page 389](#) .
- Remove clips -2 and 4-.
- Remove water drain hose from the bodyshell.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Caution

Make sure that the water drain hose is not squashed!

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.13 Cleaning the water drain hoses

 Note

For cleaning, we recommend you use a Bowden cable as an auxiliary tool.

- The cleaning is performed by removing dirt from the drain valve and by cleaning the water drain hose with a Bowden cable.

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2 Sun roof - Combi

2.1 Summary of components - Sun roof

1 - Rear glass panel

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 168](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 175](#) .

2 - Screw

- 7 Nm

3 - Gasket

- For rear glass panel
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 191](#) .

4 - Electrical line

5 - Inner seal

- Installed on assembly frame

6 - Rear section

7 - Control unit for roof blind

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 185](#) .

8 - Screw

- For fastening engines
- 8 Nm

9 - Screw

- For fastening sunroof frames
- 8 Nm

10 - sunroof frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 176](#) .

11 - Control cable

- For sun blind

12 - Arch support

13 - Screen for sliding roof

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 192](#) .

14 - Folding mechanism

- For front glass cover, with linkages

15 - Support clip

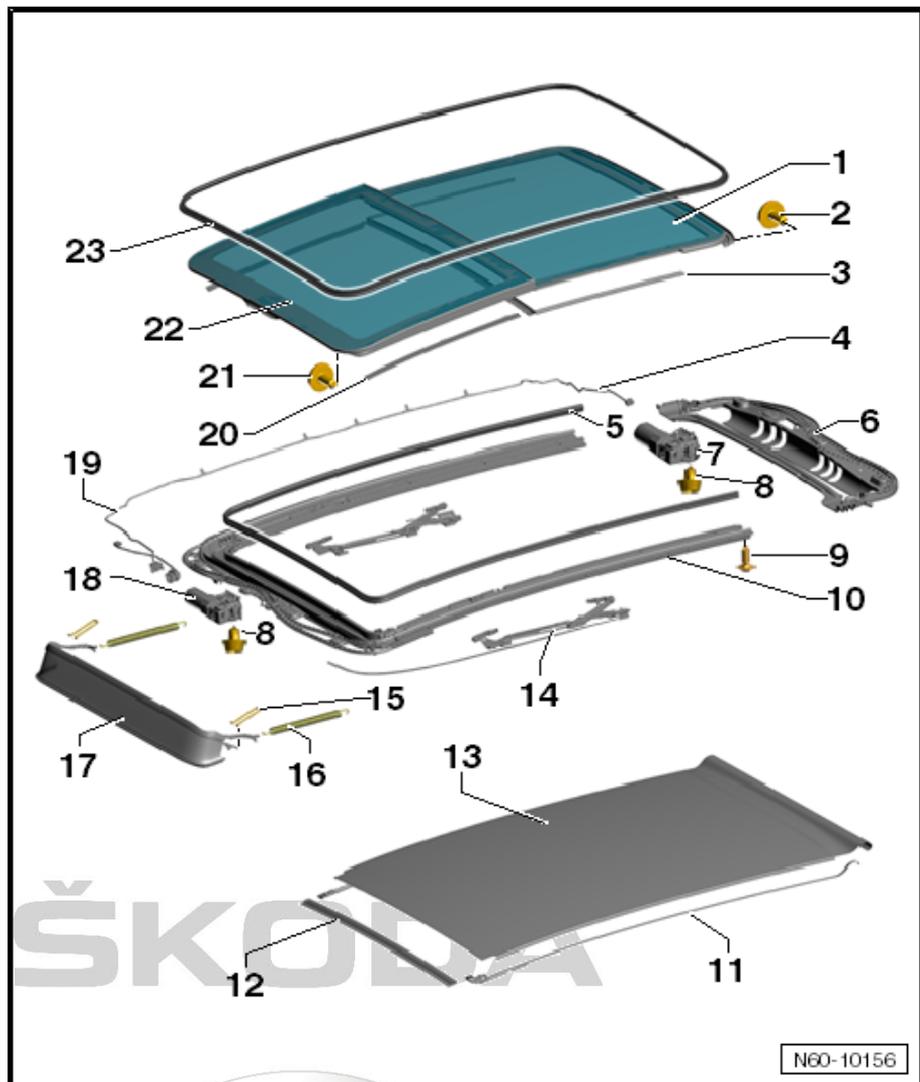
16 - Tension spring

17 - Draft deflector

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 179](#) .

18 - Sliding sunroof control unit

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 183](#) .



19 - Connectors

20 - Trim

21 - Screw

- 7 Nm

22 - Glass cover

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 164](#) .
- Setting ⇒ [page 173](#) .

23 - Outer seal

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 188](#) .



2.2 Summary of components - screen for sliding roof

1 - Screen for sliding roof

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 192](#) .

2 - Support

- For the cloth of the blind
of the sun roof.

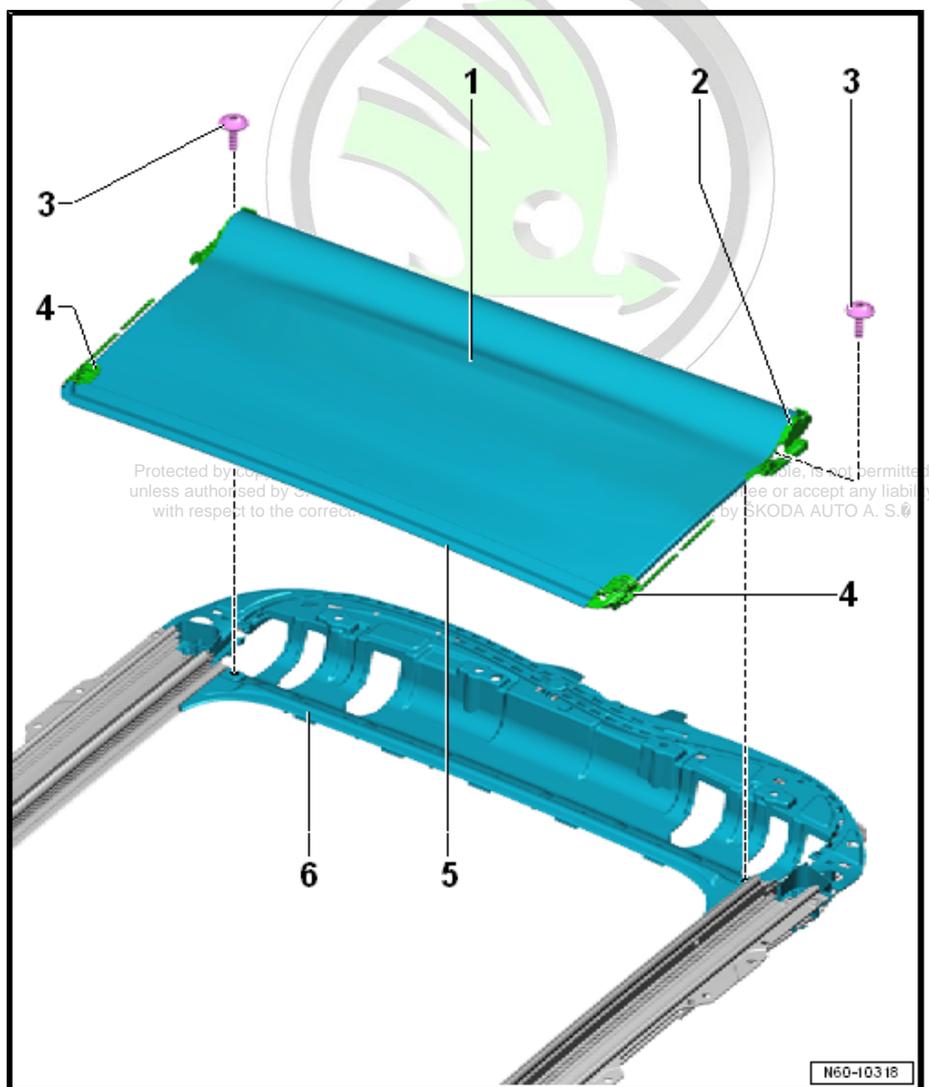
3 - Screw

- 2 Nm

4 - Driver

5 - Tension hoop

6 - sunroof frame





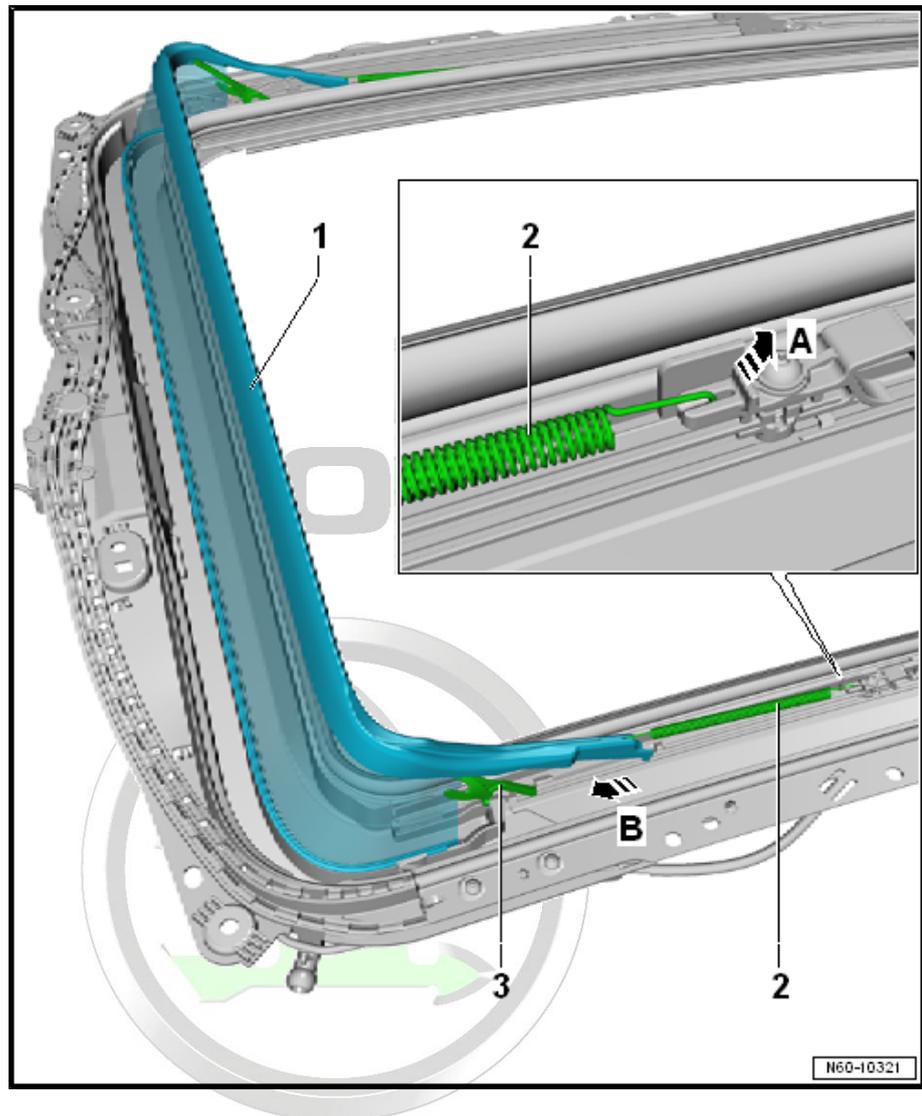
2.3 Assembly overview - Air deflector

1 - Draft deflector

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 179](#) .

2 - Tension spring

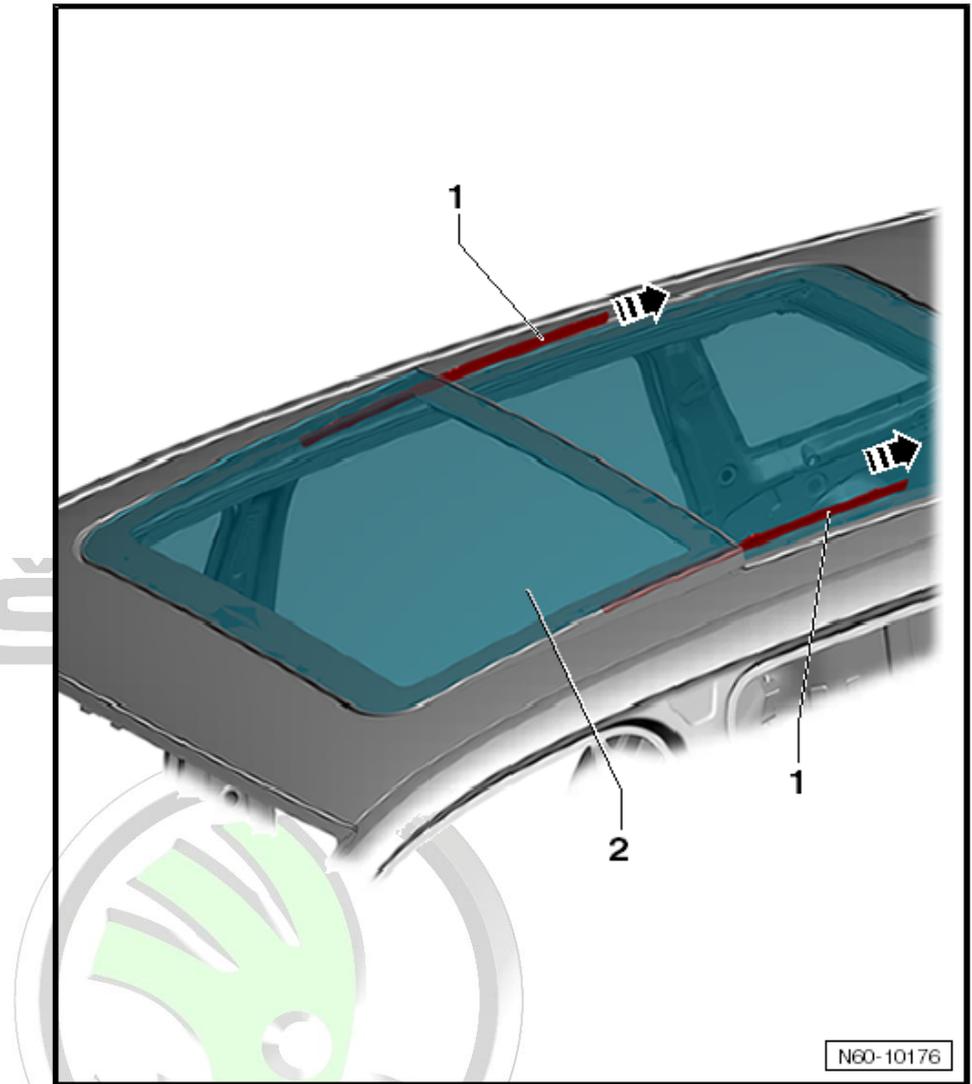
3 - Support clip



2.4 Removing and installing the glass roof

Removing:

For information purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



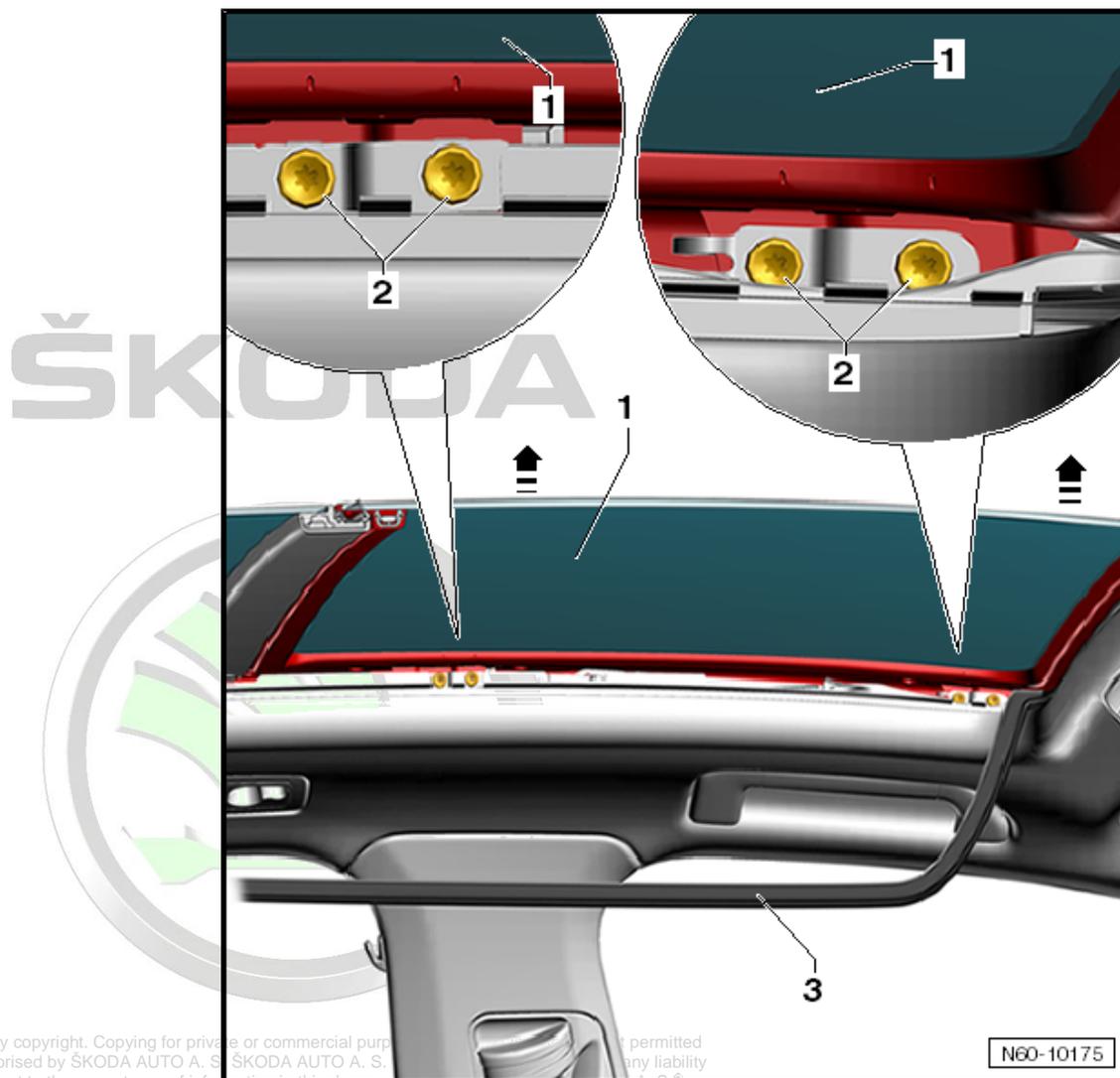
- Open the glass panel - 2 - until the blind - 1 - is accessible.
- Move the blind - 1 - from the interior towards the rear in the - direction of the arrow -.



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

Use a magnetic tool for removing the screws so that the screws do not fall into the mechanism of the sliding roof.



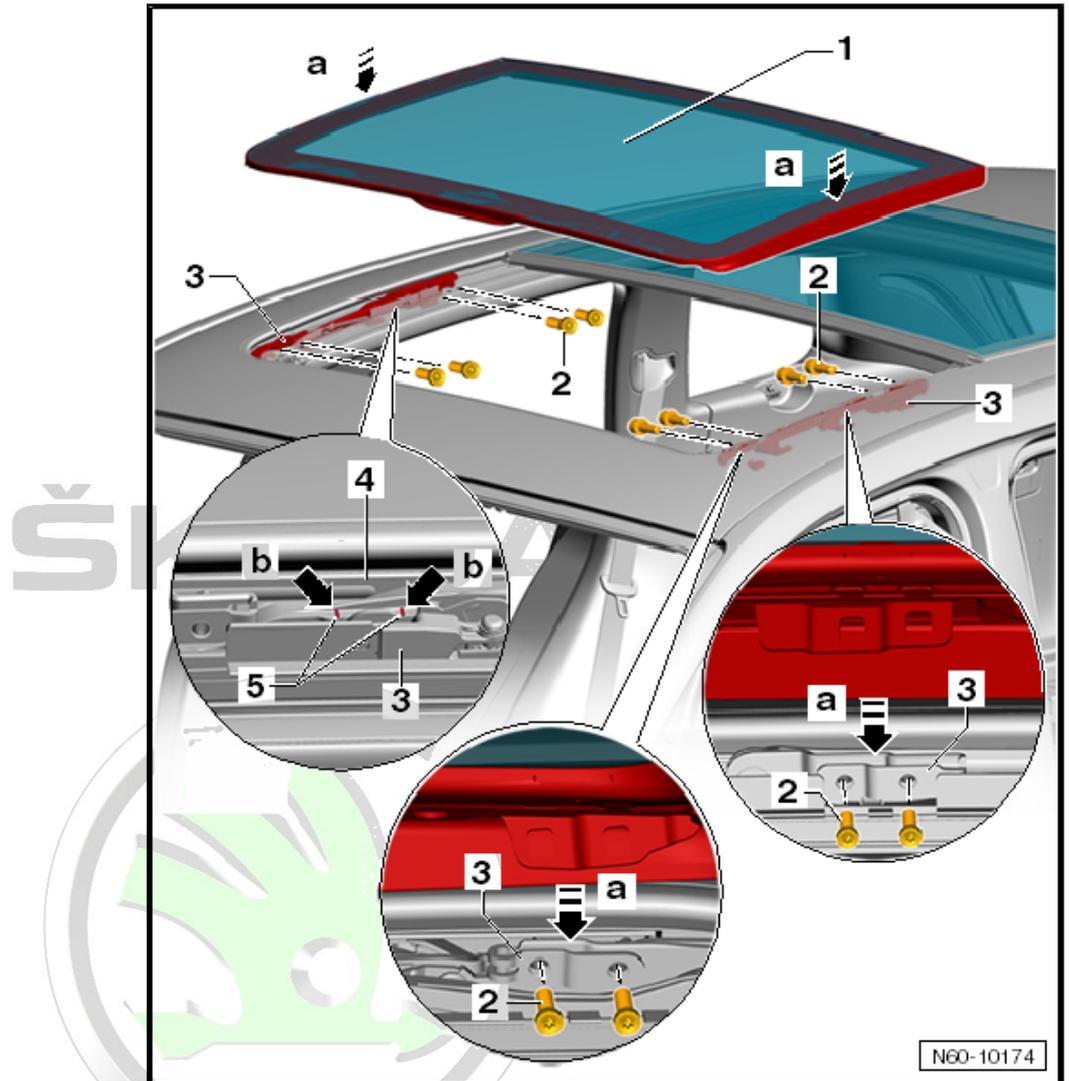
- Remove gasket - 3 - from body frame.
- Remove the screws - 2 - for glass cover - 1 - left and right.
- Remove the glass cover upwards - arrows - .

Installing:



Note

- ◆ Always use new screws when installing the glass cover.
- ◆ Use a magnetic tool for installing the screws so that the screws do not fall into the guide of the sliding roof.

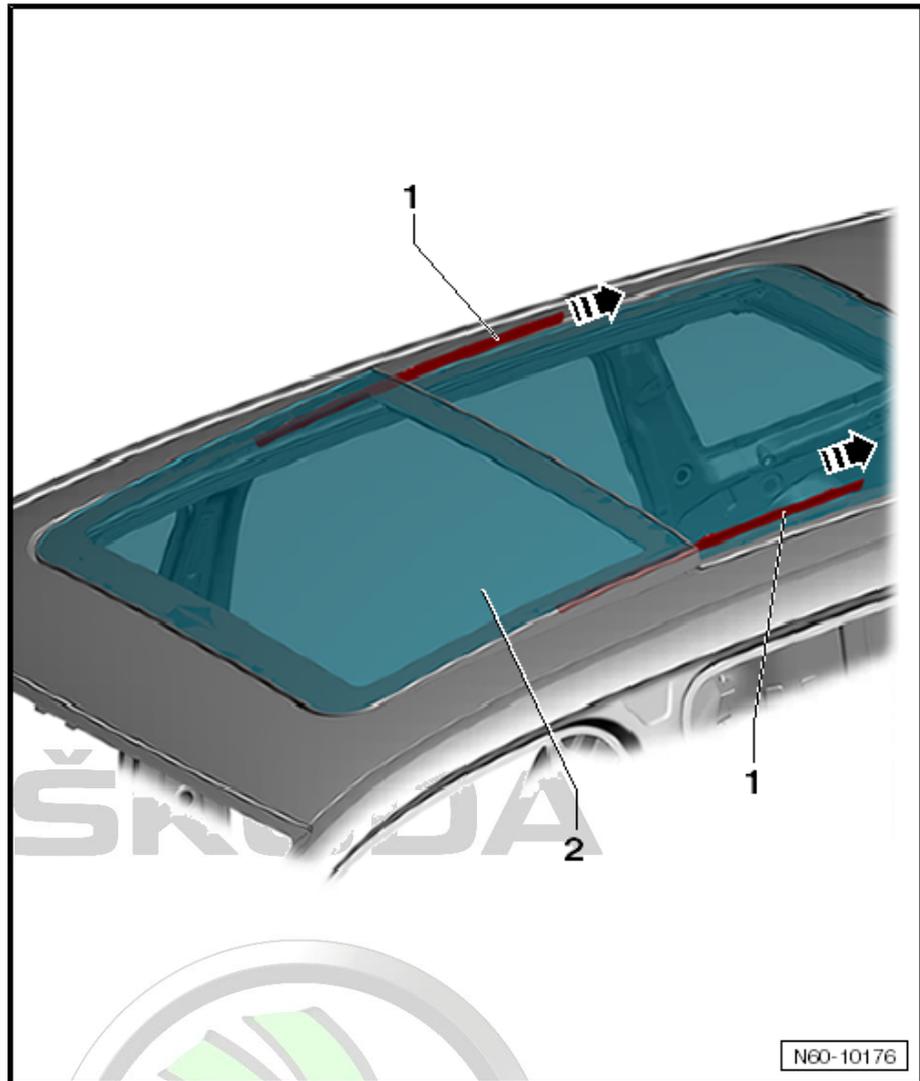


– If necessary, push the folding mechanism - 3 - on both sides until the markings - 5 - form a line - arrows b - .

– Insert the glass cover - 1 - from the top - arrows a - into the folding mechanism - 3 -. Insert screws - 2 -, but do not tighten.

– Adjust front glass panel ⇒ [page 174](#) .

– Tighten screws -2-. Tightening torque - 7 Nm.



- Place blind - 2 - on glass cover - 1 - and push onto the attachment.
- After all work has been done, carry out a standard run procedure of the sunroof motor ⇒ [page 197](#) .

2.5 Removing and installing the rear glass panel

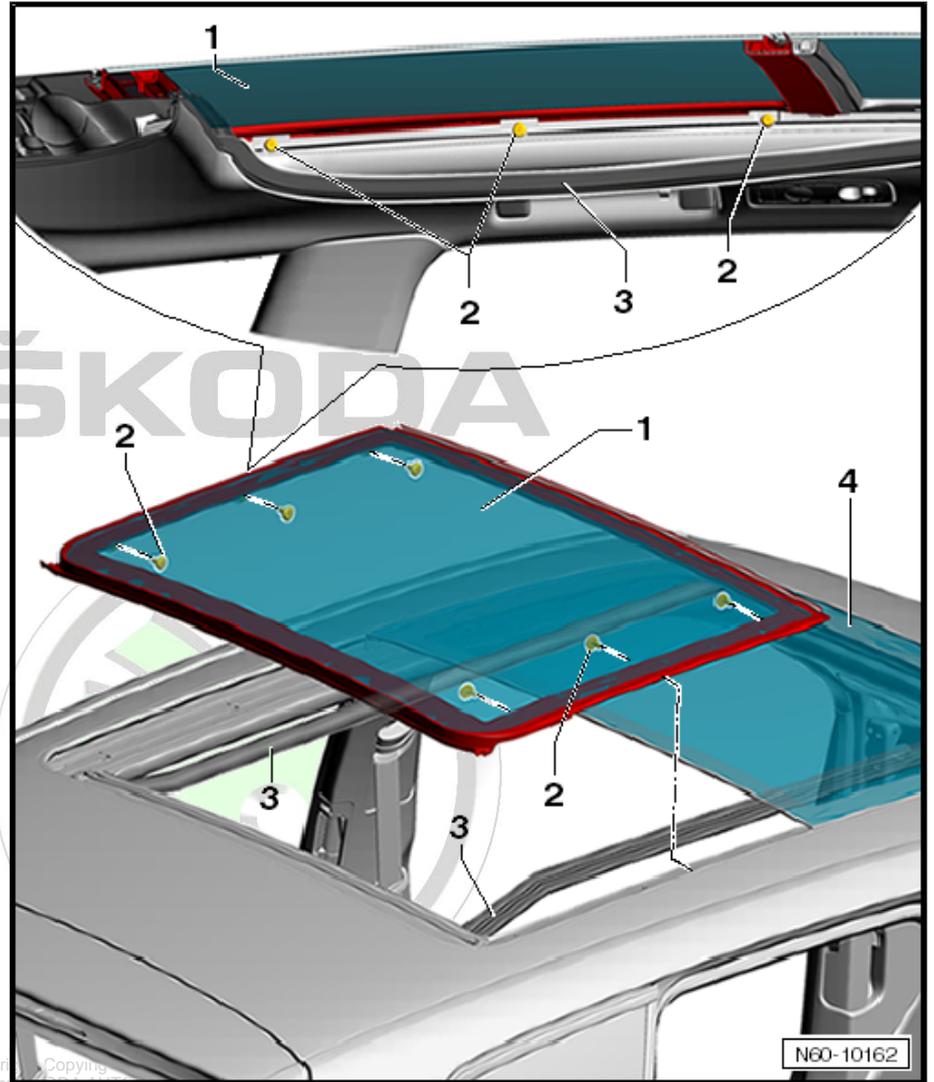
Removing:



Note

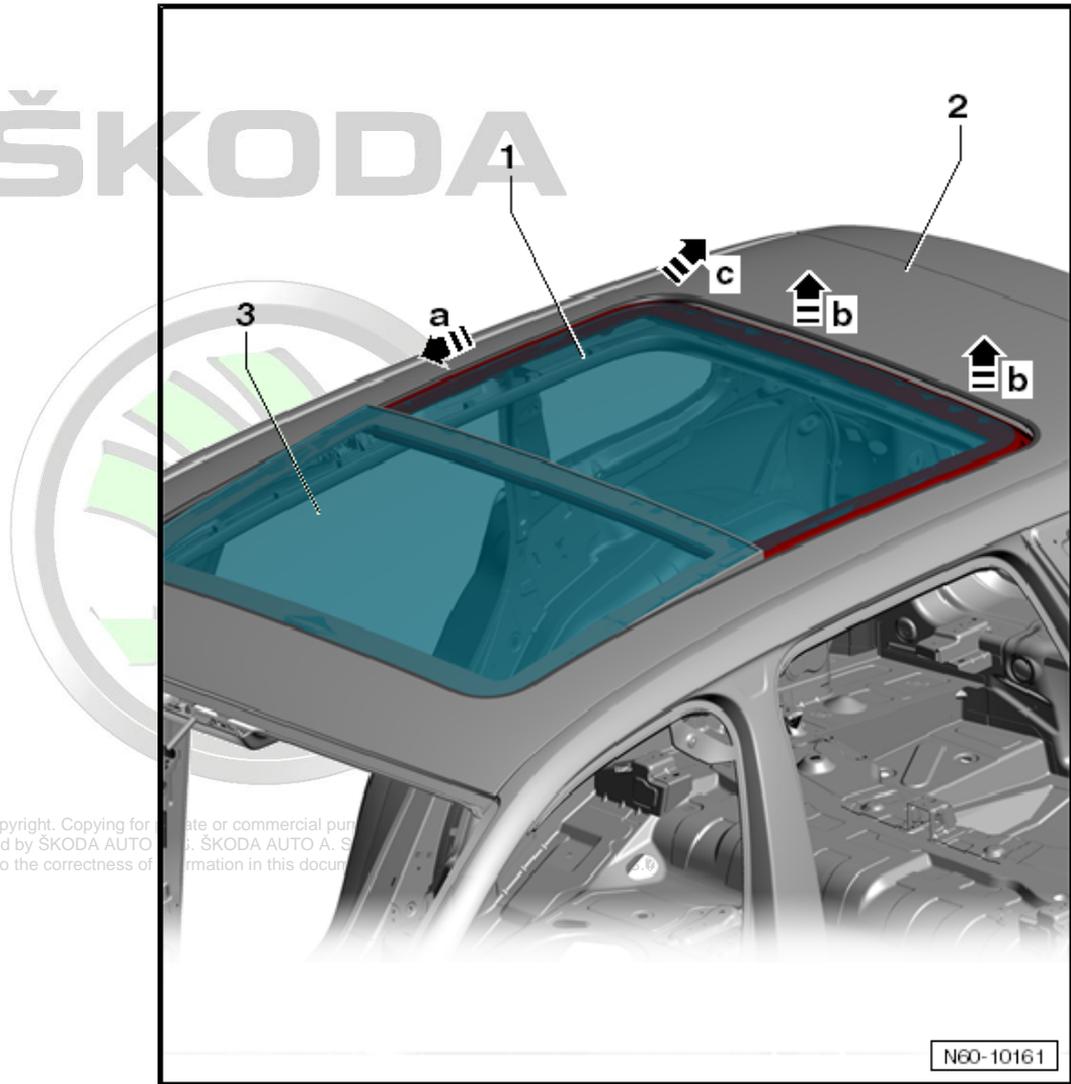
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Use a magnetic tool for removing the screws so that the screws do not fall into the guide of the sliding roof.



- Remove gasket - 3 - from body frame.
- Remove the screws - 2 - for glass cover - 1 - left and right.

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes without the written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A.S. is prohibited. Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

- Lightly slide the rear glass cover - 1 - underneath the front glass cover - 3 - - arrow a - .
- Remove the rear glass cover - 1 - from the roof cutout - 2 - in the rear section only - arrows b - .
- Move the rear glass cover - 1 - upwards at an angle - arrow c - above the roof - 2 - and remove underneath the front glass cover - 3 - .

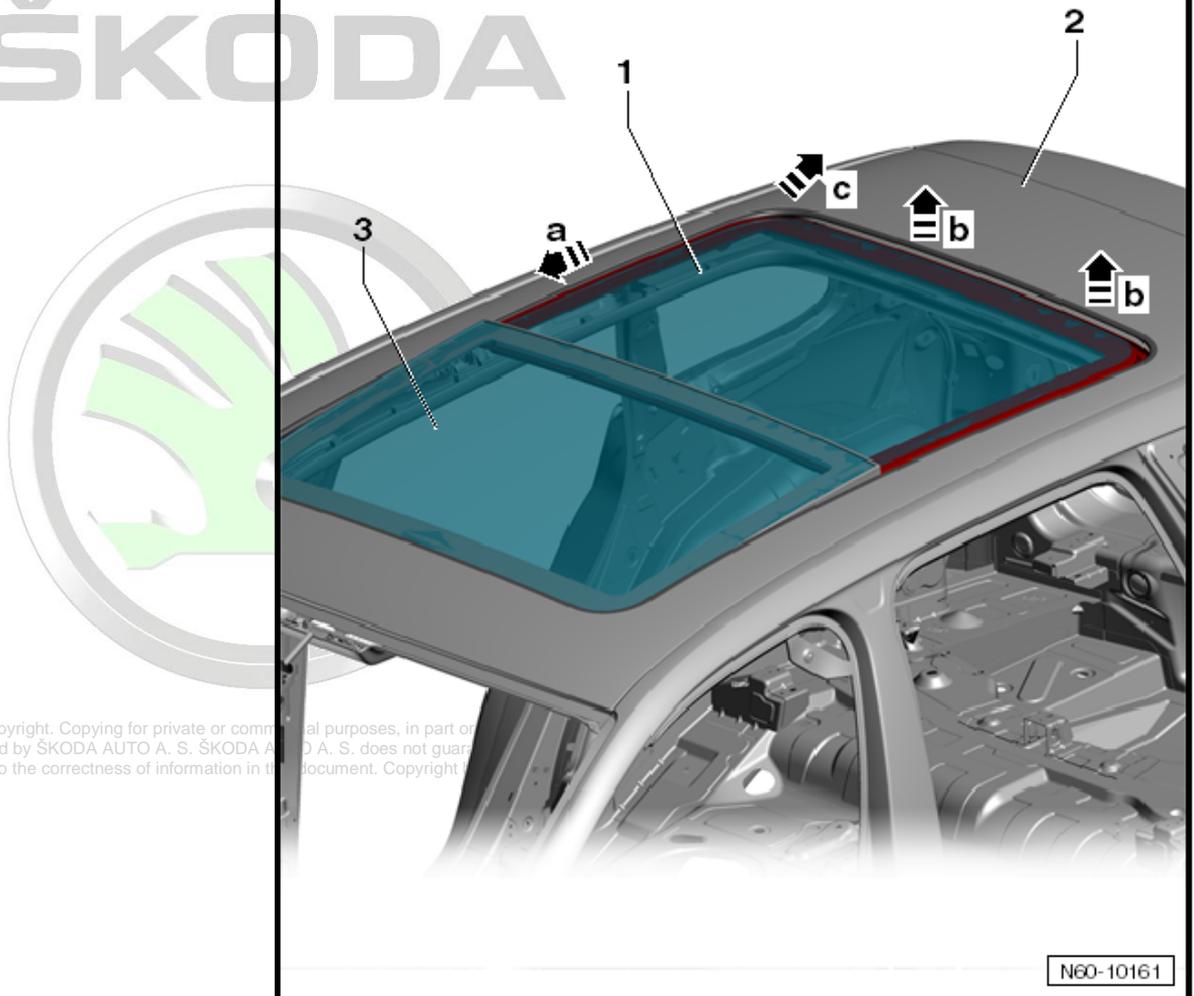
Installing:



Note

- ◆ Always use new screws when installing the glass cover.
- ◆ Use a magnetic tool for installing the screws so that the screws do not fall into the guide of the sliding roof.

ŠKODA

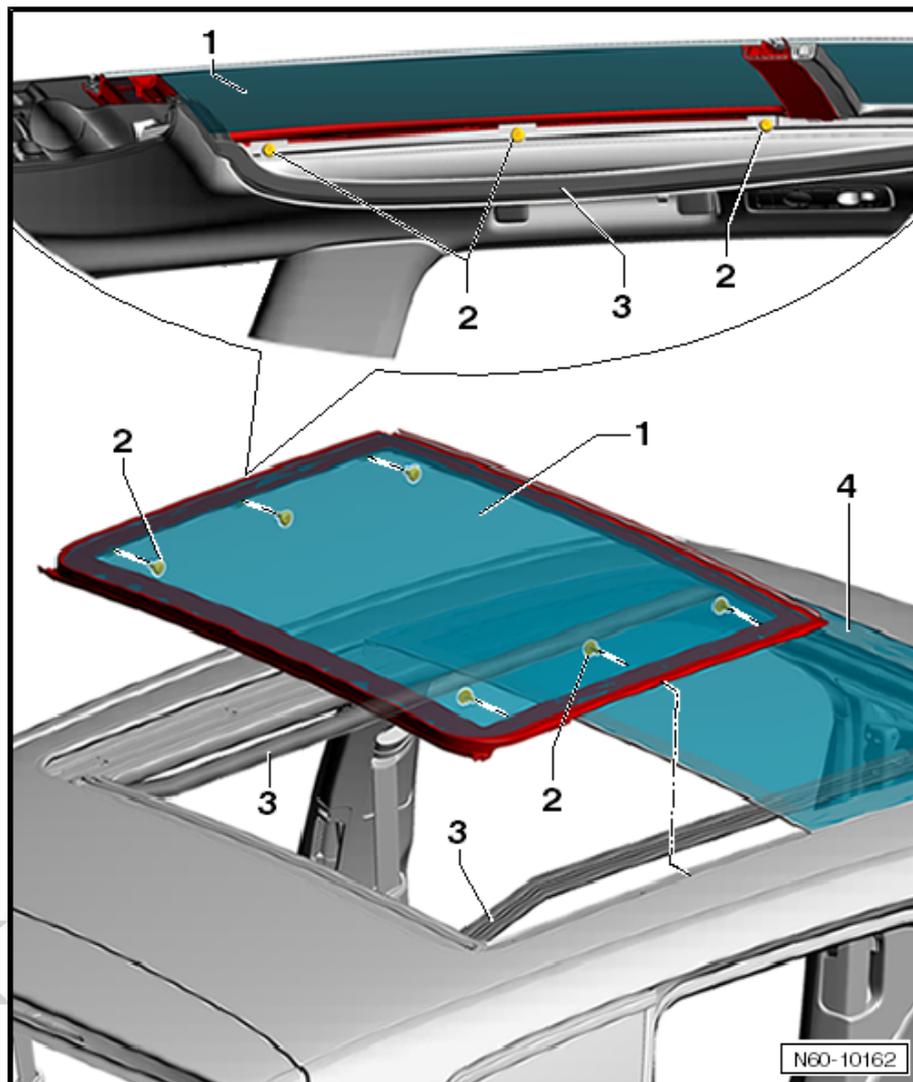


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited without the written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee the accuracy of the information in this document. Copyright © 2013 ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

N60-10161

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

- Insert the rear glass cover - 1 - from the top and at an angle under the front glass cover - 3 -.
- Insert the rear glass cover - 1 - in the rear section downwards into the roof cutout - 2 - and push to the rear.



- Insert screws - 2 - , but do not tighten.
- Adjust the rear glass cover - 1 - => [page 175](#) .
- Tighten the rear screws after adjusting the glass cover. Tightening torque - 7 Nm.
- After all work has been done, carry out a standard run procedure of the sunroof motor => [page 197](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

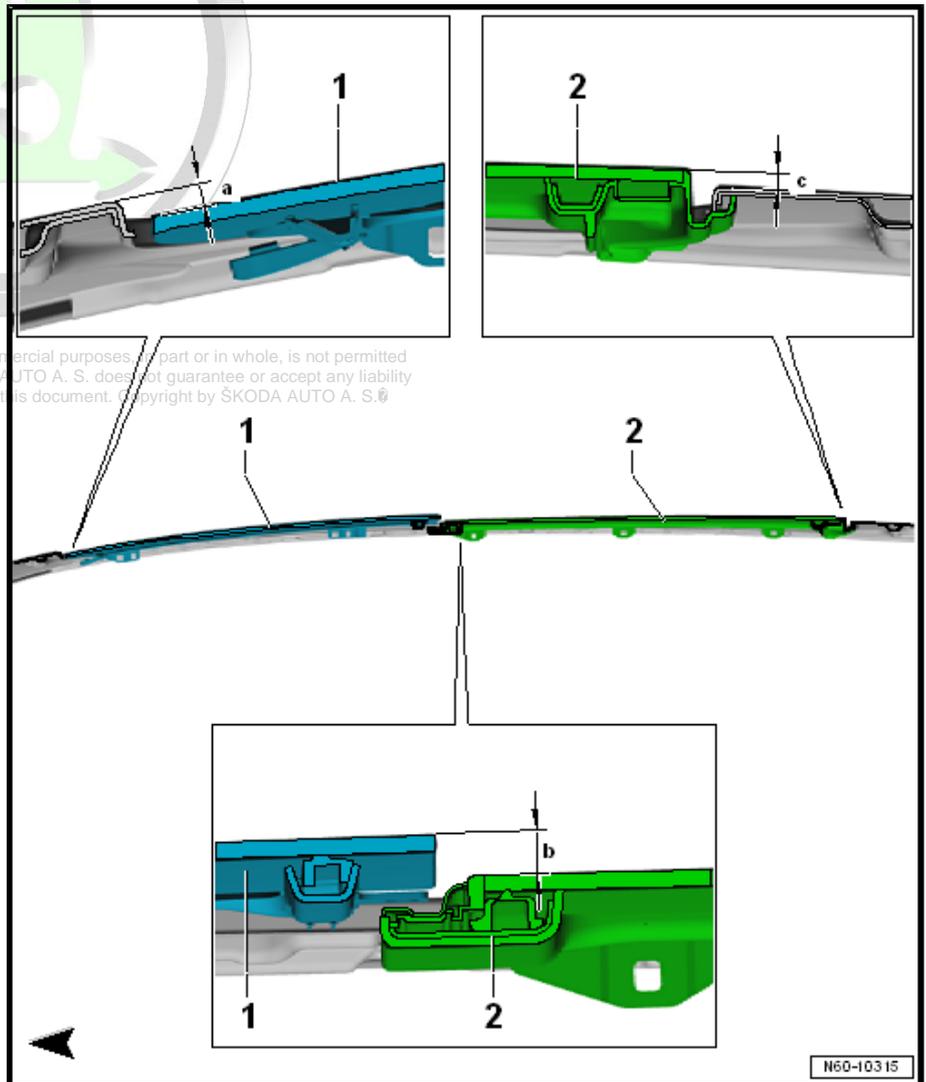
2.6 Adjusting glass panel

2.6.1 Check height adjustment



Note

- ◆ *The front glass cover is only adjusted at the front edge, the rear glass cover at the rear edge.*
- ◆ *To achieve the best possible external appearance, it is important to make sure that the left and right adjustment is performed as evenly as possible (symmetrical).*
- ◆ *arrow points in direction of travel.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Check height adjustment :

- Check the adjustment of the front glass panel - 1 - and the rear glass panel - 2 - using a gauge block.

If the measured values differ from the specified values, the corresponding glass panel must be adjusted.

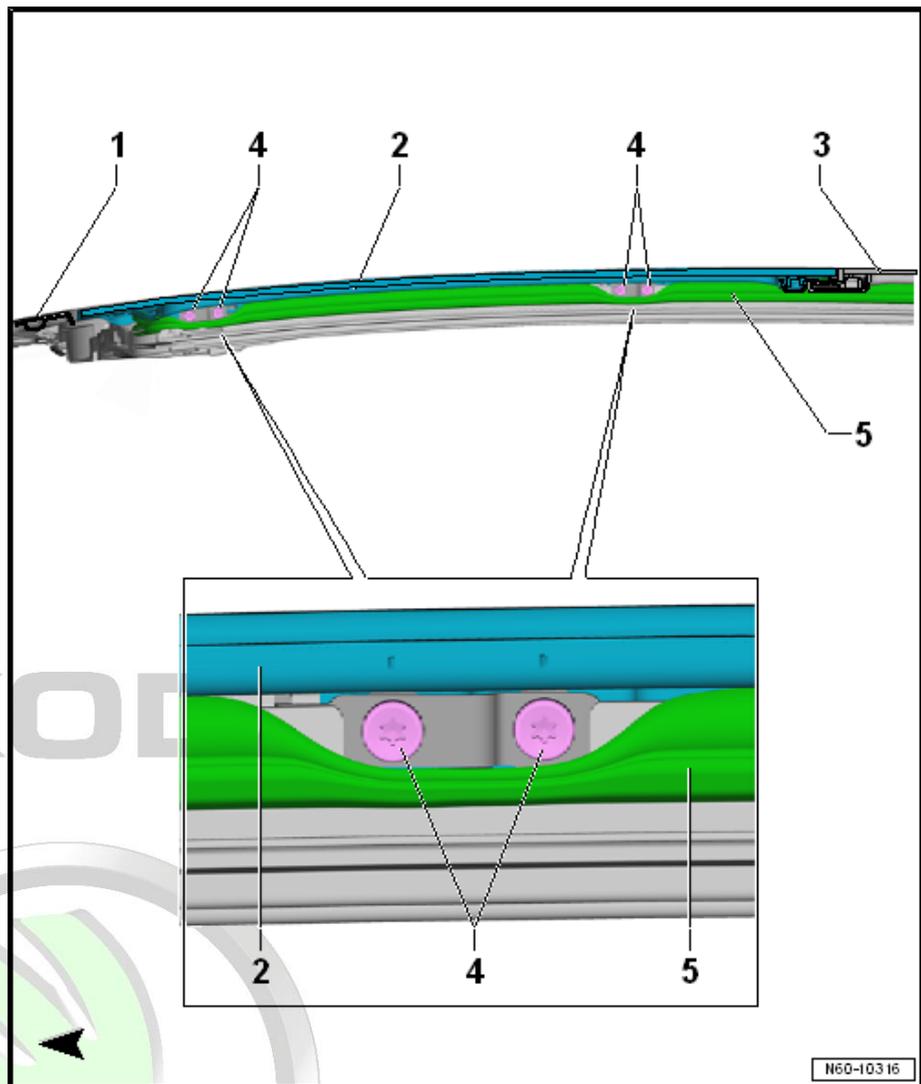


2.6.2 Adjust glass panel at front



Note

- ◆ Height adjustment of the glass panel must be performed after the glass panel was released from the sliding position.
- ◆ arrow points in direction of travel.

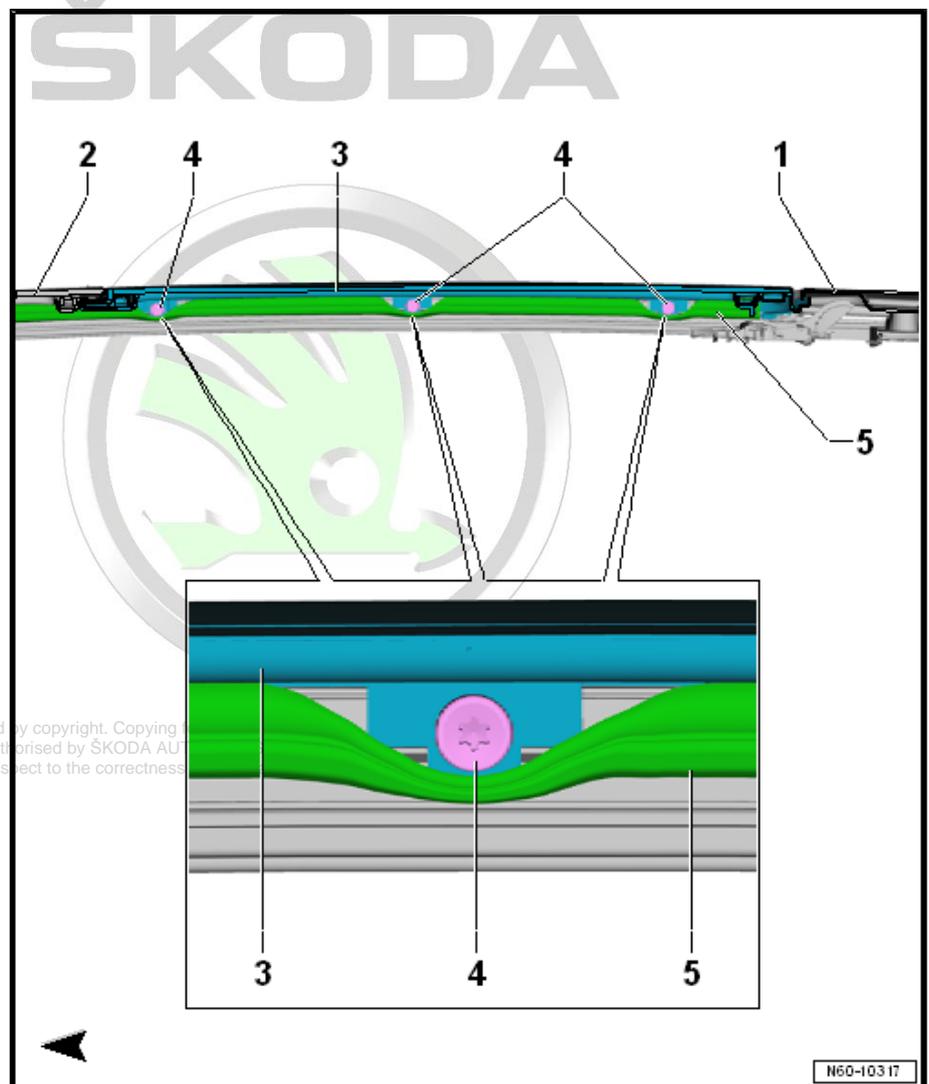


- Remove glass panel ⇒ [page 164](#) .
- Remove gasket - 5 - from body frame.
- Only undo the two front screws - 4 - left and right for the front glass cover - 2 -.
- Adjust the front glass cover - 3 - as per the dimensions ⇒ [page 173](#) .
- Tighten left and right screws 4 - Tightening torque - 7 Nm.
- Install the cap ⇒ [page 164](#) .
- Place seal - 5 - on assembly frame.

2.6.3 Adjust the rear glass cover



arrow points in direction of travel.



- Detach the inner seal - 5 -.
- Release screws - 4 - for rear glass cover - 3 -.
- Adjust the rear glass cover - 3 - as per the dimensions
=> [page 173](#) .
- Tighten left and right screws - 4 - . Tightening torque - 7 Nm.
- Place seal - 5 - on assembly frame.



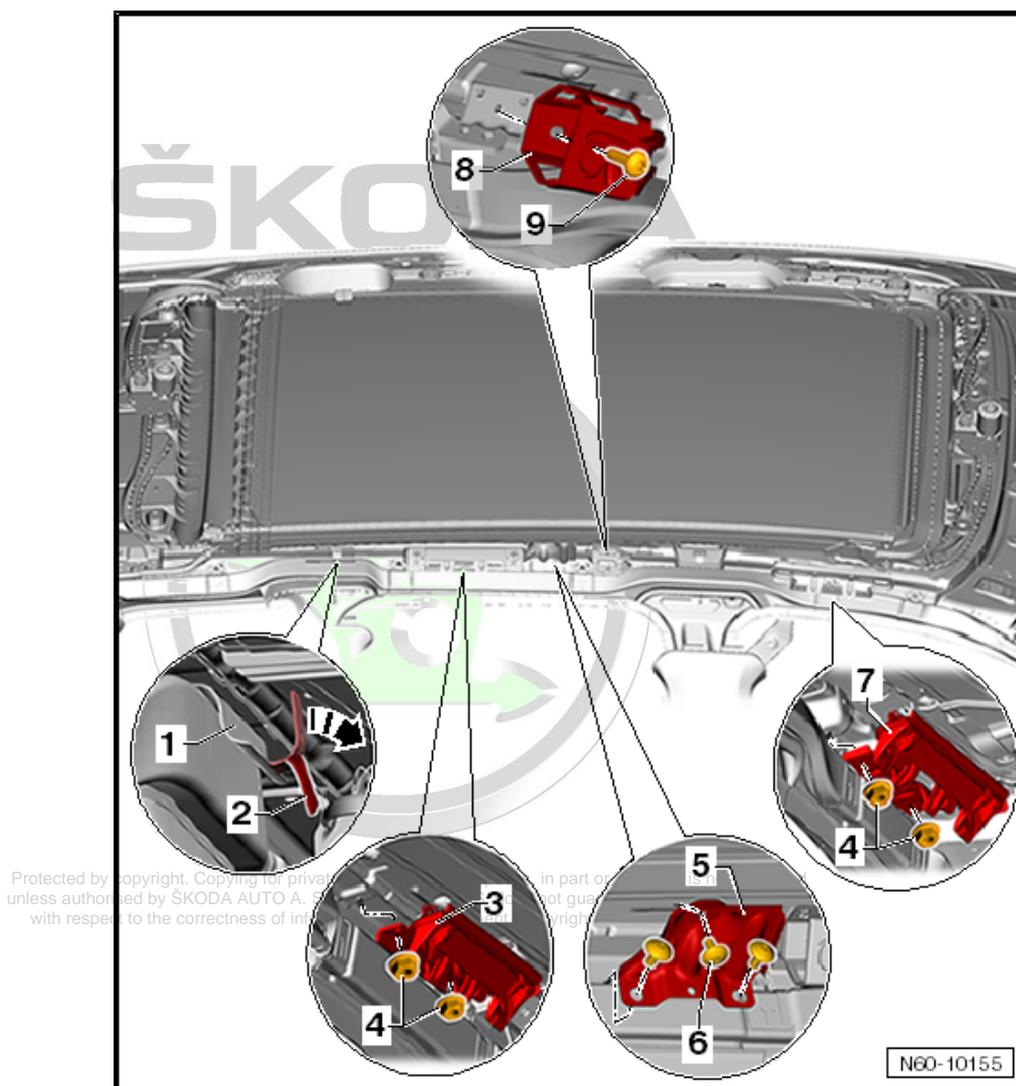
2.7 Removing and installing sun roof frame



Note

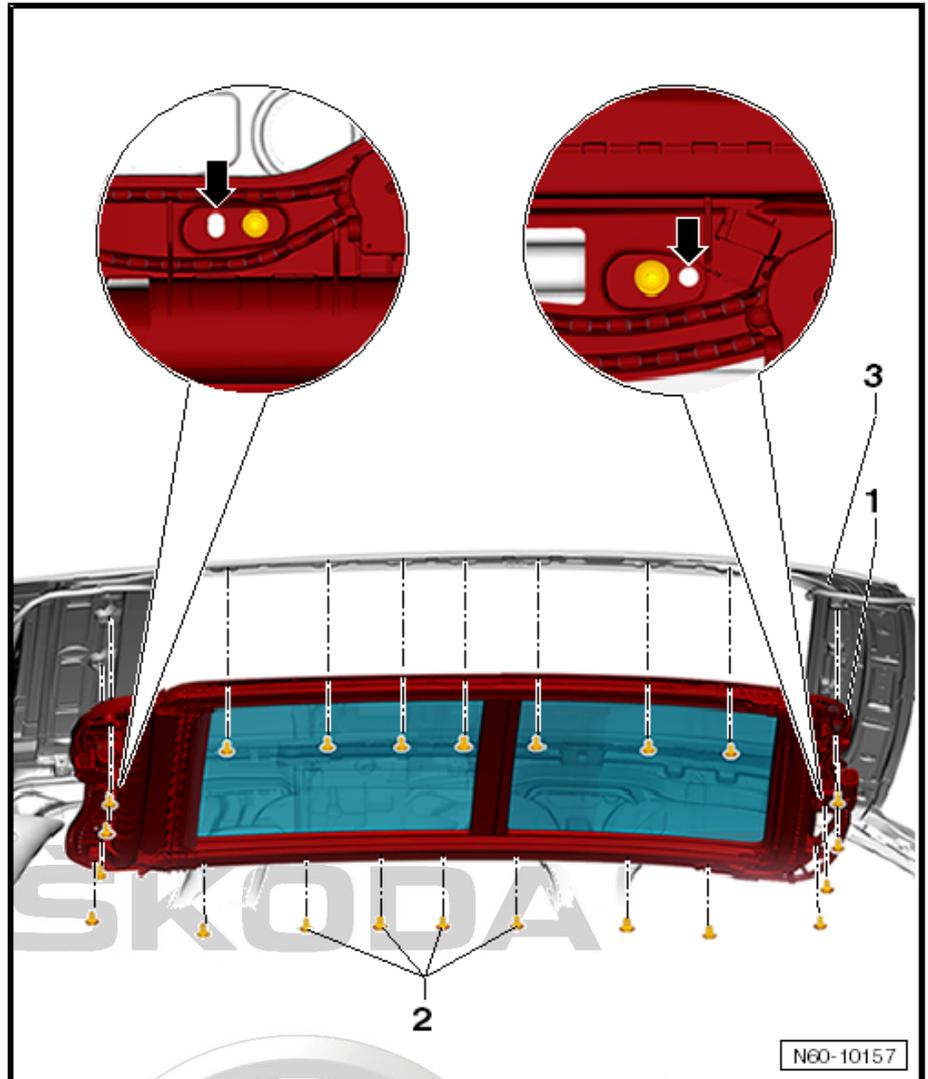
A second mechanic is required for removing and installing the assembly frame.

Removing:



- Remove roof trim panel ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Remove the left and right screws - 9 - and replace the mounting bracket for the mesh separating wall - 8 - .
- Remove the left and right screws - 6 - and replace the mounting bracket for the assembly frame - 5 - .
- Remove the left and right hexagon nuts - 4 - and replace the front mounting bracket - 7 - .
- Remove the left and right hexagon nuts - 4 - and replace the rear mounting bracket - 3 - .
- On the left and right, bend the pick-up - 2 - downwards for securing the airbag - 1 - - arrow - .

- Remove water drain hoses from the supports.
- Disconnect the plug connection for the wire harness on the sliding roof motor.



- Remove screws - 2 - up to the centre screws, right and left.

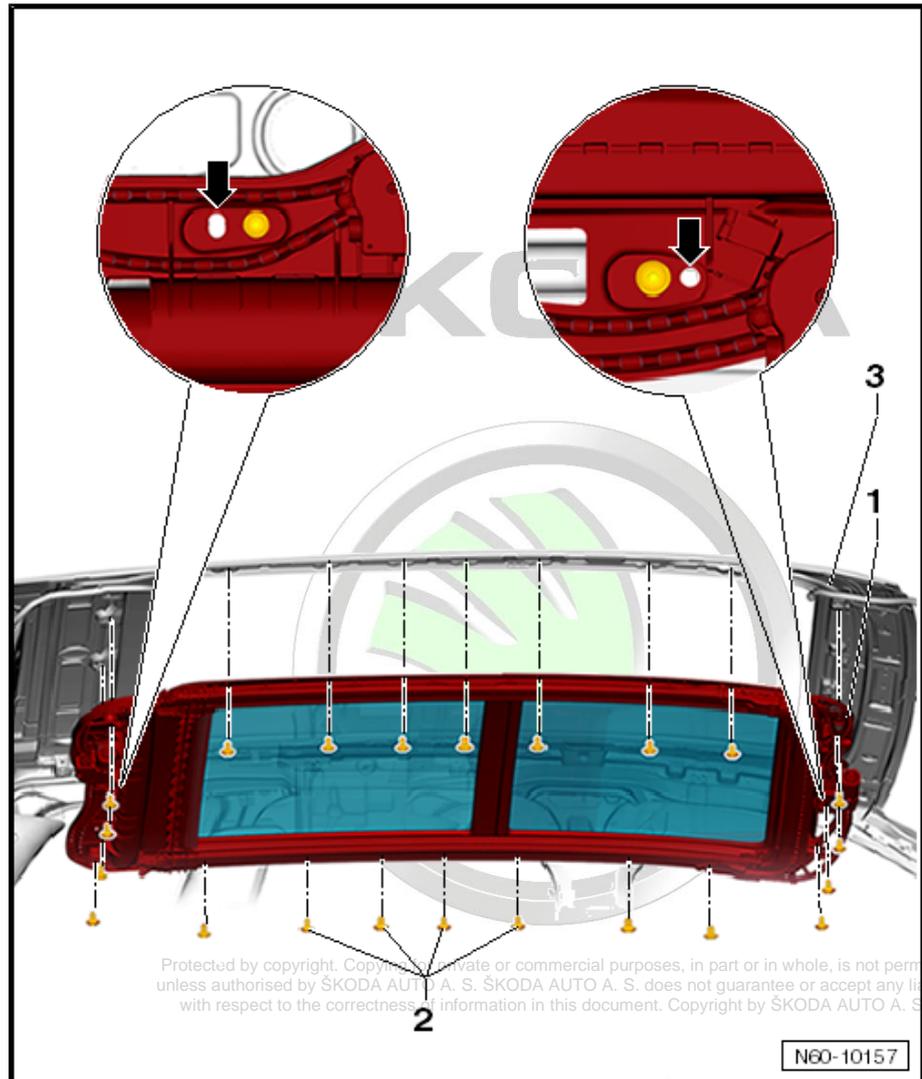
i Note

Hold the frame in place with a 2nd mechanic.

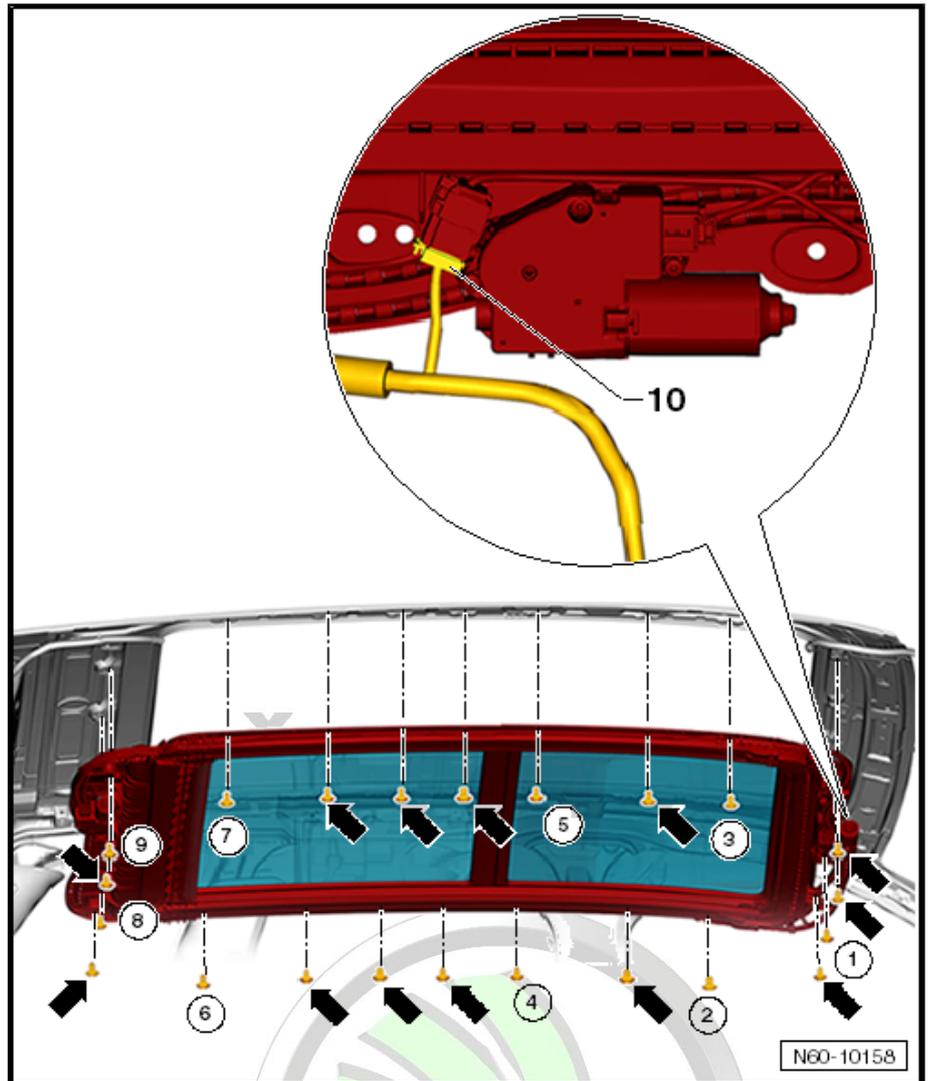
- Only remove the last screws now.
- Take the assembly frame - 1 - from the vehicle.

Installing:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- With the aid of another mechanic, lift the assembly frame - 1 - into the vehicle.
- When installing the assembly frame - 1 - use the 2 cylindrical pins (reversed drill \varnothing 8 mm) to the centering holes front and rear - arrows - and align to the roof.
- Insert screws - 2 -, but do not tighten.
- Connect all water drain hoses - 3 -.

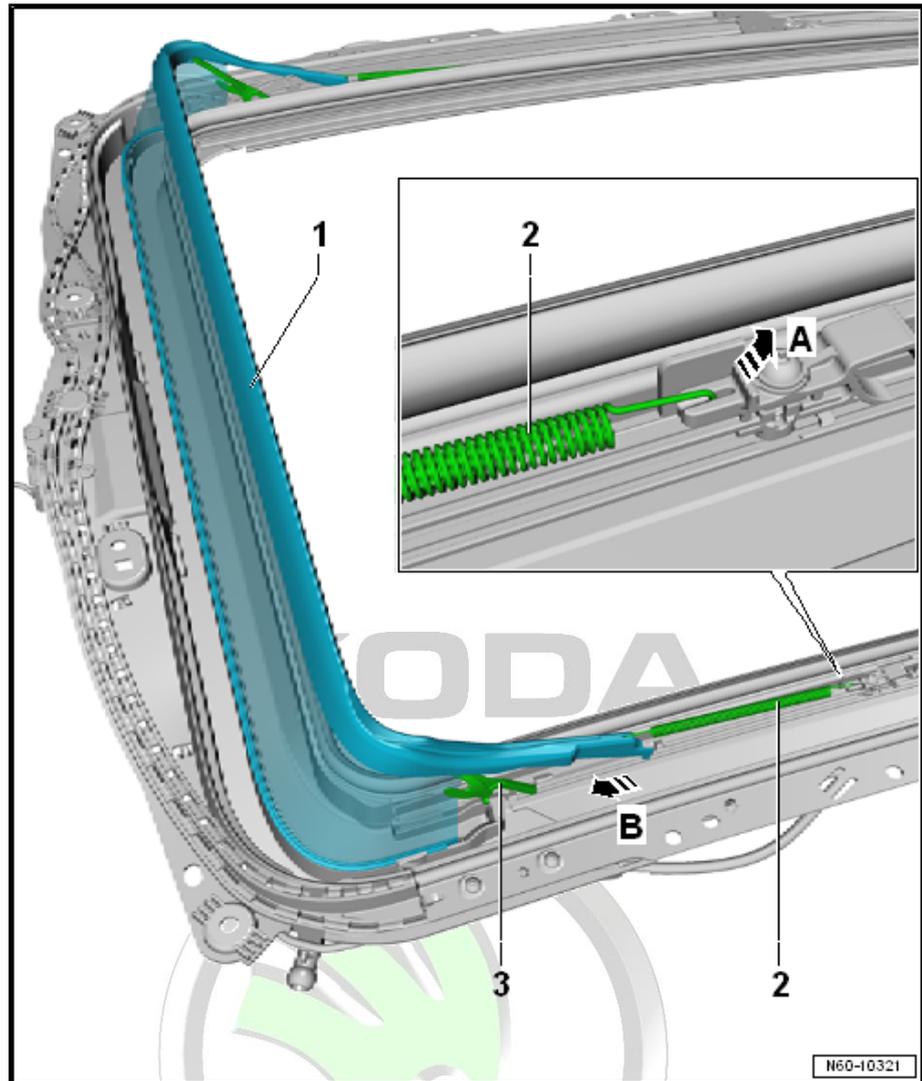


- Tighten the screws in the sequence - 1 through 9-.
 - Tighten the remaining screws - arrow -.
- Further installation occurs in reverse order.

2.8 Removing and installing the draft deflector

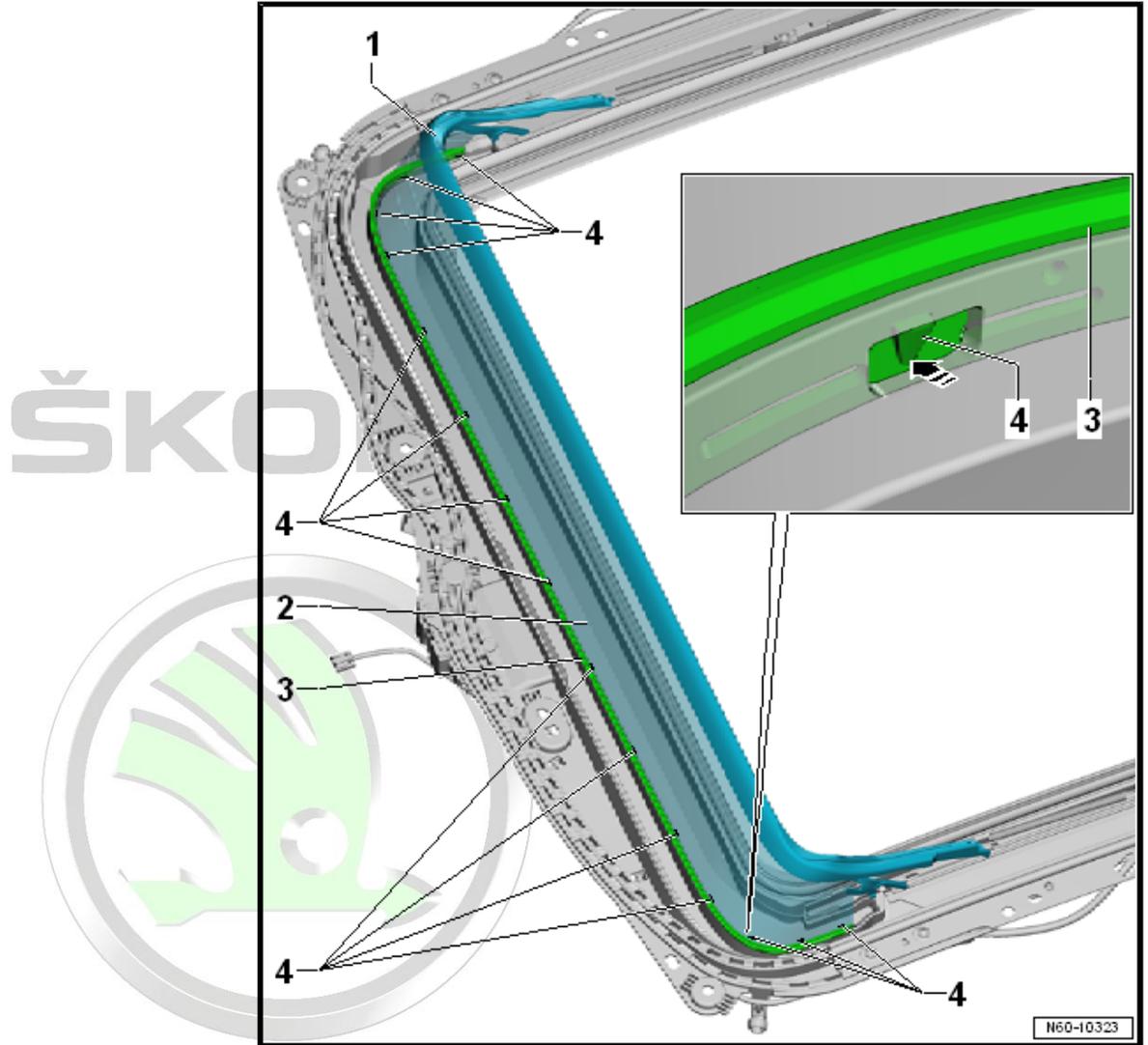
Removing:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



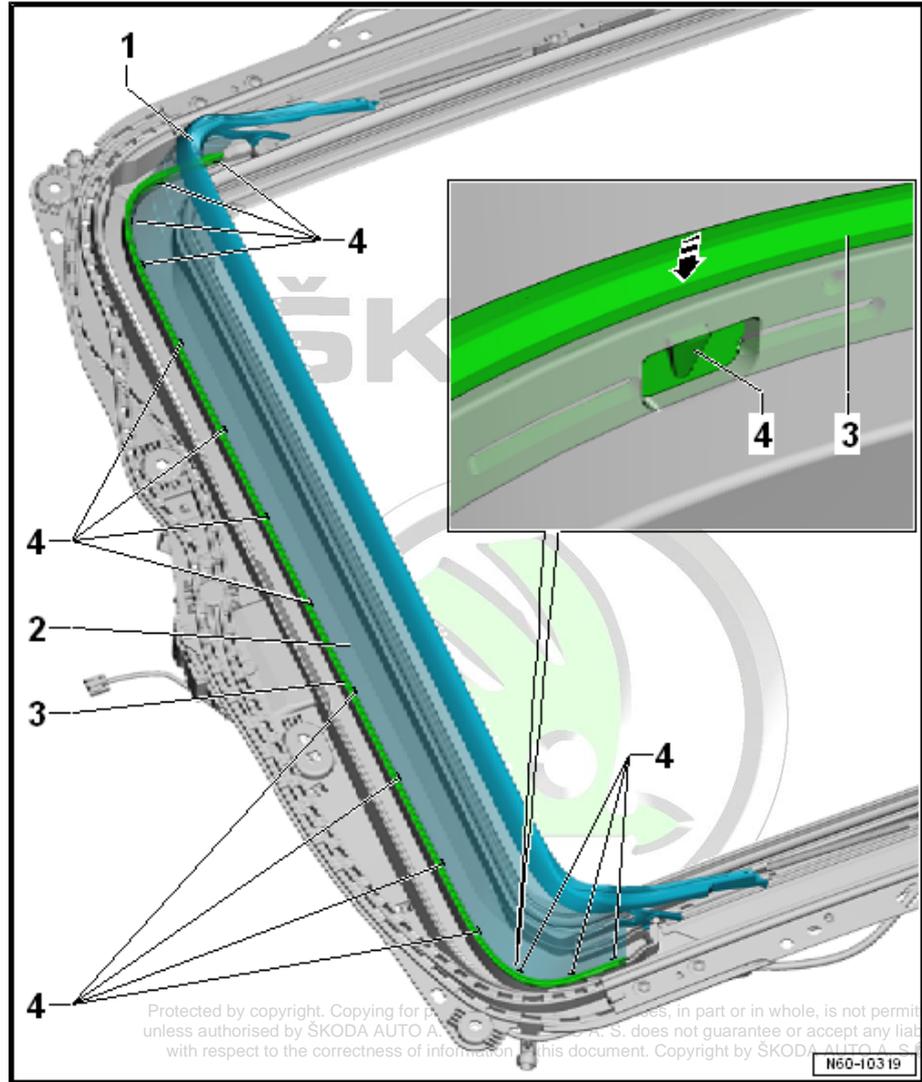
- Fully open the front glass panel.
- Unhook tension springs - 2 - - arrow a - .
- Move the air deflectors - 1 - with support clip - 4 - to the front - arrow b - and remove from the guide.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

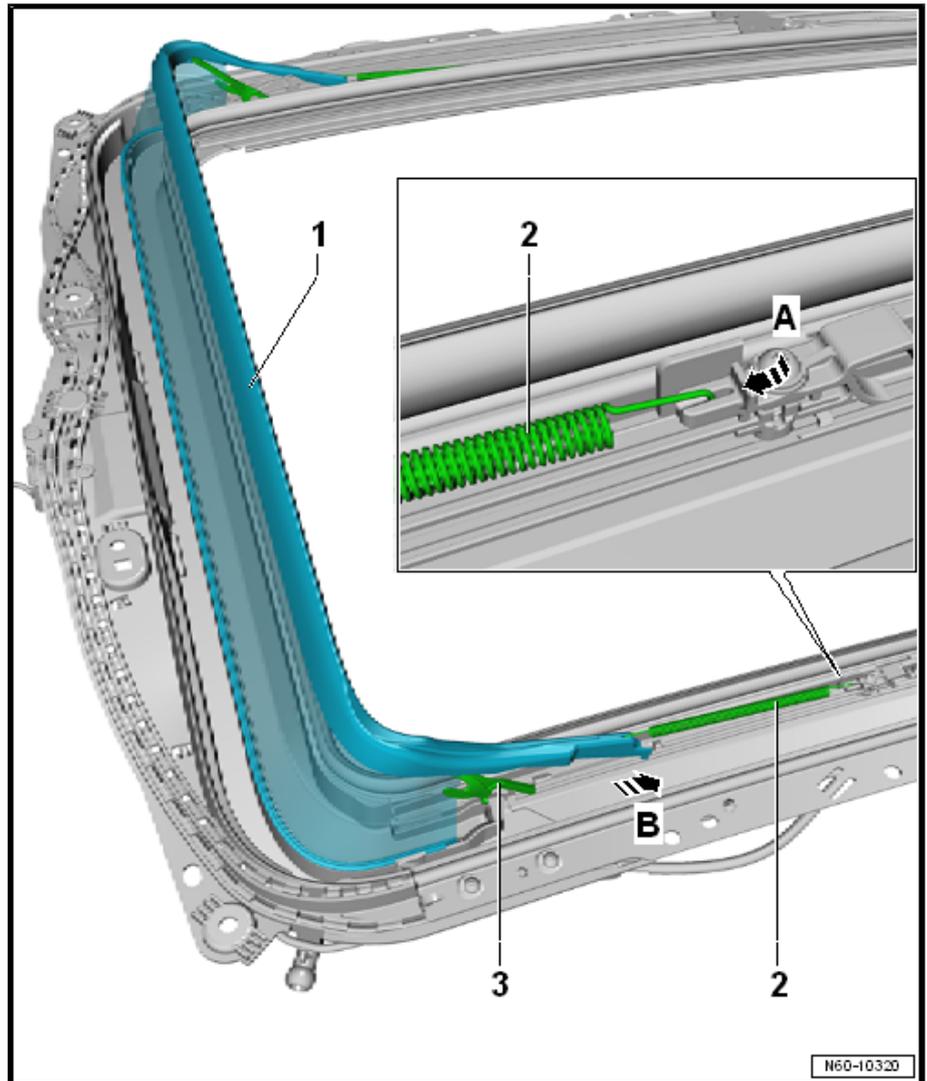


- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.
- Unlock all catch pegs - 4 - as arrow -
 - Raise air deflector - 1 - completely with the net - 2 - and frame - 3 - from the support.

Installing:



- Press the frame - 3 - for the air deflector - 1 - into the support
 - arrow -.
- All locking lugs - 4 - must engage.



- Insert the air deflector frame - 1 - with support clip -3- into the guide and move towards the rear - arrow b - .
- Hook in tension springs - 2 - - arrow a - .

2.9 Removing and installing control unit for sunroof

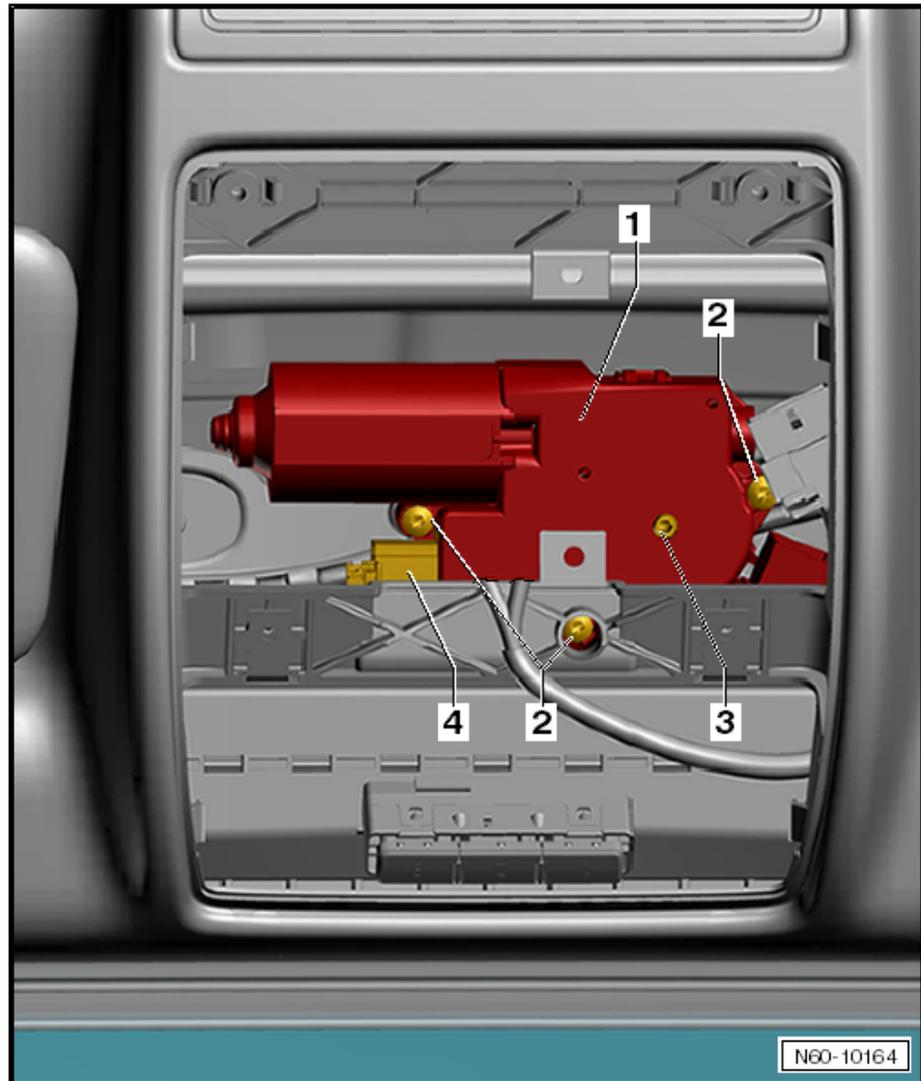
Removing:



WARNING

The glass panel drive for the sun roof must only be removed and installed when the roof is closed (zero position).

*Conditions for removing and installing the drive are as follows:
Engine and ignition switched off, remove ignition key and open door.*

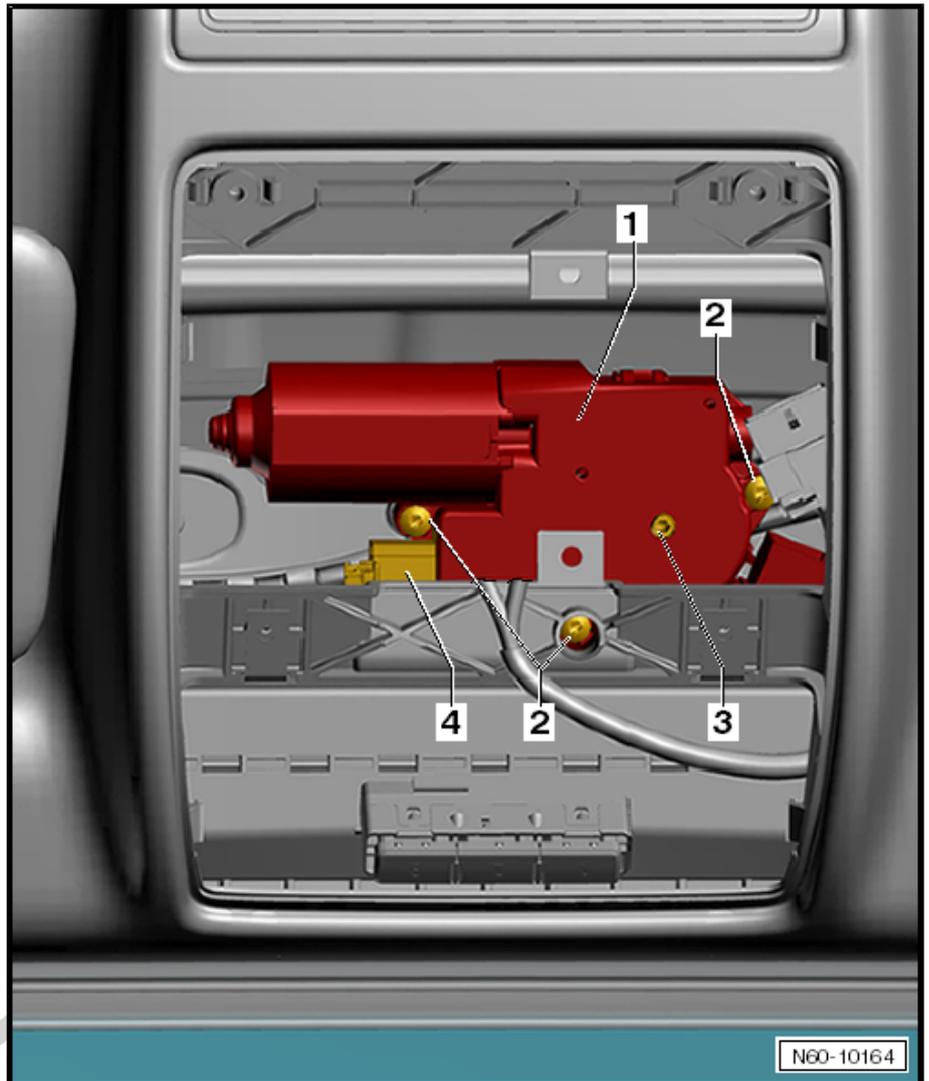


Removing:

- Remove light unit/control front => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove screws -3-.
- Raise the sunroof motor - 1 - downwards a little and swivel downwards.
- Separate plug connection -4-.

Installing:





- Install sliding roof - 1 - and screw in the screws - 2 -. Tightening torque - 3.5 Nm.
- Connect the plug connection - 4 -.
- Install light unit/control front → Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- After all work is done, carry out a standard run procedure of the sunroof motor ⇒ [page 197](#) .

2.10 Removing and installing roof blind control unit

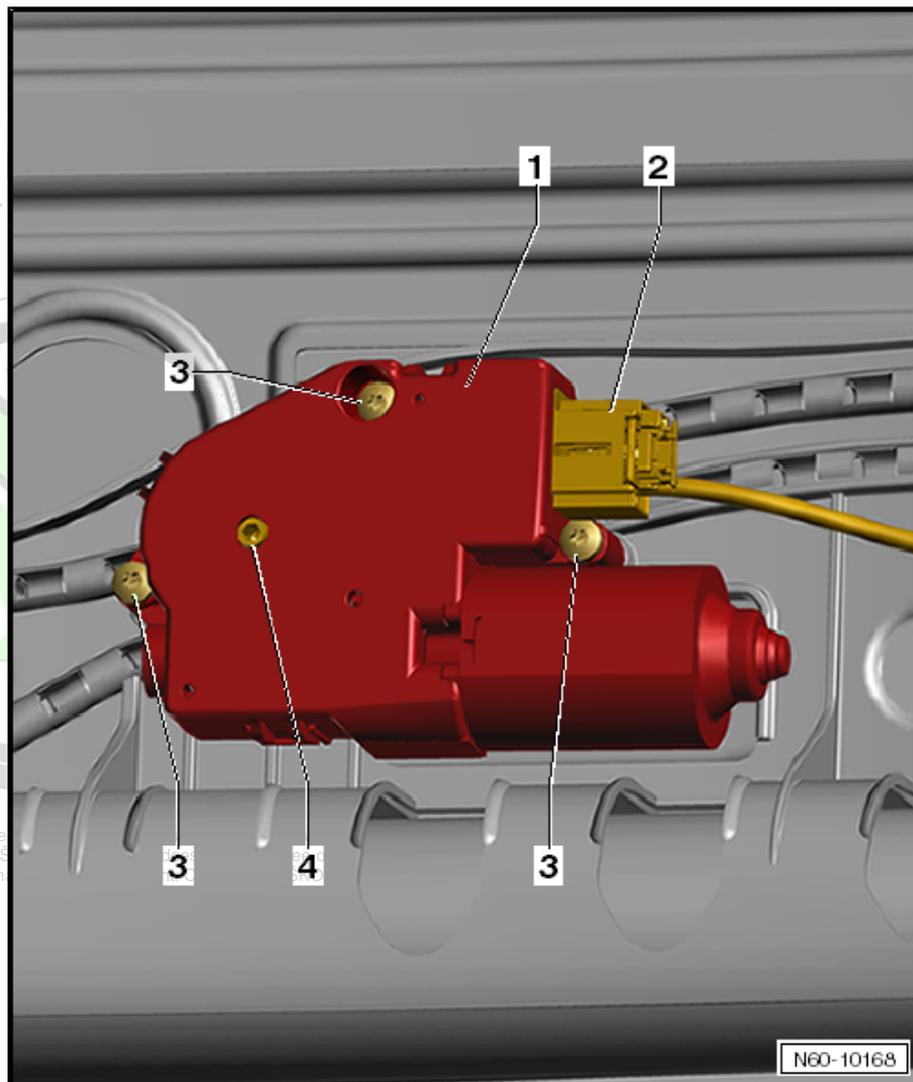
Removing:



ŠK



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted without prior permission, unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA reserves the right to change technical specifications without respect to the correctness of information.



- Remove roof trim panel ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Disconnect the el. plug connection - 2 - at the motor for the sun blind - 1 - .
- Remove screws -3-.
- Remove the motor for the sun blind -1-.

Installing:

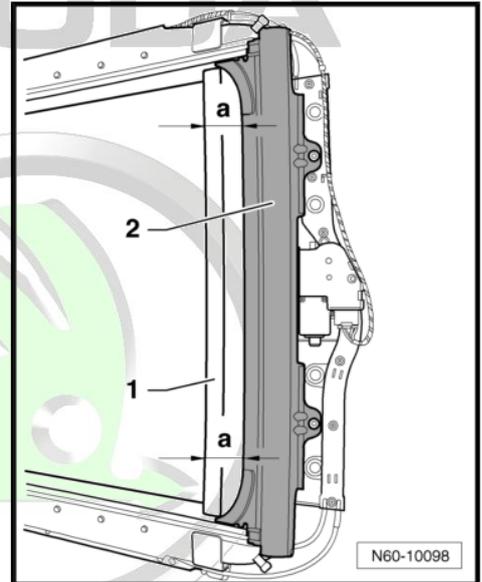
Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

- Align the sun blind before installing the motor for the sun blind so that it is in parallel.

- Measure and adjust the gap size - dimension a - between arch support for roller blind - 1 - and rolling noises - 2 -.

Tightening torque:

- 3.5 Nm
- After all work has been done, carry out a standard run procedure of the motor for the sun blind ⇒ [page 197](#) .



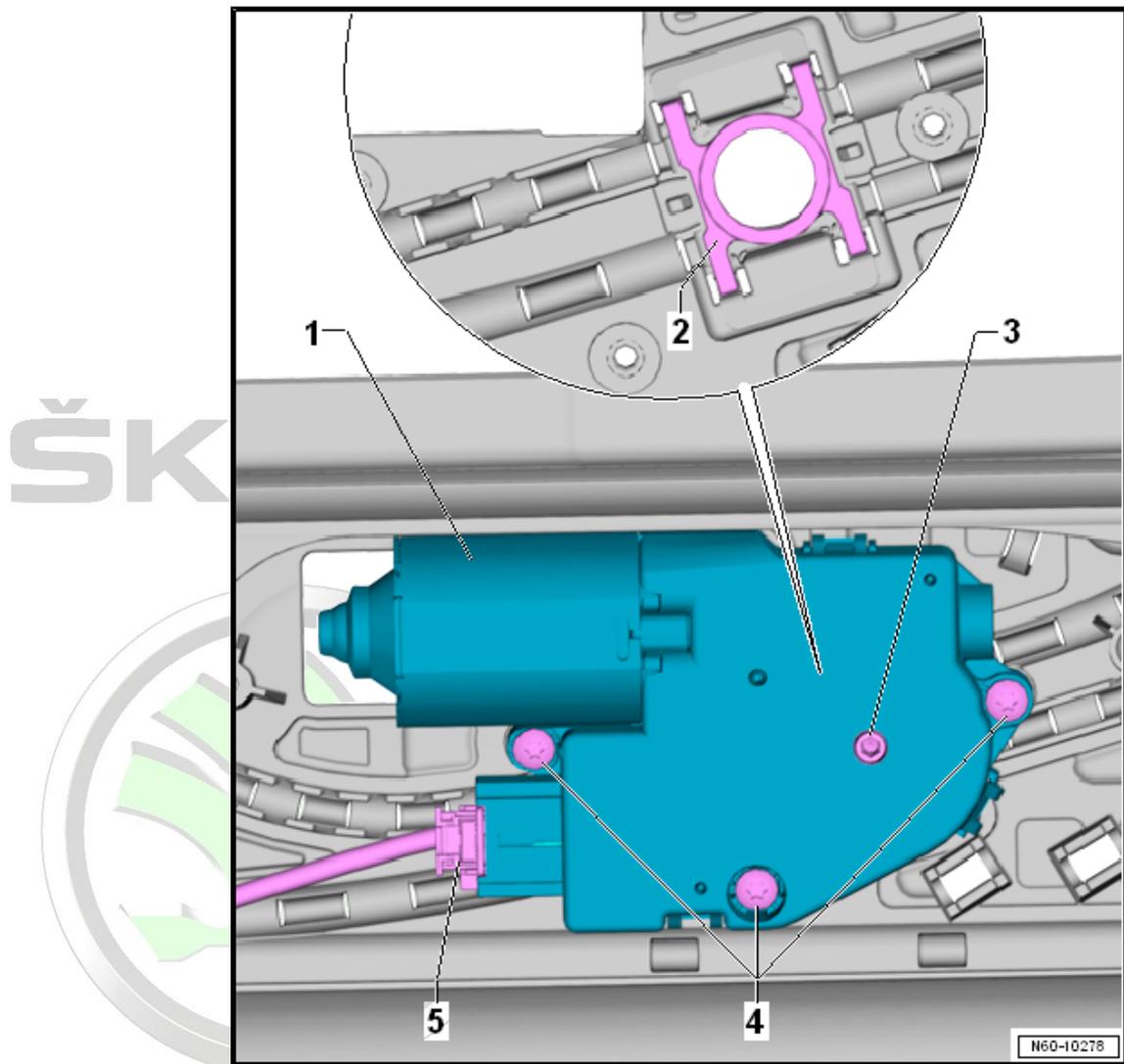
2.11 Close the sliding roof manually



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

- ◆ *During power failure, the sliding/tilting roof with glass panel can be moved at the drive using a commercially available hexagonal wrench.*
- ◆ *It must be turned using increased force because the drive does not separate from the gearing mechanism.*

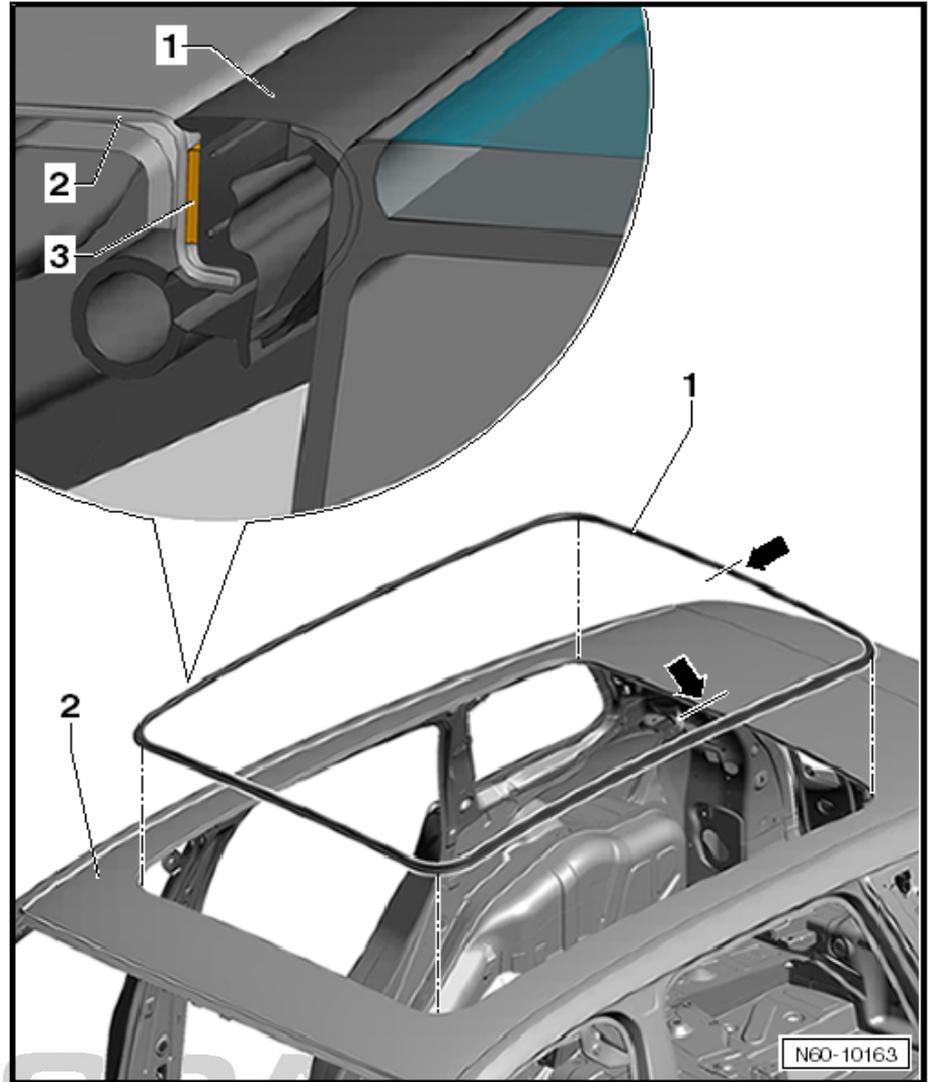


- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of the copyright holder. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©
- Insert the Allen keys in the screw - 3 - of the drive - 1 -.
 - Close the glass panel by turning the screw - 3 -.

2.12 Removing and installing the gasket of the sun roof

2.12.1 Removing and installing outer seal for the sliding roof frame

Removing:

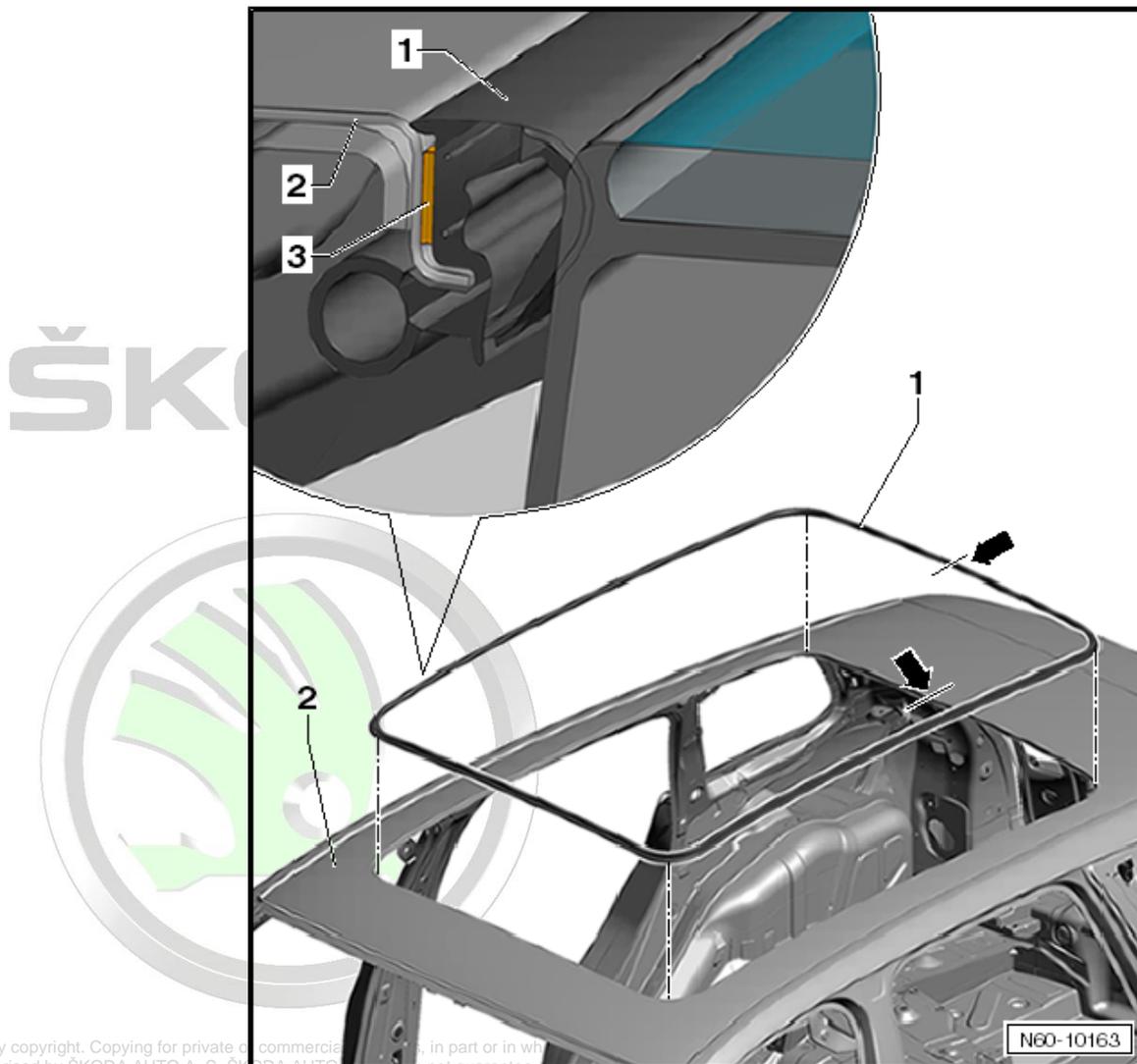


- Remove the installation frame ⇒ [page 176](#) .
- Disconnect the adhesive surface - 3 - of the external seal - 1 - from the roof - 2 - .

Installing:



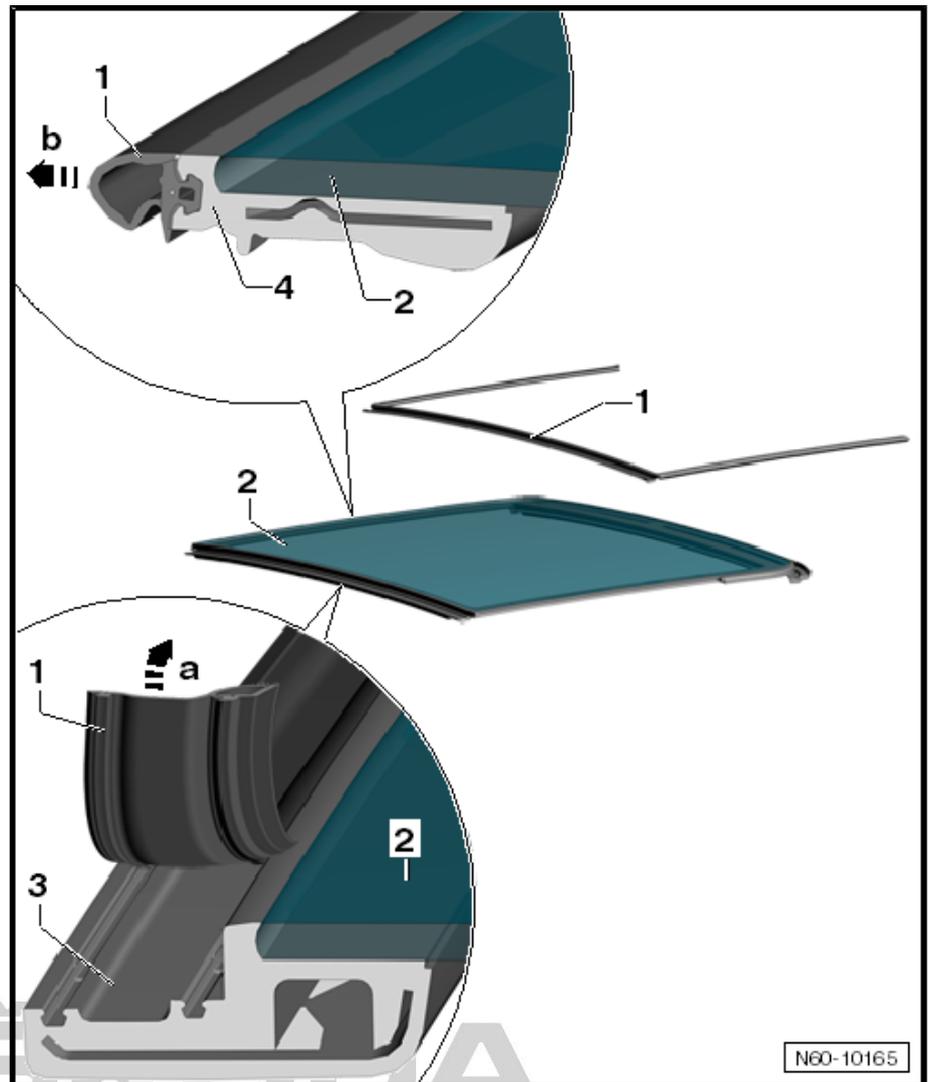
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use, in part or in whole, is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

- Remove the existing adhesive residues in a suitable way.
- The adhesive surface on the roof cutout must be dust- and grease-free.
- Completely clean the adhesive surface, e.g. with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .
- Coat the adhesive surfaces on the roof cutout with primer wiping cloth.
- Follow the airing time.
- Align the new external seal - 1 - through the connection - arrow - to the middle of rear the roof cutout.
- Remove the protective film for the adhesive film - 3 - and press on the seal to the roof - 2 - .
- Evenly trim any excess length on the outer seal.
- Firmly press the outer seal 2 x all the way around, e.g. with press-on roll for door damping film - 3356- .
- Install the installation frame => [page 176](#) .

2.12.2 Removing and installing glass panel seal



Removing:

- Remove rear glass panel ⇒ [page 168](#) .
- Remove the seal in the side area - 4 - on the side from the rear glass cover - 1 - - arrow b - .
- Remove the seal from the rear glass cover in the front region - 3 - - 1 - towards the front - arrow a - .

Installing:

- Use detergent so that the seal slips more easily into the support.
- Press in seal in the front region - 3 - from the top into the support of the glass cover - 1 - .
- Press in seal in the side region - 4 - into the support of the glass cover - 1 - .
- Install rear glass panel ⇒ [page 168](#) .

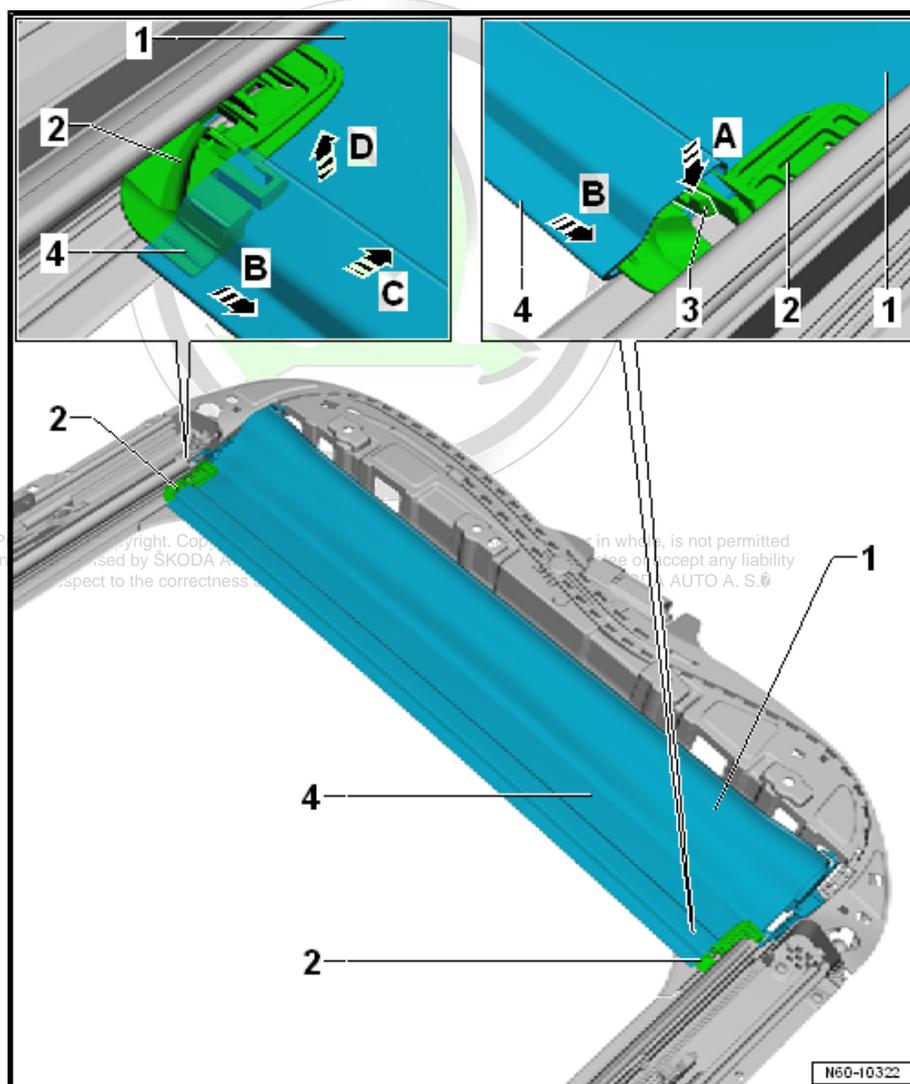
2.13 Removing and installing the sliding roof screen

Removing:



Note

- ◆ During a power failure, the sun blind can be moved manually into the removal position (fully opened) by turning the motor for the sun blind using a commercially available socket wrench ⇒ [page 187](#) .
- ◆ Keep the parts clean when working on the cloth for the sun blind or cover them up. Wear protective gloves where necessary.



Removing:

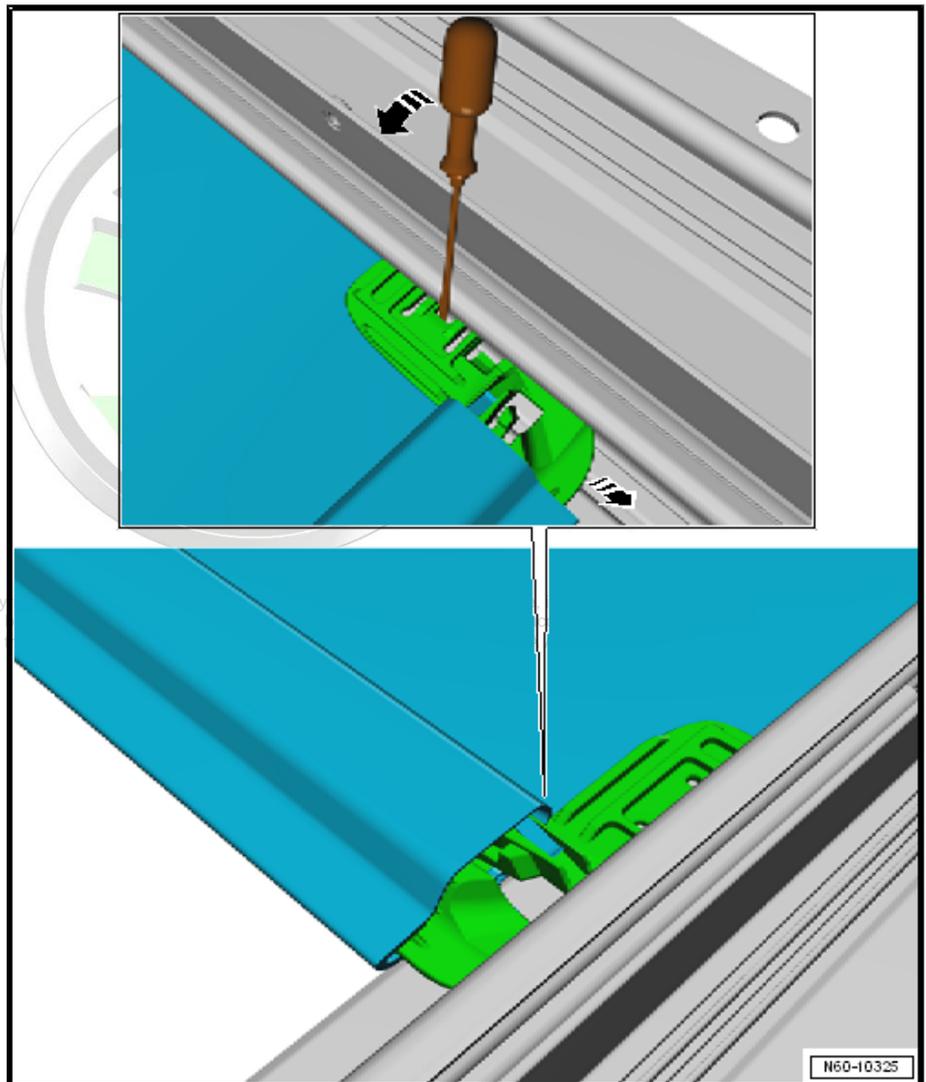
- Adjust the sun blind completely into the opened position.
- Remove front glass panel ⇒ [page 164](#) .
- Remove rear glass panel ⇒ [page 168](#) .
- Remove the sunroof frame ⇒ [page 176](#) .
- Push the locking device - 3 - downwards - arrow a - .

- Move the arch support - 4 - completely to one side - arrow b - .
- Move the arch support - 4 - on the opposite side out of the blind feed - 2 - towards the rear - arrow c - .
- If required, remove the arch support - 4 - to the side completely out of the sun blind - 1 - - arrow d - .

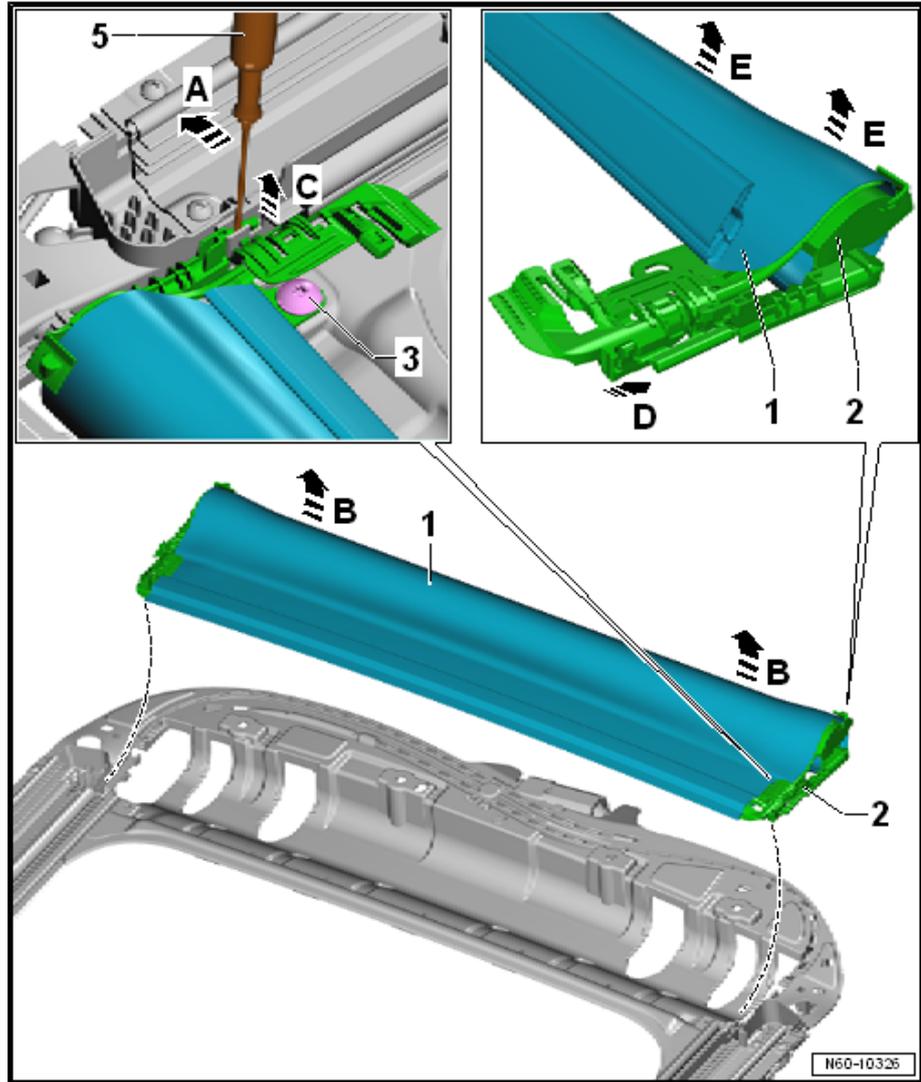
i Note

Make sure that the cloth of the roller blind is not damaged during subsequent work.

ŠKODA



- Carefully lift the hook on the blind feed using a slotted screwdriver.
- Remove the sun blind with blind feed from the guide towards the rear.
- Repeat the work steps for the opposite side.



- Remove screws -3-.
- Unlock the catch with a slotted screwdriver - 5 - - a - .
- Remove the sun blind - 1 - completely with the roller blind support left and right - 2 - from the sunroof frame towards the rear - arrow d - and upwards - arrow e - .
- Lift the sun blind with blind support from the sunroof frame completely - arrow b - .

Installing:

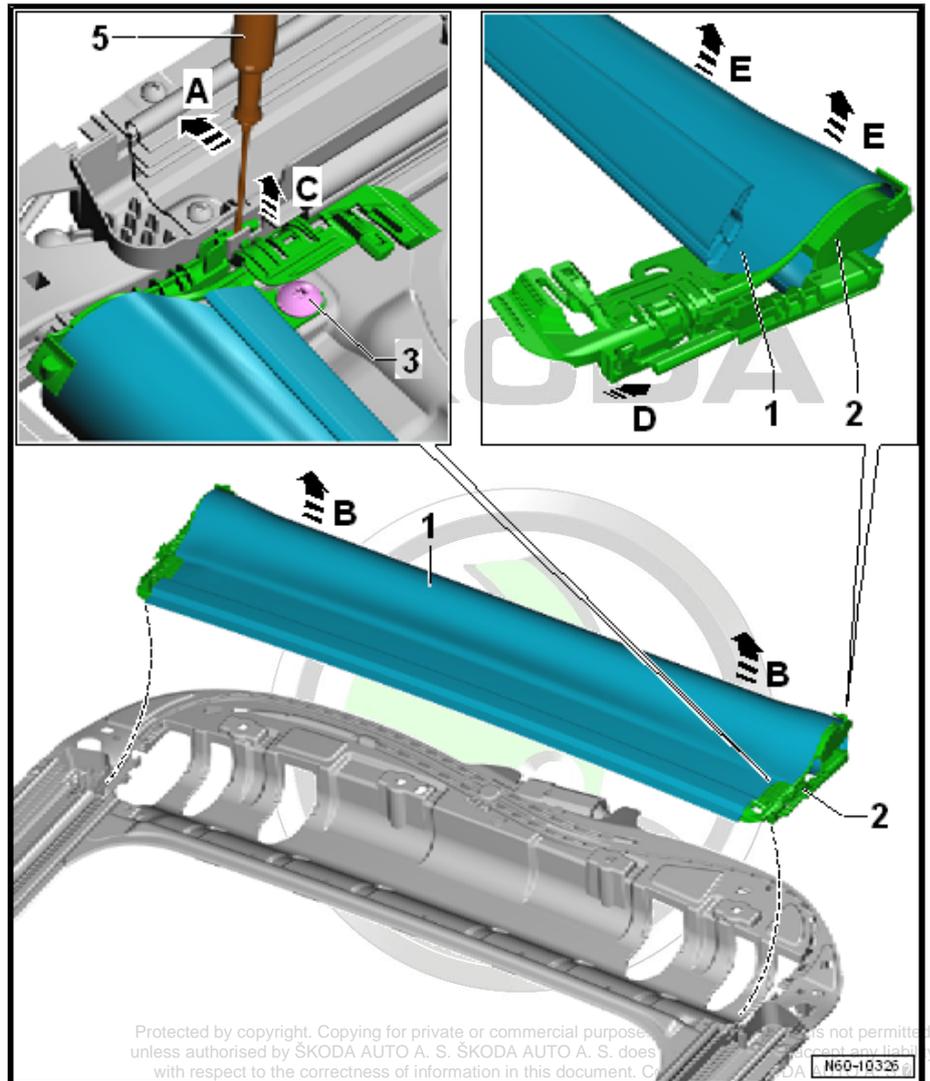


Note

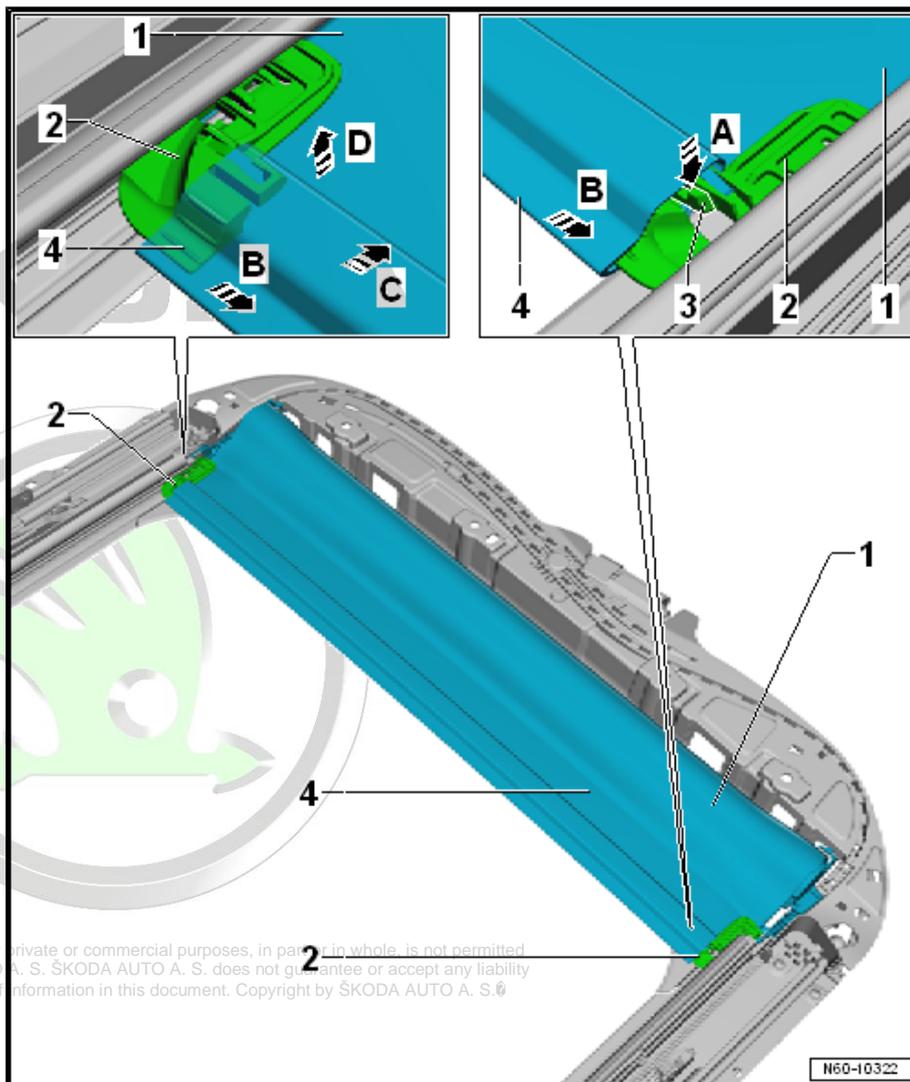
The arch support for the roller blind and the linkages for the sun blind must not be greased.

ŠKODA





- Slide in the sun blind - 1 - into the sunroof frame completely with roller blind support left and right - 2 -.
- Insert the roller blind support into the guides and lock.
- Screw in the screws -3-. Tightening torque - 3 Nm.



Further installation occurs in reverse order.

i Note

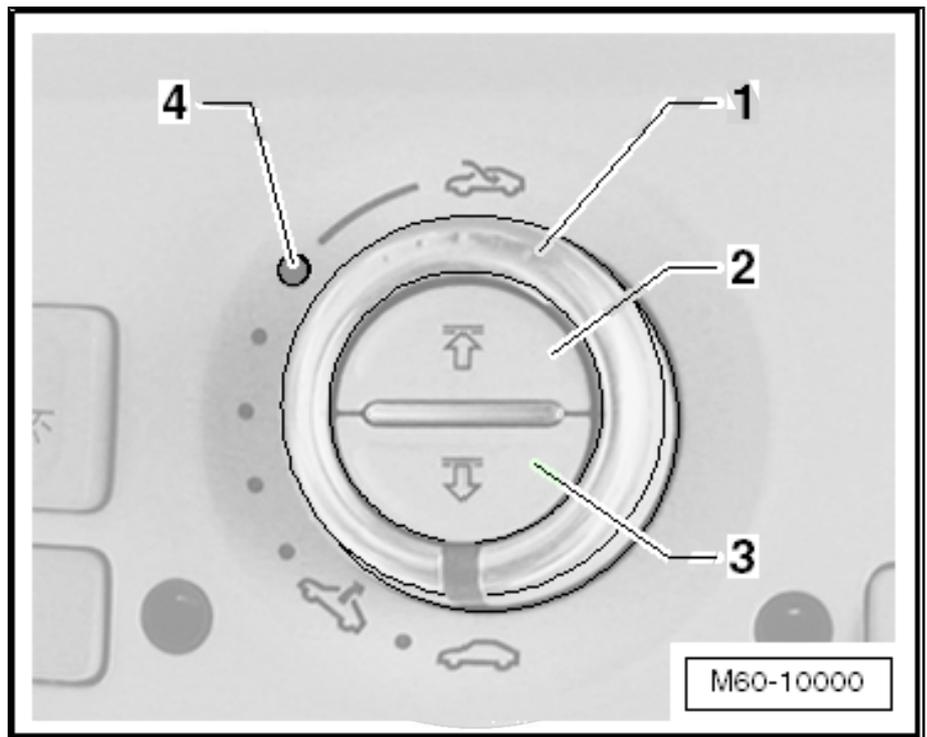
After installing the sun blind, check for synchronous running and smooth operation. To do so, move the drive for the sun blind by manually operating the motor with a commercially available hexagonal wrench and pay attention to wrinkle formation and loss of shape of the cloth for the roller blind.

- After all work has been done, carry out a standard run procedure of the motor for the sun blind => [page 197](#) .

2.14 Teach sliding sunroof control unit

Note

- ◆ After replacing the glass cover, an engine, or folding mechanism, carry out an initial run procedure with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester or with a mechanical procedure, see below.
- ◆ During the initial run procedure, the closing force limiter is switched off.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability

Standard run procedure of sliding roof motor:

Ignition switched on, roof closed, rotary switch in home position.

- Hold folded-out switch for sunroof -1- and keep in this position for the entire initial run procedure (approx. 20 s).
- During the teach run, the glass cover opens up and is then closed fully.
- After the glass panel is in the closed final position again, the initial run procedure ends and you can release the button.

2.15 Teach control unit for screen for sliding roof

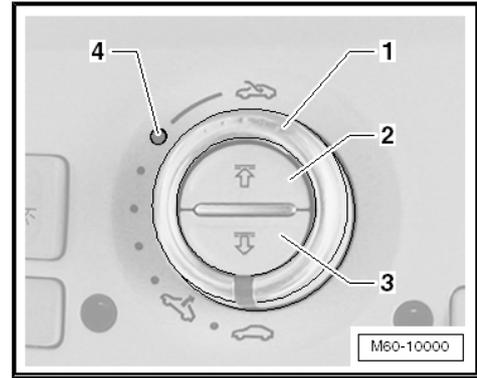
Note

- ◆ After replacing the glass cover, an engine, or folding mechanism, carry out an initial run procedure with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester or with a mechanical procedure, see below.
- ◆ During the initial run procedure, the closing force limiter is switched off.

Ignition is switched on.



- Press button - 3 - and keep it in this position during the entire initial run procedure (approx. 20 s).
- The screen for sliding roof opens in the end position and is then fully closed.
- After the screen is in the closed final position again, the initial run procedure ends and you can release the button.



ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

3 Water drain hoses



3.1 Summary of components - water drain hoses

1 - Front water drain hoses

- ❑ Clean ⇒ [page 200](#) .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 201](#) .

2 - Rear water drain hoses

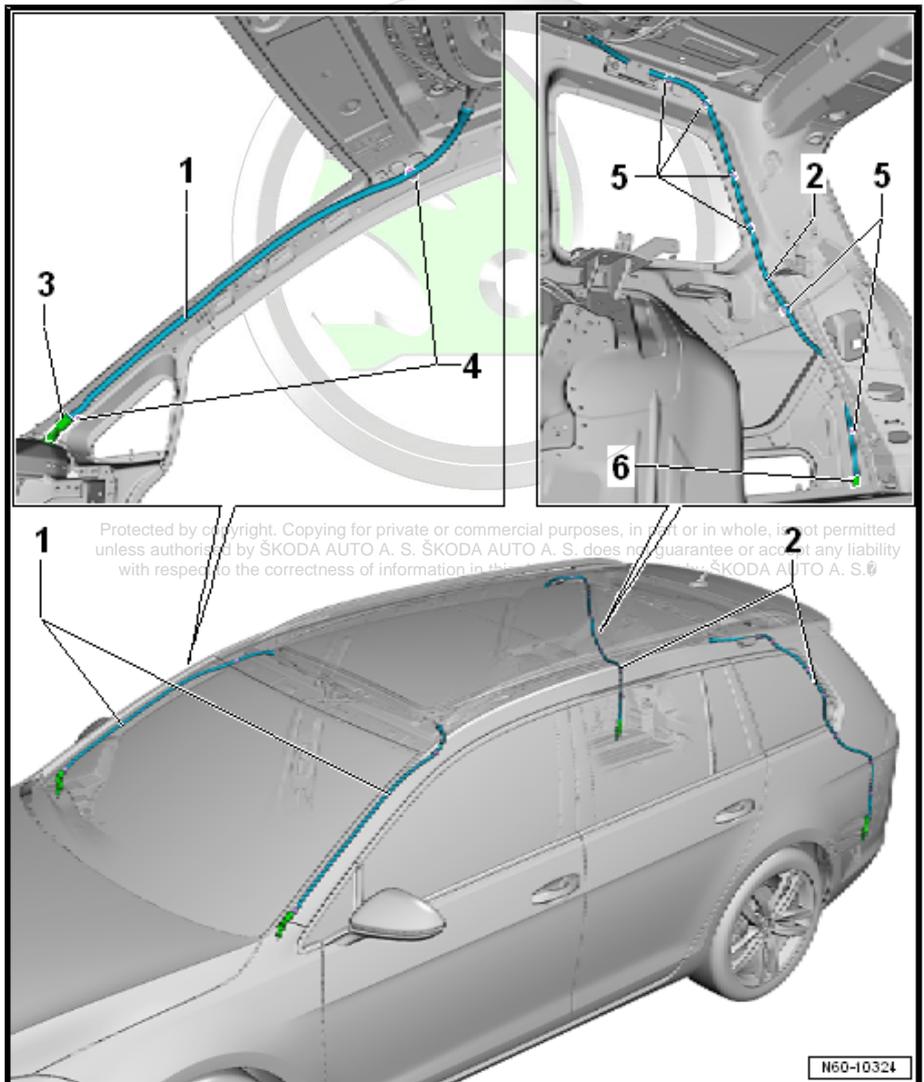
- ❑ Clean ⇒ [page 200](#) .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 201](#) .

3 - Front water drain valve

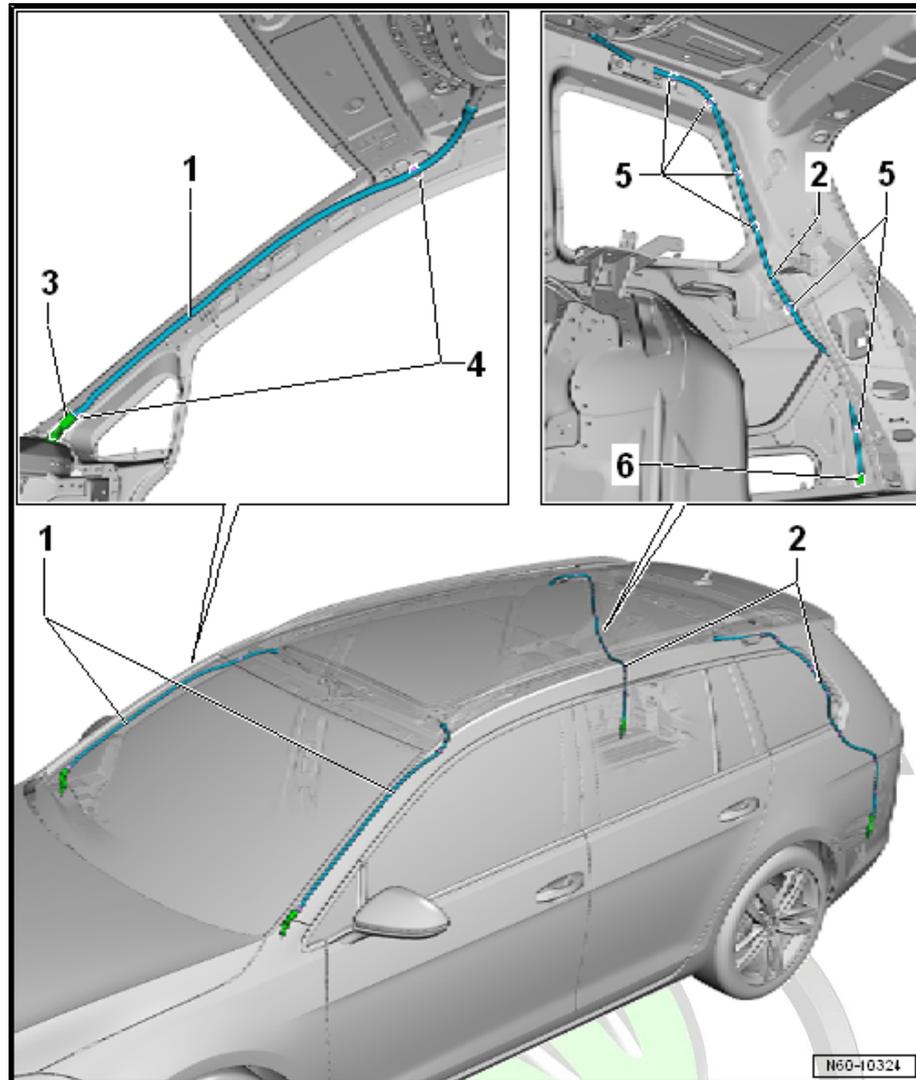
4 - Retaining clip

5 - Retaining clip

6 - Rear water drain valve



3.2 Cleaning the water drain hoses



Front water drain hoses:

The front water drain hoses - 1 - run through the A pillars and end in the rain groove.

- Remove the plenum chamber cover ⇒ [page 15](#) .
- Clean the lower drain valve - 3 - by cleaning the water drain hose - 1 - e.g. with a Bowden wire.

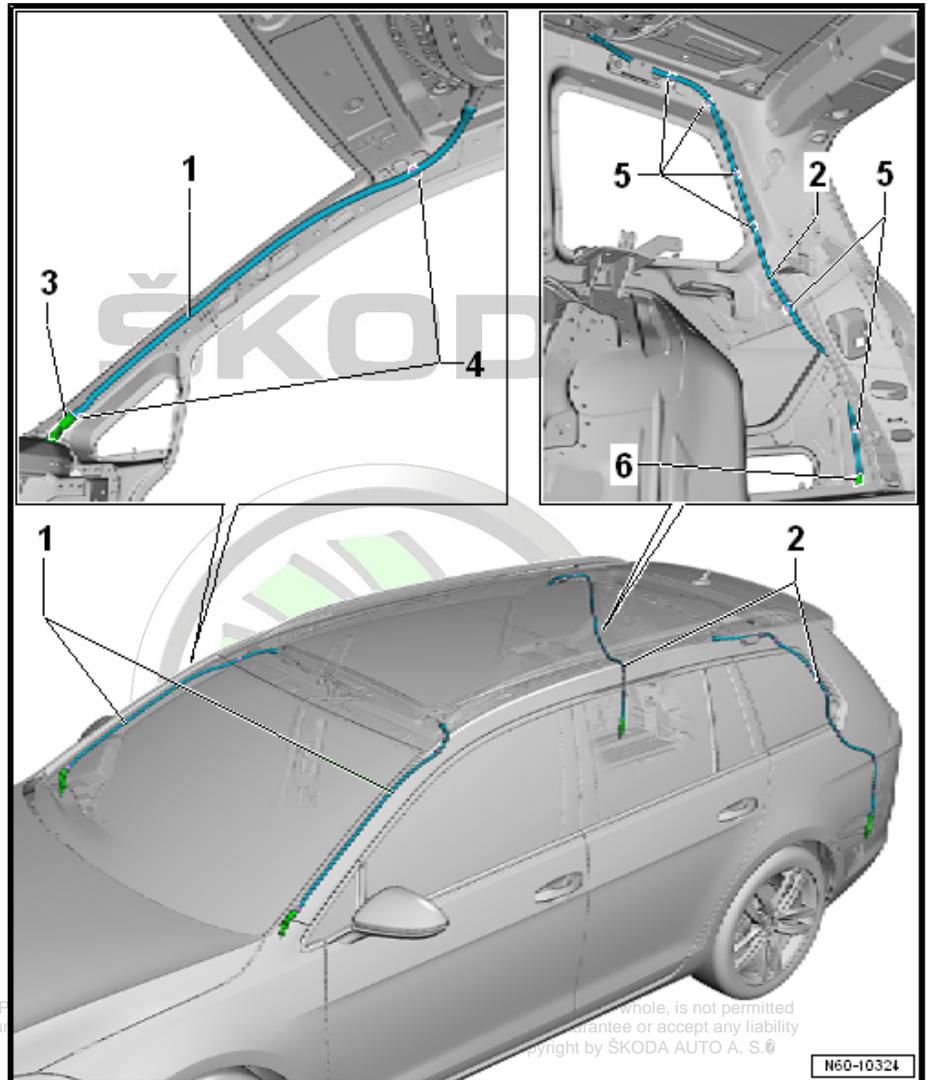
Rear water drain hoses

The rear water drain hoses - 2 - run through the D pillars and end in the rear outer floor panels.

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 211](#) .
- Clean the lower drain valve - 6 - by cleaning the water drain hose - 2 - e.g. with a Bowden wire.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

3.3 Removing and installing water drain hoses



Note

- ◆ When replacing the water drain hose, shorten the replacement part as required.
- ◆ The arrangement of the sticker and protective film must be taken from the old part.

Remove front water drain hose:

- Remove A-pillar trim panel ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Unhook roof trim ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Remove clip -4-.
- Remove water drain hose-1- with drain hoses -3-.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Remove rear water drain hose:

- Remove D-pillar trim panel ⇒ [page 379](#) .



- Removing side trim panel in luggage compartment
⇒ [page 390](#) .
- Unhook roof trim ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Remove clips -5-.
- Remove rear water drain hose-2- with drain valves -6-.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

63 – Bumpers

1 Front bumper

1.1 Front bumper



Note

Depending on the model version, slight differences must be taken into consideration when removing and installing the front bumper.

1.1.1 Summary of components

1 - Screw

- ❑ Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

2 - Screw

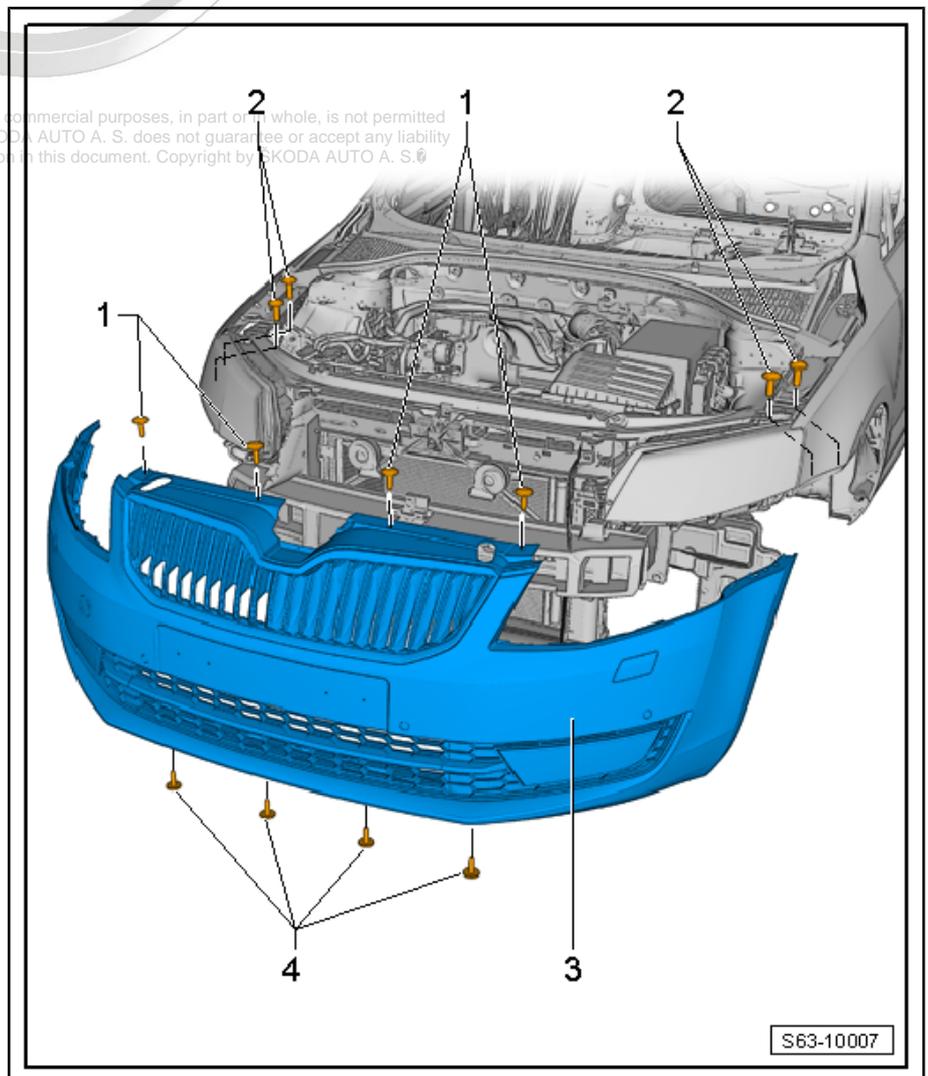
- ❑ Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.

3 - Front bumper

- ❑ Removing ⇒ [page 204](#) .
- ❑ Installing ⇒ [page 205](#) .

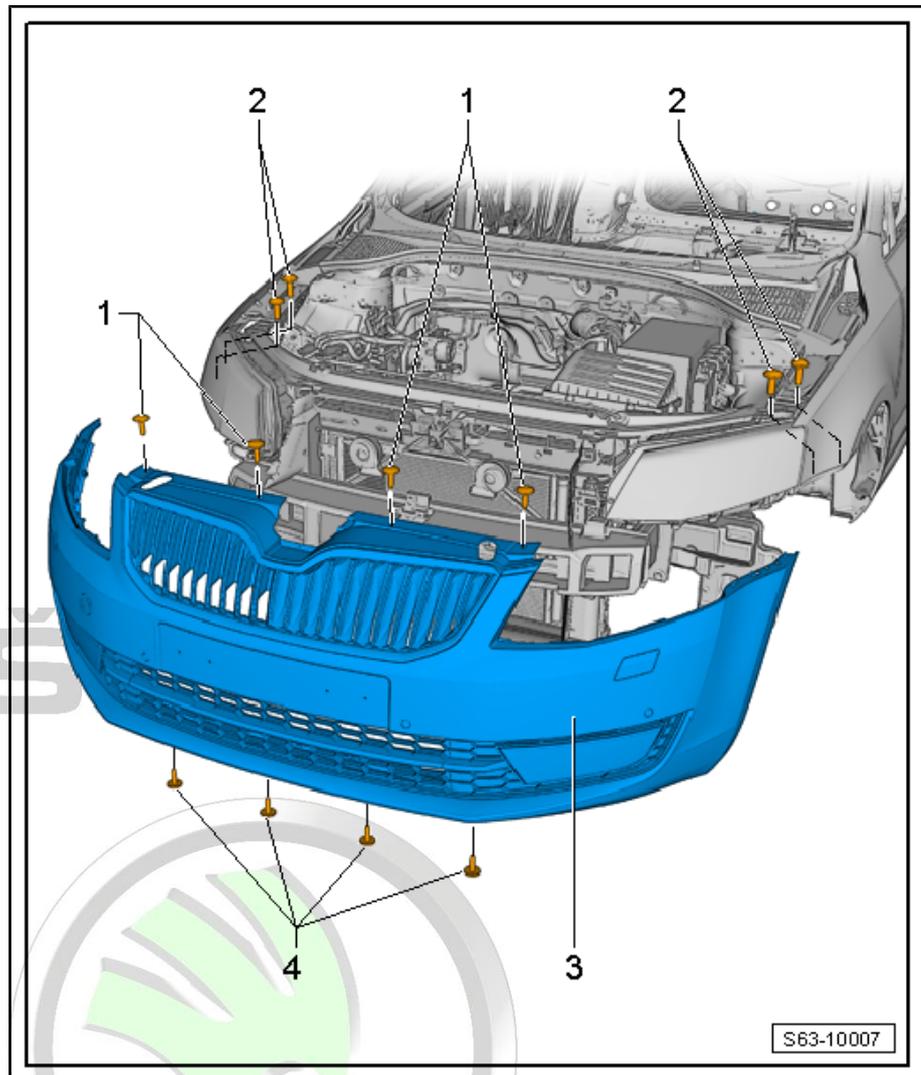
4 - Screw

- ❑ Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.





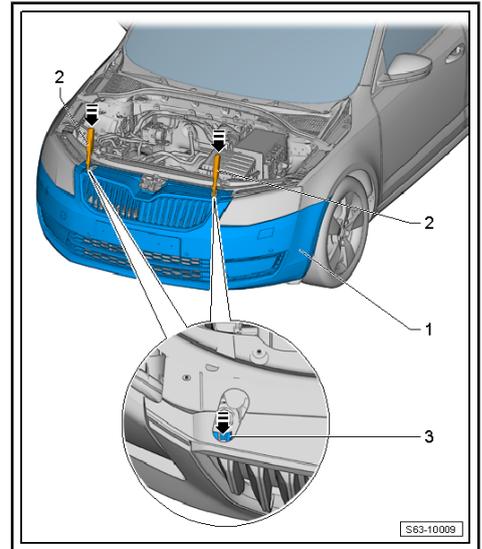
1.1.2 Removing:



- Remove front wheelhouse liners => [page 237](#) .
- Unscrew screws - 1 - (1.5 Nm).
- Unscrew screws - 2 - (3.5 Nm).
- Disconnect the hose to the windscreen cleaning system (if installed) => Electrical system ; Rep. gr. 92 .
- Disconnect the existing connectors of the electrical components (sensor for pedestrian accident protection).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

- Insert the screwdriver into the bores in the upper wall - arrows - and press off the lock hook of the guide profile by pressing.
- Detach the front bumper - 3 - parallel from the vehicle with the assistance of a 2nd mechanic.



1.1.3 Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Observe the parallelism and the correct gap sizes of the front bumper - 1 - ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00; Karosseriespaltmaße; Karosserie vorn .

1.1.4 Summary of components - Front bumper

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



1 - Decorative frame

- Clipped into the bumper.

2 - Bumper holder

3 - Bumpers

- Removing ⇒ [page 204](#) .
- Installing ⇒ [page 205](#) .

4 - Left fog light

- Removing and installing: ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .

5 - Left grid

- Clipped into the bumper.
- Assignment ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .

6 - Middle ventilation grid

- Clipped into the bumper.
- Assignment ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .

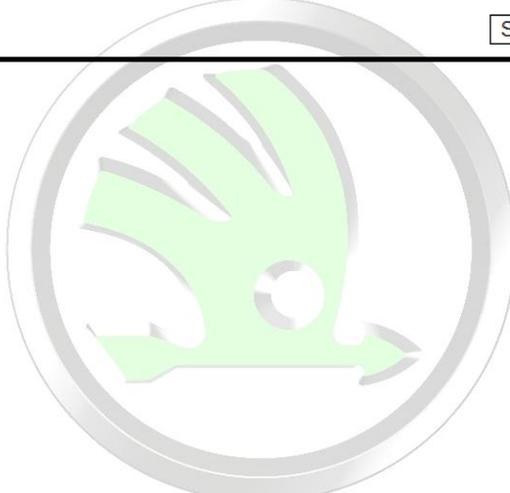
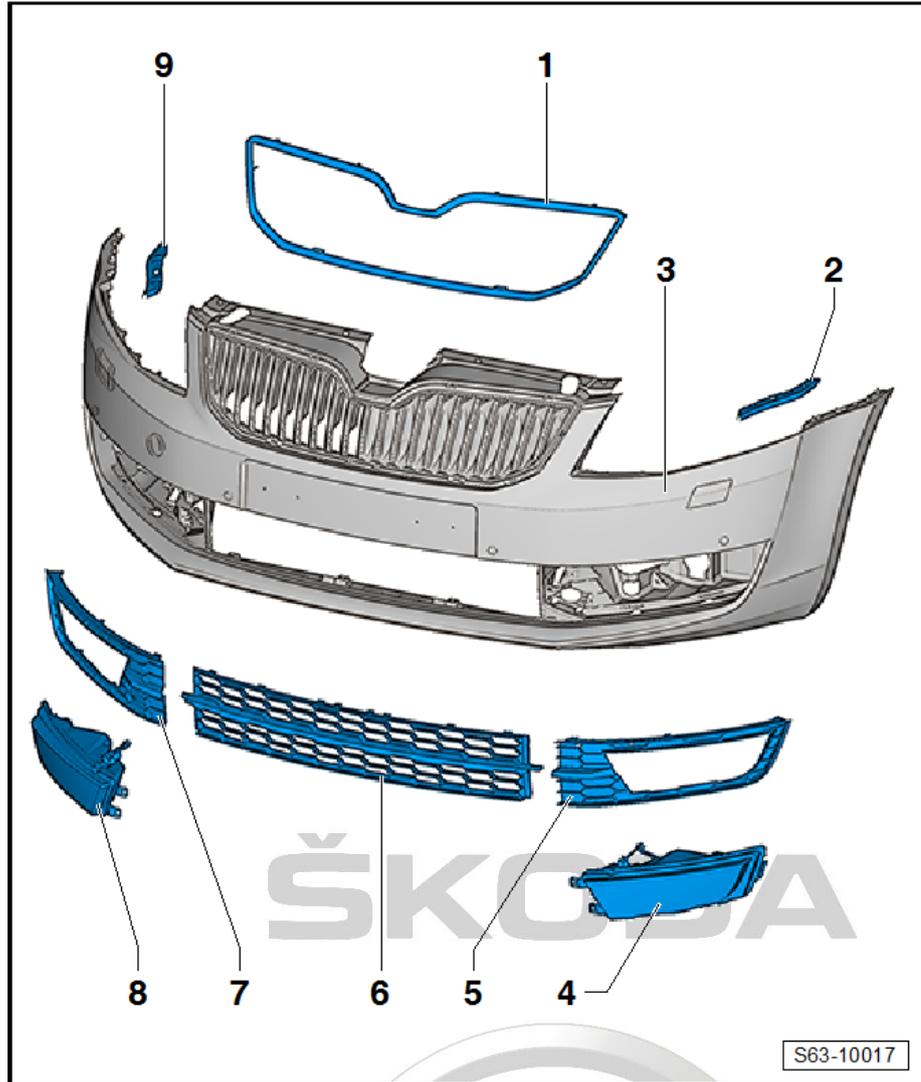
7 - Right grid

- Clipped into the bumper.
- Assignment ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .

8 - Right fog light

- Removing and installing: ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .

9 - Bumper holder



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.1.5 Summary of components - Front bumper RS

1 - Decorative frame

- Clipped into the bumper.

2 - Bumper holder

3 - Bumpers

- Removing ⇒ [page 204](#) .
- Installing ⇒ [page 205](#) .

4 - Left fog light

- Removing and installing: ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .

5 - Left grid

- Clipped into the bumper.
- Assignment ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .

6 - Middle ventilation grid

- Clipped into the bumper.
- Assignment ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .

7 - Intake grid for clearance control control unit

- Clip in the grid ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 207\)](#) .

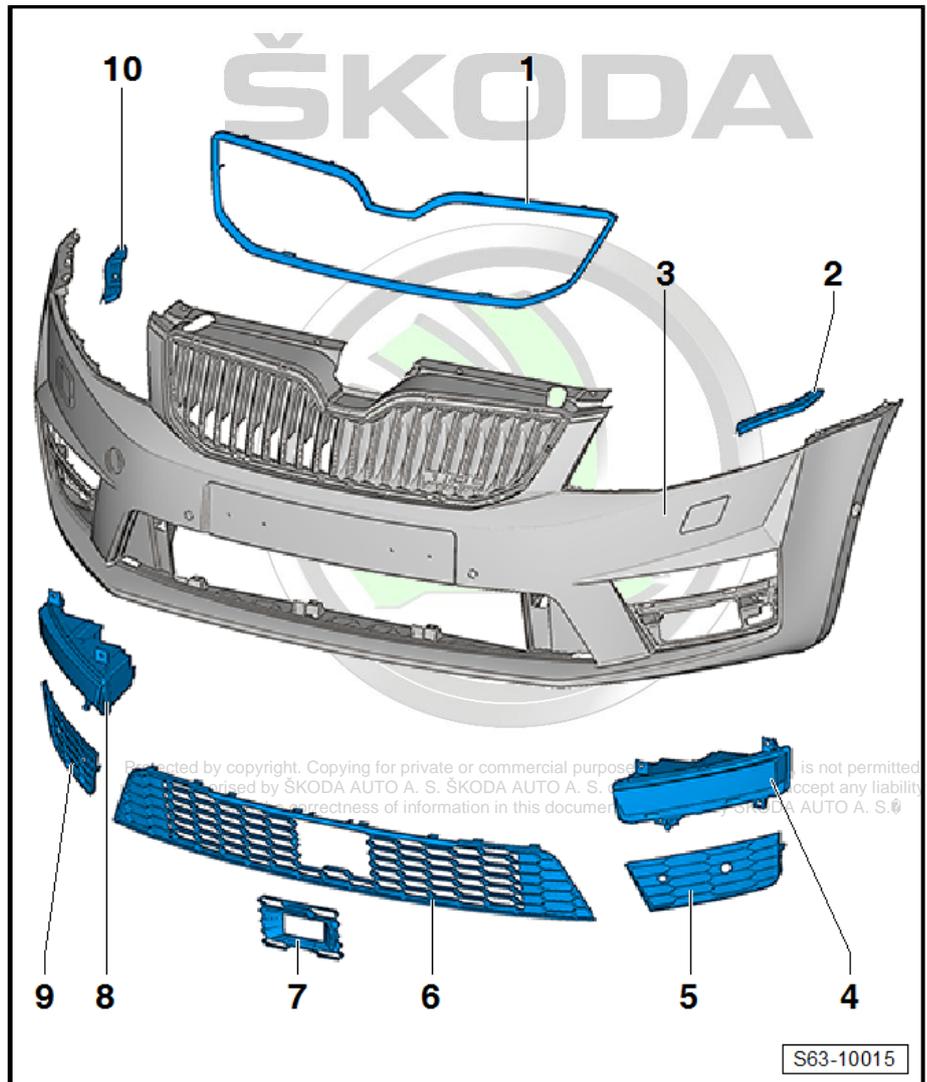
8 - Right fog light

- Removing and installing: ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .

9 - Right grid

- Clipped into the bumper.
- Assignment ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .

10 - Bumper holder



1.2 Front bumper bracket

1.2.1 Summary of components:

1 - Front bumper bracket

Removing:

- Removing front bumper
⇒ [page 204](#) .
- Remove impact absorber.
- Remove clearance control control unit ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Unscrew screws -2-.
- Unscrew screws -3-.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.

3 - Screw

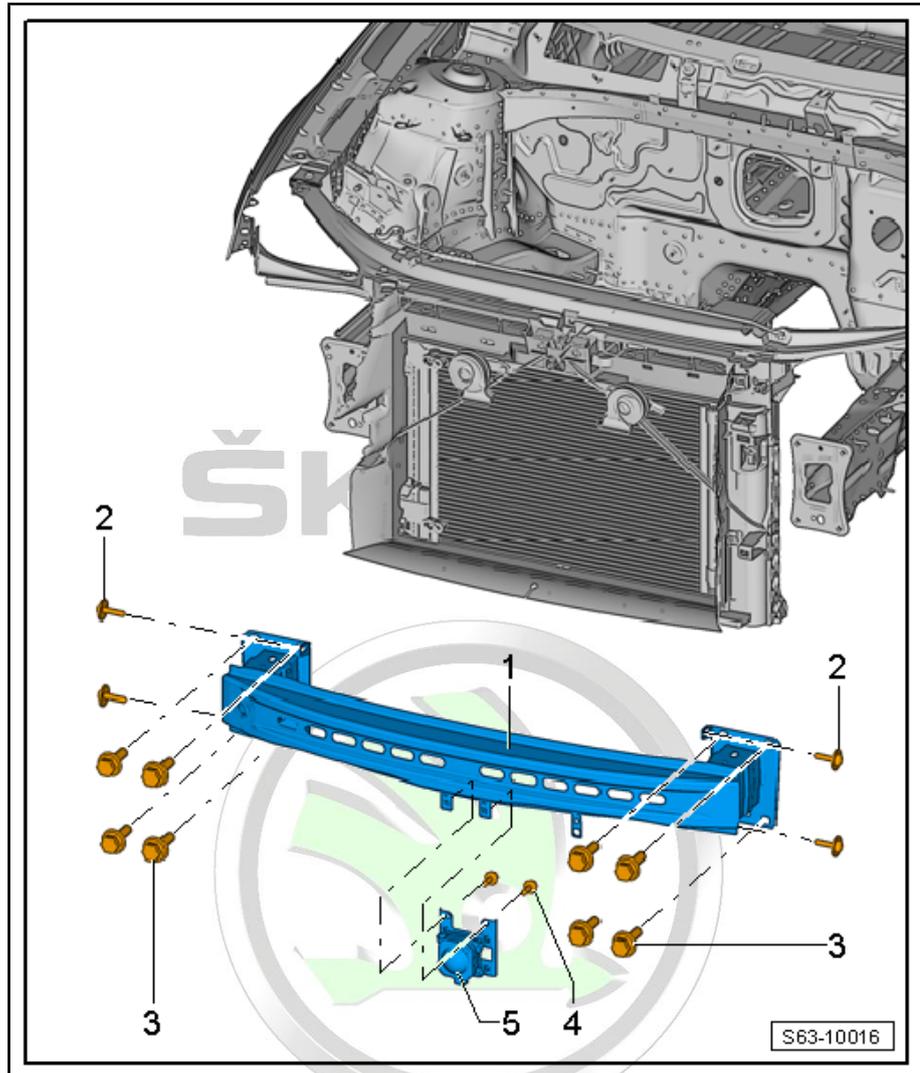
- Tightening torque:
55 Nm.

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
8 Nm.

5 - Clearance control control unit

Removing and installing: ⇒
Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 .



Note

Adjust clearance control control unit after installation ⇒ Suspension; Rep. gr. 44, ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27, ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.3 Cutting out the openings for the parking aid sensors (drill)

Pre-drill the openings



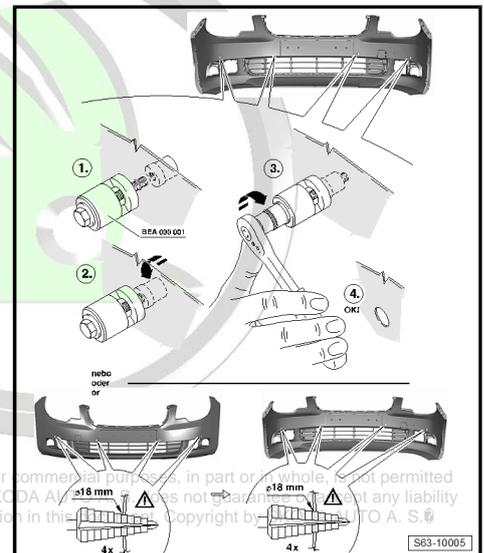
Note

Avoid damage to the painted bumper side!

- Removing the bumper => [page 203](#) .
- In the area of the sketched out axle crosses, mark the centres for drilling four openings using a suitable tool.
- Drill the openings with a diameter of 8 mm.

Openings for the sensors

- Use the cutting tool BEA 000 001 to cut out the opening (diameter 18 mm).
- Use a step drill in order to drill the openings.
- First of all make the openings from the outer side of the bumper when using a step drill. Complete the work step from the inner side of the bumper.
- Trim the openings in a suitable manner in order to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- The glueing procedure of new sensor holders is described in the workshop manual => Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .
- After installing the sensors, install the front bumper => [page 203](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this manual. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

1.4 Cutting out park steering assistant sender (drilling)



Note

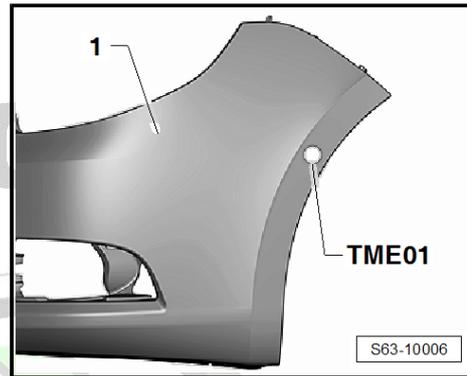
Avoid damage to the painted bumper side!

Cut out opening:

- Remove front wheelhouse liner => [page 237](#) .



- Use -Schraubenlocher - TME01- in order to cut out the opening.
- The position of the opening for the park steering assistant sender is marked on the inside of the bumper.
- After cutting out the opening, inspect for burrs, if necessary clean the edges.
- Proceed in the same way on the opposite side of the bumper.
- The work sequence for the removal and installation of the sender is described in the workshop manual ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .
- Install the front wheelhouse liner after installing and connecting the park steering assistant sender ⇒ [page 237](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2 Rear bumper

2.1 Rear bumper



Note

Depending on the model version, slight differences must be taken into consideration when removing and installing the rear bumper.

2.1.1 Summary of components of rear bumper:

1 - Screw

- Tightening torque:
1.5 Nm.

2 - Side guide profile left

- Screwed together with
the side part.

3 - Guide profile centre left

4 - Guide profile centre right

5 - Side guide profile right

- Screwed together with
the side part.

6 - Screw

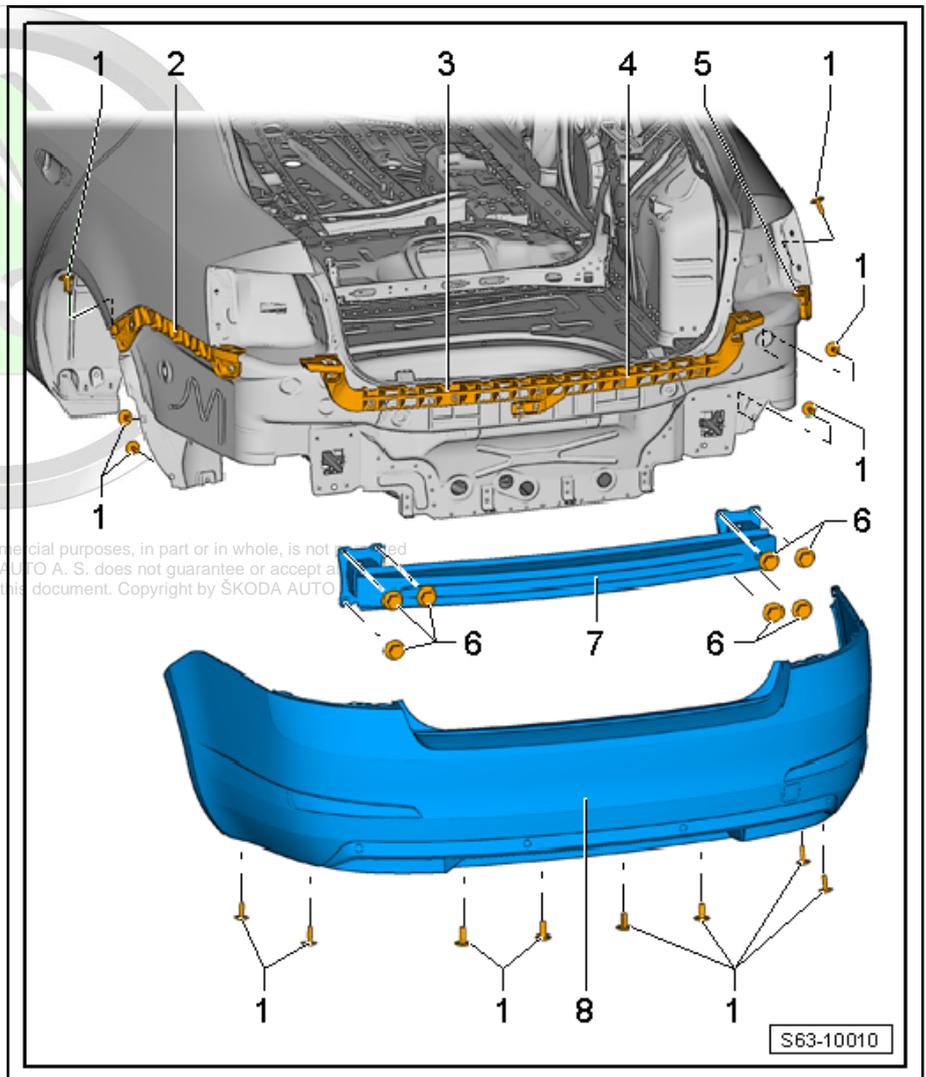
- Tightening torque:
20 Nm.

Process for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept a liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO

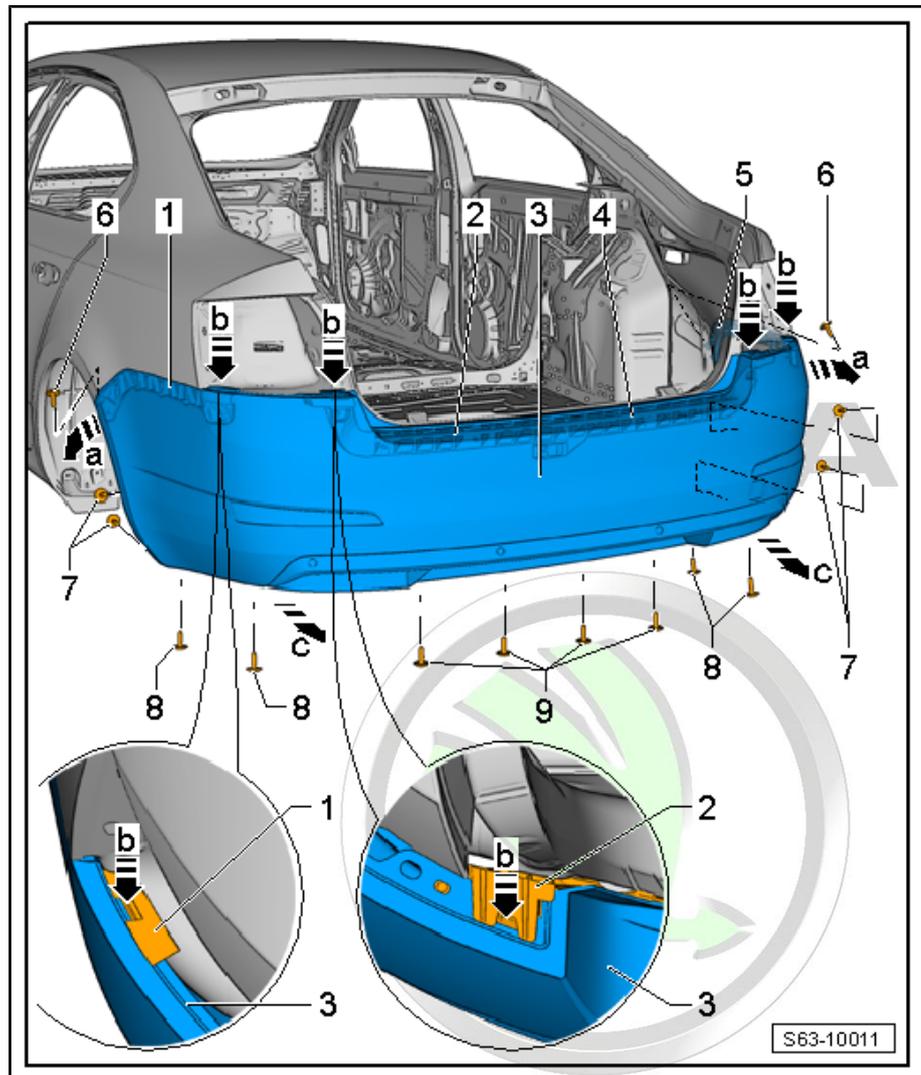
7 - Bumper bracket

8 - Rear bumper

- Removing ⇒ [page 212](#) .
- Installing ⇒ [page 213](#) .



2.1.2 Removing:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

- Remove tail lights ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94
- Remove the screws -7- in the area of the left and right wheel-house.
- Remove the screws - 6 - that connect the edge of the bumper with the wing, from the top.
- Remove the screws of the cover for the underbody - 8 -.
- Remove the screws - 9 - from below.
- Unclip the rear bumper - 3 - from the catches on the side guide profiles - arrows a -.

Carry out further installation only with the assistance of a second mechanic.

- Press, e.g. using a screwdriver, to undo the catches - arrows b - into guide profiles - 1 and 2 -.
- Detach the rear bumper - 3 - parallel from the vehicle -arrows c-.
- Disconnect the plug connections of the existing electrical components.

2.1.3 Installing:

- Fit on connectors and attach the cables.
- Position the rear bumper with the assistance of a 2nd mechanic.



Note

When fitting the rear bumper, make sure to guide it parallel at the left and right guide sections.

- Press the rear bumper onto the centre guide section and the left and right guide section until they lock audibly together.
- Observe the parallelism and the correct gap sizes → Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00; Karosseriespaltmaße; Karosserie hinten .
- Position screws and tighten ⇒ [page 211](#) .

2.1.4 Summary of components of rear bumper - RS

1 - Screw - 1.5 Nm

2 - Bumpers

Removing and installing:
⇒ [page 212](#) .

3 - Right reflector

- Clipped into the bumper.

4 - Middle reflector

- Clipped into the bumper.

5 - Left reflector

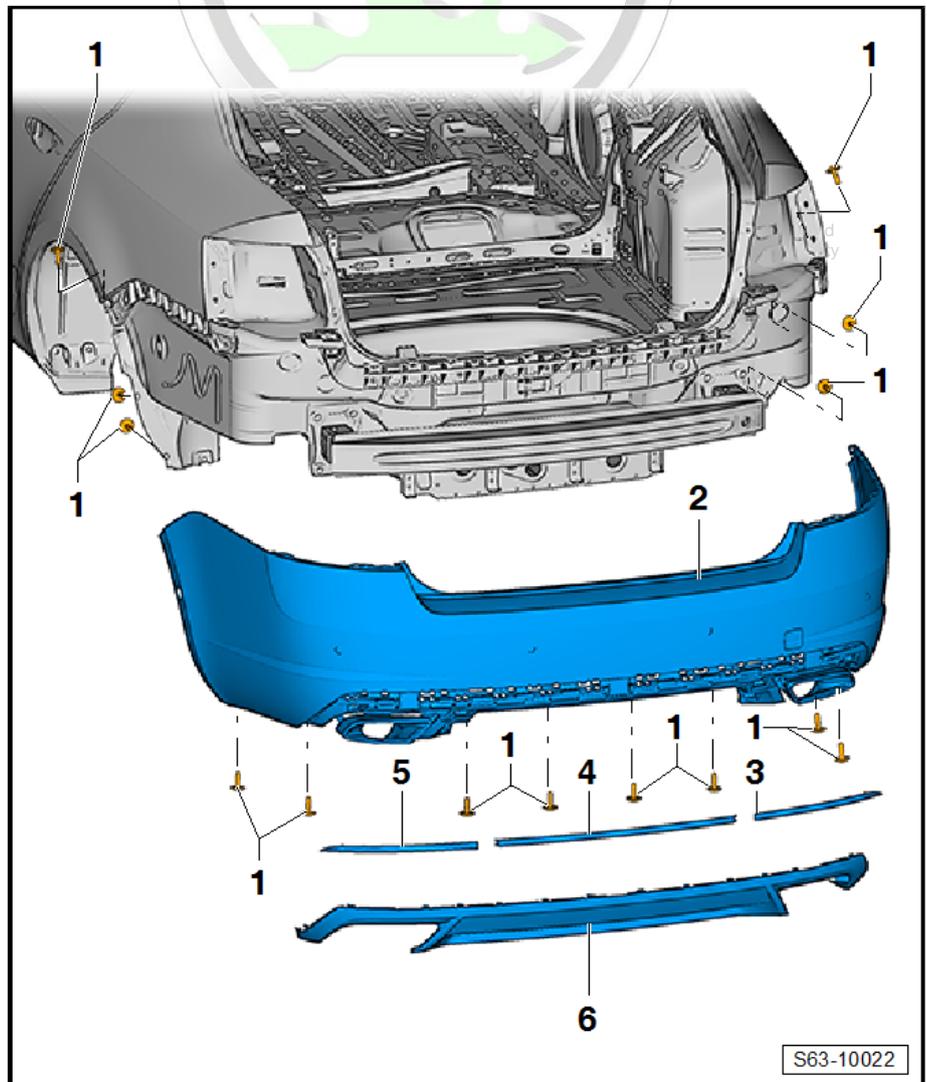
- Clipped into the bumper.

6 - Rear spoiler

- Clipped into the bumper.

Removing and installing:

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 212](#) .
- Unclip spoilers from the rear bumper one after the other.



2.2 Rear bumper bracket and runners

1 - Side guide profile left

Removing:

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 212](#) .
- Release screws ⇒ [Item 8 \(page 215\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Guide profile centre left

Removing:

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 212](#) .
- Release the nuts ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 214\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

3 - Guide profile centre right

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 212](#) .
- Release the nuts ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 214\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

4 - Side guide profile right

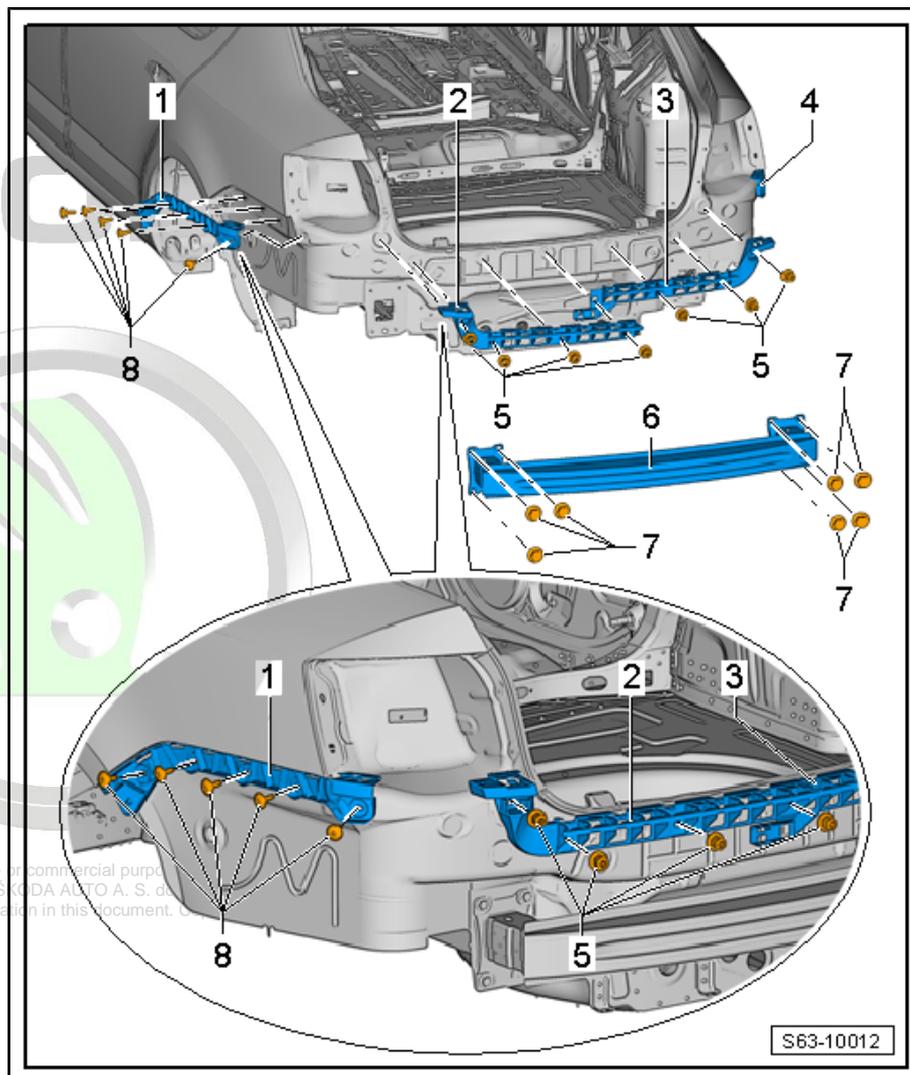
- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 212](#) .
- Release screws ⇒ [Item 8 \(page 215\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 - Nuts

- Tightening torque: 2.2 Nm.





6 - Bumper bracket (depending upon vehicle equipment)

Removing:

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 212](#) .
- Release screws ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 215\)](#) .
- Remove the bumper bracket from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm.

8 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 3 Nm.

ŠKODA





3 Rear bumper - Combi

3.1 Rear bumper



Note

Depending on the model version, slight differences must be taken into consideration when removing and installing the rear bumper.

3.1.1 Summary of components:

1 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

2 - Side guide profile left

- Screwed together with the side part.

3 - Guide profile centre left

4 - Guide profile centre right

5 - Side guide profile right

- Screwed together with the side part.

6 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm.

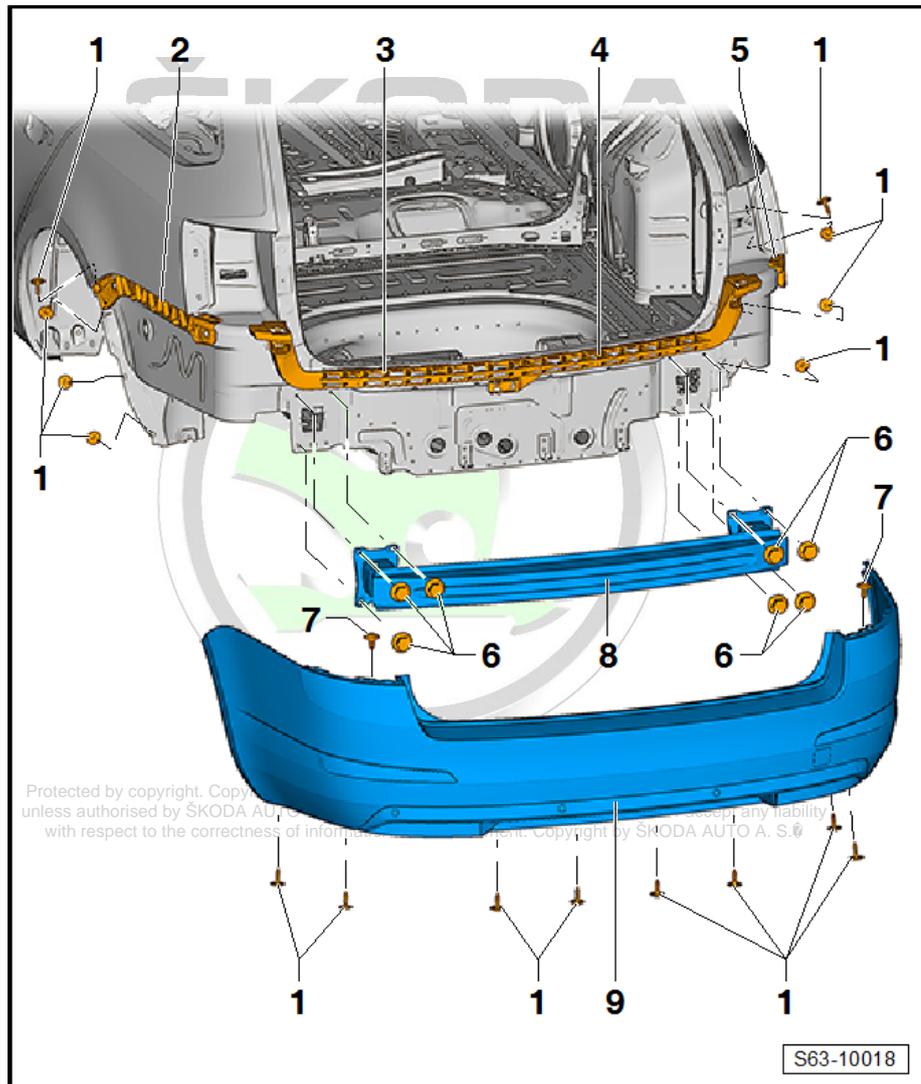
7 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 1, 5 Nm.

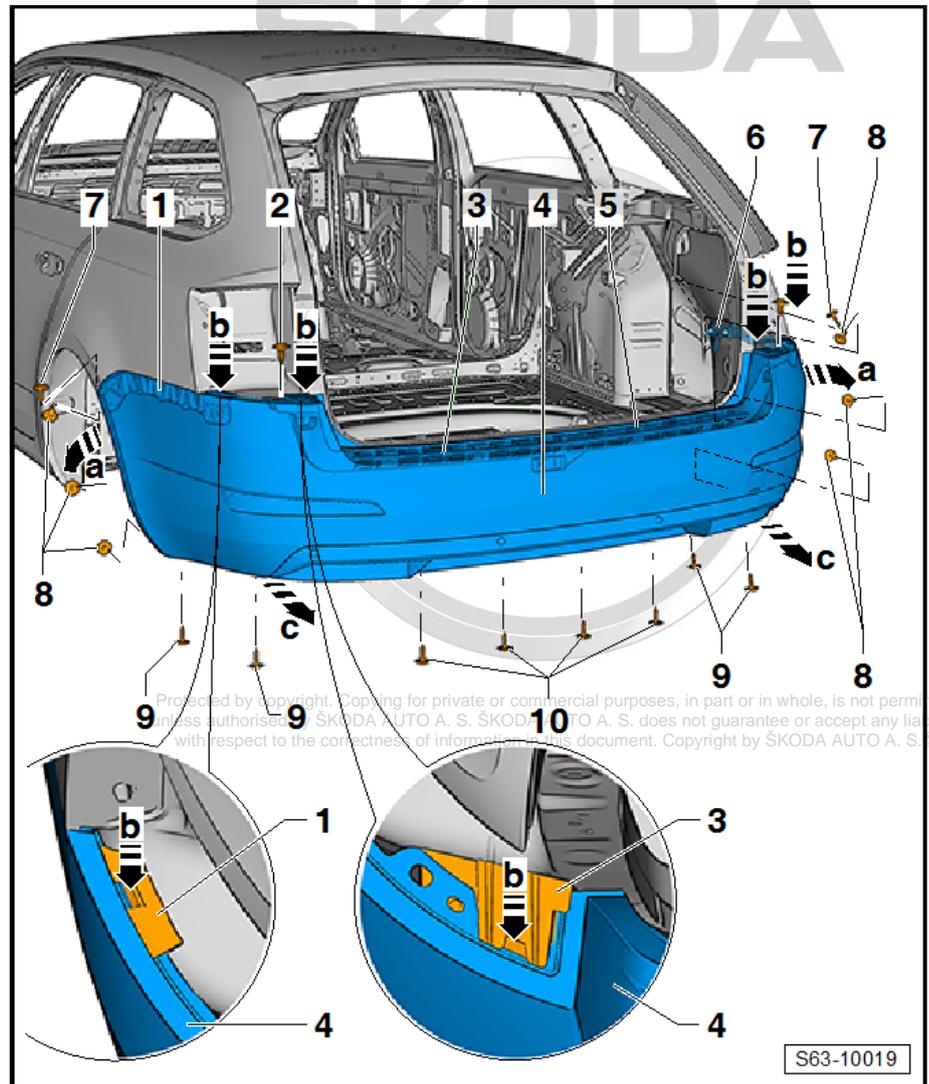
8 - Bumper bracket

9 - Rear bumper

- Removing ⇒ [page 217](#) .
- Installing ⇒ [page 218](#) .



3.1.2 Removing:



- Remove tail lights ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .
- Remove the screws -8- in the area of the left and right wheel-house.
- Remove the screws - 7 - that connect the edge of the bumper with the wing, from the top.
- Remove the screws of the cover for the underbody - 9 -.
- Remove the screws -10- from below.
- Unclip the rear bumper - 4 - from the catches on the lateral guide profiles - 1 and 6 - in - arrow direction of arrow a -.

Carry out further installation only with the assistance of a second mechanic.

- Press, e.g. using a screwdriver, to undo the catches - arrows b - into guide profiles - 3 and 5 -.
- Detach the rear bumper -4- parallel from the vehicle -arrows c-.
- Disconnect the plug connections of the existing electrical components.



3.1.3 Installing:

- Fit on connectors and attach the cables.
- Position the rear bumper with the assistance of a 2nd mechanic.



Note

When fitting the rear bumper, make sure to guide it parallel at the left and right guide sections.

- Press the rear bumper onto the centre guide section and the left and right guide section until they lock audibly together.
- Observe the parallelism and the correct gap sizes ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00; Karosseriespaltmaße; Karosserie hinten .
- Position screws and tighten ⇒ [page 216](#) .

3.2 Rear bumper bracket and runners

1 - Side guide profile left

Removing:

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 217](#) .
- Release screws ⇒ [Item 8 \(page 219\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Rear left guide profile

Removing:

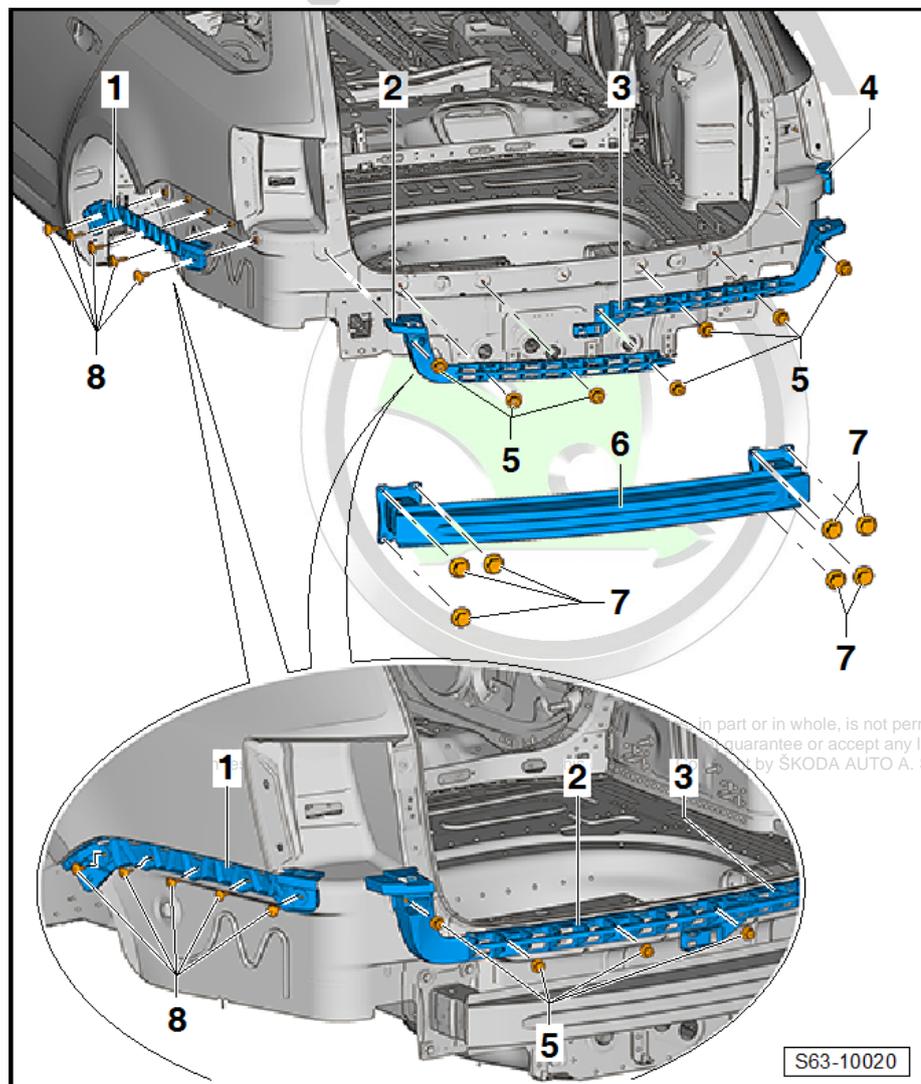
- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 217](#) .
- Release the nuts ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 219\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

3 - Rear right guide profile

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 217](#) .
- Release the nuts ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 219\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.



in part or in whole, is not permitted
 guarantee or accept any liability
 by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

4 - Side guide profile right

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 217](#) .
- Release screws ⇒ [Item 8 \(page 219\)](#) .
- Remove the guide section from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 - Nut

- Tightening torque: 2.2 Nm.

6 - Bumper bracket (depending upon vehicle equipment)

Removing:

- Remove the rear bumper ⇒ [page 217](#) .
- Release screws ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 219\)](#) .
- Remove the bumper bracket from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm.

8 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 3 Nm.

ŠKODA





64 – Glazing

1 Glued windows

1.1 Tools

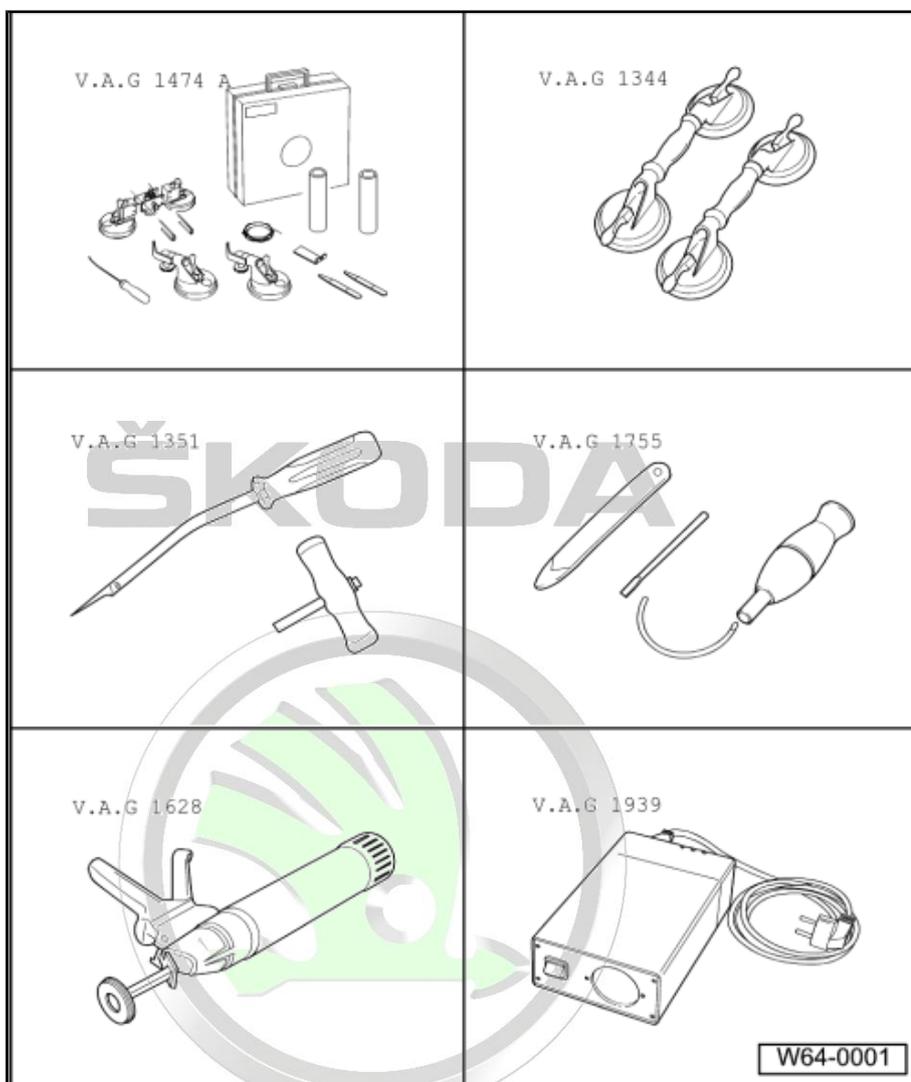


Note

The removal of the glued windows is described in the separating device for glued windows e.g. - V.A.G 1474 A- . The corresponding tools from the separating device for glued windows can also be used e.g. - VAS 6452- .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Separating device for glued windows - V.A.G 1474 A- or separating device for glued windows - VAS 6452-
- ◆ Suction cup - V.A.G 1344-
- ◆ Cutting tool - V.A.G 1351-
- ◆ Window removal set - V.A.G 1755-
- ◆ Hand pressure gun - V.A.G 1628-
- ◆ Cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939-
- ◆ Power knife - V.A.G 1561 A-
- ◆ Cutting knife - V.A.G 1561/2-
- ◆ Cutting knife - V.A.G 1561/8-
- ◆ Setting gauge - 3371-
- ◆ Cutting knife - V.A.G 1561/19-
- ◆ Double cartridge gun - VAS 5237-



1.2 Materials

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- ◆ 2K window pane adhesive D 004 660 M2 4) 1 5) 2 7) 4 9) 6
- ◆ 1K window pane adhesive DH 009 100 A2 4) 1 5) 2 6) 3 8) 5

◆ Activator	D 181 802 M1 ⁴⁾ 1
◆ Glass/paint primer	D 009 200 02 ⁴⁾ 1
◆ Cleaning solution	D 009 401 04 ⁴⁾ 1
◆ Primer applicator	D 009 500 25 ⁴⁾ 1
◆ Glue remover	D 002 000 A2 ⁴⁾ 1
◆ Cutting thread	357 853 999 B

4) Observe the handling instructions in accordance with the specifications of the manufacturer in the package insert.

5) Observe minimum hardening time ⇒ [page 236](#) .

6) According to manufacturer's instructions heat up e.g. with cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939- .

7) Use for example the double cartridge gun - VAS 5237- for processing this material.

8) Small cartridges 180 ml for sealing work, or if 400 ml cartridge is not adequate.

9) When using a 2K window pane component glue, remove the first 10 cm of the pressed out glue in order to ensure the correct mixture of both components.

1.3 Windscreen - Summary of components



Caution

For safety reasons, re-using a cut-out windscreen is not permissible. The windscreen must always be replaced with a new original part. The cut-out rear and side windows can be re-used after a thorough inspection.



Caution

When replacing the windscreen, on vehicles with a front camera for driver assistance systems, the camera needs to be adjusted after adhering the screen ⇒ Chassis; Rep. gr. 44 and ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester!



1 - Windscreen

- Remove windscreen
⇒ [page 222](#) .
- Install windscreen
⇒ [page 224](#) .

2 - PUR adhesive kit

- Bead cross section:
-width b- = 6.5 mm,
- height a - = 10 mm (in-
cluding the sealing sec-
tion, residual sealant on
window and window
flange).
- Minimum hardening
time ⇒ [page 236](#) .

3 - Body flange

4 - Gap size

- From the lateral window
edge up to the A pillar.
- Set the constant dimen-
sion of 2.5 ± 0.5 mm with
the setting gauge -
3371- .

5 - Gap size

- From the top window
edge up to the roof
edge.
- Set the constant dimen-
sion of 2.5 ± 0.5 mm with
the setting gauge -
3371- .

6 - Window pane adjuster

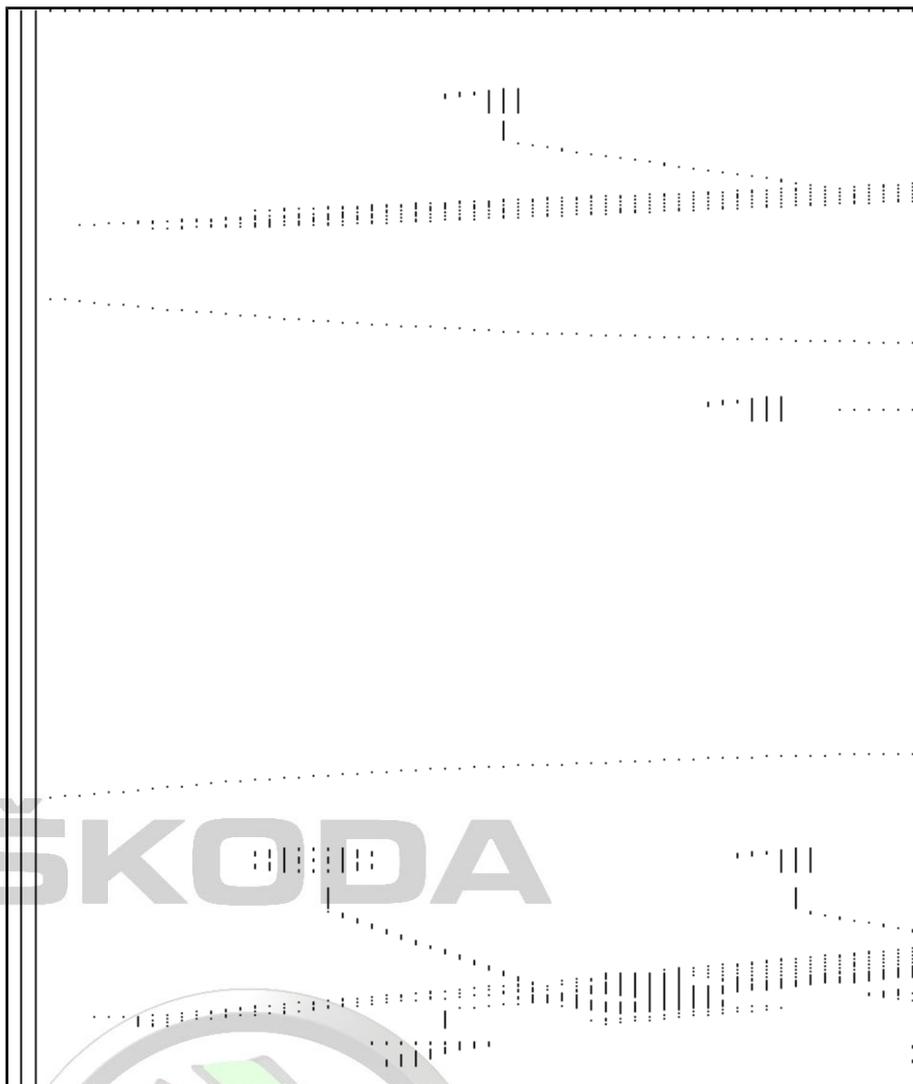
- Remove the window
pane adjuster at the ear-
liest 120 min. after the installation of the window.

7 - Fitting section

- Is part of the windscreen.

8 - Plenum chamber cover

- It must only be pulled from the fitting section by hand.
- Remove the plenum chamber cover ⇒ [page 15](#) .
- Install plenum chamber cover ⇒ [page 15](#) .

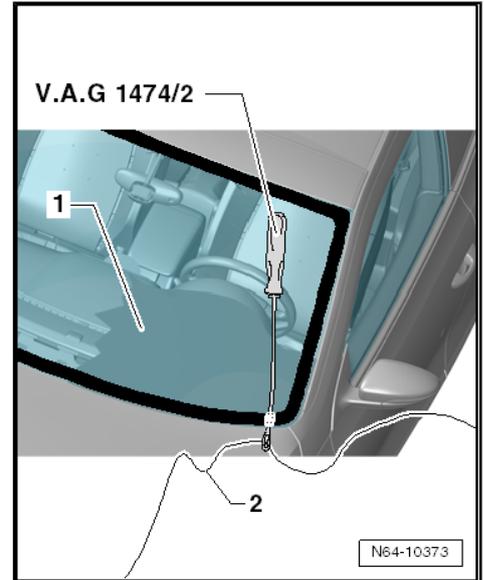


1.4 Removing windscreen

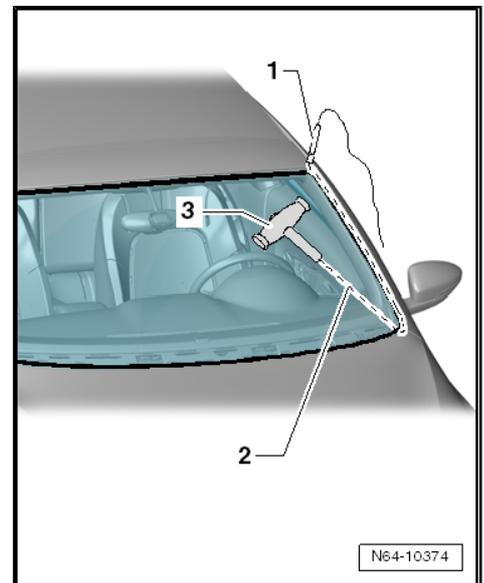
- Remove A-pillar trim panel ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Remove all sun visors ⇒ [page 279](#) .
- Removing interior rear-view mirror ⇒ [page 261](#) .
- Removing the sun visors and interior mirror undoes the moulded headliner thus increasing the gap between the window and the moulded headliner. This reduces the risk of damaging the moulded headliner.
- Remove the plenum chamber cover ⇒ [page 15](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted
 ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability
 with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

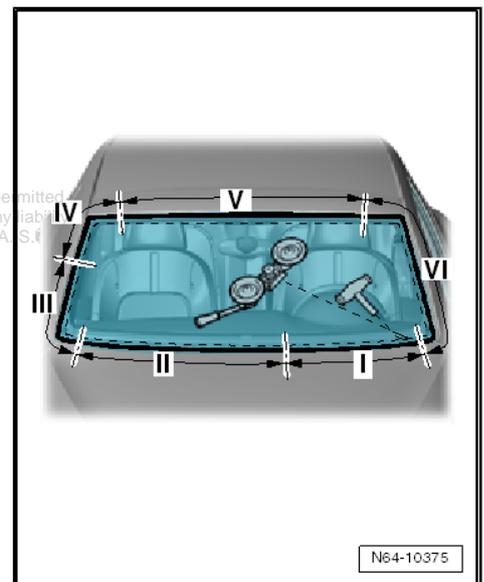
- Slide the cover foil - 1 - between the windscreen and the dash panel.
- Pull the end of the cutting thread - 2 - through the sealing material into the vehicle interior using the awl.



- Secure the end of the cutting thread with clip - 3 - against pulling out.
- Insert the cutting thread - 2 - with the help of the pipe - 1 - into the window frame.
- Lay the cutting thread around the windscreen.
- Ensure that the cutting thread is layed at the corners under the windscreen.



- Attach the second end of the cutting thread e.g. to the spooler - V.A.G 1654 A- .
- Position the spooler - V.A.G 1654 A- in "position I".
- Move the spooler - V.A.G 1654 A- in steps if required and cut out the windscreen.
- During the cutting procedure, press the cutting thread with a plastic wedge against the windscreen in order to create a clearance between the window flange and the dash panel.



1.4.1 Installing windscreen

Prepare new windscreen for fitting ⇒ [page 232](#) .

Prepare body flange for fitting ⇒ [page 233](#) .

Installation instructions ⇒ [page 233](#) .

Glueing on ⇒ [page 234](#) .

Minimum hardening time ⇒ [page 236](#) .

1.5 Rear window - Summary of components

1 - Rear window

- Removing ⇒ [page 225](#) .
- Installing ⇒ [page 226](#) .

2 - PUR adhesive kit

- Bead cross section:
width - b - = 6.5 mm
height - a - = 10 mm (in-
cluding the sealing sec-
tion, residual sealant on
window and window
flange).
- Minimum hardening
time ⇒ [page 236](#) .

3 - Body flange

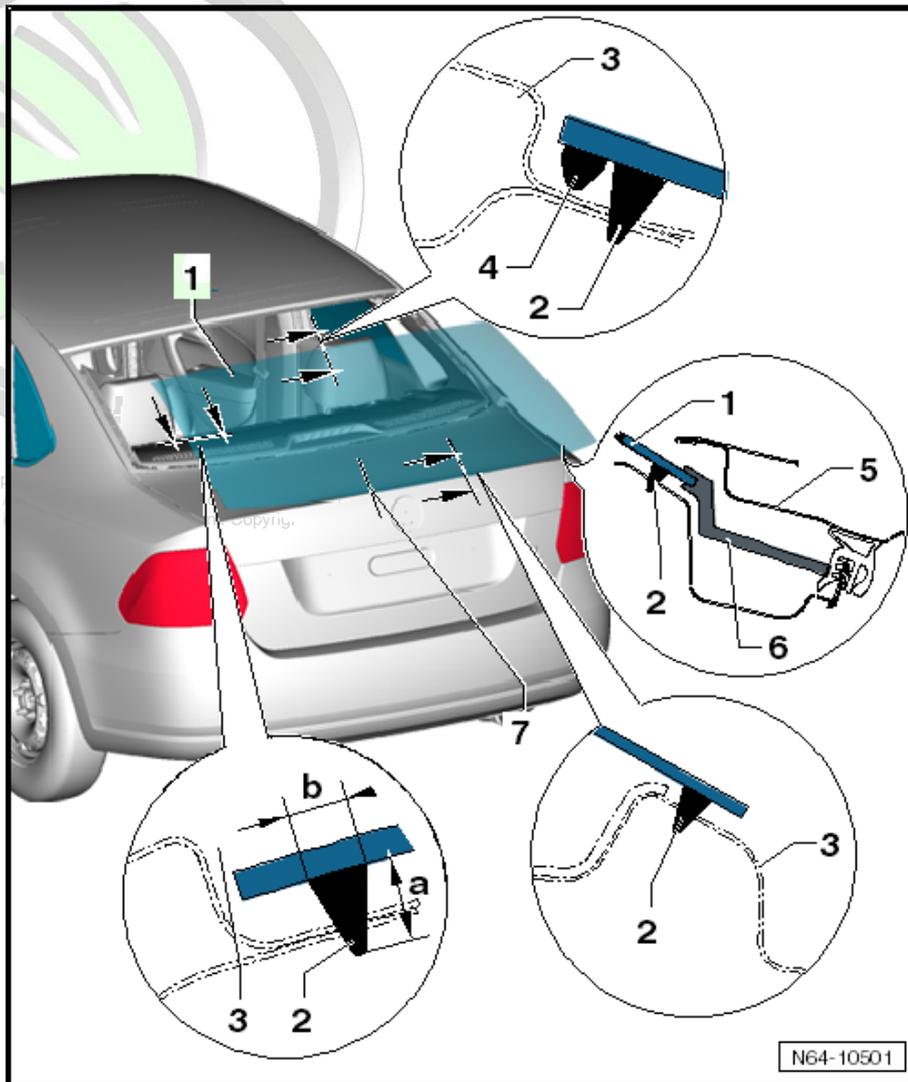
4 - Spacer holder

5 - Tailgate

6 - Window pane adjuster

7 - Adhesive bead joint

- The joint of the adhesive
bead should be placed
in this area.



1.6 Removing and installing the rear window

Removing damaged window:



WARNING

It is essential to wear protective goggles and gloves when cutting hardened PUR adhesive kit and when handling the cutting cord.

- Protect vehicle interior from glass splinters.
- Remove high-level brake light ⇒ Electrical system ⇒ Rep. gr. 94 .
- Remove rear window wiper (if present) ⇒ Electrical System ⇒ Rep. gr. 92 .
- Disconnect the plug connections of the heated rear window and press the contact tabs onto the window.
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.
- Remove glass pieces up to the glue sealing material.
- Cut back the glue sealing material e.g with electrical cutting tool -V.A.G 1561/A- to approx. 1 mm thickness.
- Suction off glass residues in the vehicle as well as in the hollows of the tailgate (release cable ducts) with a vacuum cleaner.

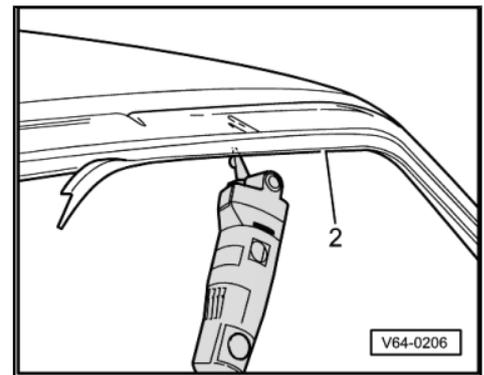
Removing undamaged window:



WARNING

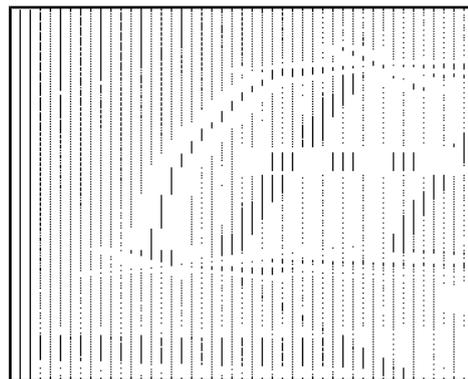
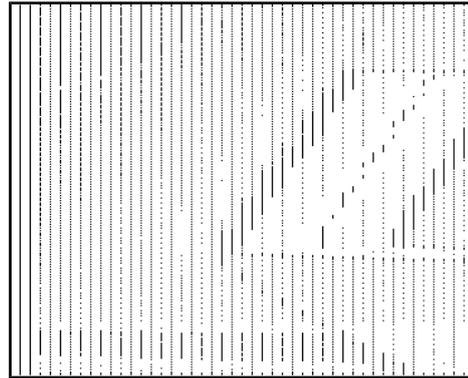
It is essential to wear protective goggles and gloves when cutting hardened PUR adhesive kit and when handling the cutting cord.

- Remove high level brake light ⇒ Electrical system ⇒ Rep. gr. 94 (does not apply for Octavia II Combi).
- Remove rear window wiper (if present) ⇒ Electrical System ⇒ Rep. gr. 92 .
- Disconnect the plug connections of the heated rear window and press the contact tabs onto the window.
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.
- Pull the cutting thread with the awl through the sealing material towards the inside.





- Secure the end of the cutting thread with the pull handle against pulling out.
 - Lay the cutting thread around the rear window - 1 - and guide the second end of the thread towards the inside.
 - Attach the end of the cutting thread e.g. to the spooler - V.A.G 1654 A- .
 - Slide the cover foil carefully between the rear window and the moulded headliner.
-
- Place the spooler - V.A.G 1654 A- in the indicated position (I and VI).
 - Move the spooler - V.A.G 1654 A- in steps if required and cut out the rear window.
 - During the cutting procedure, press the cutting thread with a wedge against the rear window to create a clearance at the window flange.
 - Use the suction cup to remove the window from the vehicle.



Note

A second mechanic is required for removing the window.

1.7 Installing rear window

- Prepare new window for fitting ⇒ [page 232](#) .
- Prepare new windscreen for fitting ⇒ [page 232](#) .
- Prepare body flange for fitting ⇒ [page 233](#) .
- Place the window in the fitting location on the body flange with the help of two suction cups.
- Installation instructions ⇒ [page 233](#) . ⇒ [page 234](#) .
- Minimum hardening time ⇒ [page 236](#) .

1.8 Summary of components - rear window (Octavia III - Combi)



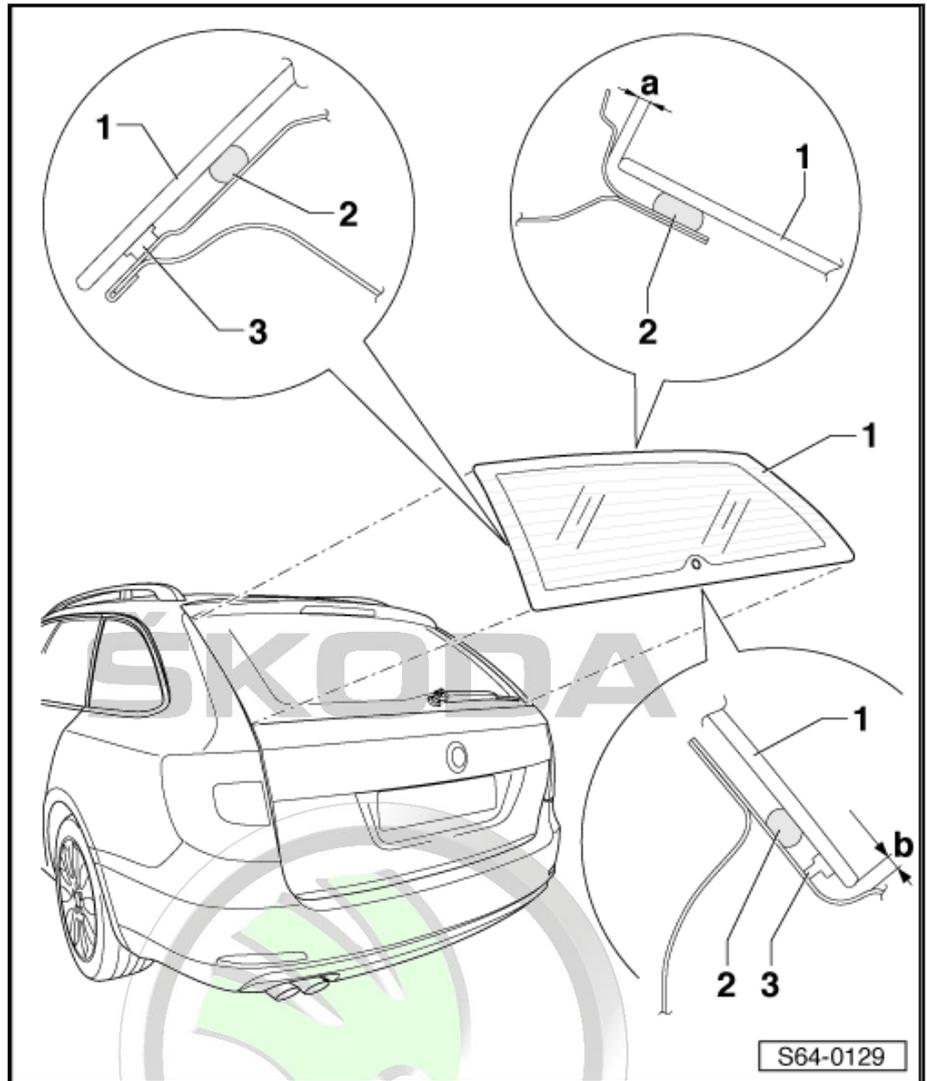
1 - Rear window

- Removing and installing the rear window
⇒ [page 227](#) .

2 - PUR adhesive kit

3 - Stop buffer

- For installation of window



- ◆ Dimension top - a - = 3 ± 0.5 mm
- ◆ Dimension bottom - b - = 2.5 ± 0.5 mm
- ◆ Dimension left and right = 3.8 ± 0.5 mm

1.9 Removing and installing the rear window (Octavia III - Combi)

Removing damaged window:

WARNING

Wear protective goggles and gloves when cutting hardened PUR adhesive kit.

- Protect vehicle interior from glass splinters.
- Remove connector for heated rear window.
- Remove rear window wiper (if present) ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 92 .
- Remove glass residue down to the adhesive kit.



- Suction vacuum glass residues in the vehicle with a vacuum cleaner.
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.
- Cut back adhesive kit to a thickness of approx. 1 mm.

Removing undamaged window:



WARNING

Wear protective goggles and gloves when cutting hardened PUR adhesive kit.



Note

A second mechanic is required for removing the window.

- Removing top trim panel for tailgate ⇒ [page 384](#) .
- Remove the high level brake light ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94 .
- Remove rear window wiper (if present) ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 92 .
- Disconnect the plug connections of the heated rear window and press the contact tabs onto the window.
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.
- Further removal occurs as for the windscreen ⇒ [page 222](#) .

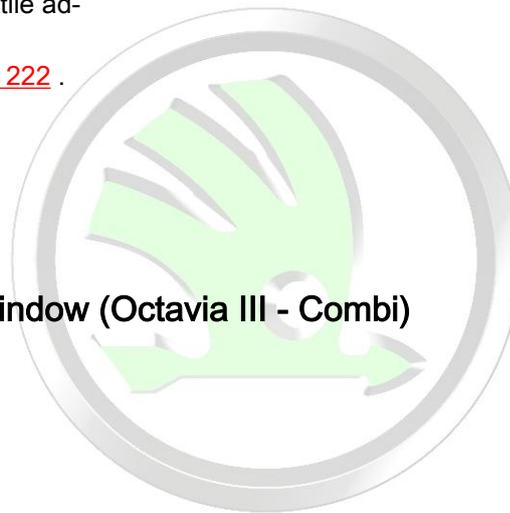
Installing rear window:

Prepare flange for fitting ⇒ [page 233](#) .

Glueing on ⇒ [page 234](#) .

Minimum hardening time ⇒ [page 236](#) .

1.10 Summary of components - side window (Octavia III - Combi)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1 - Side section

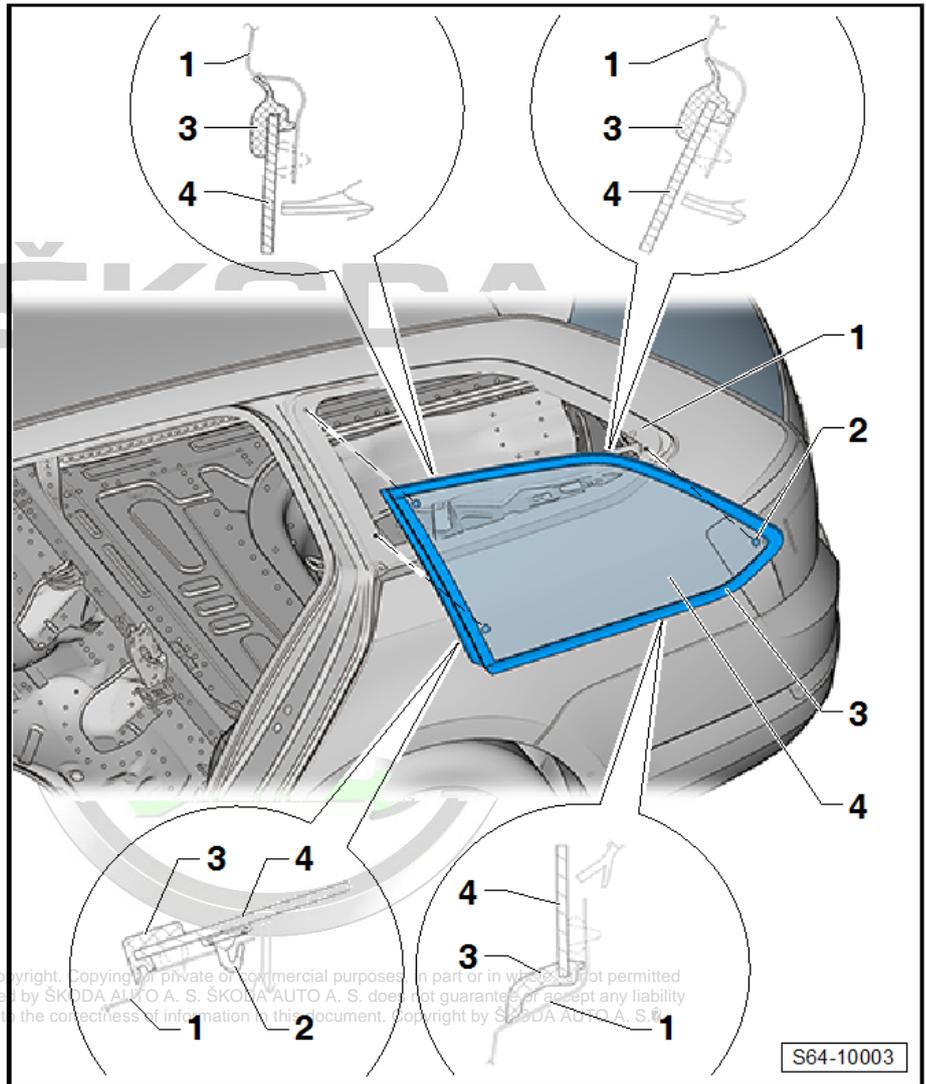
2 - Guide bolt

- Is part of the side window. When removing cut through with cutting thread.

3 - Sealing section

- Is part of the side window.

4 - Side window



1.11 Removing and installing the side window (Octavia III - Combi)

Removing damaged window:

WARNING

Wear protective goggles and gloves when cutting hardened PUR adhesive kit.

- Protect vehicle interior from glass splinters.
- Remove top trim panel of C and D pillar ⇒ [page 373](#) and ⇒ [page 377](#) .
- Remove connector from the rear window aerial (where fitted),
- Remove glass residue down to the adhesive kit.
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.
- Cut back the adhesive kit e.g with electrical cutting tool -V.A.G 1561/A- to approx. 1 mm thickness.



- Suction vacuum glass residues in the vehicle with a vacuum cleaner.

Removing undamaged window:



WARNING

Wear protective goggles and gloves when cutting hardened PUR adhesive kit.

- Remove top trim panel of C and D pillar ⇒ [page 373](#) and ⇒ [page 377](#) .
- Remove connector from the rear window aerial (where fitted),
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.



Note

- ◆ *In order to facilitate the insertion of the cutting cord, apply lubricant (e.g. detergent) on the outer side of the window flange.*
- ◆ *In order to avoid damage to the paintwork, the cord ends must be inserted correctly into the needle from below, at the same time a protective foil should be glued in the area of the pierced cement.*
- ◆ *Check several times the correct fitting of the cutting cord during assembly.*
- Cut through the adhesive kit e.g. with a knife in the lower area of the window - arrow - .
- Pierce adhesive kit (Pos. 1) with the piercing needle (Pos. 2).

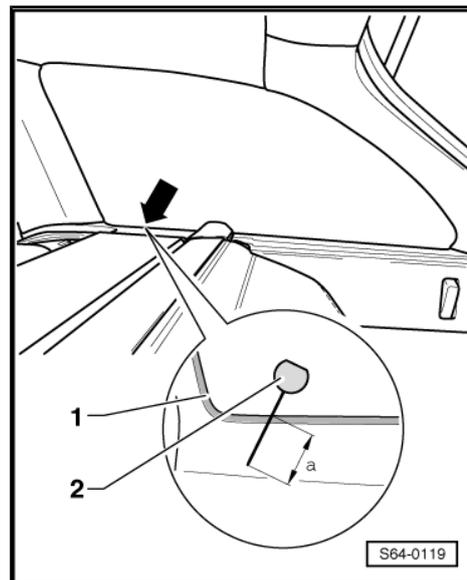


Note

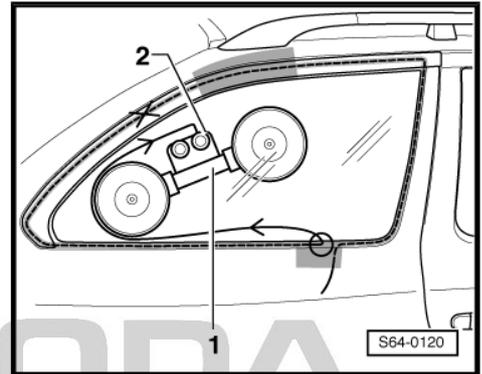
When piercing, observe the dimension -a- which can be marked on the needle with e.g. an adhesive tape, because of possible damage to the paintwork of the vehicle.

$a = 60 \pm 5 \text{ mm}$

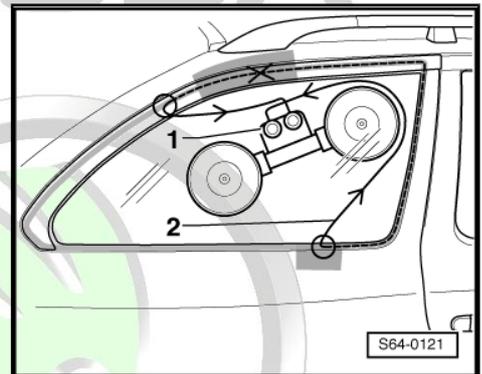
- Draw cutting cord through the piercing needle (Pos. 2).



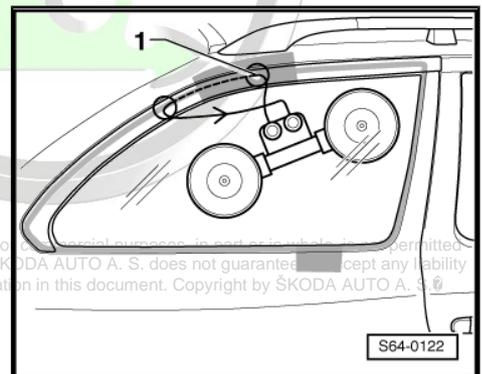
- Insert the cutting cord all around the side window behind the sealing profile and fix with adhesive tape -arrows-.
- Attach the spooler -V.A.G 1654A- (Pos. 1) to the rear corner, to the inner side of the window, and secure the cord end in the front coil (Pos. 2).
- Cut through the adhesive cement up to the area marked with an - X - using the spooler -V.A.G 1654A- . Use the steering roller -V.A.G 1474/1- in the window corner.



- Offset spooler.
- Pull the other cutting cord end (Pos. 2) into the vehicle and attach it to the rear coil (Pos. 1).
- Cut through the adhesive kit up to the area marked with an - X -. Use the steering roller -V.A.G 1474/1- in the window corner.



- Alternatively cut through the remaining adhesive kit with both coils. The cross point (Pos. 1) should be located exactly between the coils.
- Remove window with spooler -V.A.G 1654A- .
- Remove adhesive tapes.



Install side window:

Prepare flange for fitting ⇒ [page 233](#) .

Installation instructions ⇒ [page 233](#) .

Glueing on ⇒ [page 234](#) .

Waiting time ⇒ [page 236](#) .

- After glueing on the window, mount the plug of the rear window aerial (if present).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or special purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee, except any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.



1.12 Preparing the new window for fitting

1.12.1 Cut back the glue bead

Carry out the following tasks:



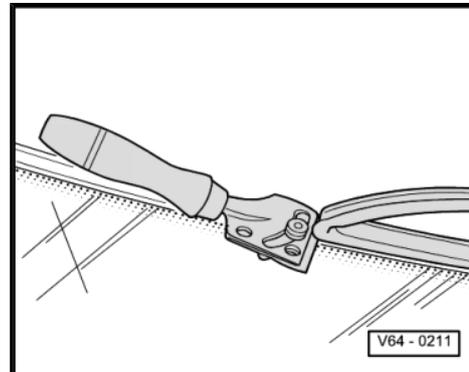
Note

- ◆ *Cut back the remaining adhesive sealant to 1...2 mm just prior to adhering again. While doing so, do not damage the glass/ primer and ceramic layer.*
- ◆ *The remainder of the sealing compound serves as a base for the newly applied adhesive sealant.*



WARNING

Do not prime the adhesive surface and do not treat with cleaning solution. Keep the adhesive surfaces free of dirt or grease.



Exception: If the bonding is not carried out immediately after cutting back, the sealing compound must be activated with the activator - D 181 802 M1- .

1.12.2 Preparing the new window without pre-layering for fitting

Carry out the following tasks:

All the windows are not pre-layered as a spare part.



Note

- ◆ *The area where the glue bead is applied is neither pre-layered nor primed.*
- ◆ *The sealing lip is a component part of a new windscreen.*
- Clean the window edge all around up to a width of 20 mm using the cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .
- Then rub the window edge dry using a non-fluffy cloth.



WARNING

The ceramic layer on the window is no glass/paint primer! It is absolutely essential to prime it before applying the sealing material! Only use glass/paint primer D 009 200 02!

- Now apply the glass/paint primer by means of the applicator - D 009 500 25- uniformly in one go.
- ◆ Minimum hardening time approx. 10 minutes.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.13 Prepare body flange for fitting

Carry out the following tasks:

- Cut back the sealing compound on the body flange using the U-shape cutting knife - V.A.G 1561/3-, however do not remove completely. Leave 1 - 2 mm of the old adhesive.

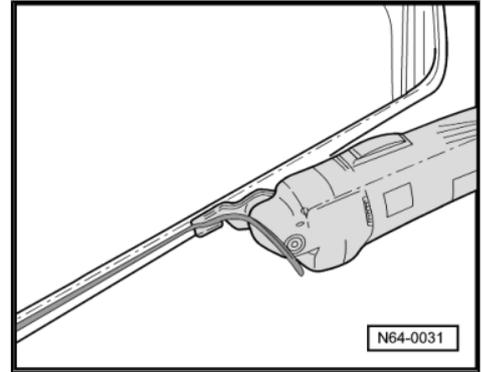
Note

The remainder of the sealing compound serves as a base for the newly applied adhesive sealant. Keep the adhesive surfaces free of dirt or grease.



WARNING

The activator must not come into contact with paintwork, otherwise there will be paint damage.



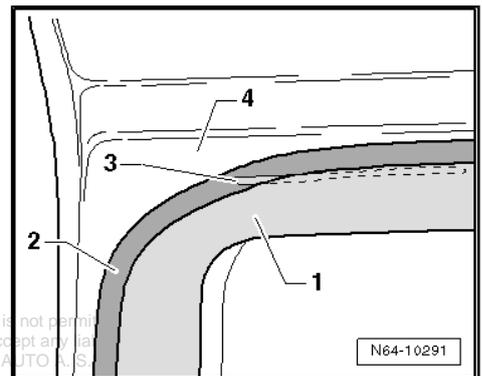
Exception: If the bonding is not carried out immediately after cutting back, the sealing compound must be activated with the activator - D 181 801 A1-.

- ◆ If the body flange was reworked or only partly replaced, clean this area again after painting and treat it with glass/paint primer.

Note

Under some circumstances, it is possible that a laser welding seam is not present in the area of the adhesive bead. Then the exposed welding seam must be sealed before glueing the window with the window pane adhesive.

- If the laser welding seam -3- at the metal flange -4- is not covered with an adhesive bead -1-, coat the laser welding seam -3- with glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02- -3-. Then fill up the laser welding seam with window pane adhesive - DH 009 100 A2- - 1 -.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

1.14 Installation instructions for all the windows

- Apply the adhesive cement all around at a right angle to the window.

**WARNING**

The window must be inserted within 10 minutes as otherwise the adhesion of the window glue may be poor.

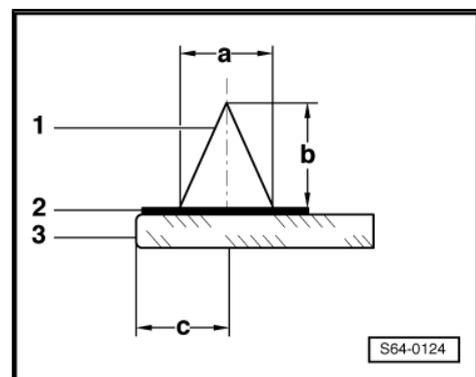
Do not apply the adhesive bead too thick and do not press the windows too hard on the body flange. Oozed adhesive can be seen in the area of the joints because the windows do no longer have any sealing lips.

- ◆ Insert the window into the body flange, for example using the suction cup - V.A.G 1344- , take the mean and press in up to the spacer web.
- ◆ Re-stick any existing stickers (for example for airbag).

1.15 Glueing

Dimensions for applying the glue

- 1 - Glue bead
- 2 - Glass/paint primer
- 3 - Glass
- a - Bead width - 8 mm
- b - Bead height - 12 mm
- c - Distance between outer edge of glass and centre of glue bead - 8 mm.

**Note**

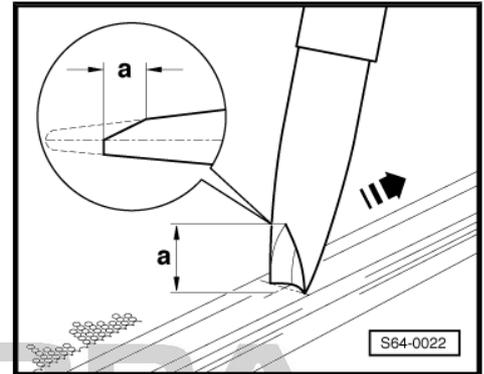
On the rear window on Octavia Combi, the adhesive bead must be applied as close as possible to the outer edge of the window because of possible touching of the collecting bar for the rear window heater and the resulting corrosion of the tailgate. At the same time ensure that not too much glue is pressed out of the bottom edge of the window after pressing on the window.



- After completing the preparations cut back the nozzle for applying the glue as shown in the figure.
- Dimension -a- 12 mm.
- Bead width 8 mm.
- Application direction -arrow-.

i Note

- ◆ *The glue bead cross section is dependent on the cross sectional area of the nozzle and the application speed.*
- ◆ *When using a 1K window pane component glue -DH 009 100- or -DH 009 100 03-, preheat the glue cartridges for 20 minutes in the warming box e.g. -V.A.G 1939-.*
- ◆ *Use disposable gloves when working with glues and adhesive materials.*



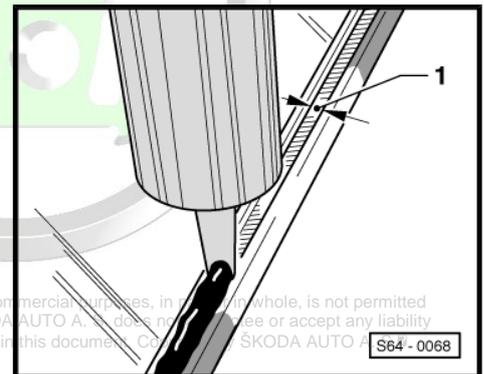
WARNING

Comply with the manufacturer's handling instructions.

- Apply the glue on the sealing profile (Pos. 1) perpendicular to the window surface and all around it.

i Note

- ◆ *Apply adhesive kit at a temperature of 10 °C to 30°C.*
- ◆ *Open all vehicle windows before fitting the window into the frame.*
- Insert window pane into the frame with the aid of two suction cup grippers e.g. -V.A.G 1344-), centre and press onto the spacer plates.



WARNING

The window pane must be inserted immediately after applying the adhesive kit, as otherwise the adhesion of the glue and sealing materials may be poor.

- Insert window pane in frame using pane positioning wedges or eccentric pieces (applies for the windscreen).
- Fix the window during hardening process with adhesive tape.
- Any adhesive kit which was applied too thickly and is pressed out up to the heating filaments of the heatable rear window must be removed.



1.16 Minimum hardening time



WARNING

Comply with special requirements when replacing glued windows. Among these are for example, that a newly glued windscreen must fulfill the operational safety in the event of an accident after a prescribed minimum hardening time.

The minimum hardening time for all the windows is 3 hours when applying the 2K adhesive - D 004 660 M2- .

With the minimum hardening time is meant the time from the moment the window is glued until the vehicle is used. During this time, the vehicle must stand on a flat surface at room temperature (15 °C).



WARNING

The vehicle is only safe for driving after the minimum hardening time has expired.

1.17 Cleaning necessary due to soiling through glue sealing material

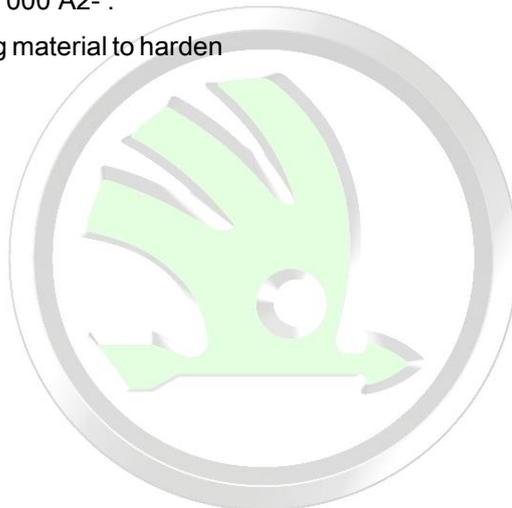
- It is recommended to use glue remover - D 002 000 10- as cleaning agent. Observe safety regulations while working.



WARNING

When cleaning the vehicle interior, the window which was just inserted must not be pressed towards the outside.

- Clean the paint surfaces with a dry cloth. Eliminate the remaining dirt with the glue remover - D 002 000 A2- .
- Clean the plastic trim: Allow the glue sealing material to harden (approx. 1 hour) and then pull off.

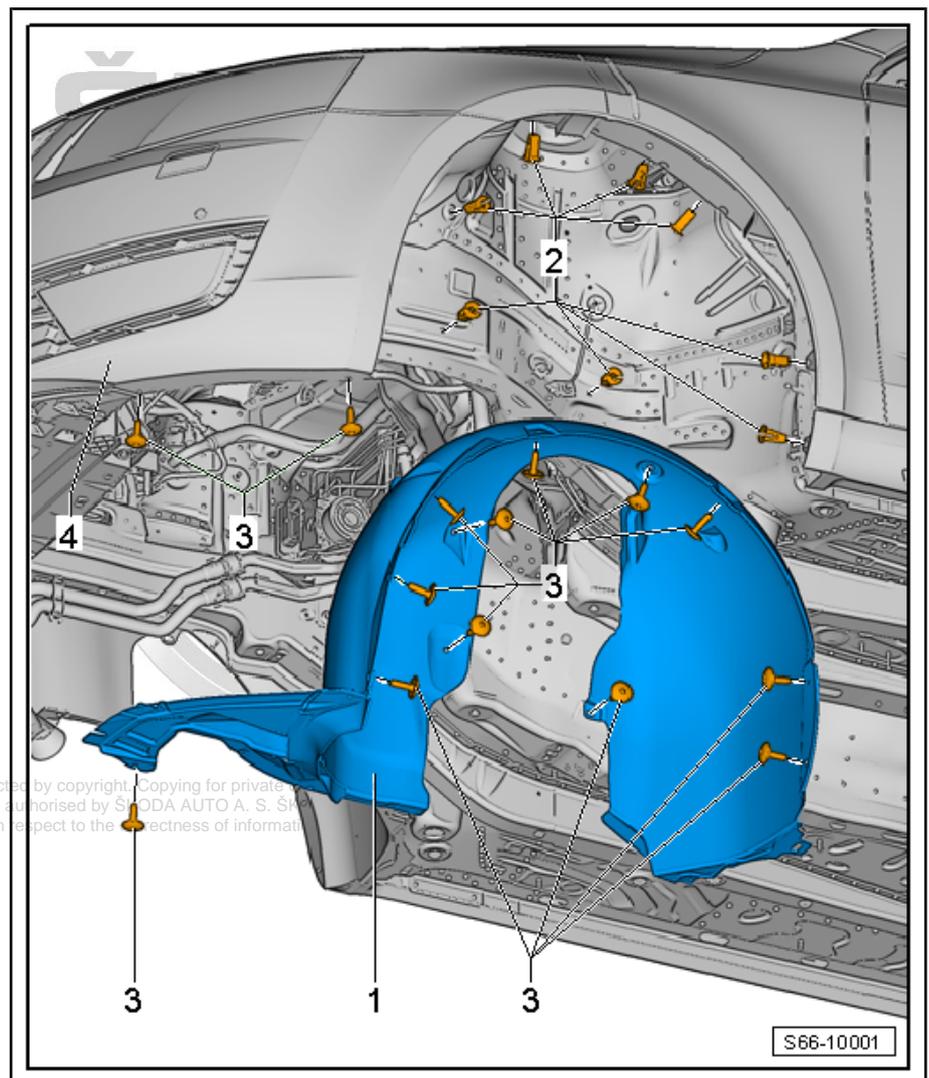


66 – Exterior equipment

1 Wheelhouse liner

1.1 Front wheelhouse liner

1.1.1 Removing:



- Remove wheel ⇒ Chassis; Rep. gr. 44 ; tightening torques for the wheel bolts .
- Unscrew the screw - 3 - from the expanding nuts - 2 - .
- Remove the wheelhouse liner - 1 - from the body - 4 - .

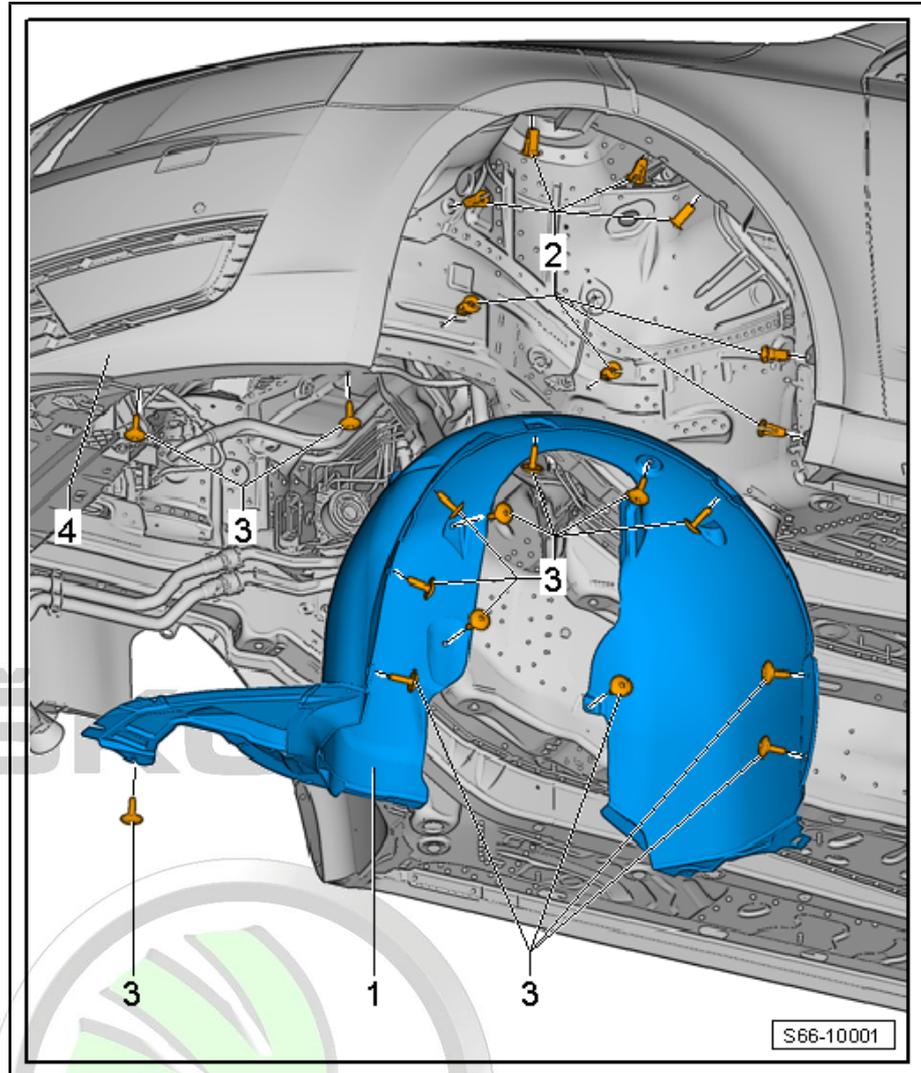


1.1.2 Installing:



Note

Check the expanding nuts - 2 - for damage, if necessary replace them.

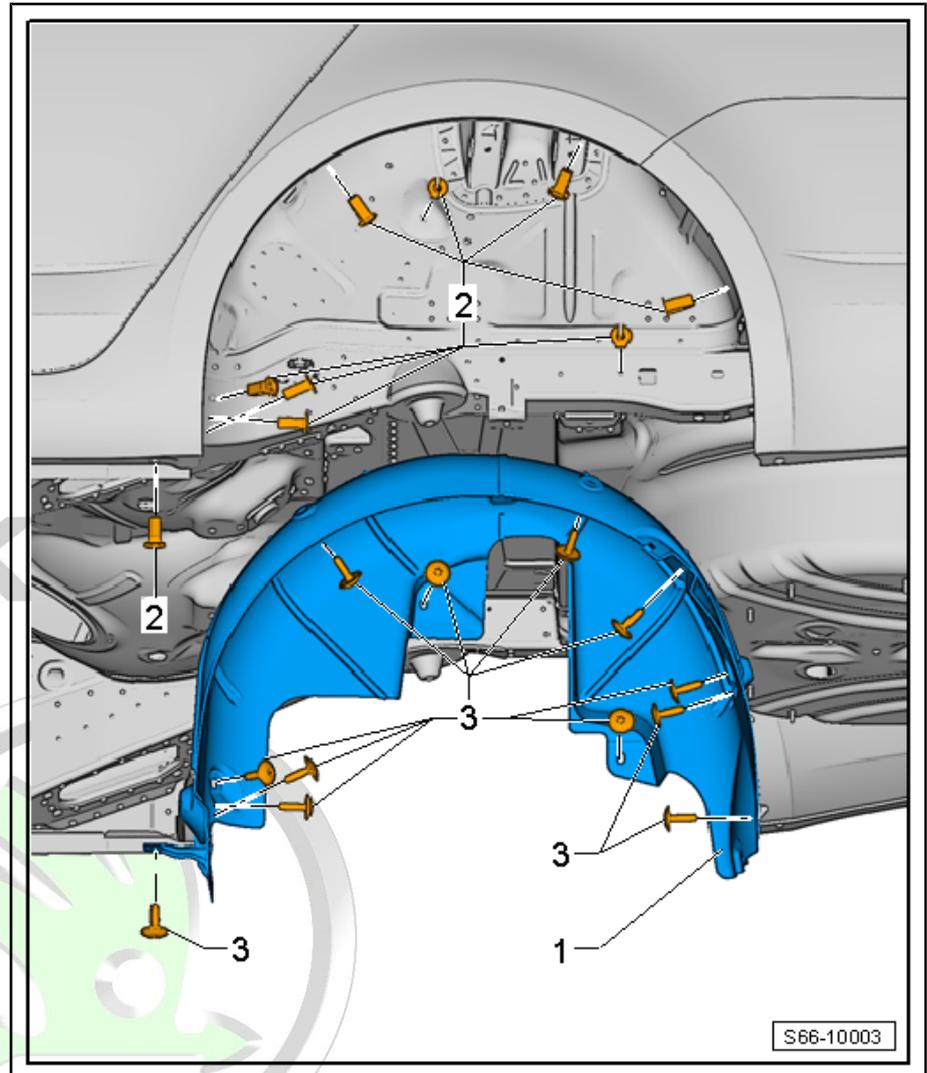


- Insert wheelhouse liner - 1 - in the wing.
- Screw in the screws - 3 -. Tightening torque: 2 Nm.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.2 Rear wheelhouse liner

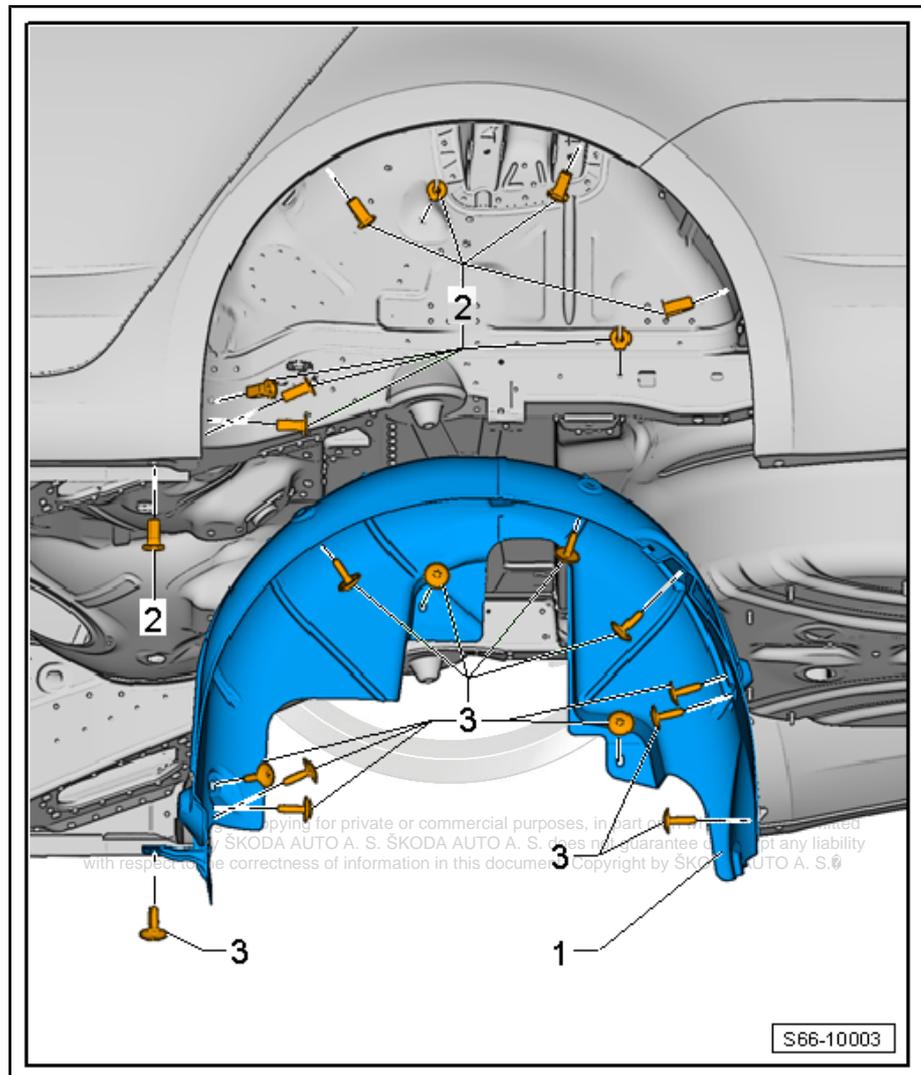
1.2.1 Removing:



- Remove wheel ⇒ Chassis; Rep. gr. 44 ; tightening torques for the wheel bolts .
- Unscrew the screw - 3 - from the expanding nuts - 2 -
- Pull out rear wheelhouse liner - 1 -



1.2.2 Installing:



DANGER!

Check the expanding nuts - 2 - for damage, if necessary replace them.

The expanding nuts seal the interior from exhaust gases. In case of damage, they must absolutely be replaced.

- Insert the rear wheelhouse liner - 1 - into the wheelhouse without any kinks.
- Screw in the screws - 3 -. Tightening torque: 2 Nm.
- Install wheel ⇒ Chassis; Rep. gr. 44 ; tightening torques for wheel bolts .

2 Exterior mirror

ŠKODA

2.1 Summary of components:

1 - Mirror base support

- ❑ Remove and install with electrical operation
⇒ [page 247](#) .

2 - Mirror housing

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 244](#) .

3 - Adjustment unit with motor

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 243](#) .

4 - Screw

- ❑ 1 Nm.

5 - Mirror glass

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 242](#) .

6 - Trim

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 245](#) .

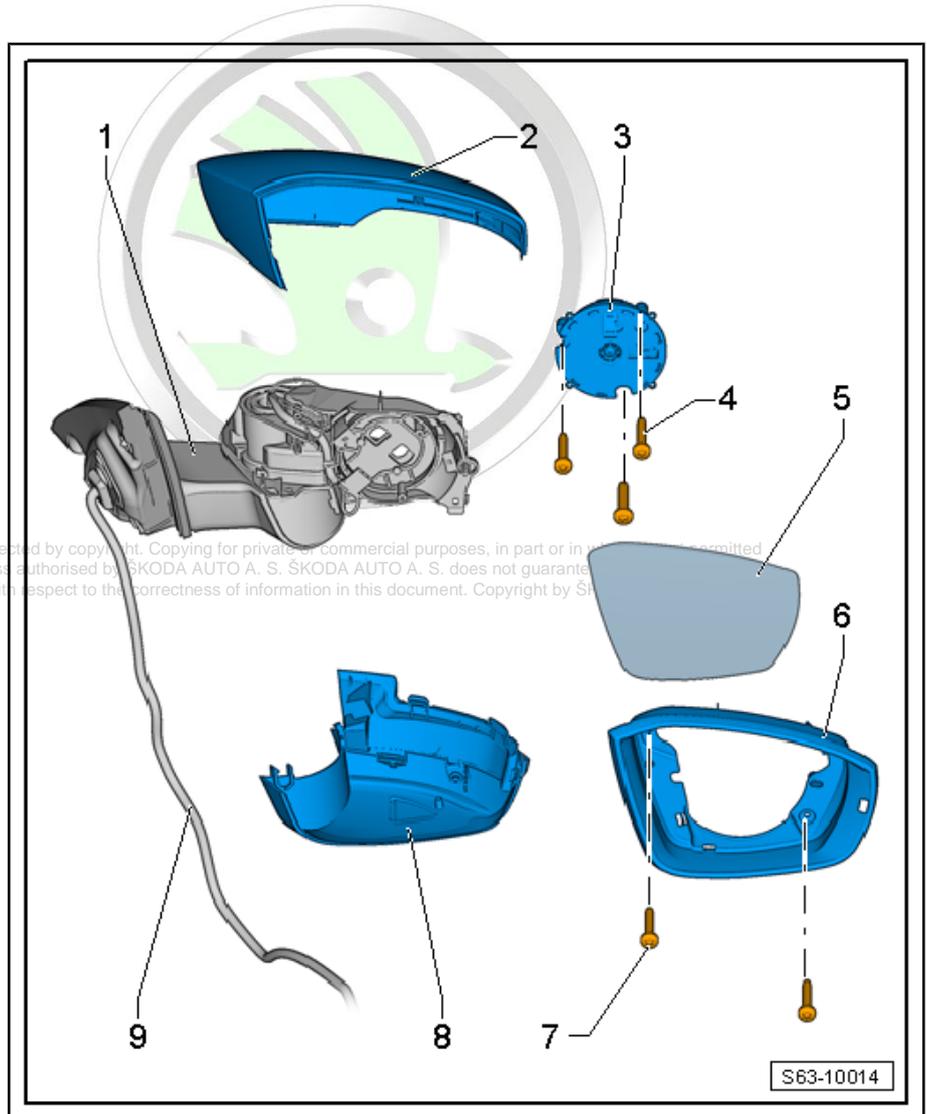
7 - Screw

- ❑ 1 Nm.

8 - Mounting part

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 246](#) .

9 - Electrical line



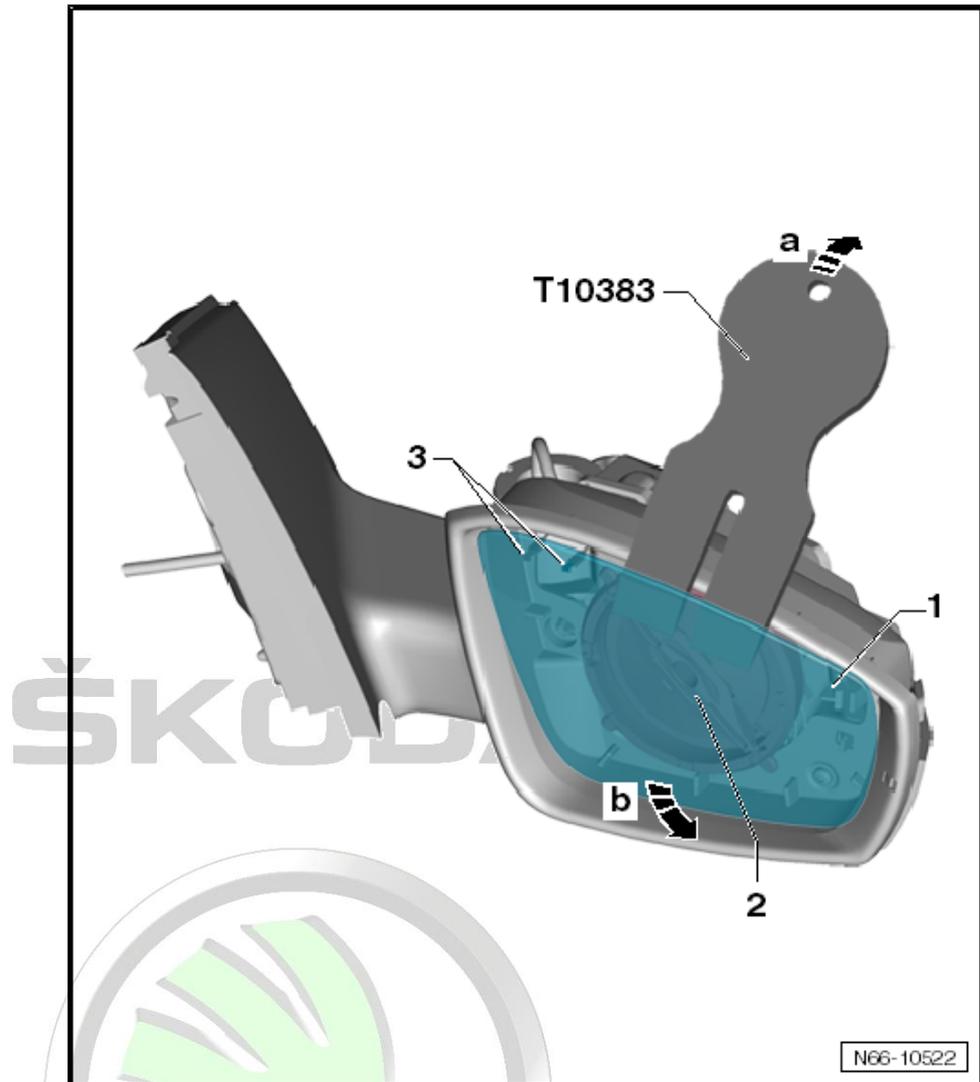


2.1.1 Removing and installing mirror glass



WARNING

Wear protective gloves and protective goggles when working!



Removing:

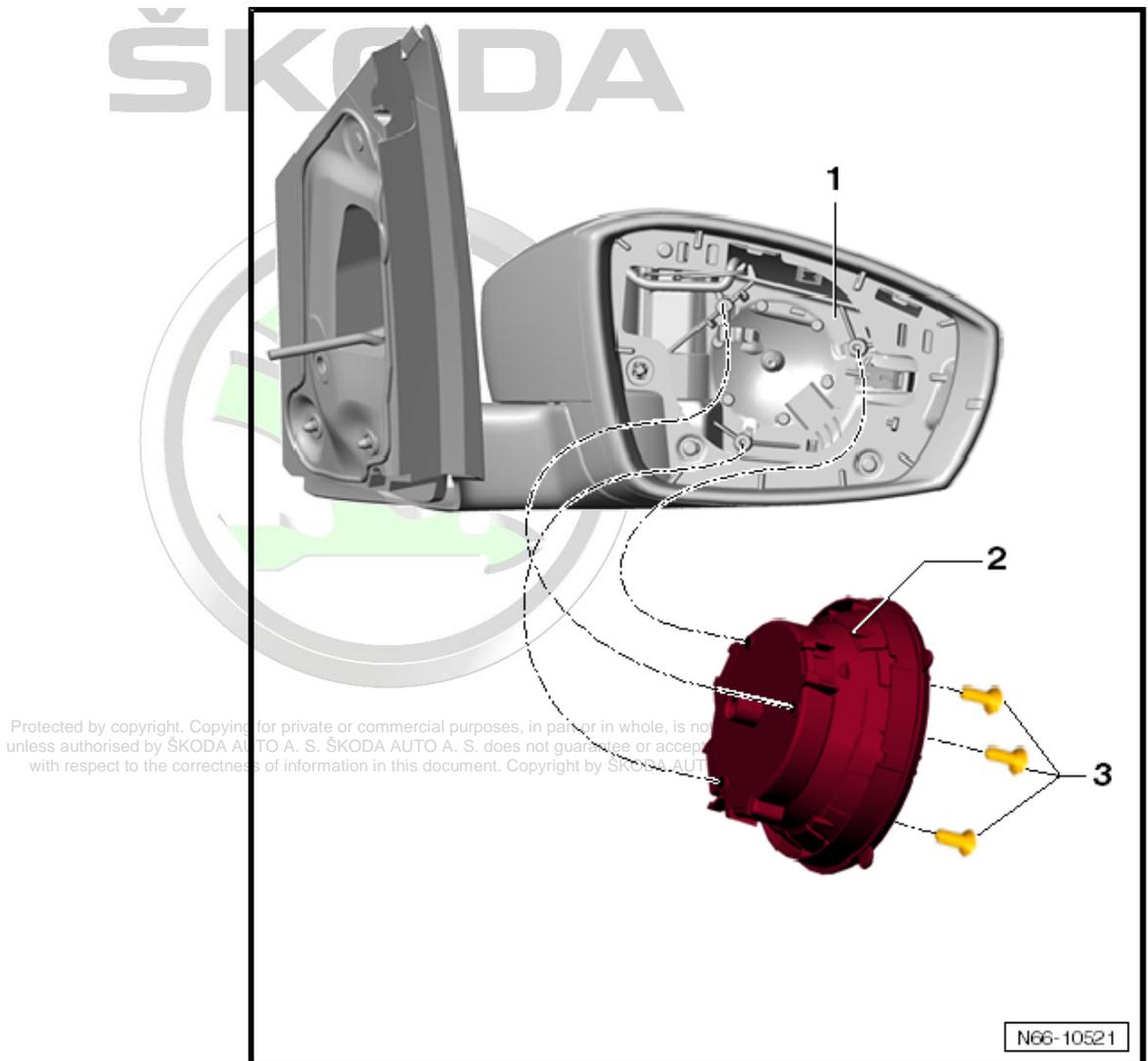
- Protect the edges of the housing for damage, e.g. cover with textile adhesive tape.
- Swivel the mirror glass - 1 - in the maximum position.
- Press off the mirror glass -1- from the holder -2- and the housing -arrow a- for example using a wide plastic wedge.

Installing:

- Press the mirror glass in the centre onto the holder in the housing.

The mirror glass clicks audibly into place.

2.1.2 Removing and installing adjustment unit with motor



Removing:

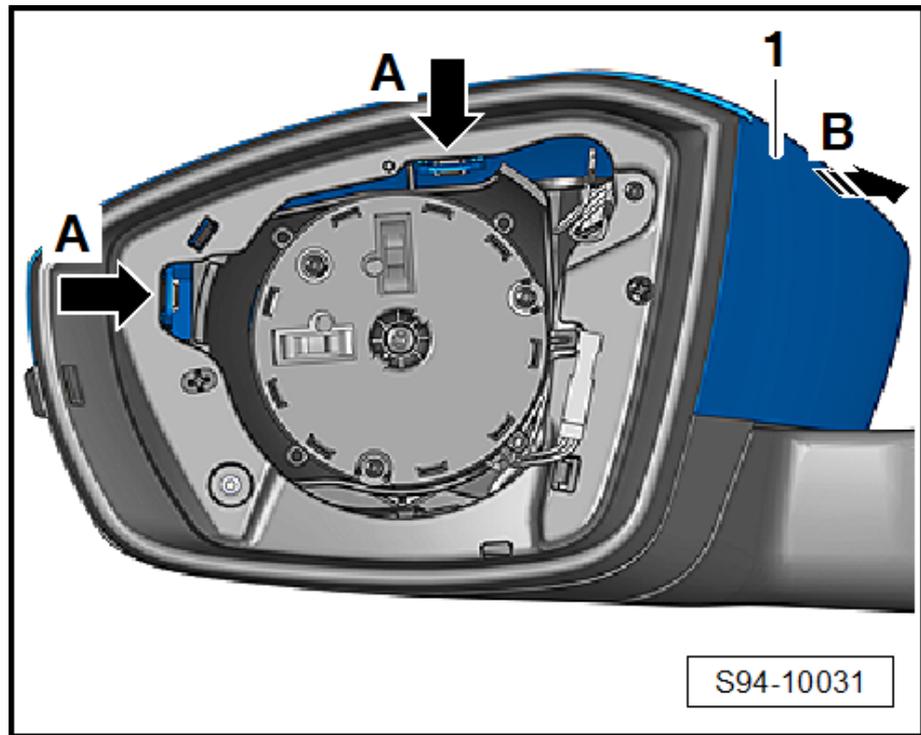
- Remove mirror glass ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Unscrew screws -3-.
- Swivel the adjustment unit with motor - 2 - to the side and disconnect the plug.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

- Tightening torques of screws (Pos. 3) - 2 Nm.

2.1.3 Removing and installing the mirror housing



Removing:

- Remove mirror glass ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Release catch hooks -arrow a-.
- Detach the mirror housing - 1 - in - direction of arrow B -.

Installing:

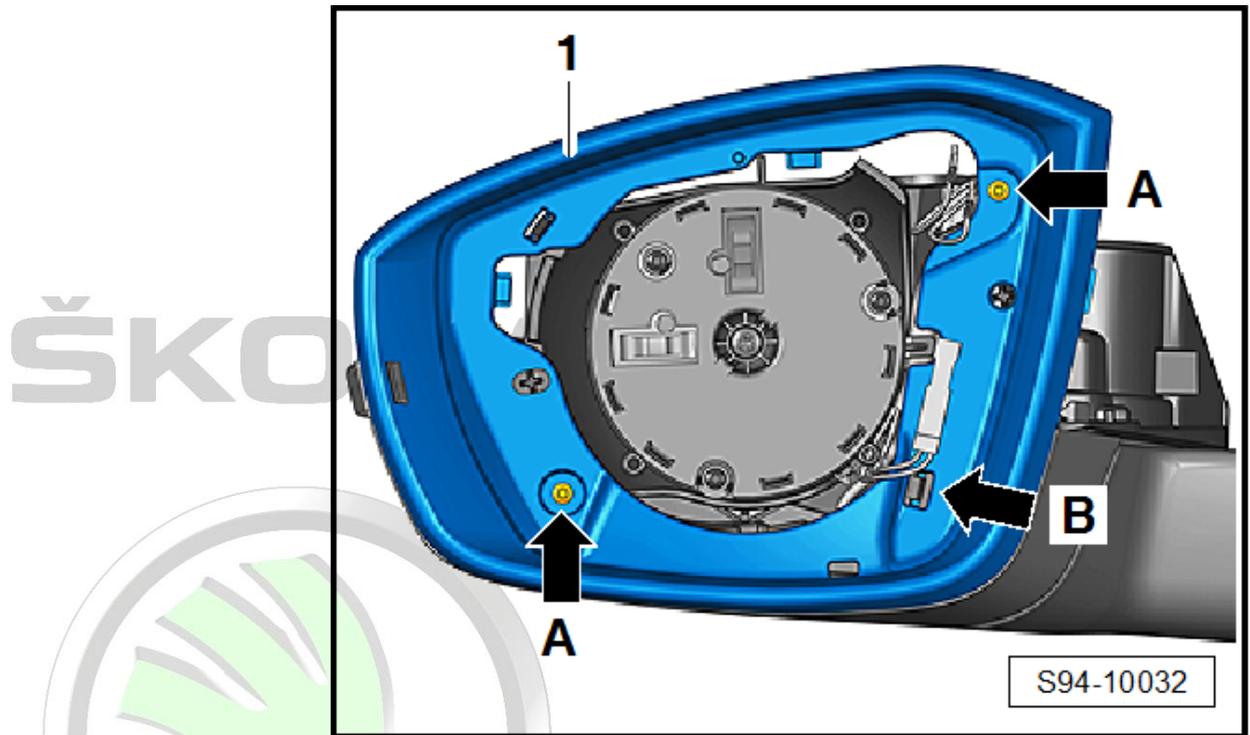
- Position the mirror housing - 1 - and, against the - direction of arrow B -, press into the catch hooks - arrows A -.

The catch hooks click audibly into place.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.1.4 Removing and installing the trim



Removing:

- Remove mirror glass ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Remove mirror housing ⇒ [page 244](#) .
- Unscrew screws - A - .
- Release catch hooks - B - .

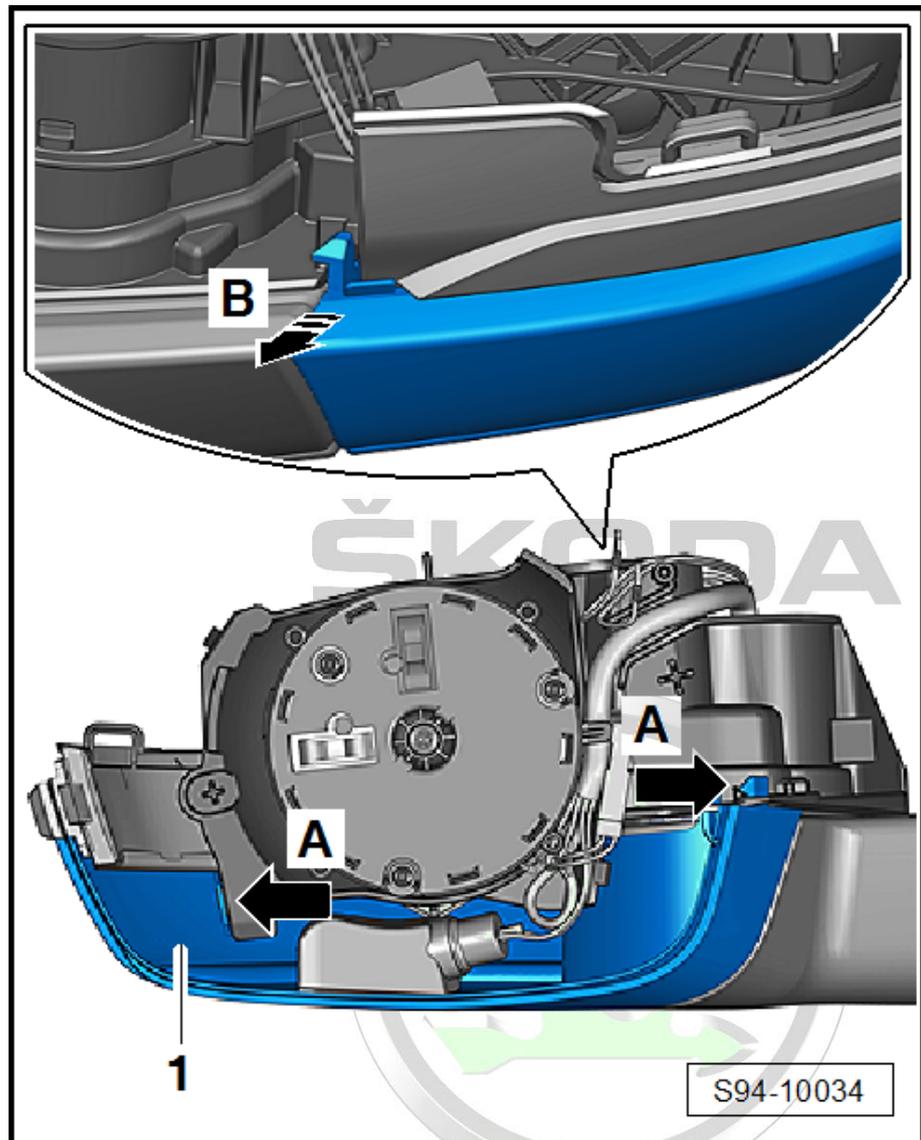
- Remove trim panel - 1 - :

Protected by copyright. This document, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2.1.5 Removing and installing mounting part



Removing:

- Remove mirror glass ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Remove mirror housing ⇒ [page 244](#) .
- Unclip catch hooks - arrow A - .
- Pull out assembly part - 1 - and in - direction of arrow B - remove from the mirror base support.

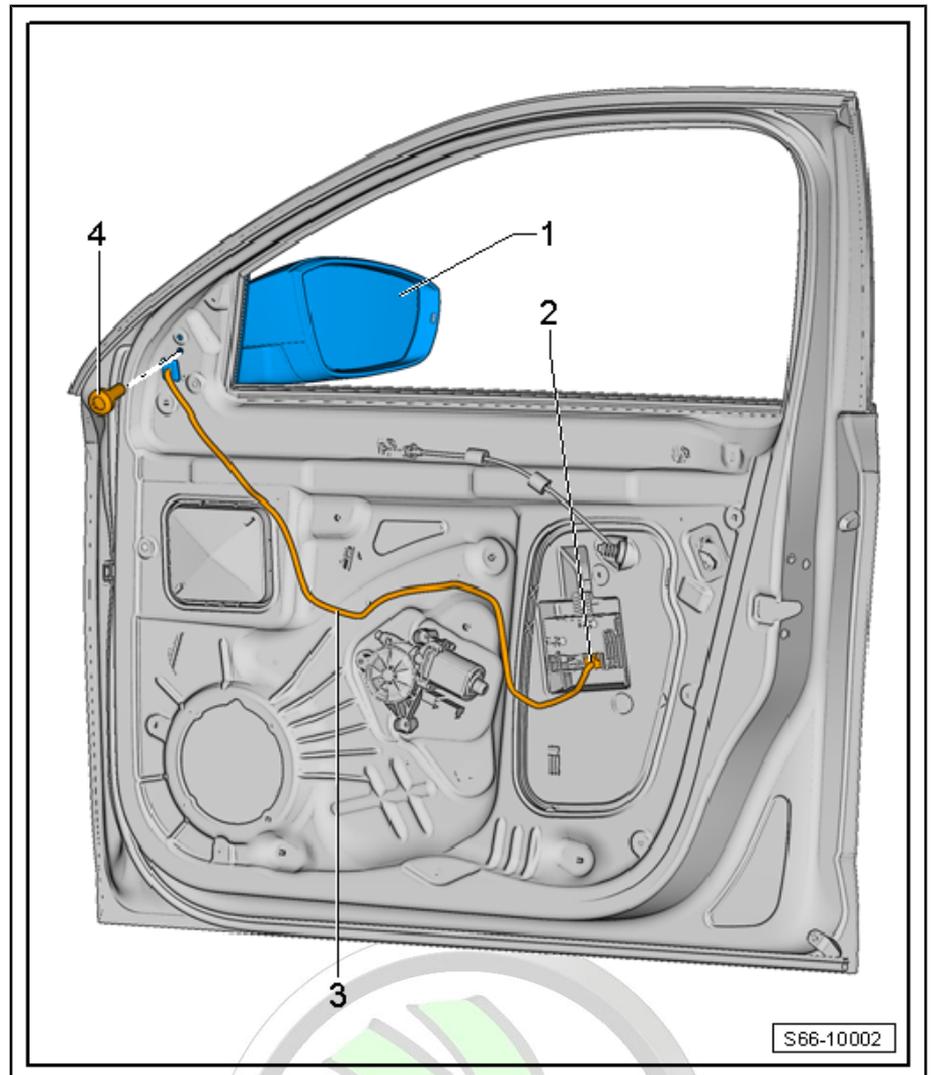
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

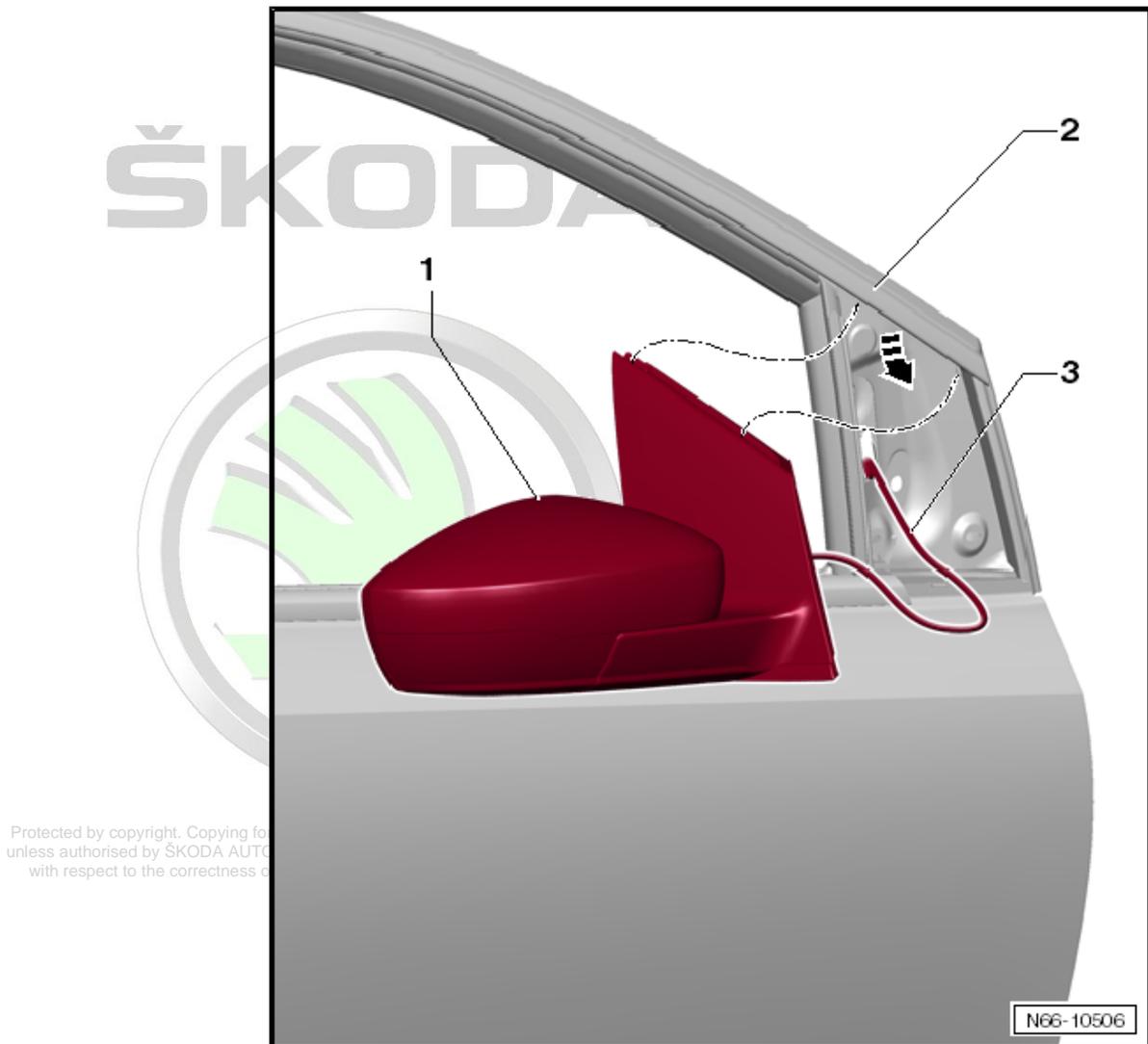
2.1.6 Removing and installing exterior mirror (electric operating lever)

2.1.7 Removing:



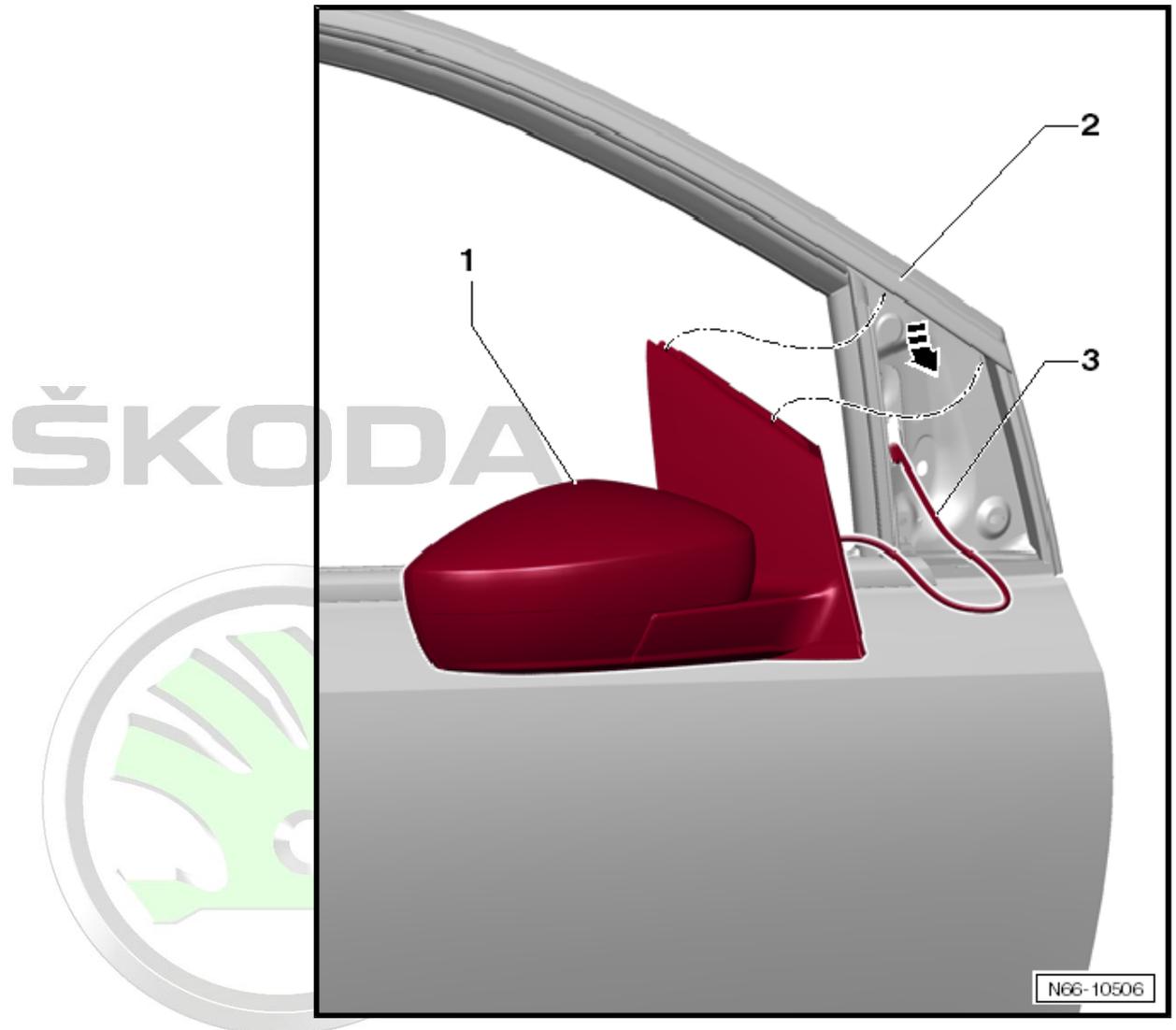
- Remove front door trim panel ⇒ [page 359](#) .
- Disconnect the plug connection - 2 - of the electrical line - 3 - for the exterior mirror - 1 - .
- Unscrew screw -4- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

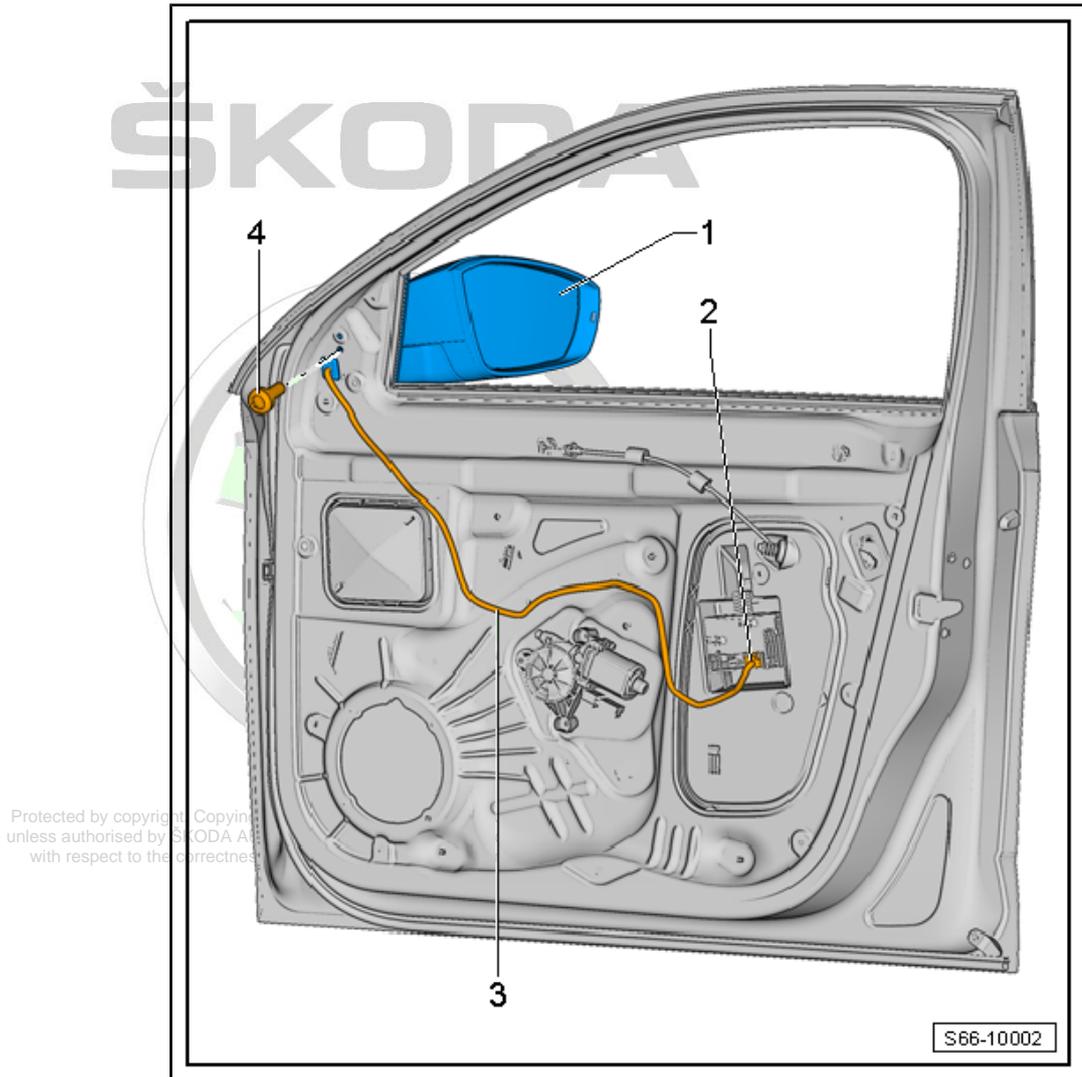


- Swivel out the exterior rear-view mirror - 1 - in the lower area from the door and pull out of the window run - 2 - -arrow-.
- Guide the cable - 3 - through the opening in the door.

2.1.8 Installing:



- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted, unless authorised by SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by SKODA AUTO A. S. ©
- Guide the electrical cable - 3 - through the opening in the door.
 - Insert the exterior mirror - 1 - into the window run - 2 -.



- Fit the screw - 4 - into the mirror housing - 1 -. Tightening torque: 12 Nm.
- Attach el. line - 3 -.
- Connect the plug connection - 2 -.

3 Trailer coupling

3.1 Summary of components trailer coupling

- 1 - Screw
 - 3 Nm
- 2 - Side guide profile left
- 3 - Guide profile centre right
- 4 - Nuts
 - 2.2 Nm
- 5 - Guide profile centre left
- 6 - Screw
 - 55 Nm
- 7 - Trailer coupling

Removing:

- Removing the bumper
⇒ [page 211](#) .
- Partly remove the heat shield protection above the exhaust pipe.
- Remove socket (Pos. 9).
- Remove screws (Pos. 6).
- Pull out trailer coupling towards the rear out of the vehicle.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

8 - Trailer arm

Removing:

- Open lock on control lever.
- Fold back control lever about 90°.
- Remove trailer arm.

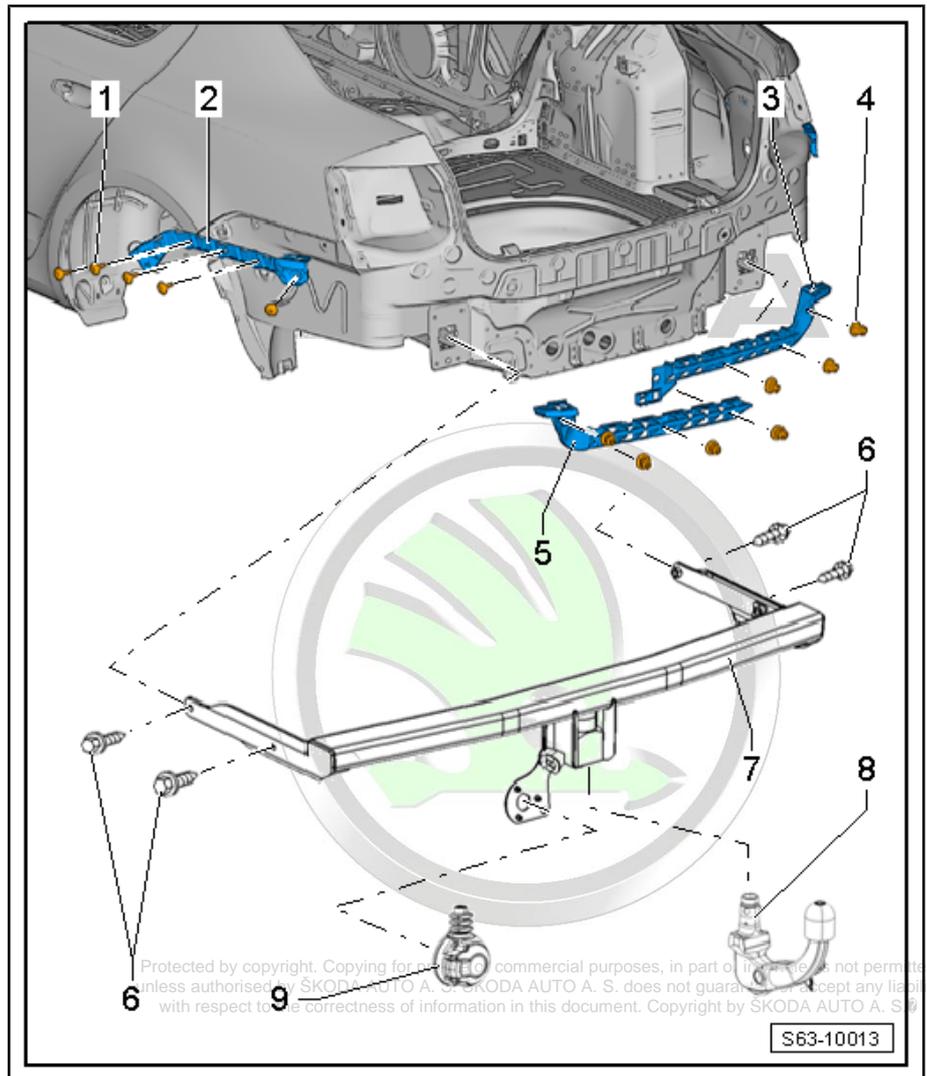
Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

9 - Power socket

Removing:

- Remove screws.
- Remove power socket housing.
- Detach electric lines.





Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Use the type of power socket and the electric installation according to the relevant national legislation.

3.2 Summary of components - trailer coupling (Octavia III - Combi)

- 1 - Screw
 - 3 Nm
- 2 - Side guide profile left
- 3 - Guide profile centre right
- 4 - Nut
 - 2.2 Nm
- 5 - Guide profile centre left
- 6 - Screw
 - 55 Nm
- 7 - Trailer coupling

Removing:

- Removing the bumper ⇒ [page 211](#).
- Partly remove the heat shield protection above the exhaust pipe.
- Remove socket (Pos. 9).
- Remove screws (Pos. 6).
- Pull out trailer coupling towards the rear out of the vehicle.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

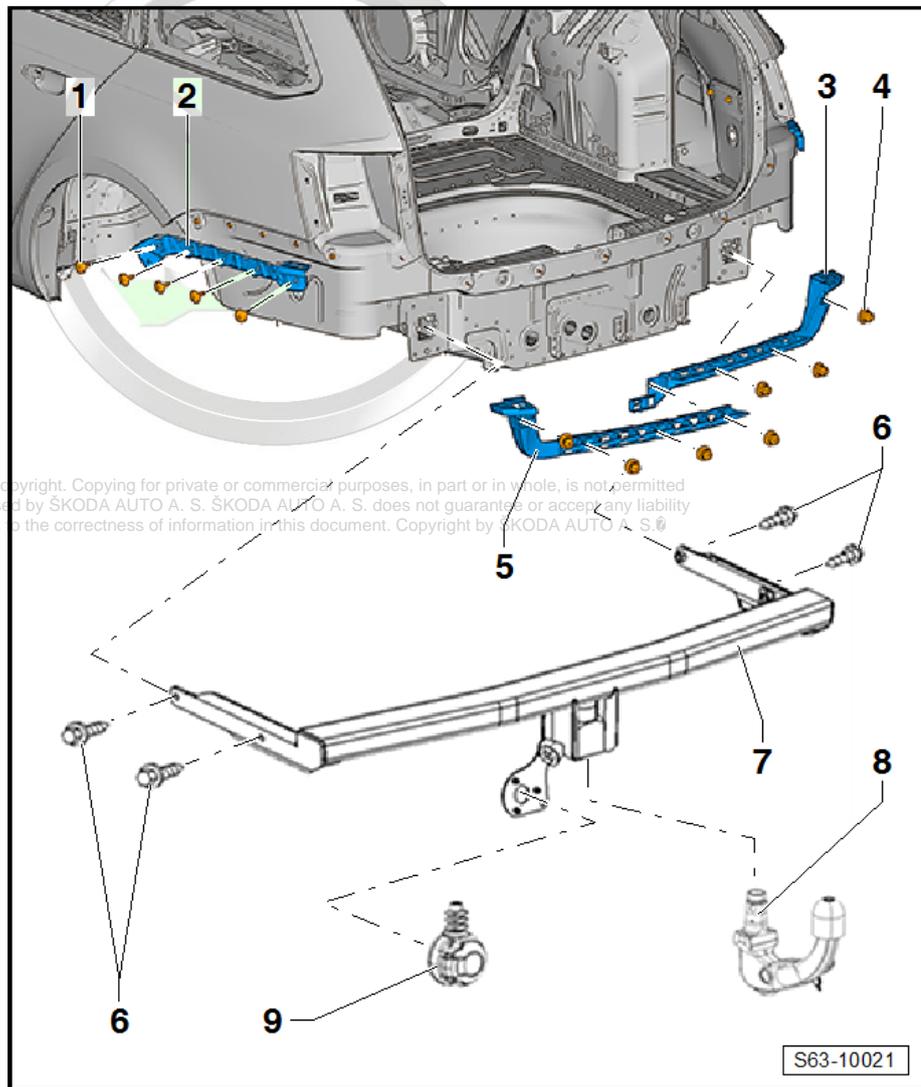
8 - Trailer arm

Removing:

- Open lock on control lever.
- Fold back control lever about 90°.
- Remove trailer arm.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



S63-10021

9 - Power socket

Removing:

- Remove screws.
- Remove power socket housing.
- Detach electric lines.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Use the type of power socket and the electric installation according to the relevant national legislation.

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®



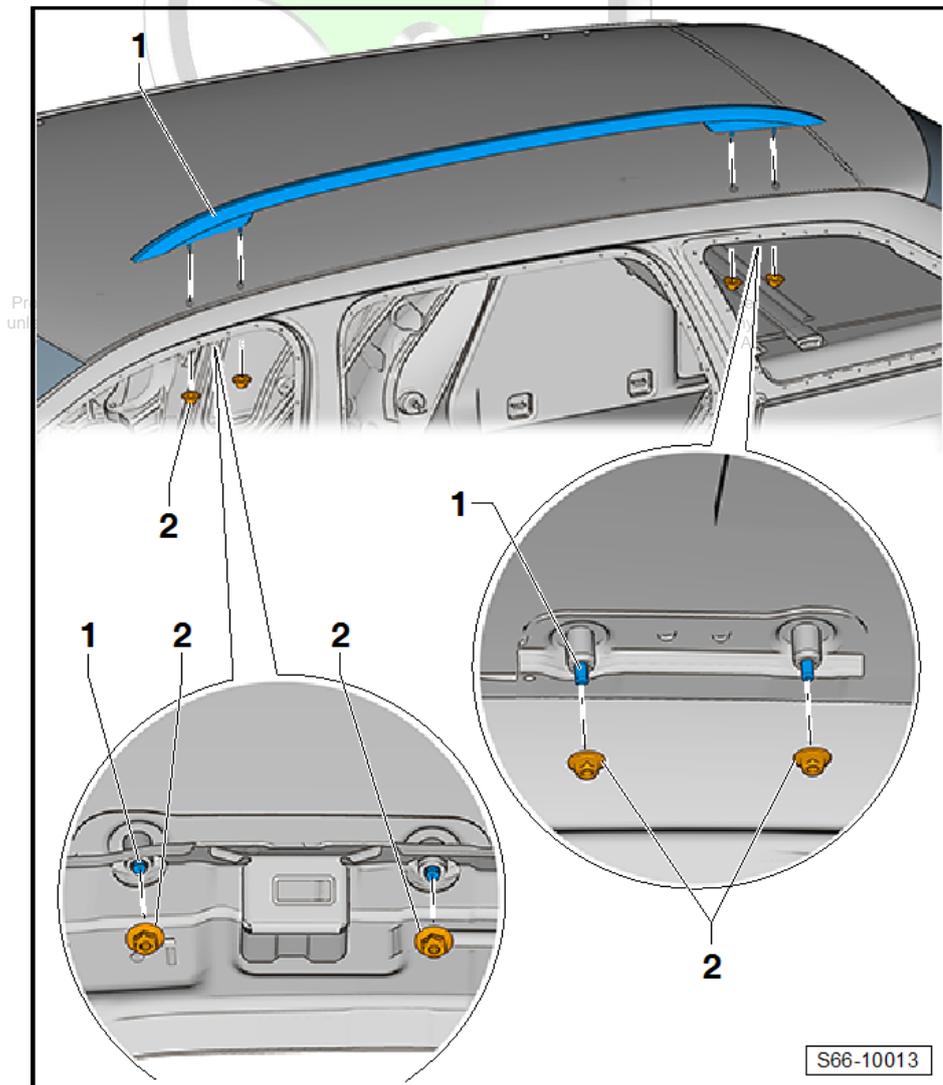
4 Trailer coupling (Octavia III - Combi)



WARNING

Do not use any impact screwdrivers during installation and removal. When removing, use a manual wrench. When installing, use a manual torque wrench!

Summary of components trailer coupling:



Removing:

- Unhook moulded headliner ⇒ [page 396](#) .
- Remove nuts - 2 - (12 Nm ± 1 Nm).
- Remove roof rack - 1 - from the vehicle.

Installing:

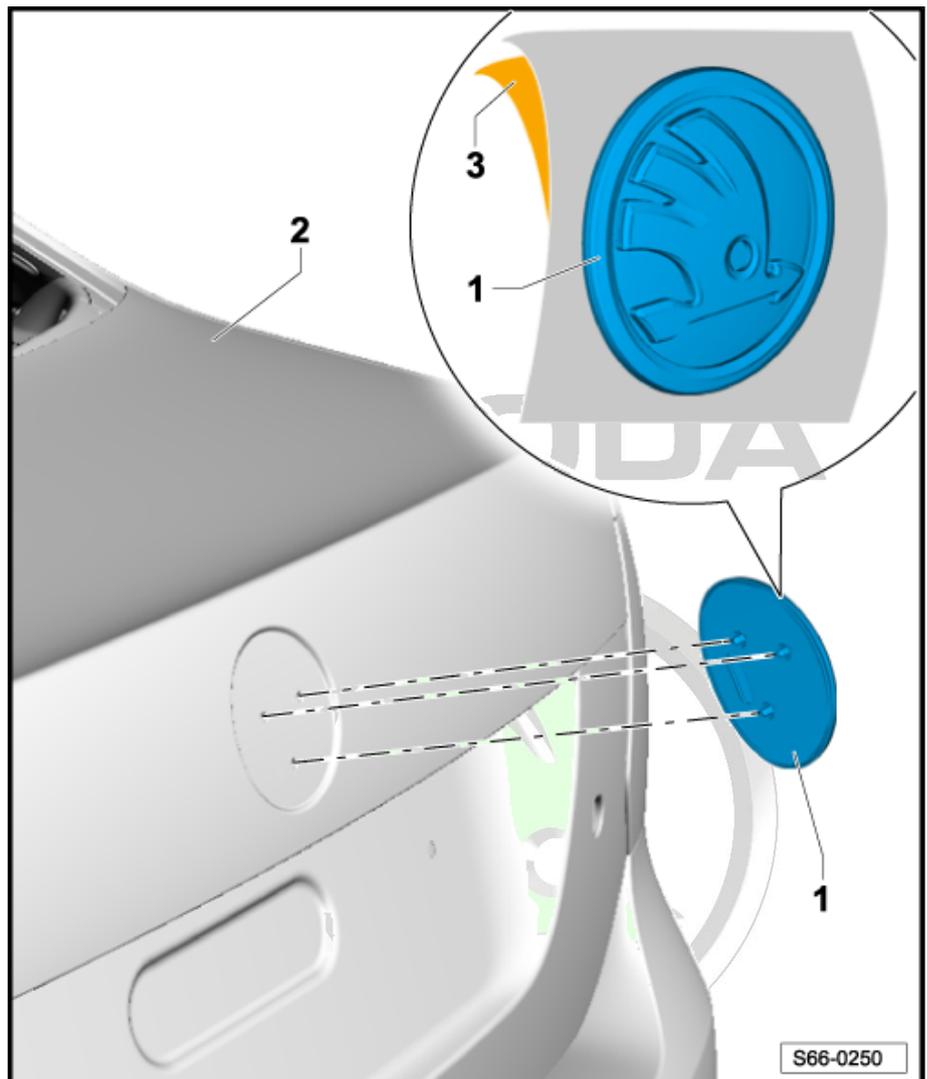
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 Letterings

5.1 Installation instructions

- ◆ Warm up the letterings with a hot-air blower before removing.
- ◆ If a lettering is removed or installed, only use the glue remover - D 002 000 10- to remove the glue residues.
- ◆ If necessary, remove existing glue residues of the adhesive tape.
- ◆ Make sure that the adhesive surfaces are free from dust and grease.
- ◆ The letterings must be glued on immediately after cleaning.
- ◆ Remove protective foil from its wrapping until just before assembly.
- ◆ The processing temperature is about 21 °C.
- ◆ The letterings cannot be removed without being damaged.

5.2 Removing and installing the logo on the tailgate



**Removing:**

- Warm up the logo -1- with a hot-air blower before removing.
- Remove the logo from the tailgate -2-.

Installing:

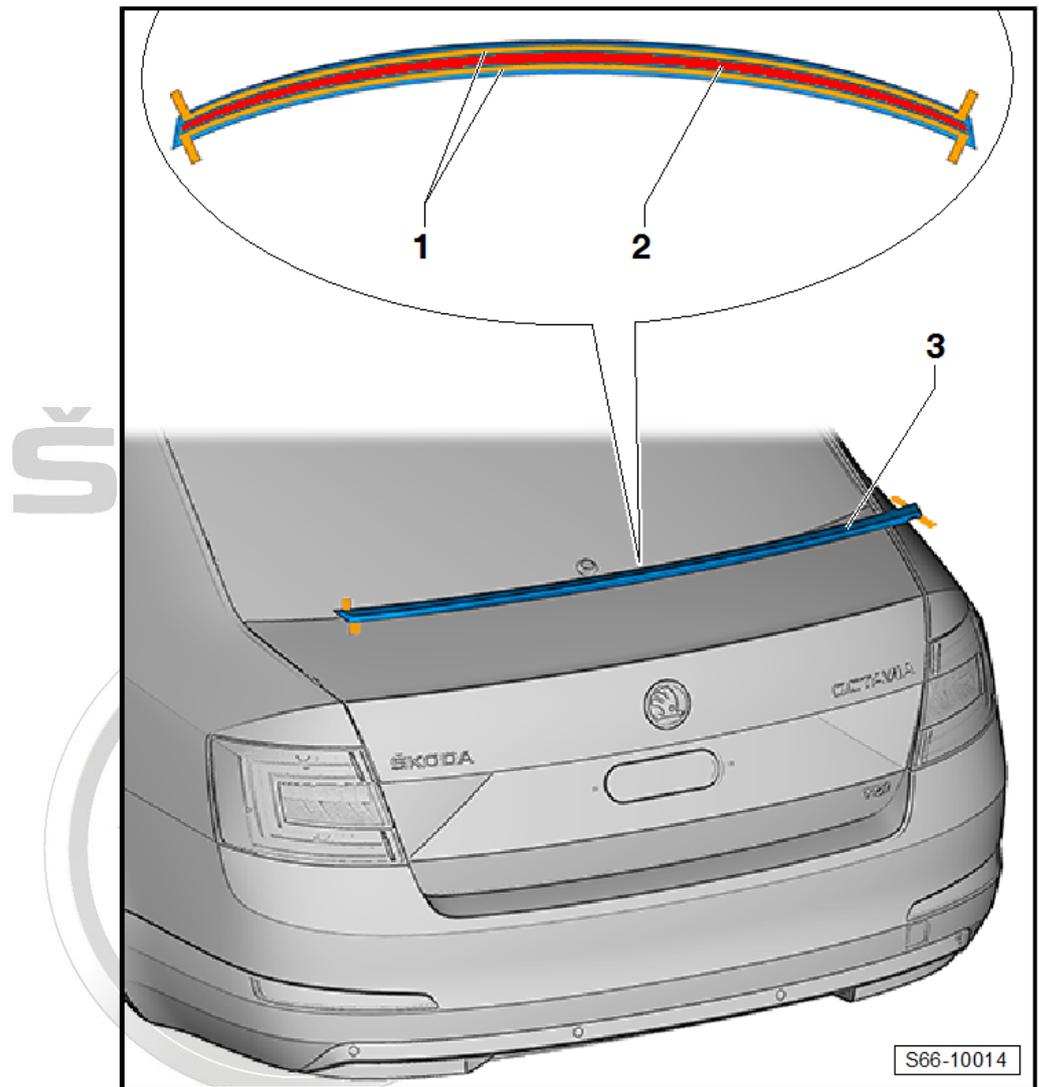
- Pay attention to installation instructions ⇒ [page 255](#) .
- Detach the protective foil - 3 - .
- Place the logo - 1 - with the centering pins into the embossed area of the tailgate - 2 - .
- Forcefully press on the logo - 1 - .

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

6 Rear spoiler



- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written authorisation of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©
- Rear spoiler -3-
 - Adhesive tape -1-
 - Glue sealing material -2-

Remove and install rear spoiler:

Removing:

- Cover the painted surfaces along the spoiler with textile adhesive tape.
- Cut off spoiler from the tailgate (cut through glue sealing material) and cut off double-sided adhesive tape, e.g. with cutting cord -357 853 999 B - .
- Remove the spoiler.

**Installing:****Note**

The ambient temperature must be above 18°C during the glueing procedure of the spoiler!

- Thoroughly clean the adhesive surfaces e.g. with cleaning solution D 009 401 04.
- Apply glue sealing material D 172 090 A2 into the guiding groove (Pos. 2) in the spoiler.
- Stick on the spoiler within 15 minutes after applying the glue sealing material!
- Partially unglue the protective foil from the adhesive tape on the edges.
- Position the spoiler evenly onto the tailgate.
- Maintain an equal gap of 2 mm from the tailgate.
- Remove the protective foil from the adhesive tape.
- Press the spoiler evenly onto the tailgate.
- Secure spoiler against moving with adhesive tape.

**Note**

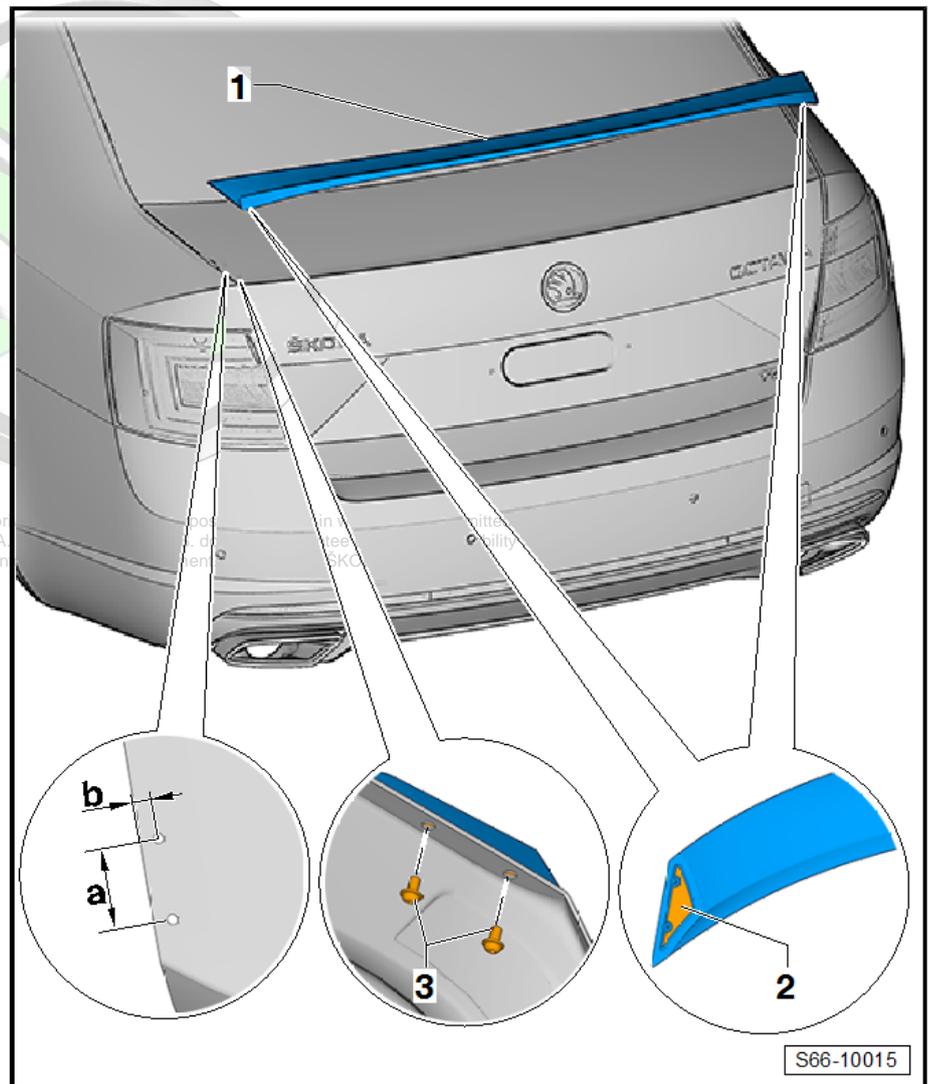
- ◆ *The adhesive cement must dry for 2 hours. Do not drive the vehicle in this time.*
- ◆ *Do not drive into the carwash within 24 hours of gluing on the spoiler.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

7 Rear spoiler (Octavia RS)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted without prior written permission from ŠKODA AUTO AG. All rights reserved.



- Rear spoiler -1-
- Glue sealing material -2-
- Securing bolts -3- (5 Nm).

Remove and install rear spoiler:

Removing:

- Cover the painted surfaces along the spoiler supports with textile adhesive tape.
- Remove screws (Pos. 3).
- Cut off spoiler from the tailgate e.g. with cutting cord -357 853 999 B- (cut through glue sealing material).
- Remove the spoiler.

**Installing:****Note**

The ambient temperature must be above 18°C during the glueing procedure of the spoiler!

- Diameter of the bores in the tailgate = 6.5 mm.
- Bore arrangement for spoiler:
- Thoroughly clean the adhesive surfaces e.g. with cleaning solution D 009 401 04.
- Apply glue sealing material D 172 090 A2 into the space for supports between the bores for screws for glue sealing material.
- Stick on the spoiler within 15 minutes after applying the glue sealing material!
- Position the spoiler evenly onto the tailgate.
- Press the spoiler evenly onto the tailgate.
- Install screw (Pos. 3).

**Note**

- ◆ *The adhesive cement must dry for 2 hours. Do not drive the vehicle in this time.*
- ◆ *Do not drive into the carwash within 24 hours of gluing on the spoiler.*

... purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

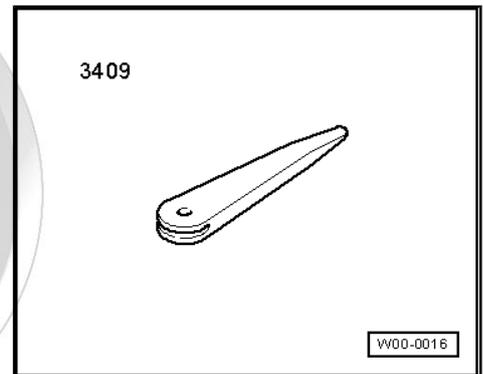
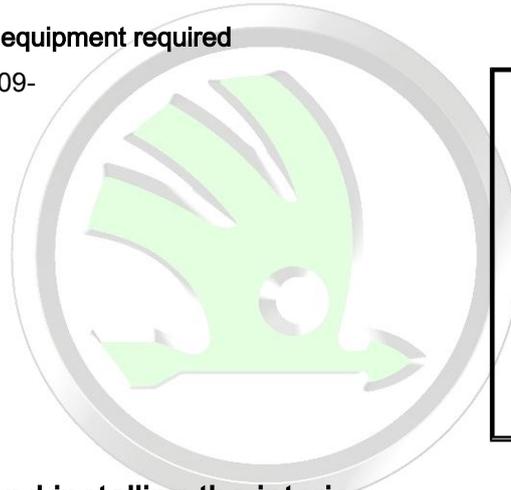
68 – Interior equipment

1 Interior rear-view mirror

1.1 Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Disassembly wedge - 3409-

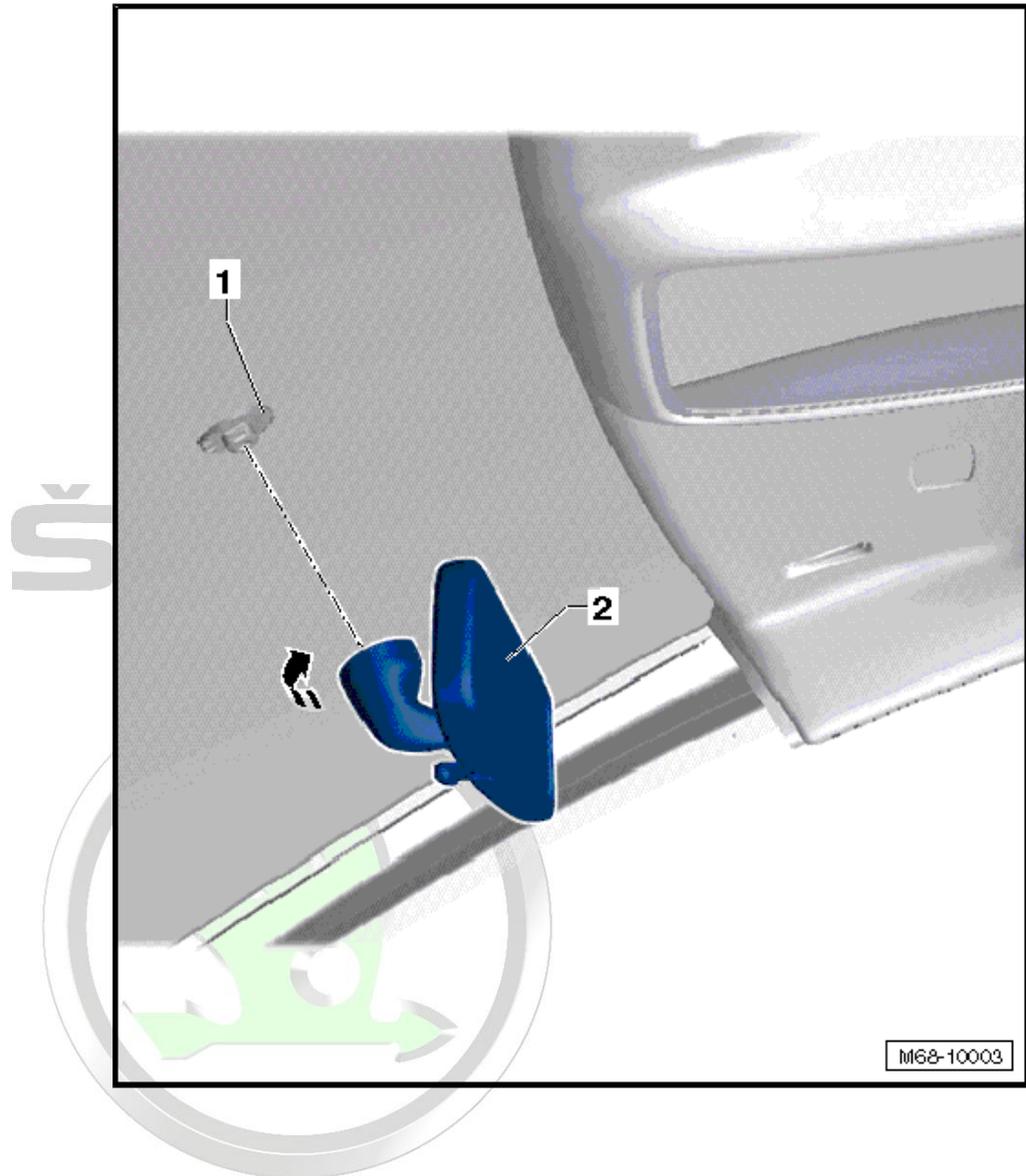


1.2 Removing and installing the interior rear-view mirror

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.2.1 Removing:

- Turn interior mirror -2- by 90° in -direction of arrow- and remove from the retaining plate -1-.



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

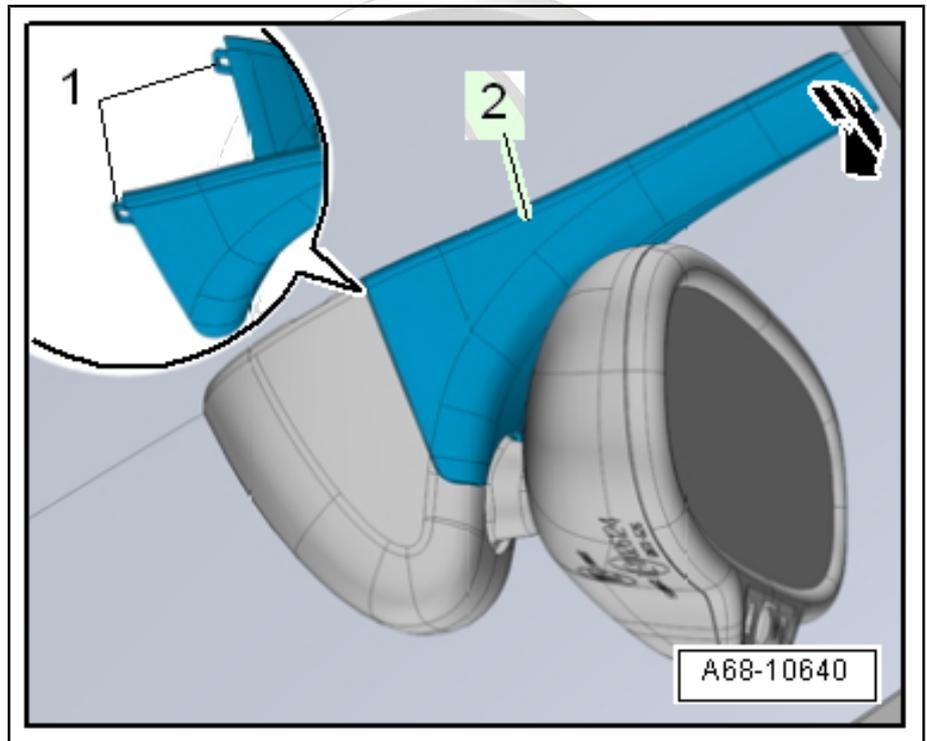
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.3 Removing and installing the interior mirror with rain sensor

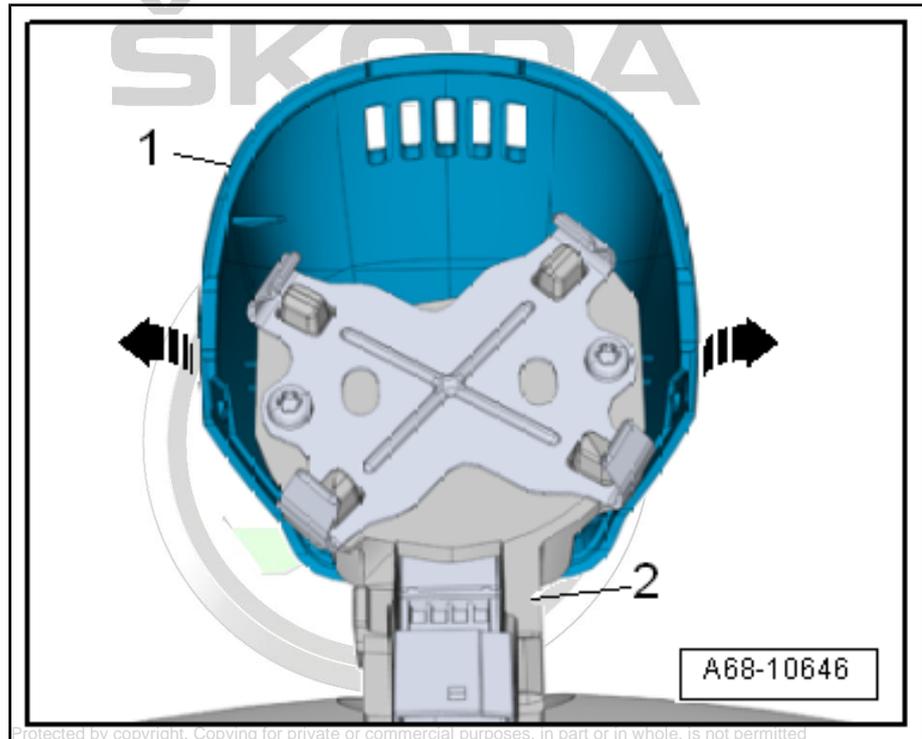
ŠKODA

1.3.1 Removing:

- Fold the mirror down up to stop, approx. 25°.

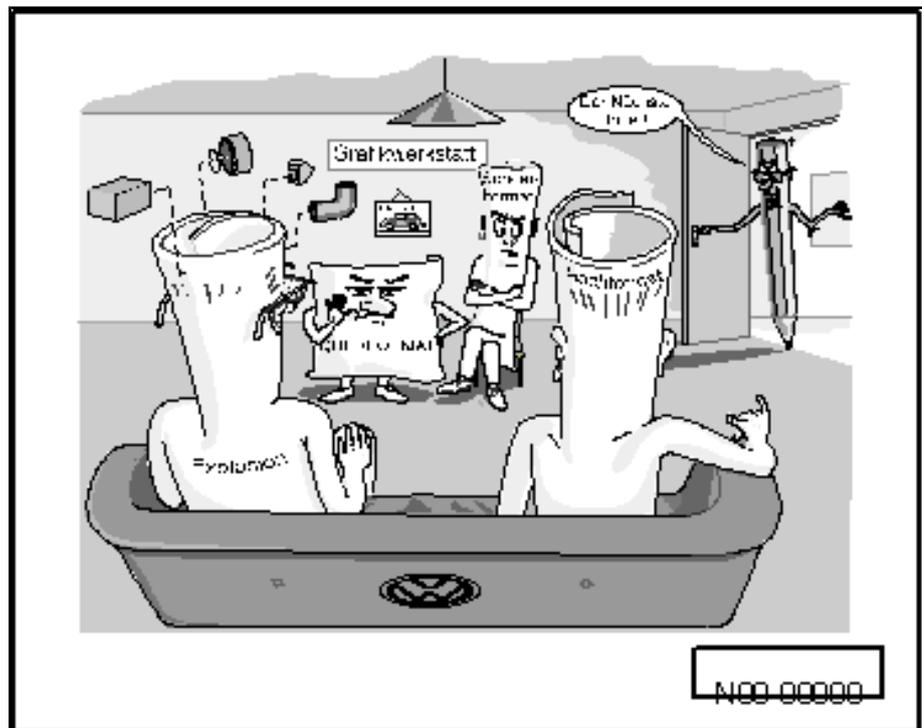


- Pull rear cover - 2 - down in - direction of arrow - at the same time release the locking device - 1 - with a screwdriver or similar.
- Suspend rear cover and remove.
- Carefully suspend the stops - arrows - pull down the front cover - 1 - from the guides on the retaining plate for the interior mirror - 2 -.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Turn the interior mirror - 1 - counter clockwise by 40°
 - arrow - and remove downwards.



- Disconnect the plug connection in the inner mirror, where available.

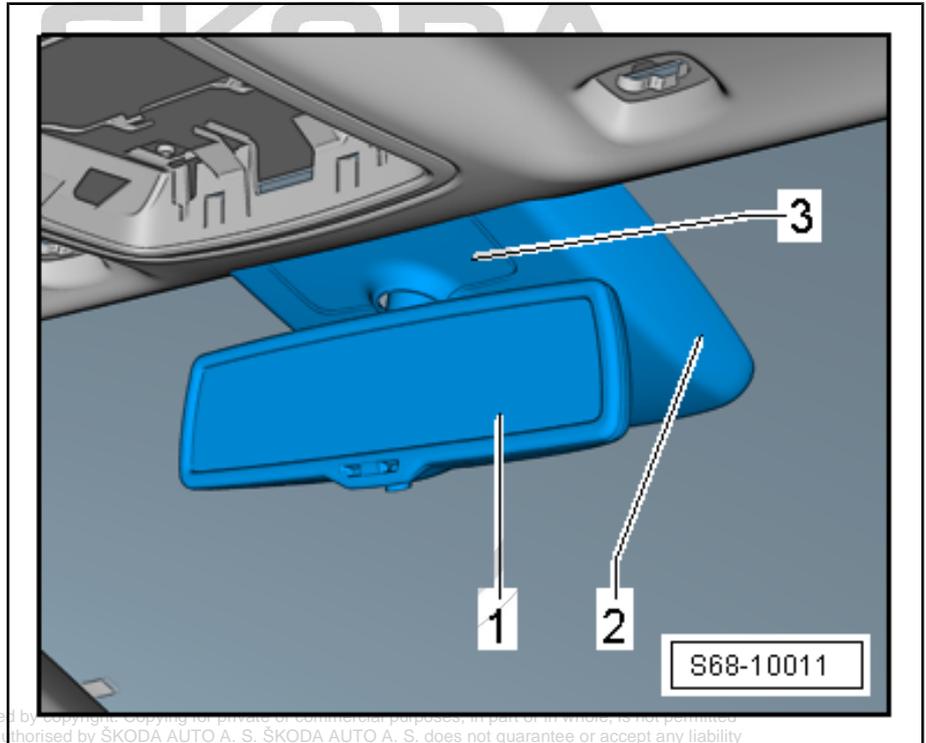
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

1.4 Removing and installing the interior mirror with rain sensor and camera

Summary of components:

- 1 - Interior rear-view mirror
- 2 - Camera cover
- 3 - Cover for mounting the interior mirror

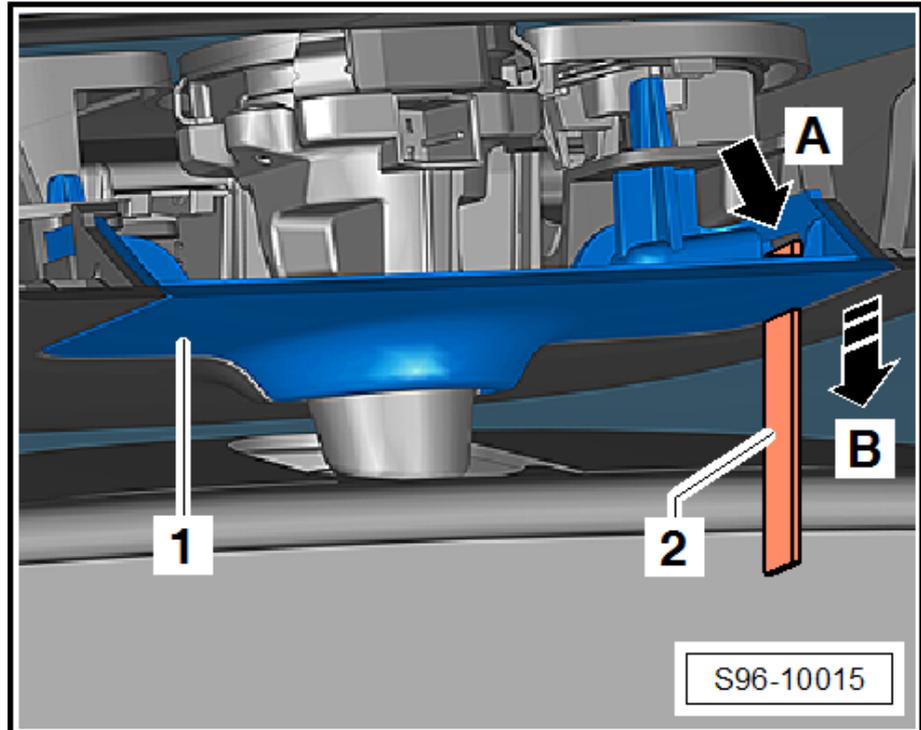


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

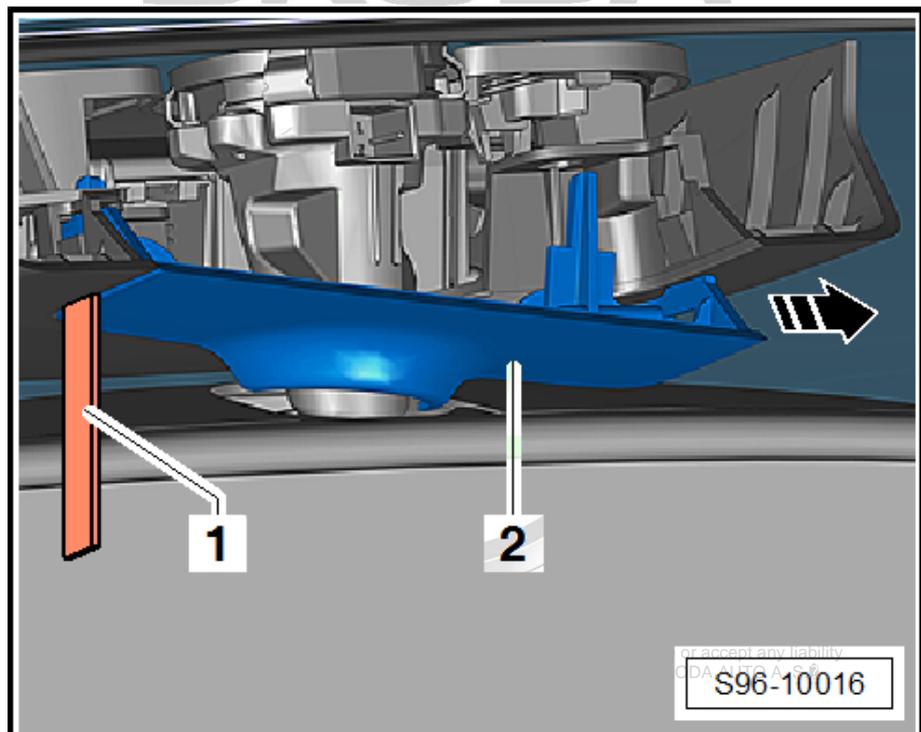
1.4.1 Removing:

Special tools and workshop equipment required

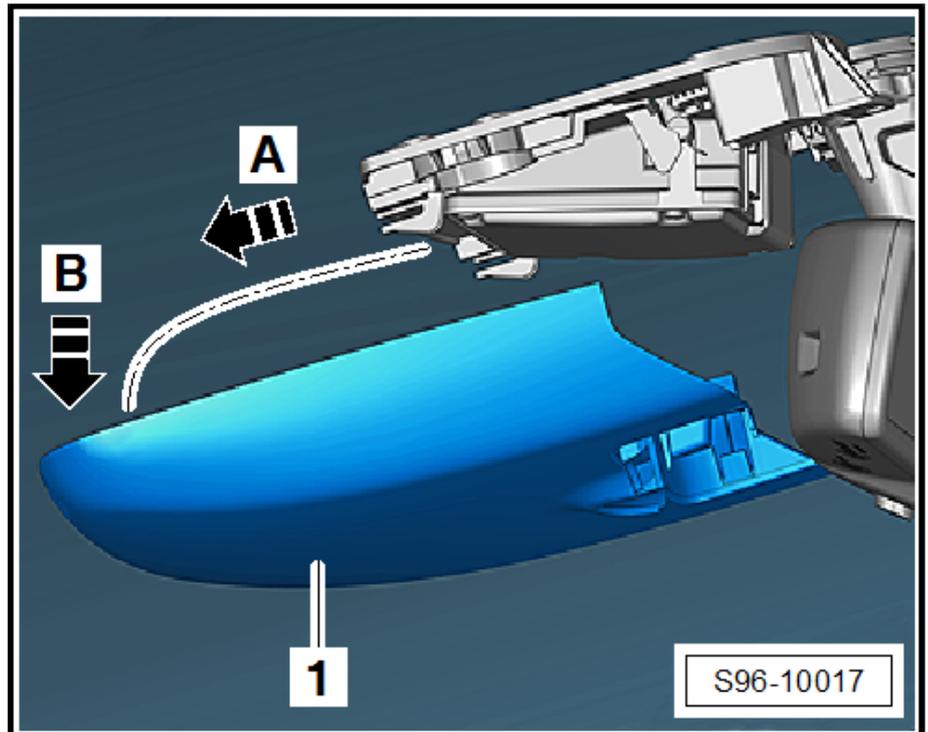
- ◆ Release tool - T30098-
- Insert unlocking tool - T30098- - 2 - in the gap between covers and press in the catch - A -.



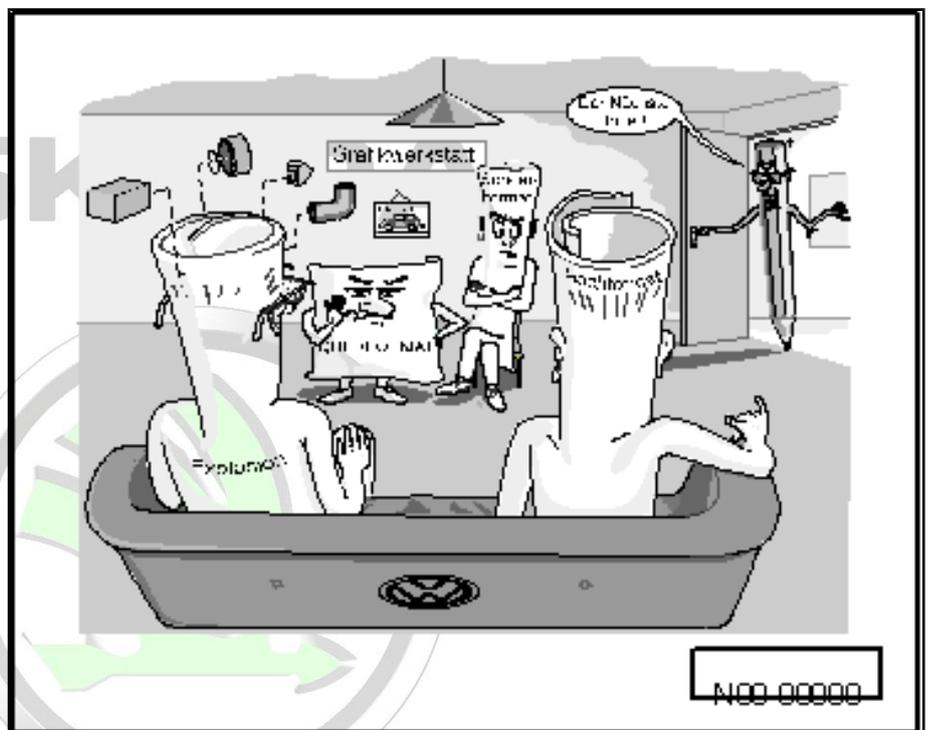
- Detach the cover - 1 - in - direction of arrow B - downwards.
- Insert the unlocking tool - T30098- - 1 - in the gap between the covers on the other side and press in the catch.



- Remove cover -2-.
- Screw out the camera cover - 1 - from the retaining plate in - direction of arrow A - and detach in - direction of arrow B -.



- Use the open-end wrench - 3 - to turn the interior mirror - 2 - anti-clockwise by 20° - arrow - and remove downwards.



- Disconnect plug connection at interior mirror.

Installing:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. This document is for informational purposes only. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

1.5 Glueing the retaining plate for the interior rear-view mirror

1.5.1 Materials

- ◆ Glass-metal adhesive kit - D 000 703 A1-

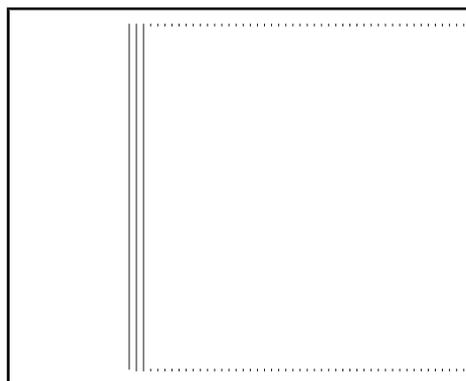
1.5.2 Installing:

Tools:

- 1 - Glass scraper (commercially available)
- 2 - Blade (commercially available)

Carry out the following tasks:

- Remove retaining plate from the mirror pedestal.
- Remove PUR adhesive kit from the retaining plate with a wire brush.
- Grind down the three distance knobs on the adherend. To do so place abrasive paper (grain 360/400) on a flat surface.
- Sanded surfaces must be clean and free from grease.
- Using the glass scraper, scrape the old PUR adhesive and glass/paint primer residues down to the ceramic layer on the windscreen.
- Clean the bonding surface with glue remover - D 002 000 10- or cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .



WARNING

Do not damage the ceramic layer. Scratches remain visible.

- Cut a piece of nylon net fabric to the exact size of the retaining plate.



Note

A protective glove (rubber) must be worn.

- Apply adhesive evenly on the retaining plate.
- Fit a piece of nylon net fabric onto the retaining plate.
- Continue applying adhesive by dabbing on the nylon net fabric.

Once the nylon net fabric is placed on the adhesive, you only have 30 seconds to press it onto the windscreen.

- Press the retaining plate steadily onto the windscreen for 15 seconds (do not force).
- Remove excess adhesive with a cloth.



Note

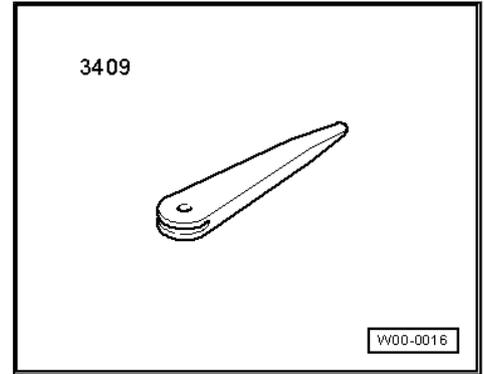
Install the interior rear-view mirror after 15 minutes.

2 Covers, storage areas and trim panels

2.1 Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Disassembly wedge - 3409-



2.2 Centre console

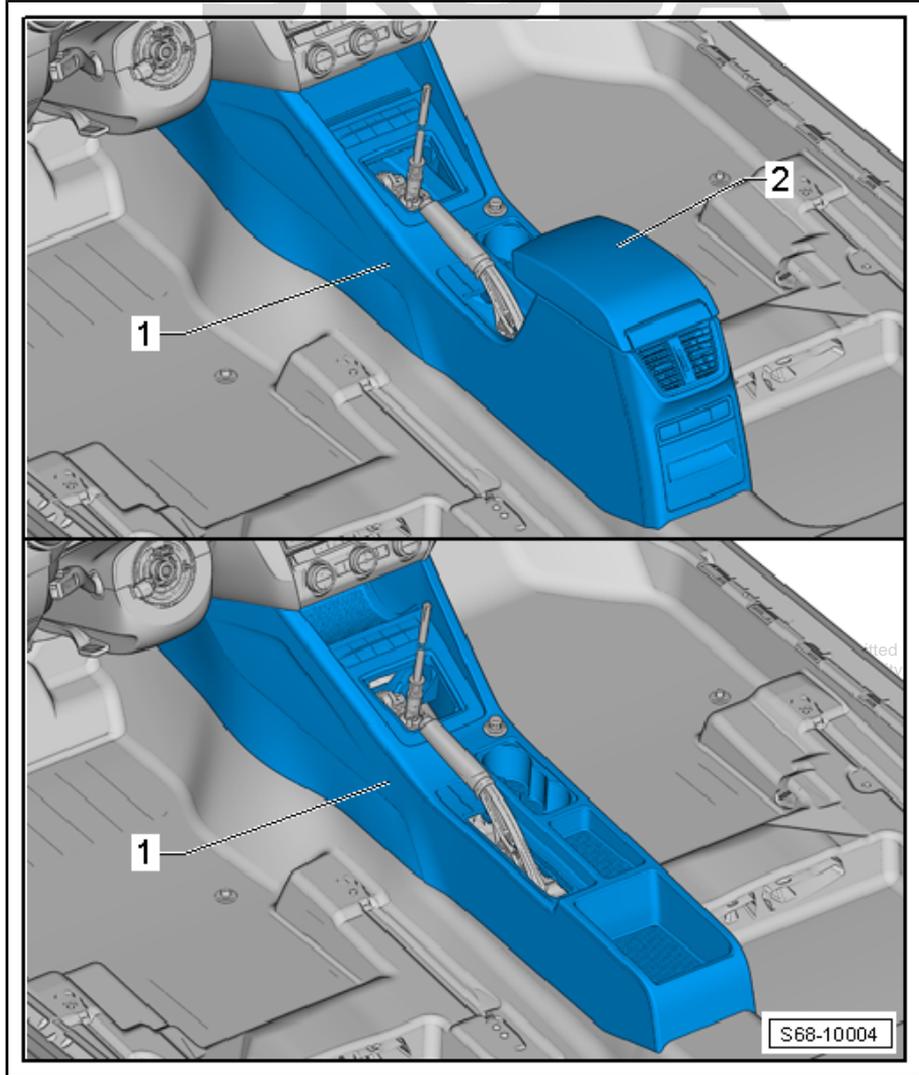
2.2.1 Summary of components:

ŠKODA





- 1 - Centre console
- 2 - Armrest



2.2.2 Removing and installing centre console without armrest

1 - Trim panel links

2 - Centre console

Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 271](#) .

3 - Damping

4 - Cap of handbrake

5 - Screw - 1.5 Nm

6 - Screw - 1.5 Nm

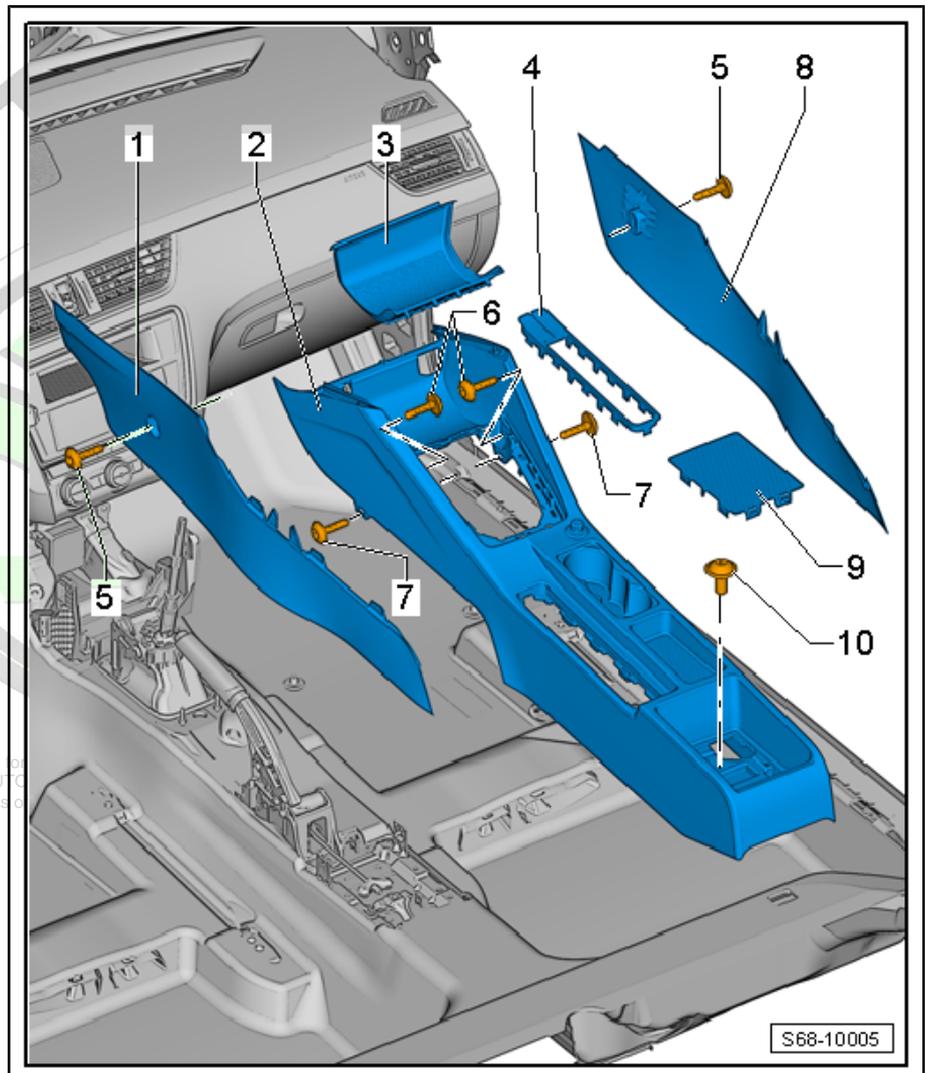
7 - Screw - 1.5 Nm

8 - Trim panel right

9 - Cap

- The fixing screw for the centre console is located under the cap.

10 - Screw - 1.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying or
 unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO
 with respect to the correctness of

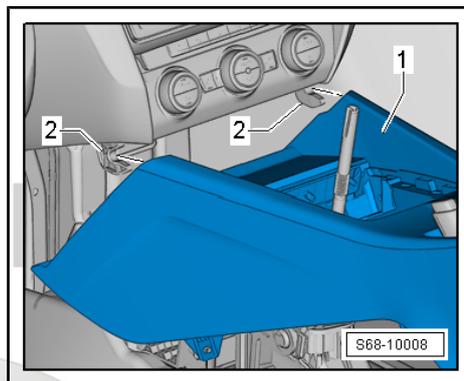
Removing:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical components.
- Unscrew the screw (Pos. 5) for the trim panel central console in the footwell and detach both trim panels by moving them downwards.
- Remove screws (Pos. 7).
- Unclip the trim panel for the transmission cover and remove ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 .
- Remove screws (Pos. 6).
- Unclip the cap (Pos. 9) and remove the screw (Pos. 10).
- Apply handbrake fully.
- Unclip the cap on the handbrake (Pos. 4).
- If the console is paired with the Phonebox, disconnect the aerial.

- Partly raise the rear central console, disconnect the plug connection to the cigar lighter (socket) ⇒ Electrical system- general information ; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Tilt the central console - 1 - rear upwards and unclip out of the holders for the dash panel - 2 - by pulling it towards the rear.
- If the console has a stowage compartment with cover, disconnect the plug connection for the front glovebox light ⇒ Electrical system - general information; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove centre console from vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



2.2.3 Removing and installing centre console with armrest

1 - Trim panel links

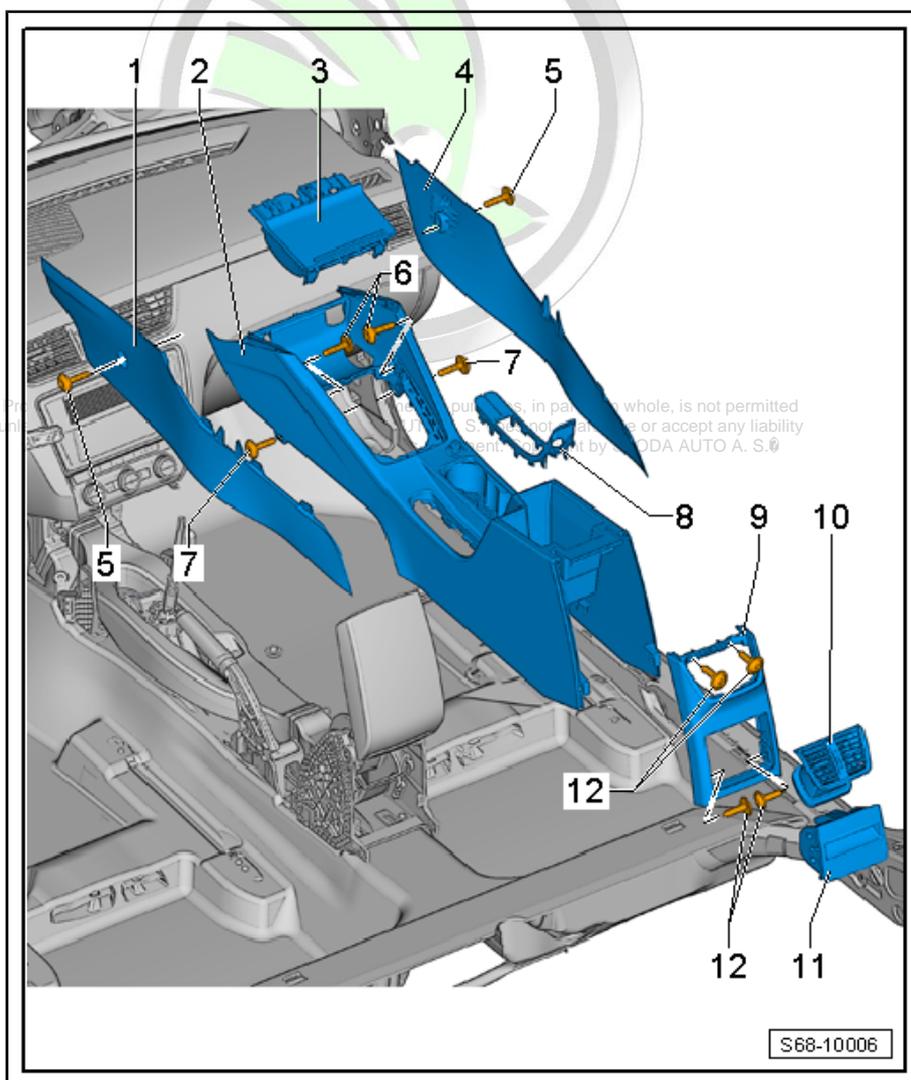
2 - Centre console

Removing and installing
⇒ [page 273](#) .

3 - Storage tray

Removing:

- Remove side trim panel (Pos. 4).
- Unclip transmission cover ⇒ transmission; Rep. gr. 34 .
- Disconnect aerial plug from the right-hand side through the opening in the middle console (depending on the equipment).
- Unclip the storage tray in the front area and move it to the top slightly.
- Close the for storage tray and push out to the front in stages.
- By pushing out the storage tray in stages, also open the to expose the space above the storage tray.
- After pushing out, remove the glovebox light connector.
- Remove the storage tray from the central console.



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

4 - Trim panel right

5 - Screw - 1.5 Nm

6 - Screw - 1.5 Nm

7 - Screw - 1.5 Nm

8 - Cap of handbrake

- Clipped onto centre console.

9 - Rear support



The removal of the rear support varies according to the level of equipment in the vehicle.

10 - Rear flow vent

- Clipped onto the rear support.

11 - Storage tray rear/ashtray

- Clipped onto the rear support.

Removing:

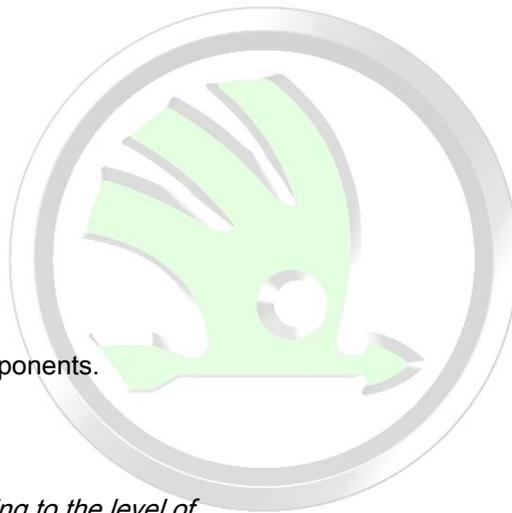
- Switch off the ignition and all electrical components.



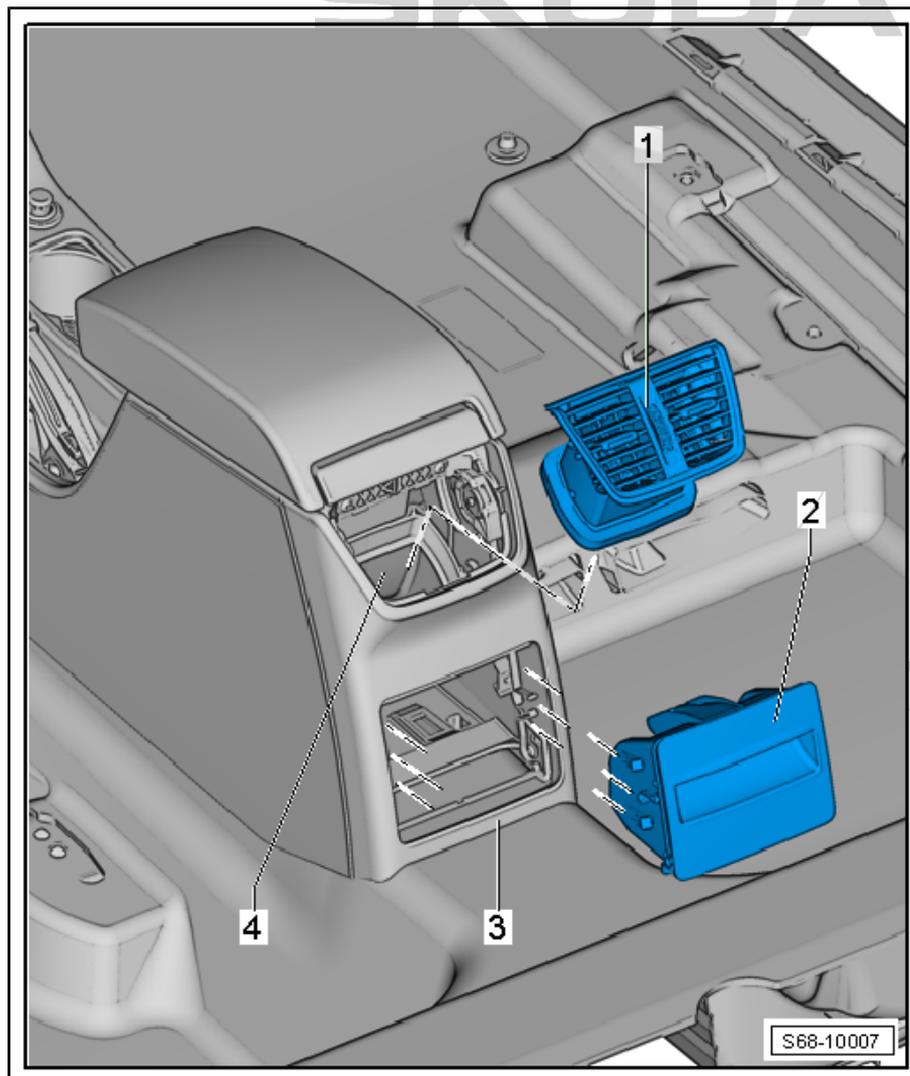
The removal of the rear support varies according to the level of equipment in the vehicle.

- Unclip the rear vent - 1 - from the rear support.

ŠKODA

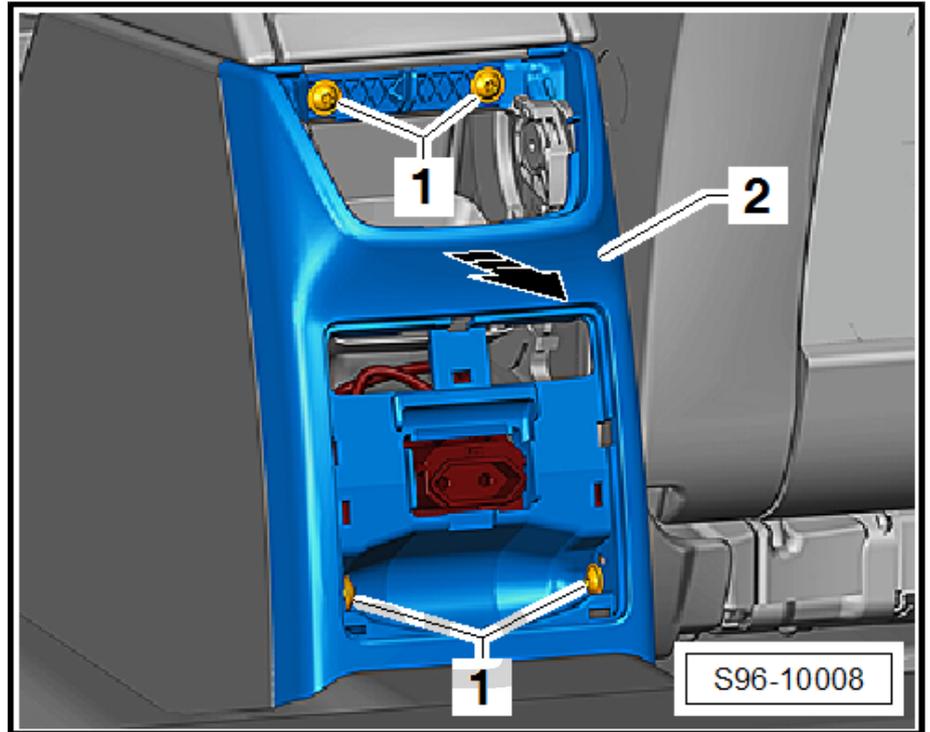


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

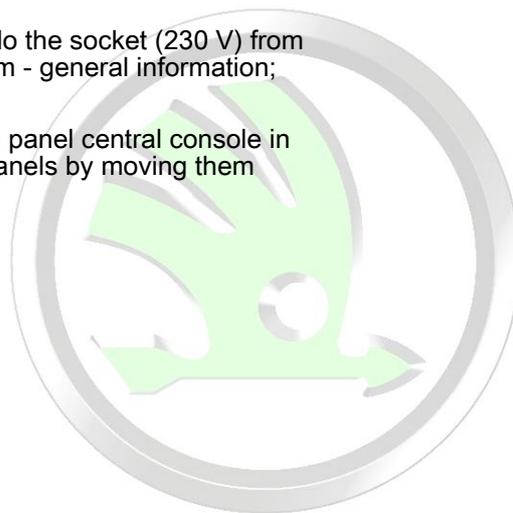


not permitted
 any liability
 TO A. S.Ø

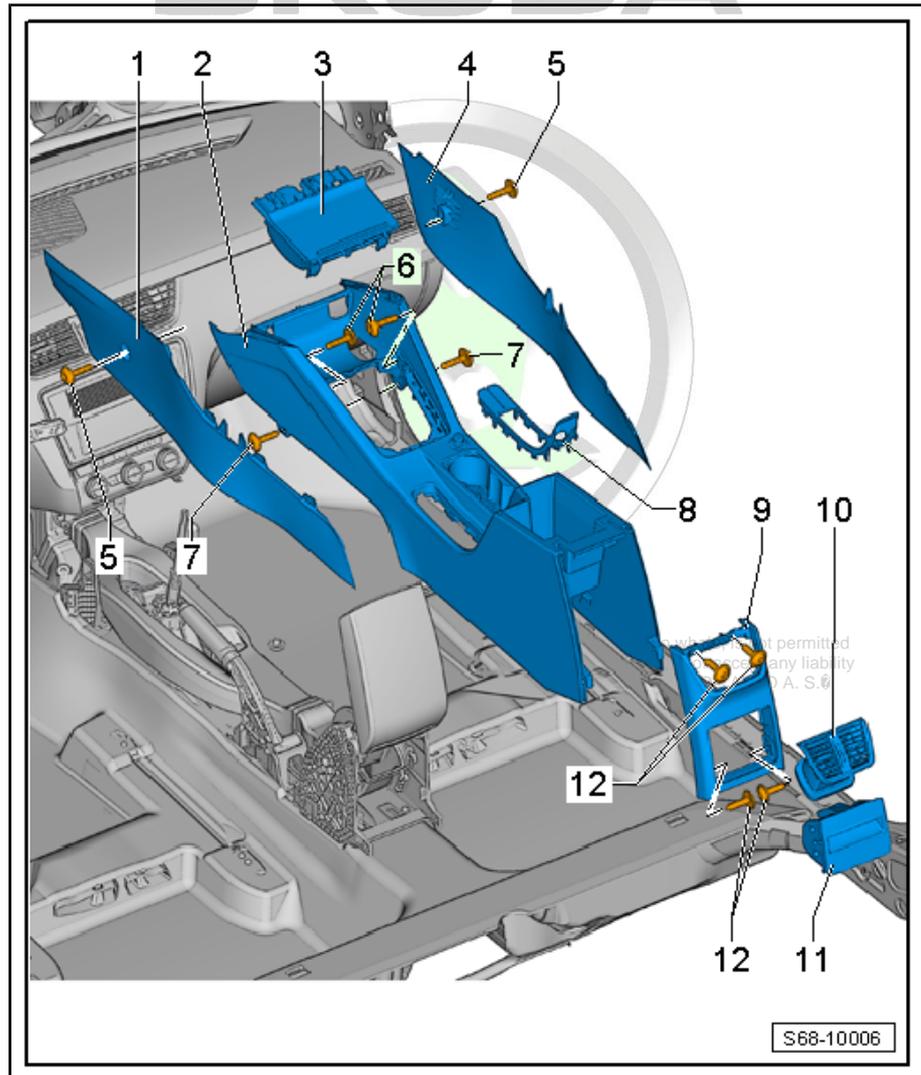
- Remove the complete rear storage tray/ash tray - 2 - thus removing the cable for the light.
- Remove the switch for the rear seat heater ⇒ Electric system ; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove the socket housing for the inverter.
- Undo the screw - 1 - for the rear support - 2 - and remove the support in - direction of arrow - towards the rear.



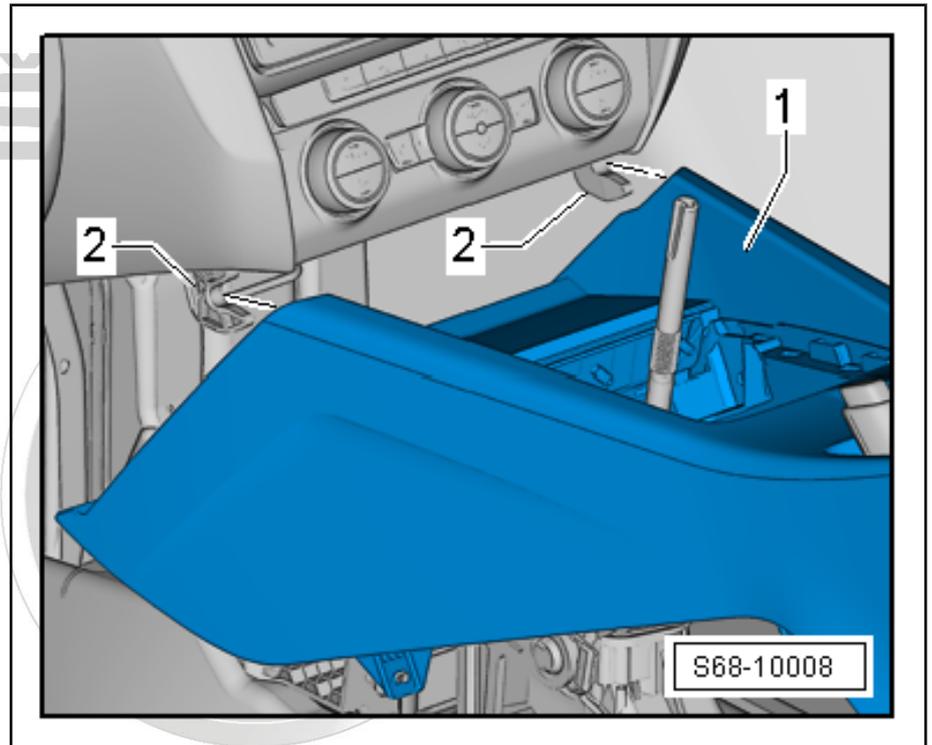
- Remove the detention ring and undo the socket (230 V) from the rear support ⇒ Electrical system - general information; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Unscrew the screw - 5 - for the trim panel central console in the footwell and detach both trim panels by moving them downwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Unscrew screws - 7 -.
- Unclip the trim panel for the transmission cover and remove
⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 .
- Unscrew screws - 6 -.
- If the console is paired with the Phonebox, disconnect the
aerial ⇒ Electrical system - general information; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Partly raise the rear central console, disconnect the plug connection to the cigar lighter (12 V socket) ⇒ Electrical system -
general information ; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Apply handbrake fully.
- Unclip the collar for the handbrake - 8 - from the central console.
- Tilt the central console - 1 - rear upwards and unclip out of the holders for the dash panel - 2 - by pulling it towards the rear.

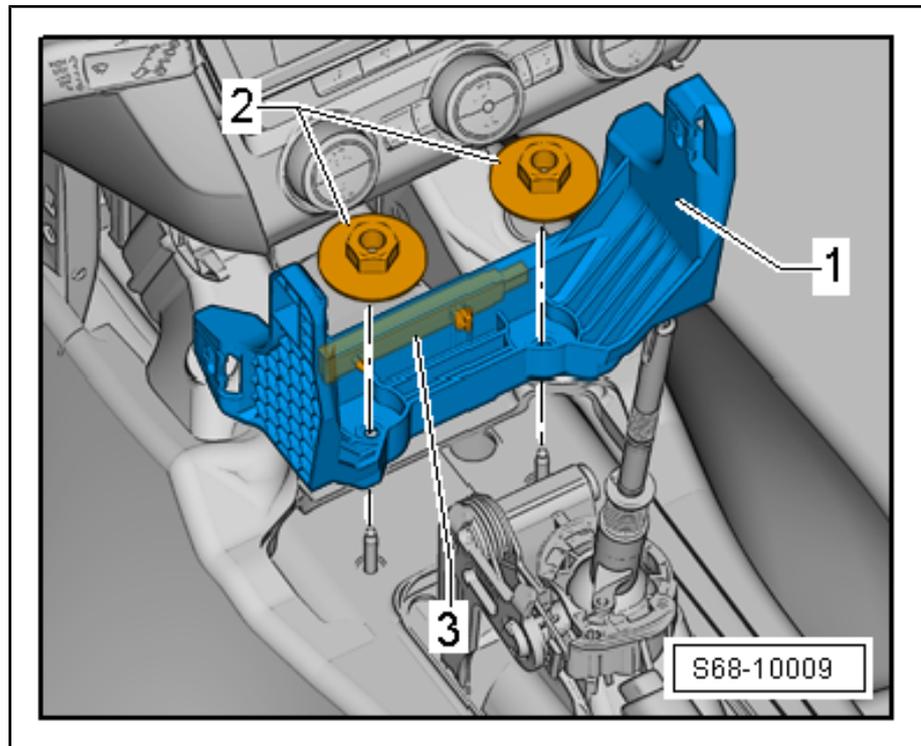


- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©
- If the console has a stowage compartment with cover, disconnect the plug connection for the front glovebox light → Electrical system - general information; Rep. gr. 96 .
 - Remove centre console from vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2.2.4 Removing and installing the bracket of the centre console



- Removing the centre console ⇒ [page 271](#) .
- Remove nuts (Pos. 2).
- Where fitted, unclip the clips for the Kessy aerial - 3 - ⇒ Electrical system - general information ; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove the bracket (Pos. 1) from the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2.3 Removing and installing the armrest

Removing:

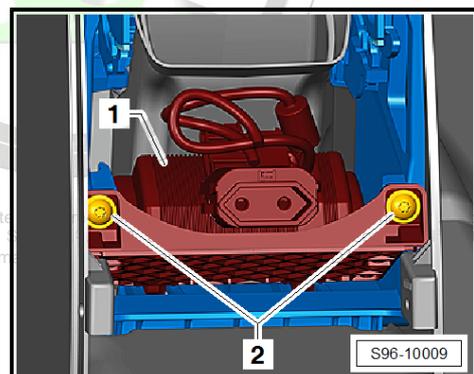
- Removing the centre console ⇒ [page 271](#) .

Vehicle with inverter 230 V :

- Unscrew the screws - 2 -, disconnect the plug connection and remove the inverter - 1 - ⇒ Electrical system - information ; Rep. gr. 96 .

Continued for all vehicles:

- Unscrew screws -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted without the need for permission, unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. with respect to the correctness of information.

- Remove armrest - 1 -.

Installing:

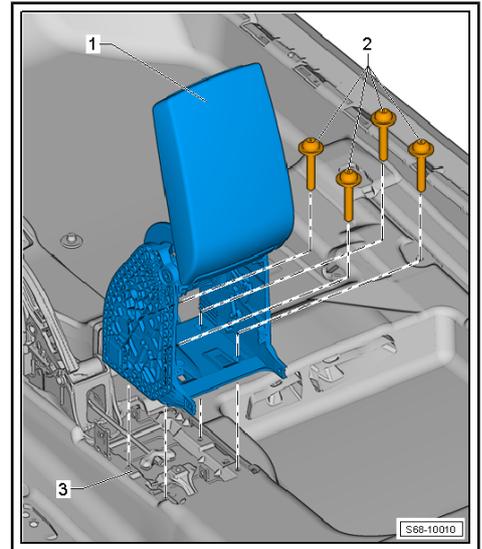
- Mount the armrest - 1 - and partially tighten the screws - 2 -.
- Insert the central console but do not install the securing bolts yet => [page 271](#) .
- Press the armrest together with the central console and tighten the rear screws - 2 - for the armrest (2.3 Nm).
- Lift the central console and tighten the front screws - 2 - for the armrest.

Vehicle with inverter 230 V :

- Plug the plug connection for the inverter and secure the inverter with screws (1.5 Nm) => Electrical system - general information ; Rep. gr. 96 .

Continued for all vehicles:

- End installation of the central console => [page 271](#) .



2.4 Removing and installing the sun visor

Summary of components of sun visor:

- 1 - Mounting bracket for right sun visor
- 2 - Disassemble cap for mounting bracket for sun visor
- 3 - Sun visor
- 4 - Securing clip for mounting bracket for sun visor left
- 5 - Caps for mounting bracket for sun visor left



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. 2013

**Remove right holder:**

- Unclip sun visor (Pos. 3) from mounting bracket.
- Push out the cap (Pos. 2) thereby unlocking the expansion clips of the mounting bracket.
- Swivel the holder out of the roof reinforcement.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Remove left holder:

- Unclip caps (Pos. 5).
- Unlock the securing clamps for example by using a pair of pliers with longer jaws (Pos. 4). The clamps are turned by 90°.
- Swivel the left holder out of the roof reinforcement and remove together with the visor.

Installing:

- Clip the holder into the opening of the roof reinforcement.
- Make sure that the clamps are properly secured.
- Clip in caps (Pos. 5).

**Note**

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

SKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

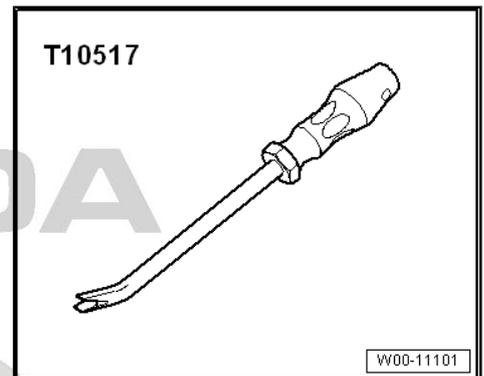
3 Recessed handles

3.1 Removing and installing the recessed handles of the roof

Removing:

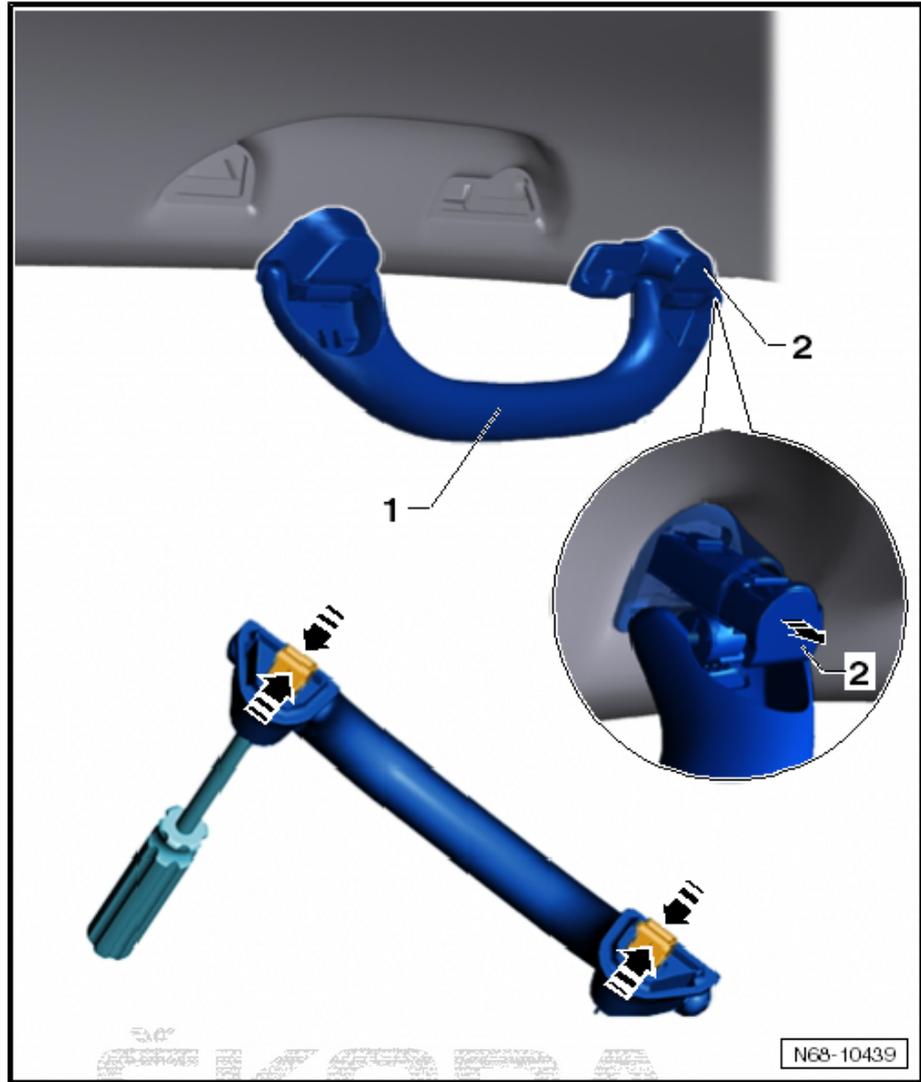
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release tool - T10517-



- Fold down the recessed handle - 1 - and remove both spreader clips - 2 - in -direction of arrow-.
- Unlock the brackets -arrows- with unlocking tool - T10517- and remove the recessed handles from the mounts.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®



Installing:

- Press the recessed handle -1- into openings until the mounts audibly click into place.
- Press in the spreader clips -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

69 – Passenger protection

1 Inspect seat belts



WARNING

The seat belt system must be inspected systematically after every accident! If one of the inspection points reveals any damage inform the customer that the seat belts must be replaced.

Inspection points:

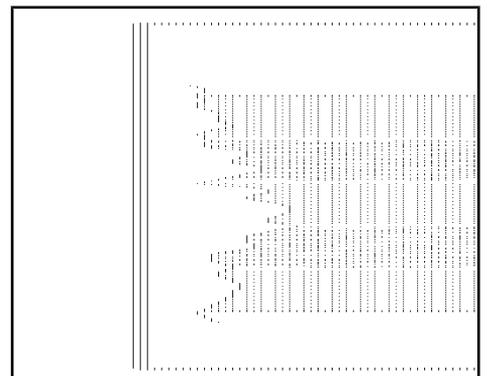
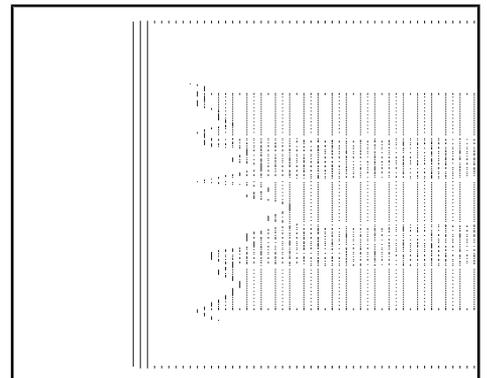
- ◆ Check seat belt.
- ◆ Check inertia reel - locking mechanism.
- ◆ Seat belt buckle - visual inspection
- ◆ Seat belt buckle - functional check
- ◆ Check deflection fittings and buckle latch
- ◆ Check fixing parts and fixing points.

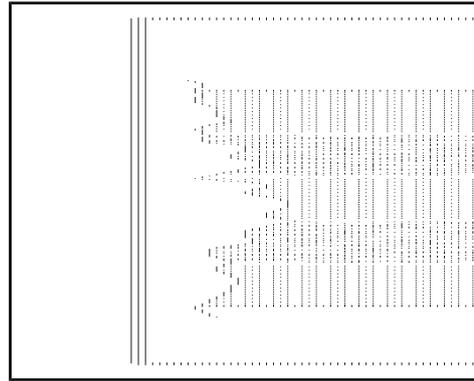
1.1 Inspection points

1.1.1 Checking the seat belt

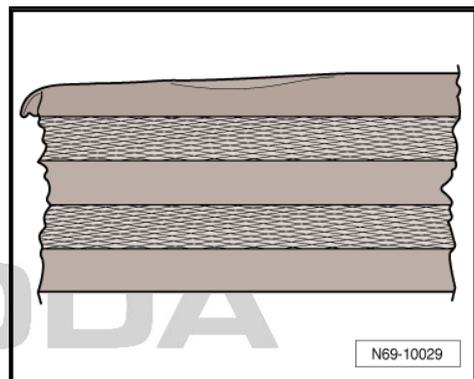
- Completely unreel the seat belt from the automatic belt retractor or from the lap belt adjusting strip.
- Check the seat belt for dirt, if necessary wash it with mild soapy water ⇒ Owner's manual .

ŠKODA





- If damage is detected (case 1 and 2) on a vehicle which has been involved in an accident (as shown below) - replace the seat belt together with the belt buckle.
- If damage is detected on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, as shown under point 1, 2, 3 and/or 4, it is only necessary to exchange the damaged seat belt.
- Seat belt cut, torn or chafed.
- Torn fraying on the edge of the belt.
- Cigarette burns.
- Belt edge deformed or warped.



1.1.2 Checking the inertia reel - locking mechanism

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

- ◆ The first locking function is activated when the belt is drawn rapidly out of the automatic belt retractor (belt withdrawal acceleration).

Inspection:

- Draw the seat belt out of the automatic belt retractor with a sudden sharp pull.
- No locking effect - replace seat belt together with buckle.
- First check whether the belt feeds out and retracts smoothly, and whether the position of the inertia reel has changed.
- The second locking function is activated by a change in the vehicle's motion (vehicle-dependent locking function). Thus, the vehicle must be moved on a level surface.

Inspection:

- Put on seat belt.
- Accelerate to 20 km/h and perform a full brake with the brake pedal.
- If the locking mechanism does not lock the belt when the brakes are applied, replace the seat belt together with the buckle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



WARNING

For safety reasons, carry out this test on a section of road with no traffic so as not to endanger other road users.

1.1.3 Seat belt buckle - visual inspection

- Check belt buckle for fractures and flaking.
- In case of damage, the seat belt and the belt buckle must be replaced.

1.1.4 Seat belt buckle - functional check

Checking seat belt buckle:

- Insert buckle latch in the belt buckle until there is an audible click. Check whether the locking mechanism engages, by tugging forcefully on the seat belt.
- If the buckle latch fails to lock into the buckle even once out of at least five tests, replace the seat belt together with the buckle.

Check buckle release:

- Release seat belt by pressing the seat belt buckle button.
- If the belt is loose, the latch must eject independently from the belt buckle.
- Test at least 5 times. If the buckle latch fails to eject even once, replace the seat belt together with the buckle.



WARNING

Never use lubricants to eliminate noises or to smoothen the operation of the buttons on seat buckles.

1.1.5 Check deflection fittings and buckle latch

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability.

When the belt system is burdened (seat belt attached in an accident) plastic-coated fittings will display fine parallel score marks. (Normal wear and tear due to frequent use is recognisable by smooth, even wear, without scoring.)

- Check the plastic for deformation, flaking and cracking.
- In the event of scoring and/or damage replace seat belt together with buckle.

1.1.6 Checking fixings and fixing points

- ◆ Buckle tongue deformed (stretched).
- ◆ Fixing points (seat, pillar, underfloor) warped, or thread damaged.
- If the parts are damaged replace seat belt together with buckle.
- Replace fixing points.



Note

If there is damage not due to an accident, for example normal wear and tear, it is only necessary to replace the damaged part.



1.2 Special instructions for the belt tensioner



WARNING

- ◆ *The open end of a belt tensioner must never be pointed towards people.*
- ◆ *Handle the seat belt tensioner units with great care when removing and installing. A high risk and injury potential exists through rough improper handling of seat belt tensioner units.*
- ◆ *When connecting the seat belt tensioner units, all mechanical parts including the parts of the three point seat belt, must be correctly secured. If it is not possible to connect the seat belt tensioner unit because there is not enough space, the seat belt must be fully rolled up before connecting. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if further safety measures are observed and respected. These include mainly disconnecting the battery and the electrostatic discharge of the mechanic before connecting the seat belt tensioner unit.*
- ◆ *Depending on the accident, it may be possible that the belt tensioner was ignited, the belt force limiter, however, was NOT ignited. These components are handled in the same way as non-ignited components!*
- ◆ *The control unit for the airbag can be used repeatedly after activating the belt tensioner, but only up to 3 times
⇒ [page 339](#) .*



Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted
 ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability
 for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

1.3 Storage, transport and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation and actuator units (pyrotechnical components)



WARNING

- ◆ *The storage is subject to the respective national legislation.*
- ◆ *The transport is subject to national and international legislation, in which packaging, marking, labeling, and accompanying documents are regulated in detail.*
- ◆ *Non-ignited pyrotechnical components must be discarded in the original packaging in compliance with the applicable disposal procedure according to the national legislation! In case you have any questions, please contact your importer.*
- ◆ *Only fully ignited pyrotechnical components may be disposed of as industrial waste.*

2 Seat belts

2.1 Summary of components - three-point seatbelt front

1 - Screw

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt
- 40 Nm

2 - Belt end fitting

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 298](#) .

3 - Screws

- 4.5 Nm

4 - Front belt guide

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- During installation, note the correct fitting position.

5 - Screw

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
- 40 Nm

6 - Guide deflection fitting

- After tightening the bolt, it should be able to move freely.

7 - Screw

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
- 20 Nm

8 - Seat belt height adjuster

- removing and installing ⇒ [page 299](#)
- always replace after activating the belt tensioner

9 - Automatic belt retractor

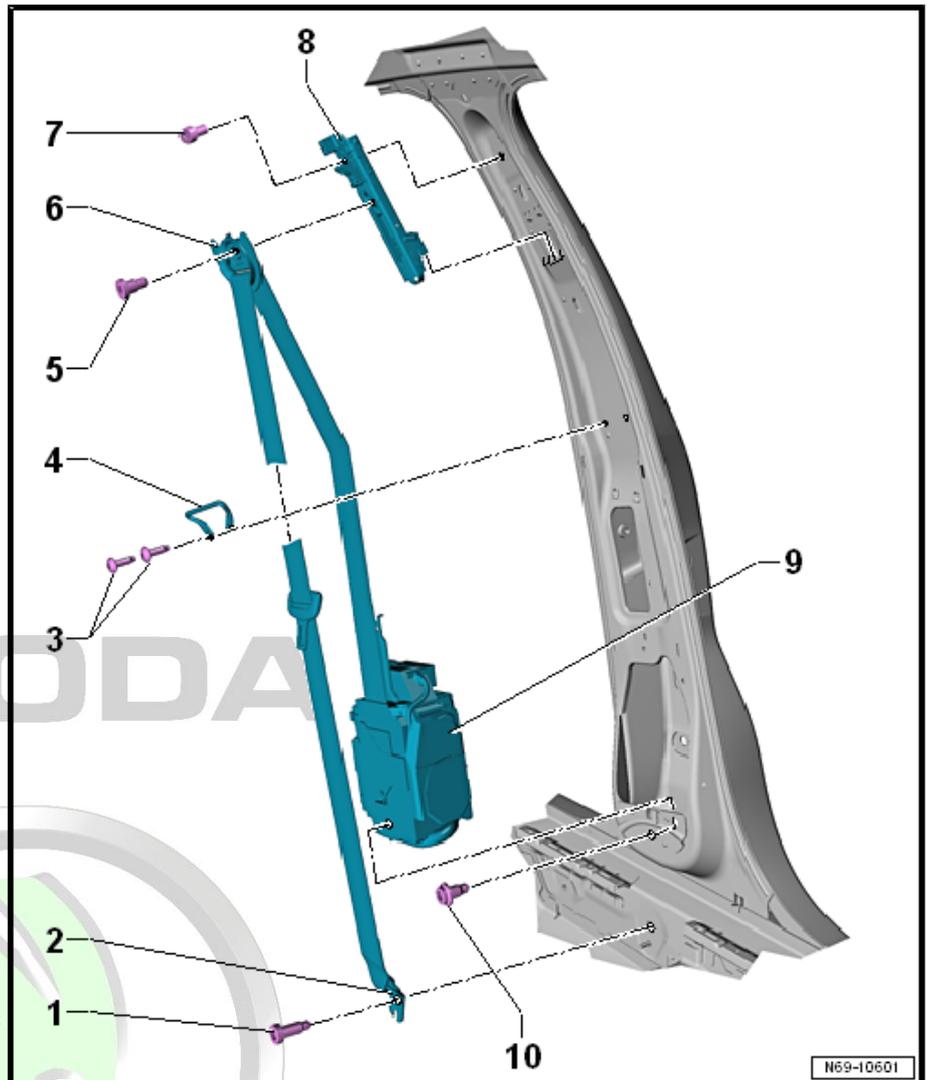
- Driver's side: with ignition 1 for belt tensioner driver's side and control unit for front left tensioner control unit .
- Front passenger side: with ignition 1 for belt tensioner front passenger side and control unit for front right belt tensioner .

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 293](#)

- With the Pre-Crash Basic (PCB) function- pre-tensioning reversible seatbelts.

10 - Screw

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
- 40 Nm





2.2 Summary of components - rear outer three-point seat belt

2.2.1 Summary of components - rear outer three-point seat belt, without belt tensioner

1 - Automatic belt retractor

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 295](#) .

2 - Screw

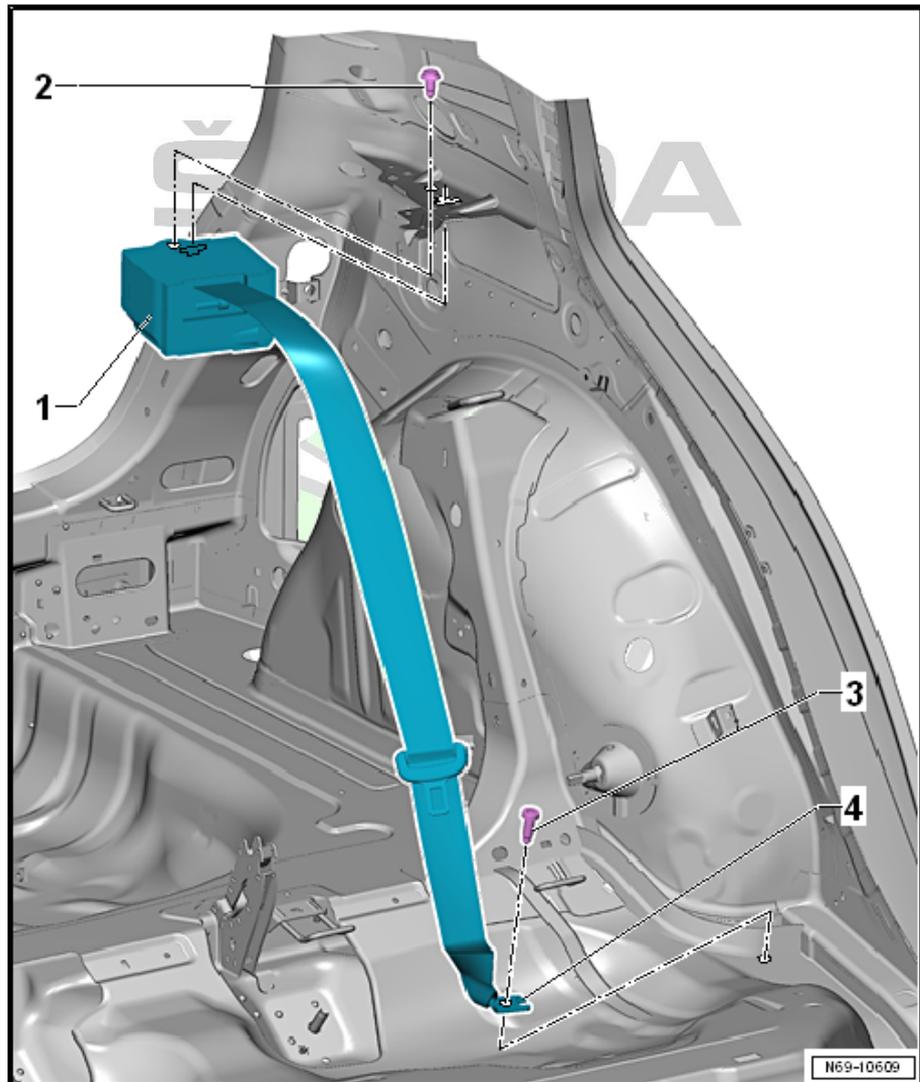
- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
- 40 Nm

3 - Screw

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
- 40 Nm

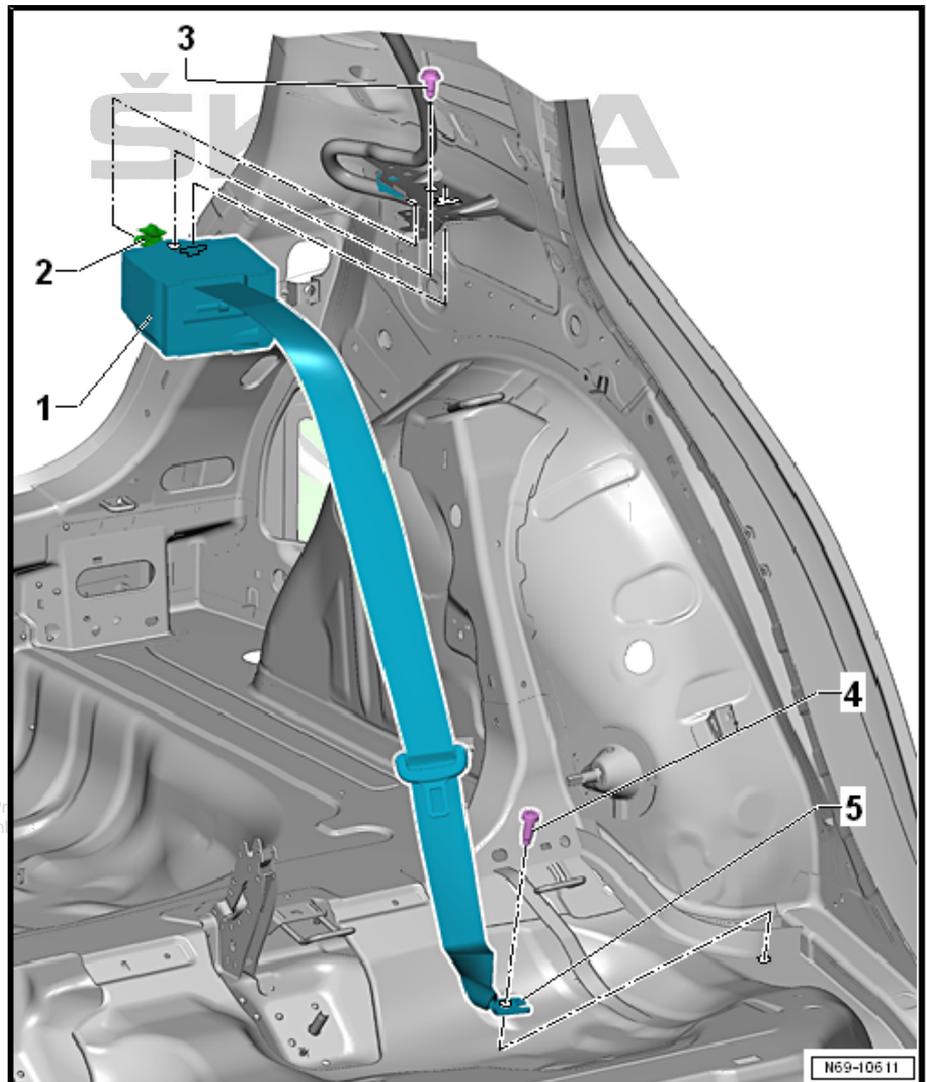
4 - Remove rear outer belt end fitting

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 299](#) .



2.2.2 Summary of components - rear outer three-point seat belt, with belt tensioner

- 1 - Automatic belt retractor
 - ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 296](#) .
- 2 - Wiring loom
- 3 - Screw
 - ❑ After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
 - ❑ 40 Nm
- 4 - Screw
 - ❑ After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
 - ❑ 40 Nm
- 5 - Remove rear outer belt end fitting
 - ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 299](#) .





2.3 Summary of components - rear middle three-point seat belt

1 - Belt buckle

- With belt switch at rear on front passenger side - E259- .
- Removing and installing => [page 302](#) .
- Always replace after activating the belt tensioner with the seatbelt fastened.
- Must rest against the stop when the nuts are tightened.

2 - Nut

- Tightening torque: 40 Nm.

3 - Nut

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace nuts.
- Tightening torque: 40 Nm.

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- Removing and installing => [page 297](#) .

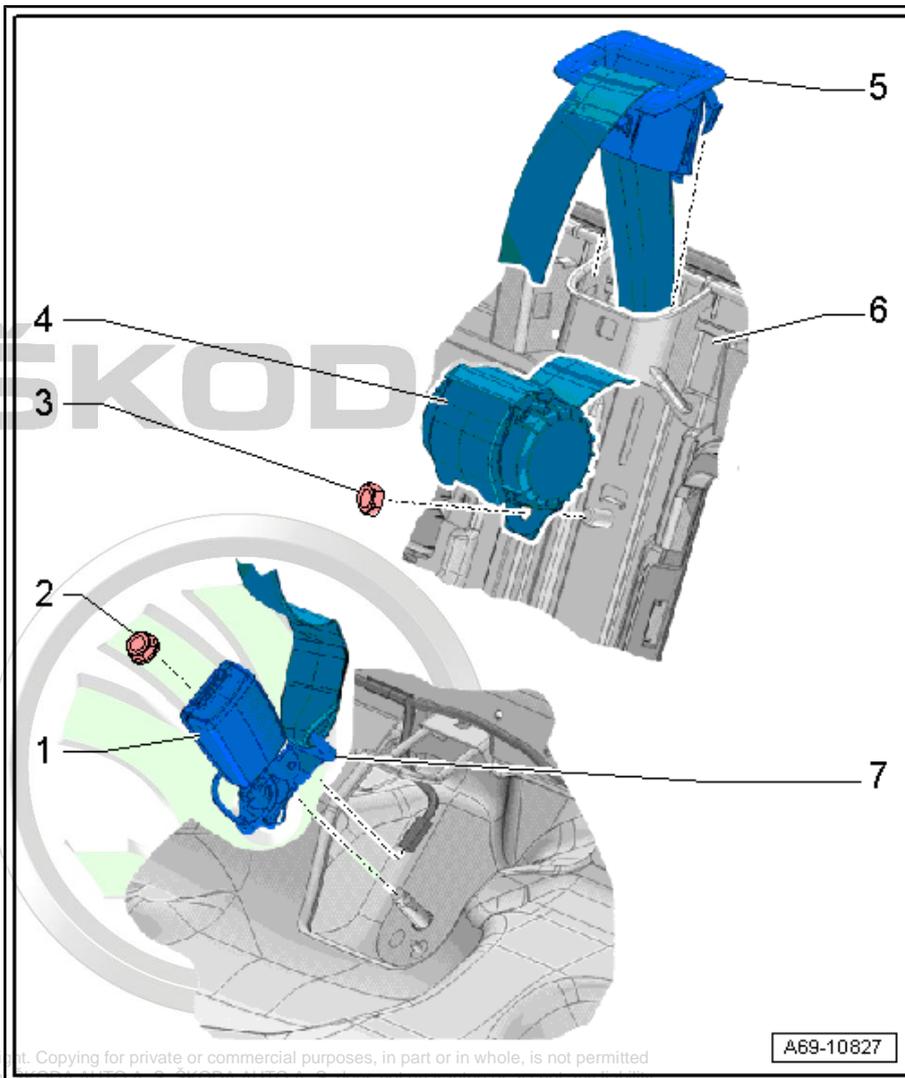
5 - Rear middle belt guide

- When damaged, replace the entire belt guide.
- When replacing, always press the 2 locking bolts towards the inside and remove the belt guide.
- When fitting, press until you hear it lock into place.

6 - Rear seat backrest

7 - Rear middle belt end fitting

- Removing and installing => [page 302](#) .



2.4 Summary of components - belt buckle front

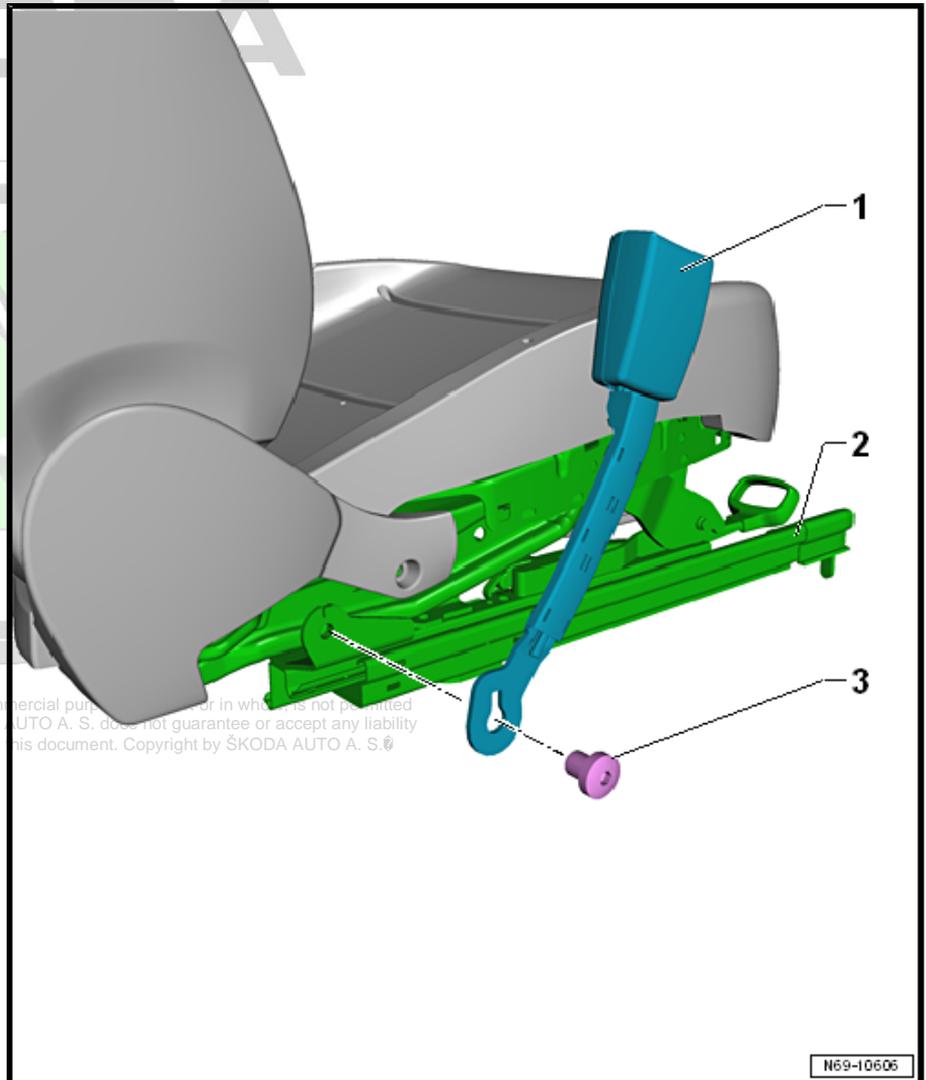
1 - Front belt buckle

2 - Front seat

- Driver side with driver side belt buckle .
- Driver side with front passenger side belt buckle .
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Always replace after activating the belt tensioner with the seatbelt fastened.

3 - Screw

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace the bolt.
- 40 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes or in which this is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



2.5 Summary of components - belt buckle rear

1 - Left double belt buckle

- With belt switch at rear driver's side .
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Always replace after activating the belt tensioner with the seatbelt fastened.
- During installation, press the belt buckle against the stop.
- Must rest against the stop.

2 - Middle belt buckle

- With belt switch rear middle .
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Always replace after activating the belt tensioner with the seatbelt fastened.
- During installation, press the belt buckle against the stop.
- Must rest against the stop.

3 - Right belt buckle with rear middle belt end fitting

- With belt switch at rear on front passenger side .
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Always replace after activating the belt tensioner with the seatbelt fastened.
- Must rest against the stop when the nuts are tightened.

4 - Nut

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace.
- 40 Nm

5 - Plug connection

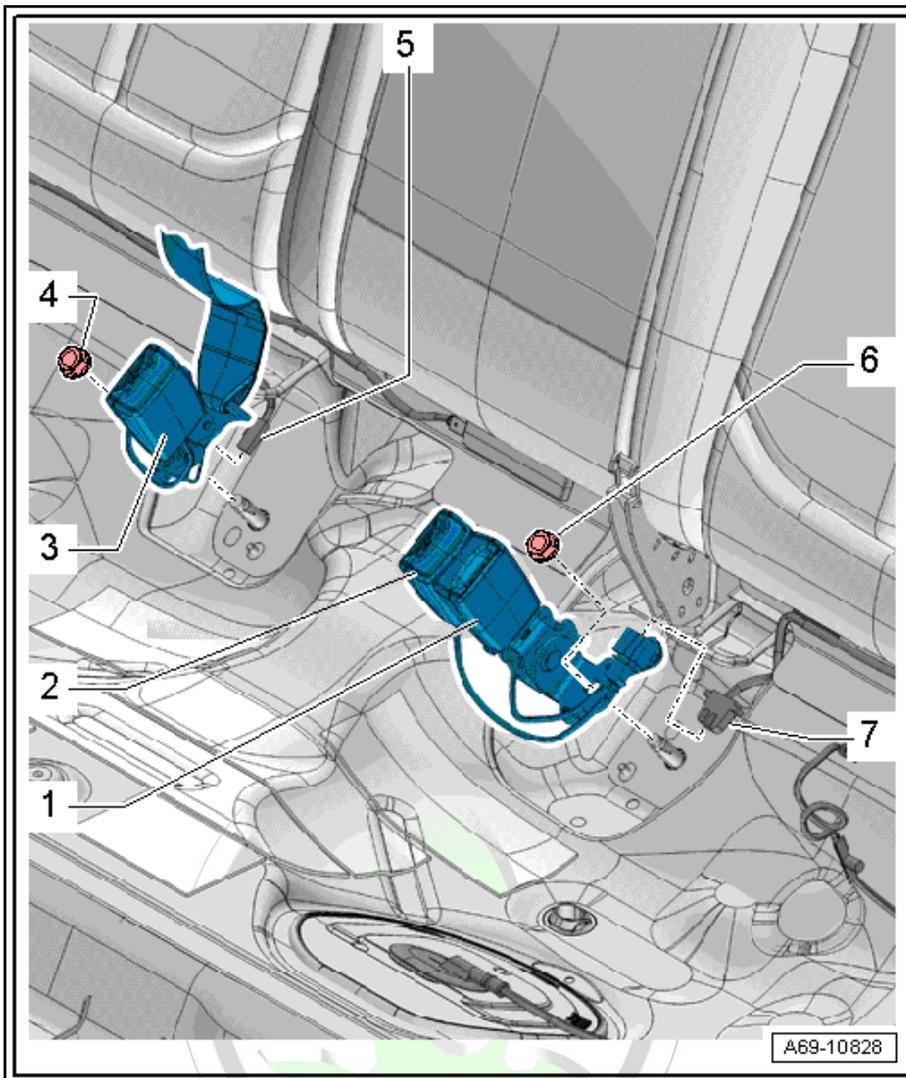
- For rear belt switch front passenger side .

6 - Nut

- After an accident with the seat belt fastened, replace.
- 40 Nm

7 - Plug connection

- For rear belt switch driver's side and rear belt switch .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

2.6 Removing and installing the front three-point seat belt

Removing:



WARNING

When working on the seatbelts, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

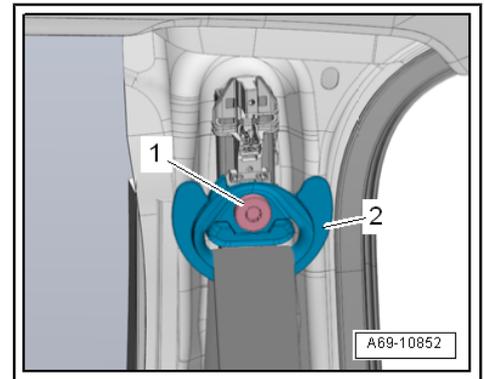
Observe the special instructions for the belt tensioner ⇒ [page 286](#) .

- Disconnect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .
- Remove the trim panels of the B pillars ⇒ [page 368](#) .
- Remove front belt end fitting ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- Remove front belt guide ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- Unscrew screw -1-.
- Remove guide deflection fitting -2- with seat belt.



WARNING

When electrostatic discharges occur, there is a risk of the belt tensioners being activated unintentionally. Therefore, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically before separating the ignition and earth lead. This occurs, for example, by briefly touching the body or the door closing wedge.



ŠKODA





- Unlock the plug fuse with a small screwdriver - arrow -, disconnect the plug connection for ignition 1 for the belt tensioner - Pos. 1 -.
- Unscrew screw - 3 - and remove automatic belt retractor - 2 - from the mount.

Installing:

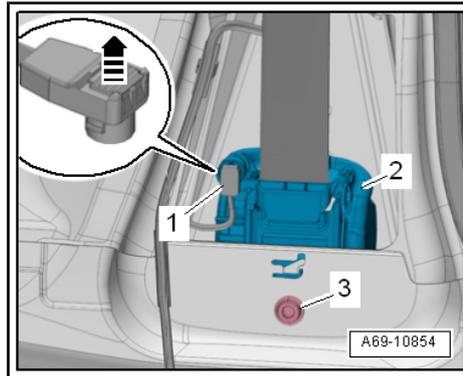


WARNING

When working on the seatbelts, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => page 304 .

Observe the special instructions for the belt tensioner => page 286 .

When electrostatic discharges occur, there is a risk of the belt tensioners being activated unintentionally. Therefore, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically before separating the ignition and earth lead. This occurs, for example, by briefly touching the body or the door closing wedge.



Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:

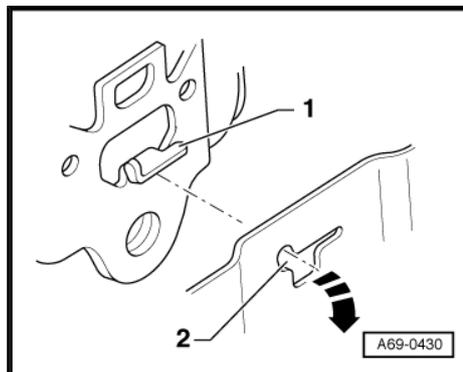
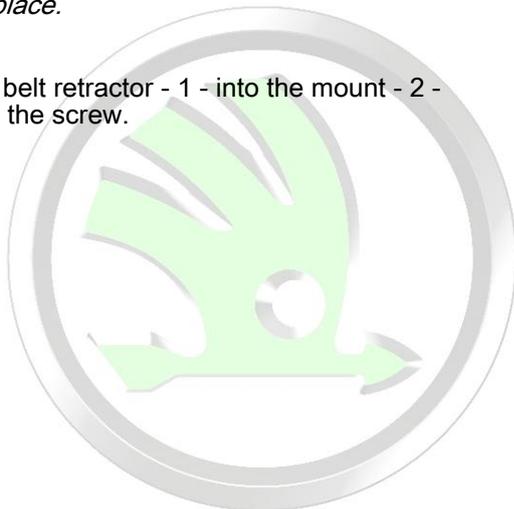
- When parts of the seatbelt are removed due to an accident, the seatbelt screws will need to be replaced.



Note

Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.

- Insert the automatic belt retractor - 1 - into the mount - 2 - - arrow - and tighten the screw.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Insert plug connection - 1 - at ignition - arrow A -.
- Press the plug fuse - 2 - towards the inside - arrow B - , the plug connection is plugged into the ignition as far as it can go and is locked into place at the same time.

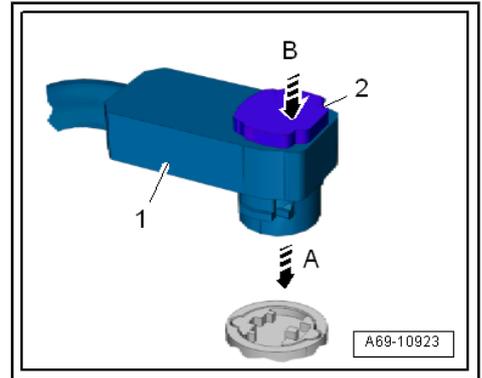


Caution

The battery must be connected to the terminals when the ignition is switched on. In case of improper repair of pyrotechnical components (such as airbag, belt tensioner) unwanted deployments may occur after connecting the battery.

Nobody should be inside the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

Work procedure for connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Disconnecting and re-connecting the battery .



Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.1 Summary of components - three-point seatbelt front”](#), page 287

2.7 Removing and installing the rear outer three-point seat belt

2.7.1 Removing and installing the rear outer three-point seat belt without belt tensioner

Removing:

- Remove the seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove the backrest depending on the vehicle equipment ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Remove top part of side luggage compartment trim panel ⇒ [page 388](#) .
- Remove outer rear belt end fitting ⇒ [page 299](#) .
- Unscrew screw -1-.
- Remove automatic belt retractor - 2 - from the mount.

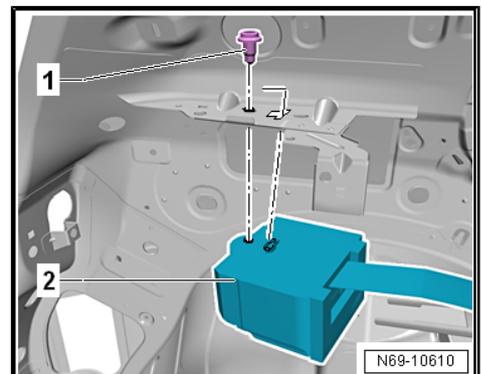
Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:

- When parts of the seatbelt are removed due to an accident, the seatbelt screws will need to be replaced.

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.2.1 Summary of components - rear outer three-point seat belt, without belt tensioner”](#), page 288





2.7.2 Removing and installing the rear outer three-point seat belt with belt tensioner

Removing:



WARNING

When working on the seatbelts, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

Observe the special instructions for the belt tensioner ⇒ [page 286](#) .

- Remove the seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove the backrest depending on the vehicle equipment ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Remove top part of side luggage compartment trim panel ⇒ [page 388](#) .
- Remove outer rear belt end fitting ⇒ [page 299](#) .



Caution

When electrostatic discharges occur, there is a risk of the airbag being activated unintentionally. Therefore, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically before separating the ignition and earth lead. This occurs, for example, by briefly touching the body or the door lock.

- Disconnect the electrical wiring harness and remove plug connection - 1 -.
- Remove screw -2-.
- Remove automatic belt retractor - 3 - from the mount.

Installing:

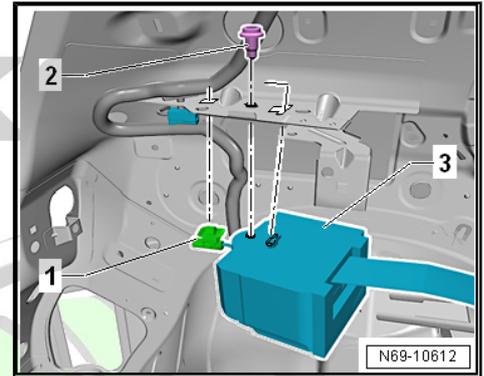


WARNING

When working on the seatbelts, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

Observe the special instructions for the belt tensioner ⇒ [page 286](#) .

When electrostatic discharges occur, there is a risk of the belt tensioners being activated unintentionally. Therefore, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically before separating the ignition and earth lead. This occurs, for example, by briefly touching the body or the door closing wedge.



Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:

- When parts of the seatbelt are removed due to an accident, the seatbelt screws will need to be replaced.

Copyrighted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Note

Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.



Caution

The battery must be connected to the terminals when the ignition is switched on. In case of improper repair of pyrotechnical components (such as airbag, belt tensioner) unwanted deployments may occur after connecting the battery.

Nobody should be inside the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

Work procedure for connecting the battery ⇒ [Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27](#) ; [Disconnecting and re-connecting the battery](#) .

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.2.2 Summary of components - rear outer three-point seat belt, with belt tensioner”](#), [page 289](#)

2.8 Removing and installing the rear middle three-point seat belt

Removing:

- Remove the seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove the rear middle belt buckle ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Remove the backrest ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Remove cover from backrest ⇒ [page 422](#) .

- Remove nut -1-.
- Suspend automatic belt retractor - 2 - and remove.
- Guide out the seat belt - 3 -.

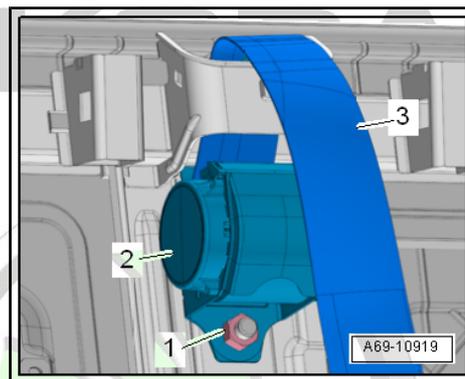
Installing:

- When parts of the seatbelt are removed due to an accident, the securing screws on the seatbelt will need to be replaced.
- Insert the three-point seat belt with anti-rotation mechanism into the mount and tighten the nut.

Further installation occurs in reverse order.

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.3 Summary of components - rear middle three-point seat belt", page 290](#)



2.9 Removing and installing front belt guide

Removing:

- Remove bottom trim panel of B pillar ⇒ [page 370](#) .
- Unscrew two screws -2- and remove the belt guide -1-.

Installing:

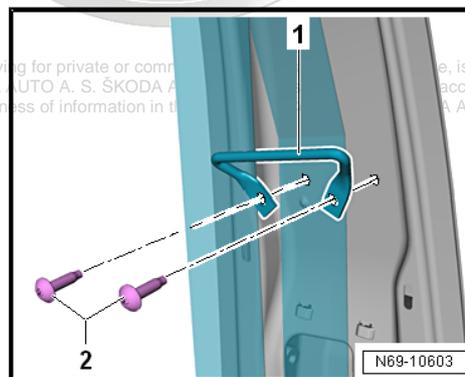
Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note

During installation, note the correct fitting position of the belt guide.

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.1 Summary of components - three-point seatbelt front", page 287](#)



2.10 Removing and installing front belt end fitting

Removing

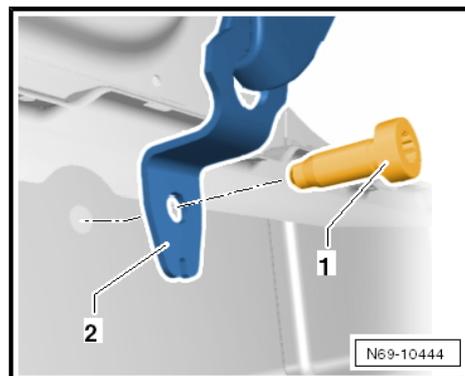
- The front seat is positioned as far forward as possible and at the highest seating position.
- Remove bottom trim panel of B pillar ⇒ [page 370](#) .
- Unscrew screw -1- and loosen the belt end fitting -2- from the body.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.1 Summary of components - three-point seatbelt front", page 287](#)



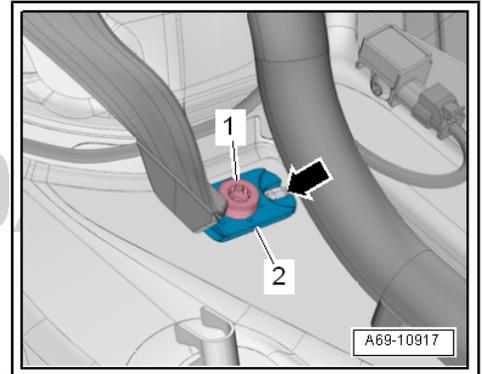
2.11 Removing and installing the outer rear belt end fitting

Removing:

- Remove the wheel house trim from the C pillar ⇒ [page 374](#) .
- Unscrew the screw - 1 - from the belt end fitting - 2-.

Installing:

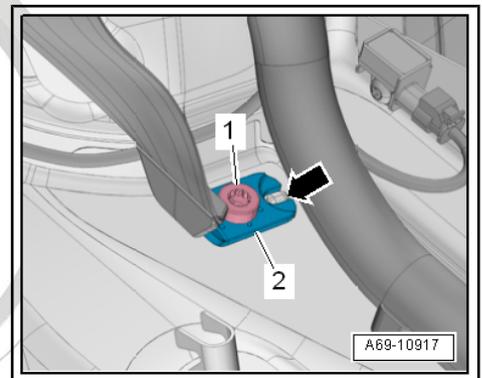
ŠKODA



- The anti-rotation mechanism - arrow - at the bottom plate must lie in the recess of the belt end fitting - 2 -.
- Tighten the belt end fitting - 2 - with the screw - 1 -.
- Attach the wheel house trim to the wheel house trim ⇒ [page 374](#) .

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.2 Summary of components - rear outer three-point seat belt”](#), [page 288](#)



2.12 Removing and installing the seat belt height adjustment

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Removing:

- Press the button for the seat belt height adjustment and adjust the slider for the seat belt height adjustment to the lowest position.
- Remove top trim panel of B pillar ⇒ [page 368](#) .
- Lay the top B-pillar trim panel with the retracted belt to the side.



- Unscrew screw -4-.
- Remove guide deflection fitting -1- with seat belt.
- Unscrew screw -3-.
- Remove the seat belt height adjustment - 2 - from the B-pillar upwards from the B pillar.

Installing:

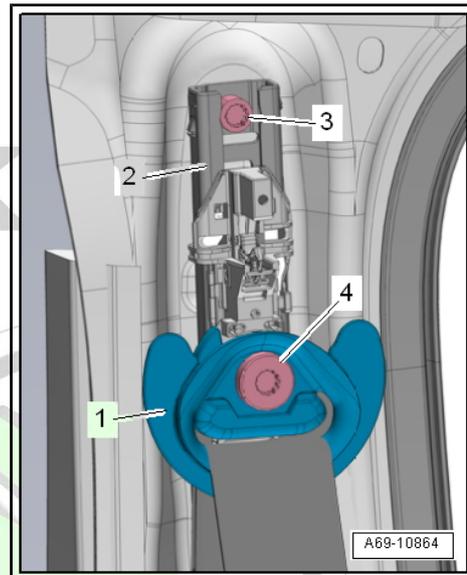
Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:

- When parts of the seatbelt are removed due to an accident, the seatbelt screws will need to be replaced.



Note

- ◆ *The seat belt height adjustment is provided as a spare part with slider seat belt height adjustment in the lowest locking position (fitting position).*
- ◆ *If the removed seat belt height adjustment units are reinstalled, they must be put into the deepest position (fitting position).*
- Suspend the seat belt height adjustment - 2 - in the B pillar.
- Tighten screw -3-.
- Install the guide deflection fitting -1- and tighten the screw -4-.

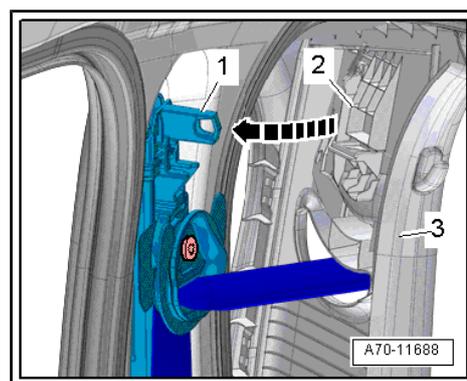


Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

The button for seat belt height adjustment must not be pressed when installing the B pillar trim.

- Firstly, insert the top B pillar trim panel - 3 - upwards.
- The mount - 2 - of the slider part of the top B pillar trim panel must be locked in the locking pin - 1 - for the seat belt height adjustment - arrow -.
- Seat belt height adjustment as spare part: After installing the B pillar trim, press the slider upwards forcefully.
- This releases the equipment mounting for the seat belt height adjustment unit.
- Carry out a function test - the following functions must be met:
- The seat belt height adjustment must audibly click into place into each of 3 possible positions (in the highest position too).
- The button for the seat belt height adjustment must automatically return to the top position after being pressed irrespective of how.
- Guide deflection fitting must be able to move freely after the screw is tightened.



If one of the above functions is not met, check the fitting of the seat belt height adjustment- the seat belt height adjustment unit may need to be replaced.

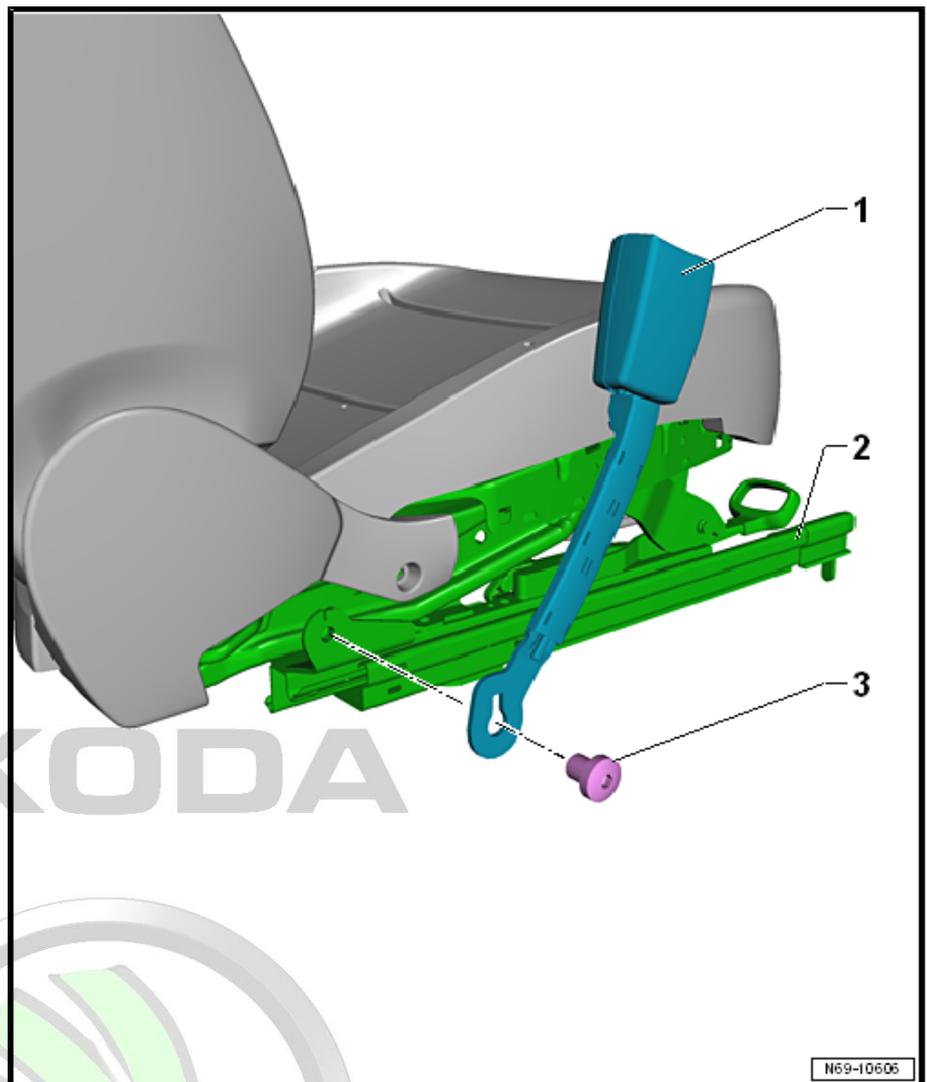
Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.1 Summary of components - three-point seatbelt front", page 287](#)

2.13 Removing and installing the front seat belt buckle

Removing:

- Remove front seat => [page 400](#) .
- Disconnect the plug connection for the belt buckle from the coupling station underneath the seat rack.
- Undo the electrical cable from the seat rack.
- Unscrew the screw - 3 -, remove belt buckle - 1 - from the seat - 2 -.



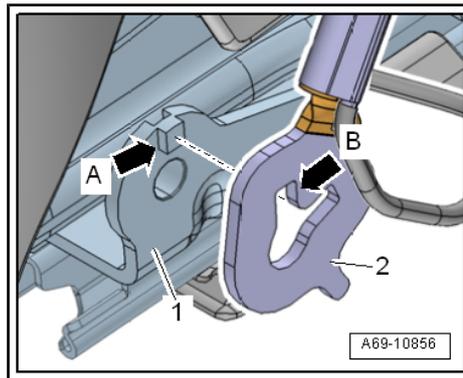
Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:

- Insert the belt buckle - 2 - so that the recess - arrow B - overlaps the peg - arrow A - on the seat rack - 1 -.

Tightening torques:

- ◆ => ["2.4 Summary of components - belt buckle front", page 291](#)



2.14 Removing and installing the rear seat belt buckle

Removing:

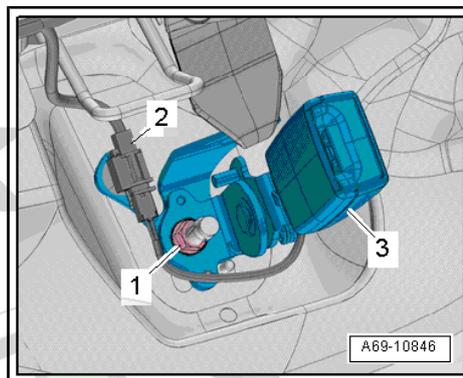
Right - belt buckle with belt end fitting:



Note

Belt buckle with belt end fitting is a component part of the rear middle seatbelt.

- Remove the seat bench => [page 412](#) .
- Disconnect the plug connection - 2 - for the belt switch.
- Remove nut -1-.
- Remove the belt buckle - 3 - with belt end fitting.



Left - double belt buckle:

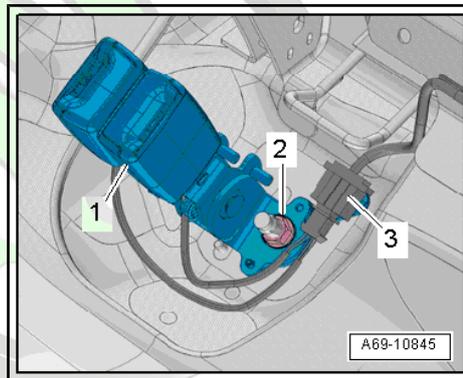
- Disconnect the plug connection - 3 - for the belt switch.
- Remove nut - 2 -.
- Remove the double belt buckle - 1 -.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Tightening torques:

- ◆ => ["2.5 Summary of components - belt buckle rear", page 292](#)

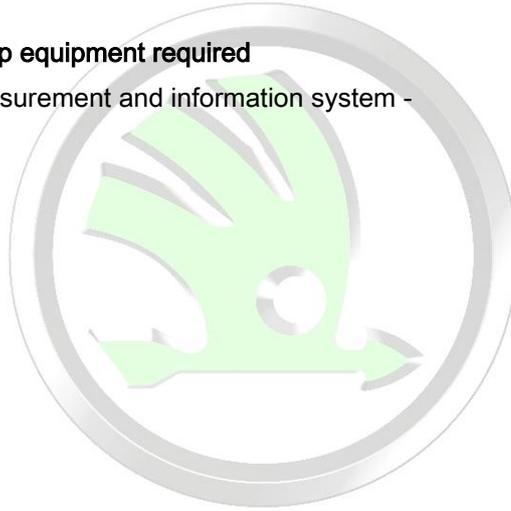


3 Airbags ŠKODA

3.1 Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnosis, measurement and information system - VAS/ODIS-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



3.2 Observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation and actuator units (pyrotechnical components)



WARNING

- ◆ *The fuel contained in pyrotechnical components is burned, which produces gases. Furthermore, certain embodiments contain compressed gas which is used for the gas production.*
- ◆ *This compressed gas is stored in a highly pressurised pressure gas tank.*
- ◆ *The ignition of pyrotechnical components is carried out by means of electrical/mechanical igniters.*
- ◆ *Inspection, removal and installation and repair work must only be carried out by properly qualified personnel.*
- ◆ *There are no change intervals for the airbag units.*
- ◆ *Under no circumstances use a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter for testing.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnical components should only be checked when installed and with a manufacturer-specified vehicle diagnosis, measurement and information system.*
- ◆ *When working on pyrotechnical components and on the airbag control unit - J234- , the earth strap of the battery must be disconnected once the ignition is switched on. Subsequently cover the negative terminal.*
- ◆ *After disconnecting the battery it is essential to wait 10 seconds.*
- ◆ *SWITCH ON the ignition before connecting the battery. Nobody should be in the vehicle when the battery is connected. Exception: vehicles with the battery located in the vehicle interior. In this case, you must not be in the range of influence of the airbags and seat belts.*
- ◆ *Wash your hands after touching the ignited pyrotechnical components of the restraint system.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnical components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnical components, which are damaged, must not be re-installed.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnical components, which have fallen on a hard surface, must not be re-installed.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components of the restraint system, for example, disconnecting the electrical plug connection, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically. The electrostatic discharge is achieved by touching grounded metal parts, for example, by briefly touching the door closing wedge.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnical components should be installed immediately after being removed from the transport container.*
- ◆ *If work is interrupted, place the pyrotechnical components back in the transport container.*
- ◆ *It is not permitted to leave the pyrotechnical components unattended.*

- ◆ *Pyrotechnical components should not be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar products.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnical components should not be exposed to temperatures above 100 °C, not even for short periods.*

3.3 Special instructions for driver and front passenger airbag



WARNING

- ◆ *When removed, driver and front passenger airbag units should be stored so that the padded side is facing upwards.*

When replacing the airbag units, it is absolutely essential to observe the following sequence:

- 1 - Remove old airbag unit and place down with the cushion side facing up.
- 2 - Take new airbag unit out of the transportation container and place down with the cushion side facing up.
- 3 - Immediately place the old airbag unit in the transportation container.
- 4 - Install the new airbag unit in the vehicle.

3.4 Additional safety instructions for side airbag

- ◆ On no account fit seat or protective seat covers which have not been approved for the use on seats with side airbags.
- ◆ The backrest upholstery must not be cut out in the area of the side airbag.
- ◆ When installing, the seam must run completely straight in the area of the side airbag.
- ◆ All the upholstery retaining clips must be replaced (metal and plastic retaining clips).
- ◆ When installing, all the upholstery retaining clips must be fitted on in the same place.
- ◆ In the event of damage to the cover (tears, burn holes etc.) in the area of the side airbag, always replace the cover for reasons of safety, otherwise the side airbag cannot properly be deployed.
- ◆ Repairs to the seat backrest cover in the area of the side airbag must not be carried out (because of the special thread and the precisely defined seam).
- ◆ After actuating the side airbag, the seat backrest upholstery must always be replaced.
- ◆ All the damaged components must be replaced after an accident. If there is no damage to the airbag unit, you can still use it.
- ◆ If the side airbag units are replaced, detach the sticker for the airbag number from the new side airbag unit and stick it over the old sticker on the seat pan.
- ◆ Do not prick in the area of the airbag seat occupation sensor front passenger side and in the cover of the seat occupation



detection mat with the upholstery needle or similar pointed objects.

3.5 Additional safety instructions for head airbag

- ◆ Before each installation, carry out a visual inspection of the trim panels for damage.
- ◆ Always replace damaged trim panels of pillars - never try to mend them.
- ◆ When installing, make sure the trim panels are firmly seated.
- ◆ When carrying out repairs behind the airbag, always remove the entire module.
- ◆ Handle head airbag units very carefully when removing and installing to rule out damage.
- ◆ Place the removed head airbag units into the transport container or on a clean, level surface with a cover underneath.
- ◆ After making repairs to the body, check the body in the region of the head airbag for welding splatter, deformations and abrasions (compare opposite sides).
- ◆ If the gas generator is NOT screwed on, hold it firmly during the whole work (transport, removal and installation, etc.).
- ◆ Never turn, wind, kink, throw, hurl, pull, suspend, crush, press, pinch or clamp the head airbag units.
- ◆ You may fold them when this does not cause any damage (especially the protective wrapper).

3.6 Safety instructions for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag

The crash sensors for side airbag respond to pressure change and must therefore be handled very carefully. Pay attention to the following points:

- ◆ Note the correct fitting position: Assemble only in the appropriate fitting position in the door.
- ◆ Protect the crash sensor against shocks and strikes. Do not use any crash sensors sender that have been dropped. Remove the crash sensor when carrying out body work repairs on the door.
- ◆ The crash sensor is adjusted to the volume of air inside the door: A deformation of the door which results in a reduction in the size of the air compartment in the door impairs the crash sensor.
- ◆ Avoid major contamination to the crash sensor. Do not use any compressed air around the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor from filing or drilling chips (for example when retrofitting door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity preservative or spray oil in the area of the crash sensor.
- ◆ Protect against heat and cold: Prevent the build-up of heat, e.g. during painting or other bodywork. The crash sensors may be exposed to cold of no more than -40 °C (for example in non-air conditioned aircraft cargo compartments).
- ◆ The crash sensor must be protected from moisture during storage and assembly work.

Ensure tightness of the door after the assembly for smooth operation of the crash sensor.

Observe the following points:

any reproduction, distribution or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- ◆ All components (for example, cover, loudspeaker, door trim panel) must be installed correctly.
- ◆ The retaining clips for the door trim panel seal the system. Replace the holding clamps when required.

3.7 Storage, transport and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation and actuator units (pyrotechnical components)



WARNING

- ◆ *The storage is subject to the respective national legislation.*
- ◆ *The transport is subject to national and international legislation, in which packaging, marking, labeling, and accompanying documents are regulated in detail.*
- ◆ *Non-ignited pyrotechnical components must be discarded in the original packaging in compliance with the applicable disposal procedure according to the national legislation! In case you have any questions, please contact your importer.*
- ◆ *Only fully ignited pyrotechnical components may be disposed of as industrial waste.*

Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

3.8 Replacement of airbag units following an accident



Note

"Compulsory registration before repair" - Note regulations regarding the deployment of airbag and non-deployment of airbag in the ⇒ Technical Service Handbook .

ElsaWin ⇒

Technical Service Handbook ⇒

Technical product information ⇒

Body/equipment ⇒

Operation ⇒

Occupant protection ⇒

Airbag fire accident (safety relevant inquiry-registration documents) ⇒

Systems

3.8.1 Accident with deployment of airbag

The following components must be exchanged after an accident with deployment of airbag:

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnosis, measurement and information system VAS/ODIS



The airbag control unit must be replaced:

- ◆ The control unit for the airbag can be used repeatedly after triggering of the airbag units, but only up to 3 times
⇒ [page 339](#)
- ◆ When the packaging was damaged
- ◆ If the tunnel is deformed within a range of up to 200 mm of the control unit

Always replace:

- ◆ all triggered airbag units
- ◆ ignition for battery interrupt

Additionally when triggering the front passenger's airbag:

- ◆ the dash panel
- ◆ deformed supports on front passenger's airbag unit (they are not allowed to form backwards)
- ◆ all sensors for the front airbag on the front of the vehicle
- ◆ The remaining lateral acceleration sensors when the attachment points are deformed in the area of the sensors

Additionally when triggering the driver's airbag:

- ◆ Restoring ring with slip ring
- ◆ all sensors for the front airbag on the front of the vehicle
- ◆ The remaining lateral acceleration sensors when the attachment points are deformed in the area of the sensors

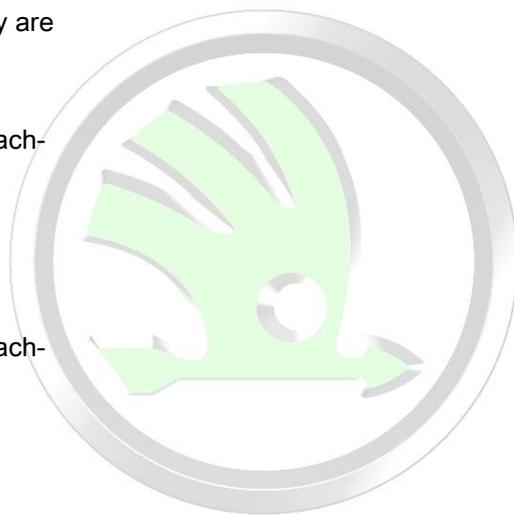
Additionally when triggering the side airbag:

- ◆ Pressure sensors on the triggered side
- ◆ Lateral acceleration sensors on the triggered side
- ◆ Cover
- ◆ when the seat backrest is folded up: padding on side (if installed)
- ◆ The remaining lateral acceleration sensors when the attachment points are deformed in the area of the sensors

Additionally:

- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with deployed seat belt tensioners
- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with deployed belt force limiters (depending on equipment)
- ◆ Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with triggered belt tensioners while seatbelt is fastened
- ◆ Seat belt height adjustment unit (mechanical and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with triggered seat belt tensioners while seatbelt is fastened

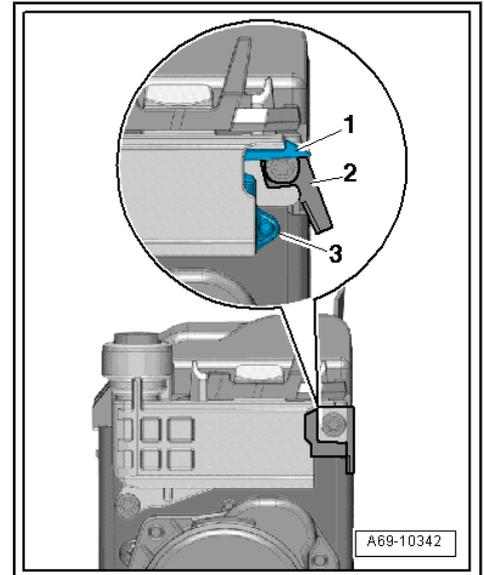
ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

 **Note**

- ◆ Triggered belt force limiters can be detected according to the following identifications:
 - ◆ The pin - 1 - and the peg - 3 - protrude from the housing of the belt force limiter at the automatic belt retractor.
 - ◆ The latch - 2 - is no longer vertical, but points at an angle to the outside.
- When parts of the seatbelt are removed due to an accident, the seatbelt screws will need to be replaced.
 - The following must always be replaced when necessary (visual inspection): all defective components.
 - After replacing the airbag units, stick the labels (tear-off strip only) onto the registration card and send it to the imported for registration.



3.8.2 Accident without deployment of airbag

- ◆ If no fault is indicated by the airbag warning light - K75- , it is not necessary to replace any parts of the airbag system. The seat belts must be checked separately.

3.8.3 Checking airbag fixing parts after an accident

Basically, all damaged fixing parts must be exchanged, no re-shaping or »making it fit« of the components is permissible.

Check the following components after each time an airbag is activated.

If a front passenger airbag was deployed:

- ◆ Central pipe for dash panel; the supports for the front passenger airbag and front passenger airbag unit must be installed free of stress. Otherwise the central pipe will need to be replaced.
- ◆ Check the storage tray in the dash panel for damage. Replace it when the storage tray is damaged in the dash panel.

If a driver's airbag was deployed:

- ◆ replace the steering wheel and place it together with the steering ring on a flat surface. The steering ring must lie on the full surface. Otherwise the steering wheel will need to be replaced.
- ◆ Check steering wheel for burn marks. If burn marks are present, the steering wheel must be replaced.

3.9 Overview of fitting locations - airbag



1 - Side airbag front passenger side

- With ignition for side airbag passenger side .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 319](#) .

2 - Head airbag

- With ignition for head airbag .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 323](#) .

3 - Side airbag rear front passenger side

- With ignition for side airbag rear passenger side .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 321](#) .

4 - Side airbag driver's side front

- With ignition for side airbag driver's side .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 319](#) .

5 - Head airbag driver's side

- With ignition for head airbag driver's side .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 323](#) .

6 - Side airbag rear driver's side

- With ignition for side airbag rear driver's side .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 321](#) .

7 - Airbag on driver side

- With ignition for airbag driver's side .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 312](#) .

8 - Steering wheel

- Summary of components ⇒ [page 311](#) .

9 - Mounting bracket for knee airbag driver's side

- Summary of components ⇒ Chassis, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 .

10 - Knee airbag driver's side

- With ignition for knee airbag driver's side .
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 327](#) .

11 - Airbag control unit - J234-

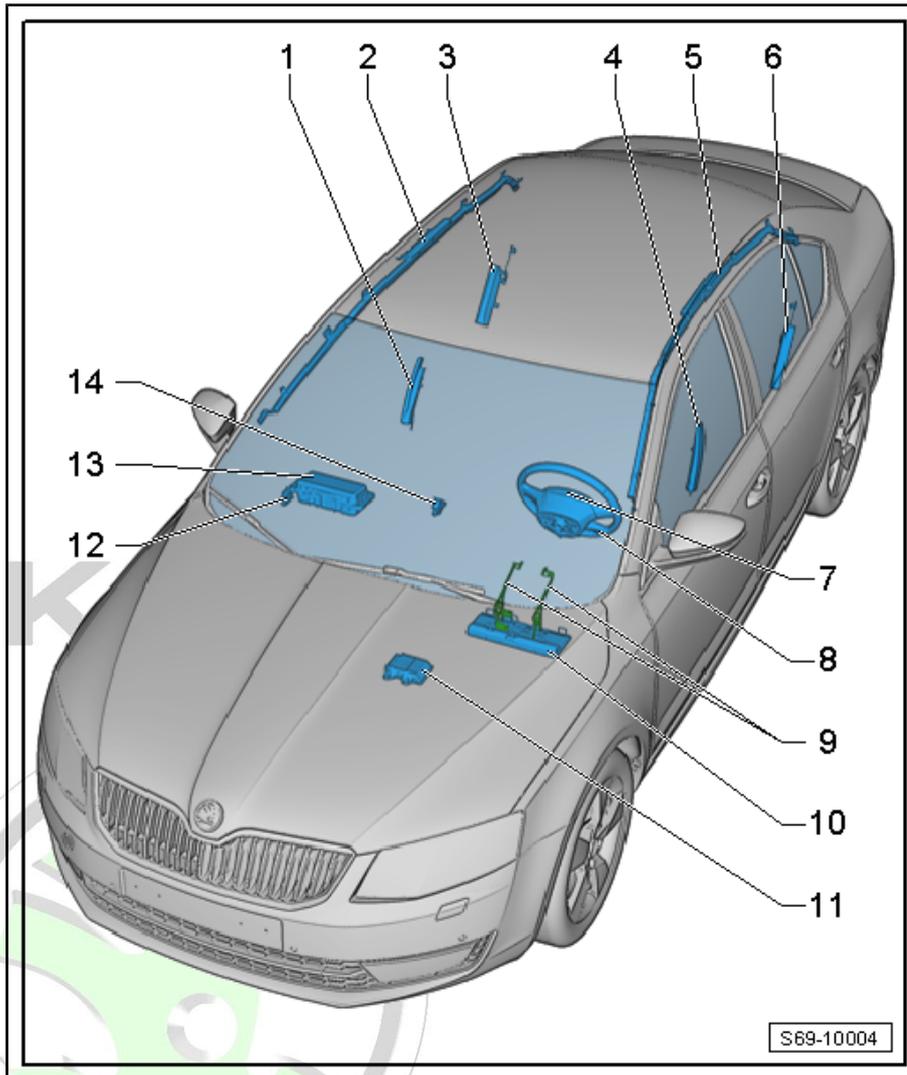
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 339](#) .

12 - Key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger side airbag

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 318](#) .

13 - Airbag front passenger side

- With ignition 1 for airbag front passenger side .
- Blocking and activation via key switch for deactivation of front passenger side airbag possible.
- Summary of components ⇒ [page 315](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

14 - Warning light for airbag front passenger side off

- Not replaceable individually.
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96 .

3.10 Summary of components of steering wheel

1 - Steering wheel

Removing:

- Removing the driver's airbag unit
⇒ [page 313](#) .
- Position the steering wheel to centre position (wheels in straight-ahead position).
- Unscrew screw -2-.
- Mark the opposite position of the steering wheel and the shaft -4- with a line, as long as this position is not factory-marked.
- Remove the steering wheel from the steering column.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

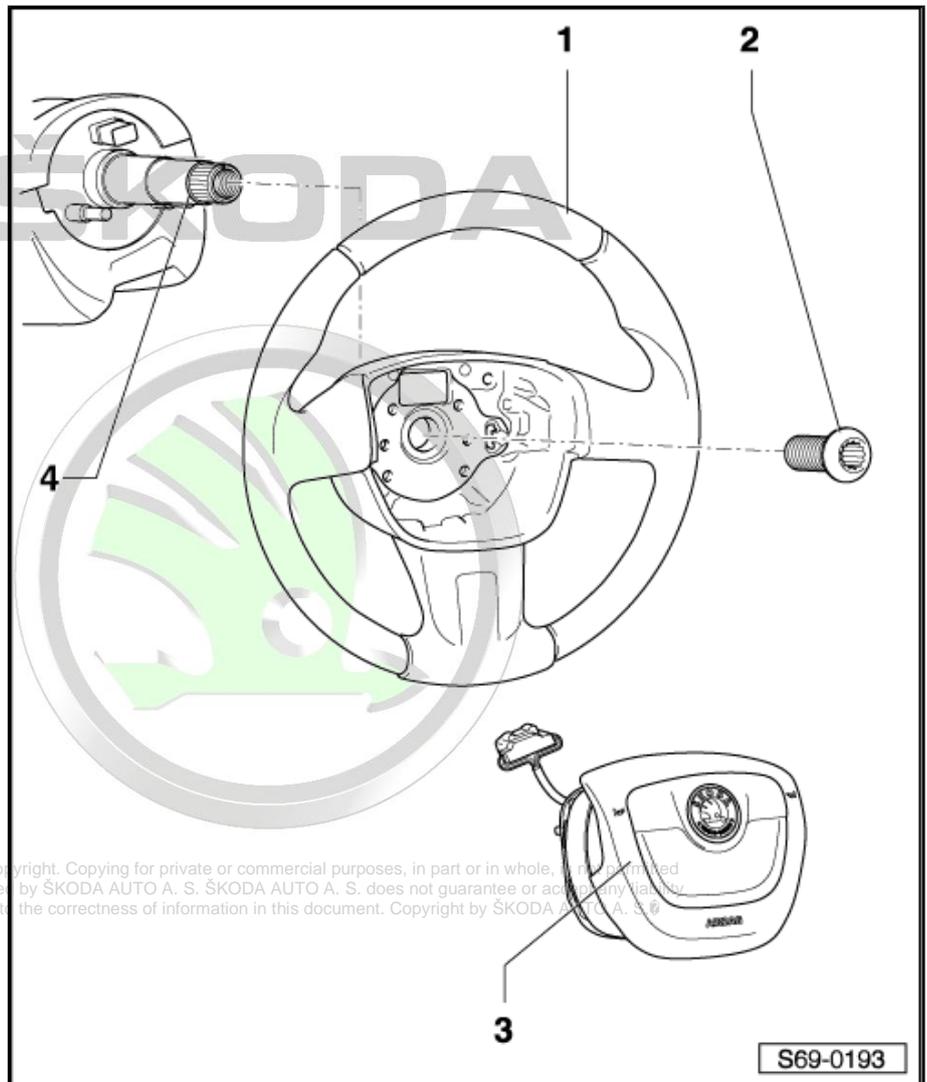
2 - 30 Nm + 90°

- Can be used up to five times, then replace.
- Mark with a dot after each mounting.

3 - Airbag unit

- Summary of components - Airbag on driver side ⇒ [page 312](#) .

4 - Steering wheel shaft



3.11 Summary of components - Airbag on driver side

1 - Steering column electronics control unit

- With coil spring for the airbag and restoring ring with slip ring .
- Summary of components => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 .

2 - Steering wheel without multi-function controls

- Equipment variant.
- Summary of components => [page 311](#) .

3 - 30 Nm + 90°

- Can be used up to five times, then replace.
- Mark with a dot after each mounting.

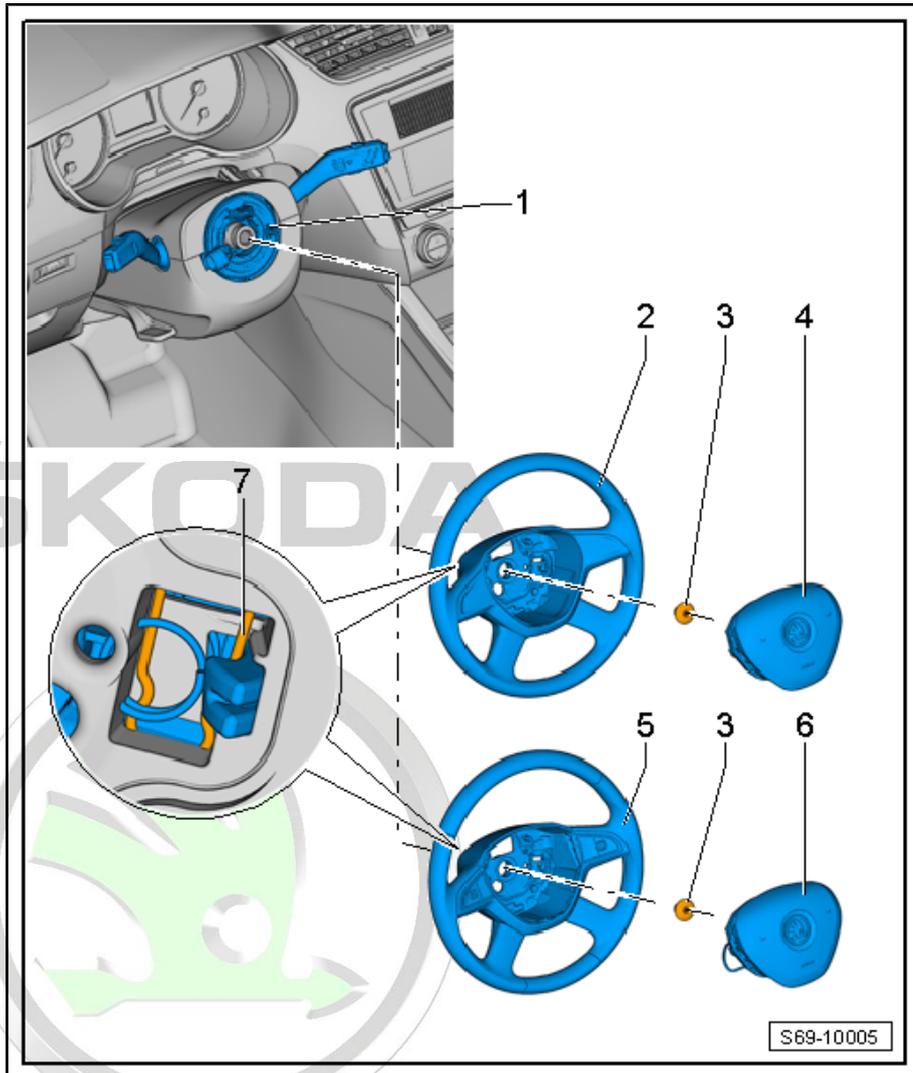
4 - Airbag on driver side

- With ignition for airbag driver's side .

⚠ WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => [page 304](#) .

- Removing and installing => [page 313](#) .



5 - Steering wheel with multi-function controls

- Equipment variant.
- The installation and removal is identical with the steering wheel without multi-functional controls, Summary of components => [page 311](#) .

6 - Airbag on driver side

- With ignition for airbag driver's side .

⚠ WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => [page 304](#) .

- Removing and installing => [page 313](#) .

7 - Release pin

- Unlock. e.g. using a screwdriver.

3.12 Removing and installing airbag unit with ignition for airbag driver's side

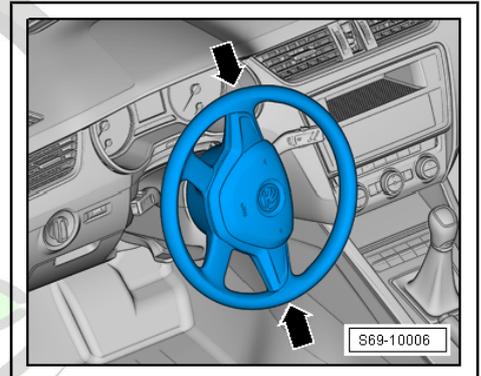
Removing:



WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#).

- Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Put steering wheel in the lowest position.
- Pull out steering wheel fully up to the limit stop.
- Turn steering wheel until one of the holes -arrows- is located at the top.



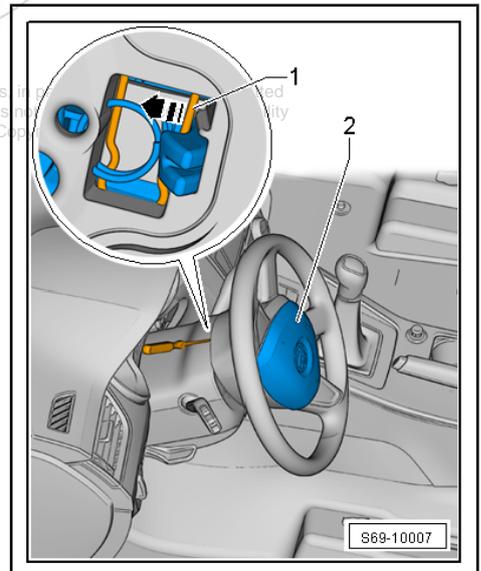
- E.g. using a screwdriver or Torx key (max. overall length of screwdriver approx. 170 mm, blade width approx. 5 mm), unlock the springs -1 - on the airbag locking mechanism - 2 -.



Note

When unlocking, be careful not to damage the electrical cables.

- Rotate steering wheel by 180 degrees and repeat on the opposite side of the steering wheel.
- Reposition the steering wheel to centre position (wheels in straightahead position).





- Carefully pull the airbag driver's side - 3 - partially over the steering wheel.
- Remove the locking mechanism - 2 - - arrow - and push down, disconnect the plug connection - 1 -.

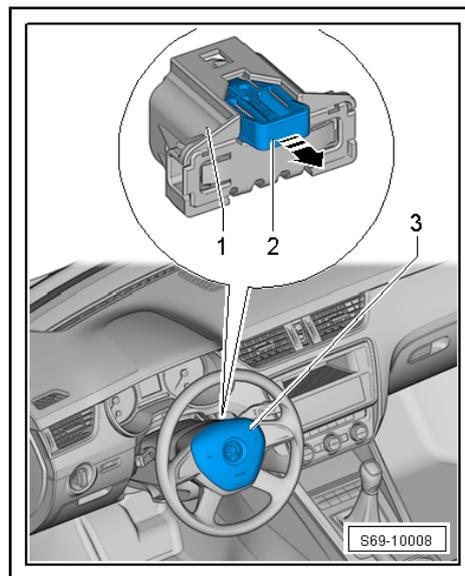
Equipment variant with multi-function controls:

- Disconnect the plug connection.



Caution

Lay aside the airbag unit in such a way that the impact absorber points upwards.



Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:



Note

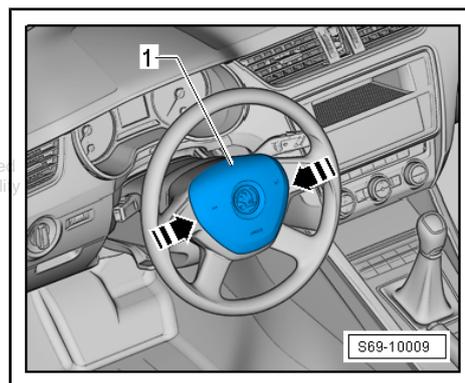
- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
 - ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*
- Insert airbag driver's side -1- into the steering wheel position and with both hands, press onto the borders until it audibly locks into place - arrows -.



WARNING

Nobody should be in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

Pay attention to the sequence when connecting the battery → Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 .



3.13 Replacing the connection line in the air-bag

Removing:



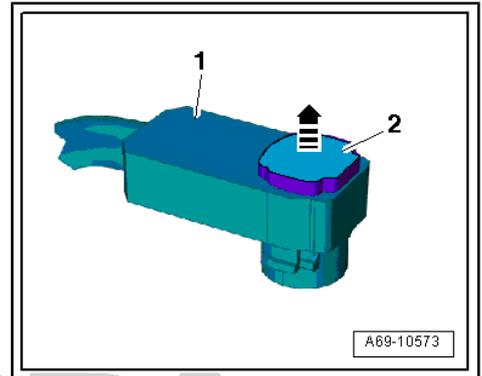
WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ page 304 .

- Remove the airbag unit on the driver's side ⇒ [page 313](#) .

Equipment version: Steering wheel with multi-function controls:

- Unlock locking mechanism -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and remove connector -1- from the ignition for airbag driver's side .

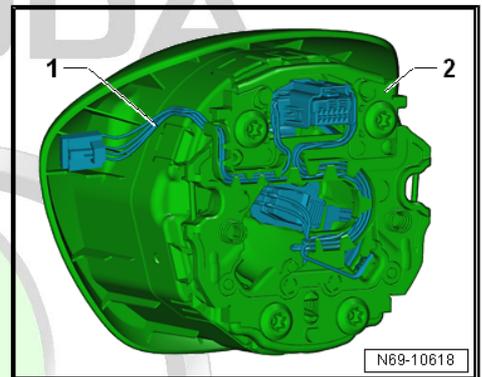


- Disconnect the plug connection from the wiring harness - 1 -.
- Suspend the wiring harness from the mounting bracket and remove from the airbag on the driver's side - 2 -.

Installing:

WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => page 304 .

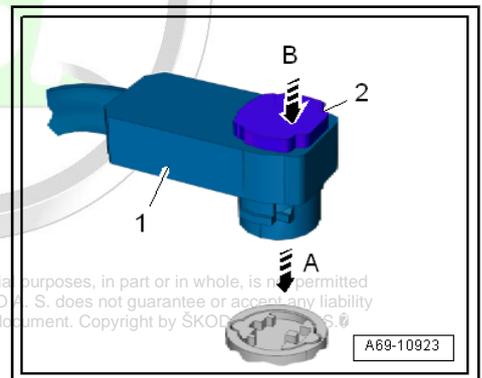


- Insert plug connection - 1 - at ignition for airbag - arrow A - .
- Press the plug fuse - 2 - in - direction of arrow B - , the plug connection is plugged into the ignition as far as it can go and is locked into place at the same time.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, note the following:

Note

- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*



3.14 Summary of components - Airbag on front passenger side



1 - Plug connection

- ignition 1 for airbag front passenger side .

2 - Screws

- 7 Nm

3 - Dash panel

- Replace the dash panel after the triggering of an airbag ⇒ [page 346](#) .

4 - Plug connection

5 - Screws

- 7 Nm

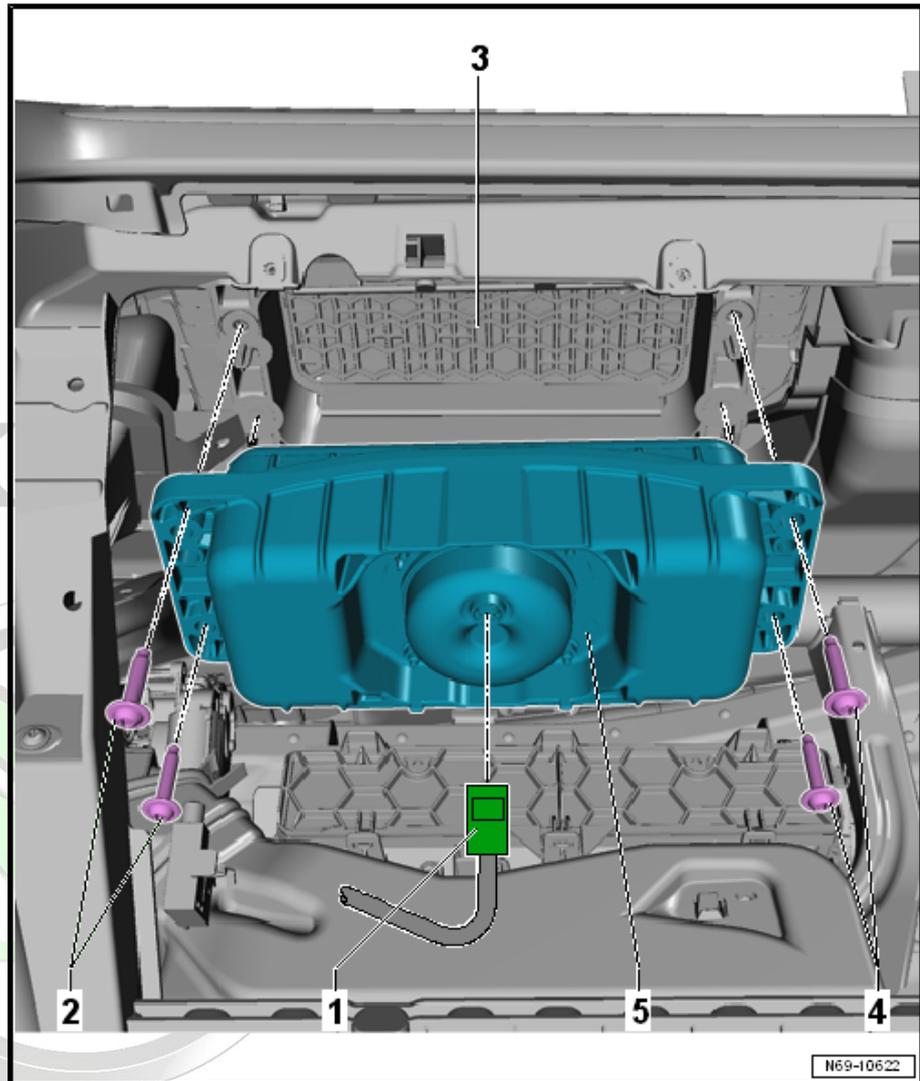
6 - Airbag front passenger side

- With ignition 1 for airbag front passenger side .

⚠ WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

- The locking and triggering of an airbag is possible via a key-operated switch.
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 316](#) .



3.15 Removing and installing airbag unit front passenger side with ignition 1 for airbag front passenger side

Removing:

⚠ WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components) ⇒ [page 304](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe the special instructions for driver and front passenger airbag ⇒ [page 305](#) .*

Carry out the following tasks:

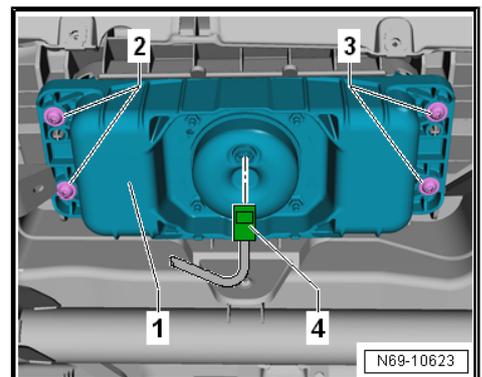


WARNING

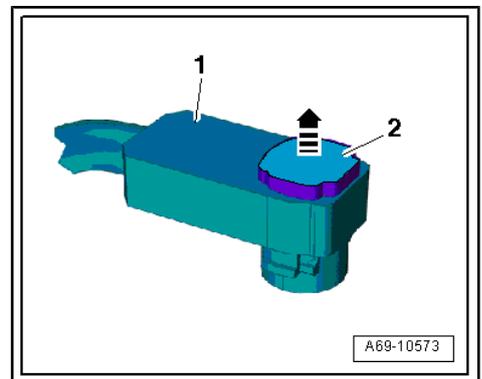
When electrostatic discharges occur, there is a risk of the airbag being activated unintentionally!

Therefore, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically before separating the ignition and earth lead! This occurs, for example, by briefly touching the body or the door closing wedge.

- Disconnect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .
- Remove glovebox on front passenger side with support for glovebox ⇒ [page 353](#) from the dash panel.
- Disconnect plug connection - 4 - from ignition 1 for airbag front passenger side .



- To do so, unlock the locking mechanism - 2 - with a small screwdriver - arrow - and disconnect the plug connection - 1 - .



ŠKODA





- Remove screws - 2 - (7 Nm) and - 3 - (7 Nm).
- Remove the airbag unit front passenger side - 1 - downwards out of the vehicle.



Caution

Lay aside the airbag unit in such a way that the impact absorber points upwards.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*

- Insert plug connection - 1 - at ignition for airbag - arrow A -.
- Press the plug fuse - 2 - in - direction of arrow B -, the plug connection is plugged into the ignition as far as it can go and is locked into place at the same time.



Note

Before installing the screws, it is essential that you clean the threads of the screws and nuts in the dash panel.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

Tightening torques:

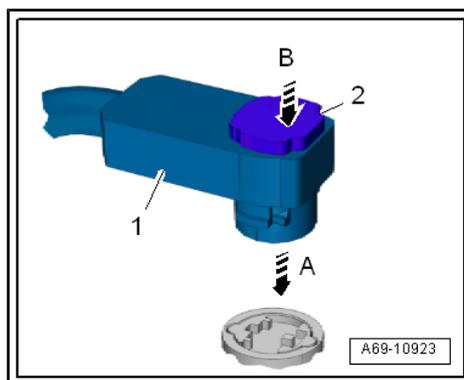
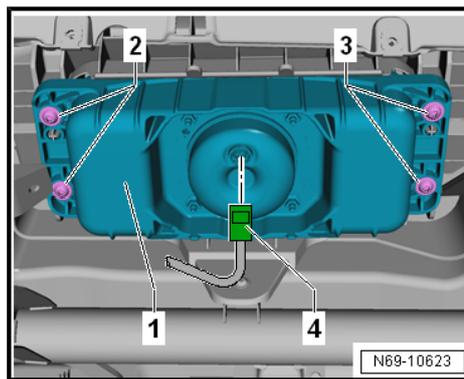
- ◆ ⇒ [“3.14 Summary of components - Airbag on front passenger side”, page 315](#)

3.16 Removing and installing key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger side airbag



WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .



Removing:

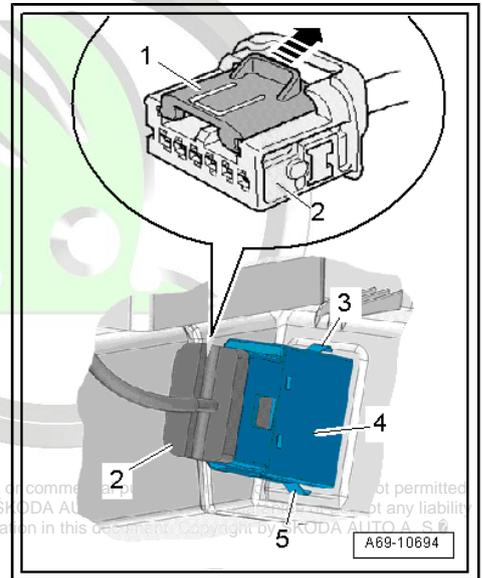
- Switch off ignition.
- Remove glovebox on front passenger side with support for glovebox ⇒ [page 353](#) from the dash panel.
- Press the detention ring - 1 - in - direction of arrow - until the plug connection is released.
- Disconnect plug connection -2-.
- Unlock the retaining springs - 3 - and - 5 -.
- Press out the key switch for switching off the airbag - 4 - from the key-operated housing.

Installing:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*
- Make sure that the key switch for deactivation of airbag on front passenger side clicks audibly into position in the housing.



3.17 Summary of components - side airbags front



1 - Backrest frame

2 - Hook

- For attaching side airbag to backrest frame.

3 - Side airbag front

- On the driver's side with ignition for side airbag driver's side .
- On front passenger side with ignition for side airbag .

⚠ WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

Observe safety instructions for safety airbag ⇒ [page 305](#) .

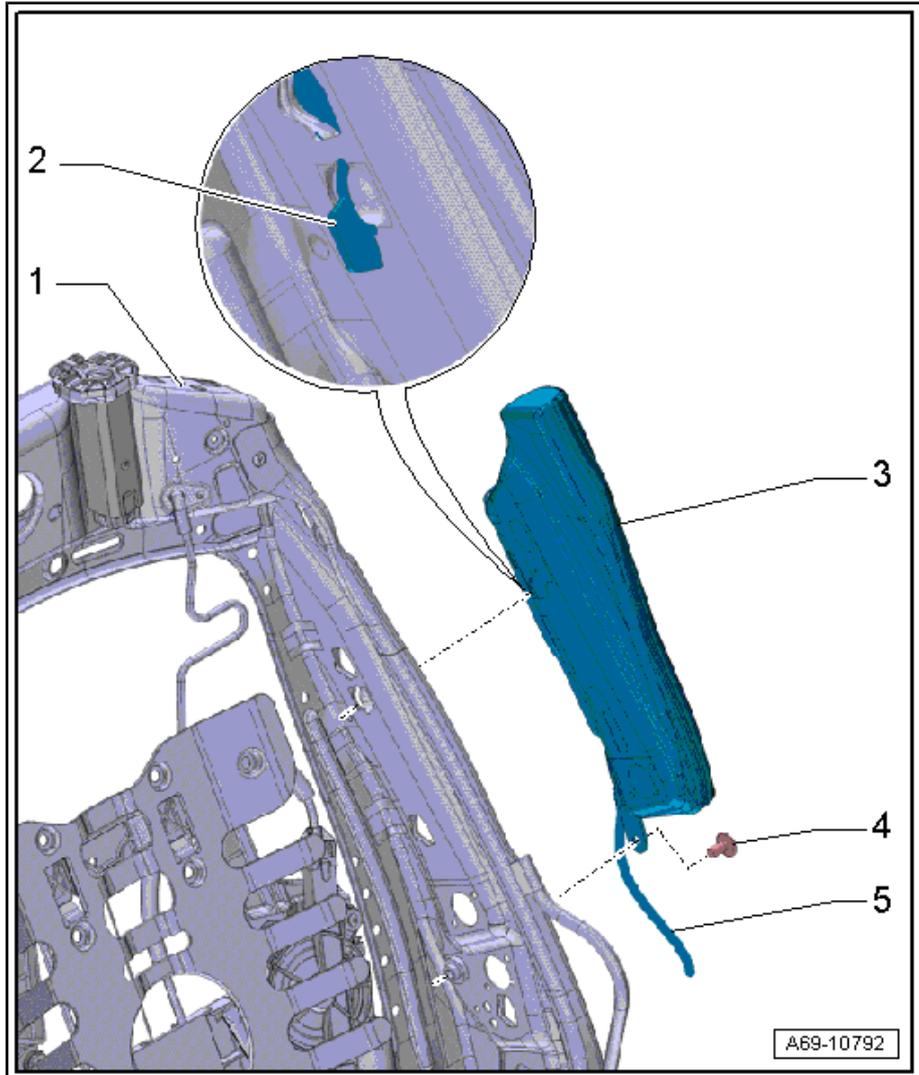
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 321](#) .

4 - Screw

- Replace after disassembly.
- 8 Nm

5 - Electrical line

- Ignition device for side airbag driver's side / ignition device for side airbag front passenger side .



ŠKODA



3.18 Summary of components - side airbag rear

1 - Nut

- 9 Nm.

2 - Lateral padding

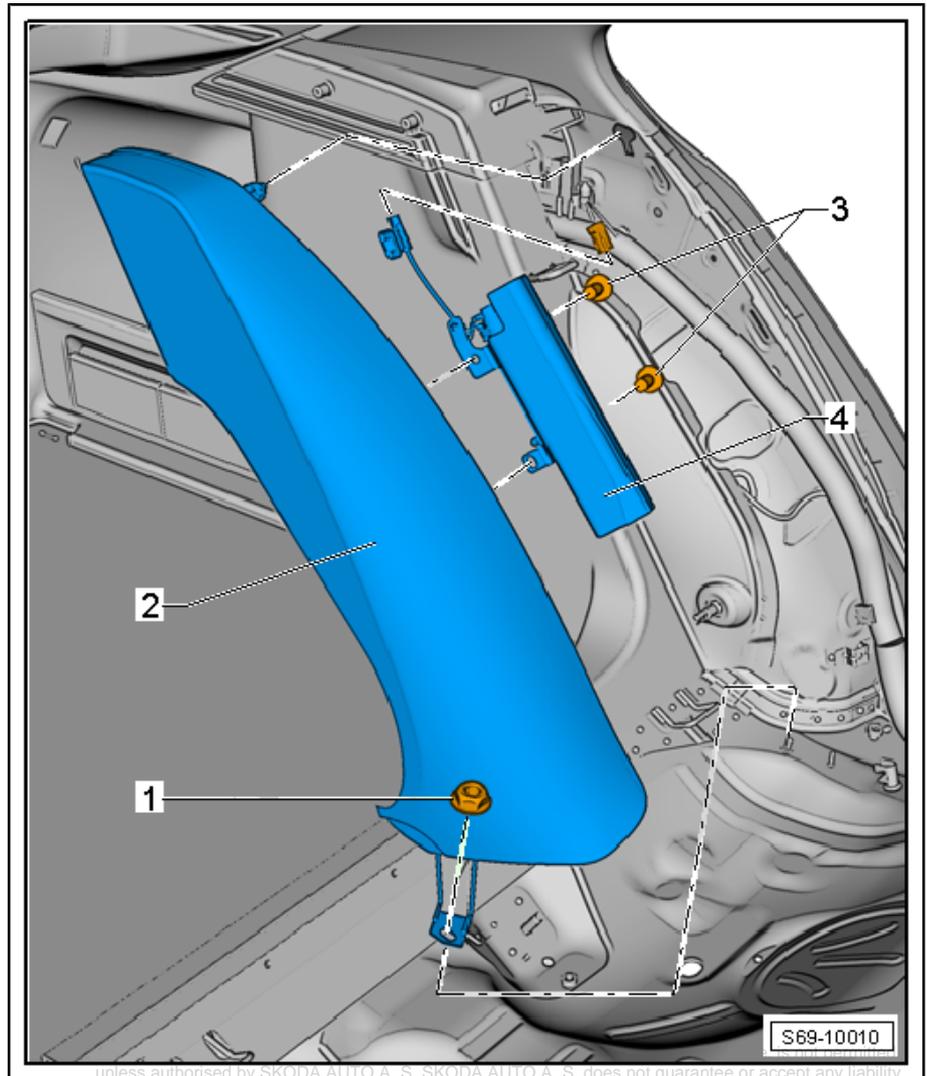
- With lateral airbag unit.

3 - Screws

- 8 Nm.
- Replace after disassembly.

4 - Side airbag rear

- On driver's side with ignition for side airbag rear driver's side .
- On front passenger side with ignition for side airbag rear front passenger's side .
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 322](#) .



unless authorised by SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by SKODA AUTO A. S.

3.19 Removing and installing side airbag front with ignition for side airbag

Removing:



WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

Observe safety instructions for safety airbag ⇒ [page 305](#) .

- Remove front seat and front rest ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove cover and upholstery of backrest ⇒ [page 416](#) .



- Unscrew screw -2-.
- Push side airbag - 1 - towards the top and out of seat rest rack.
- Careful undo the mounting bracket for the el. wiring harness for the side airbag - 3 - from the seat rest.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Switch on ignition.

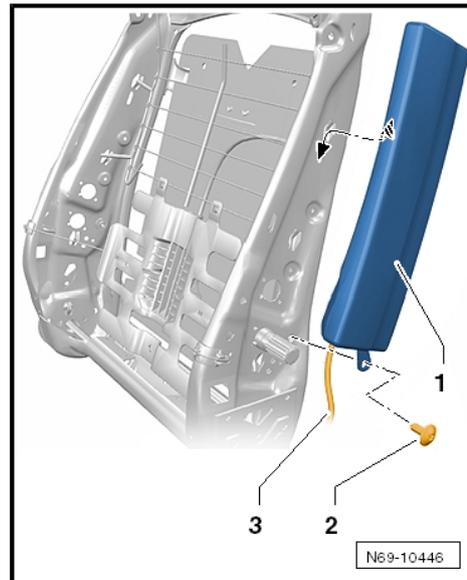

WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

Tightening torques:

- ♦ ⇒ ["3.17 Summary of components - side airbags front", page 319](#)



3.20 Rear side airbag with ignition device for side airbag rear

Removing:

WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

- Remove rear seat and fold up seat rest.
- Remove lateral padding ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 321\)](#) .
- To do so, remove the nut ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 321\)](#) .
- Remove the lateral padding from the top retaining clip.
- Disconnect the airbag unit plug connector ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 321\)](#) .
- Release screws ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 321\)](#) .
- Remove the side airbag from the lateral padding.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Switch on ignition.


WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ [“3.18 Summary of components - side airbag rear”, page 321](#)

3.21 Removing and installing the warning light for front passenger side airbag off

Removing and installing the warning light for front passenger side airbag off ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .

3.22 Summary of components - head airbag

1 - Anti-twist protection line

- Used to protect against twisting.
- Must be completely visible after fitting.

2 - Head airbag

- On the driver's side with ignition for head airbag driver's side .
- On front passenger side with ignition for head airbag .

⚠ WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

Observe safety instructions for head airbag ⇒ [page 306](#) .

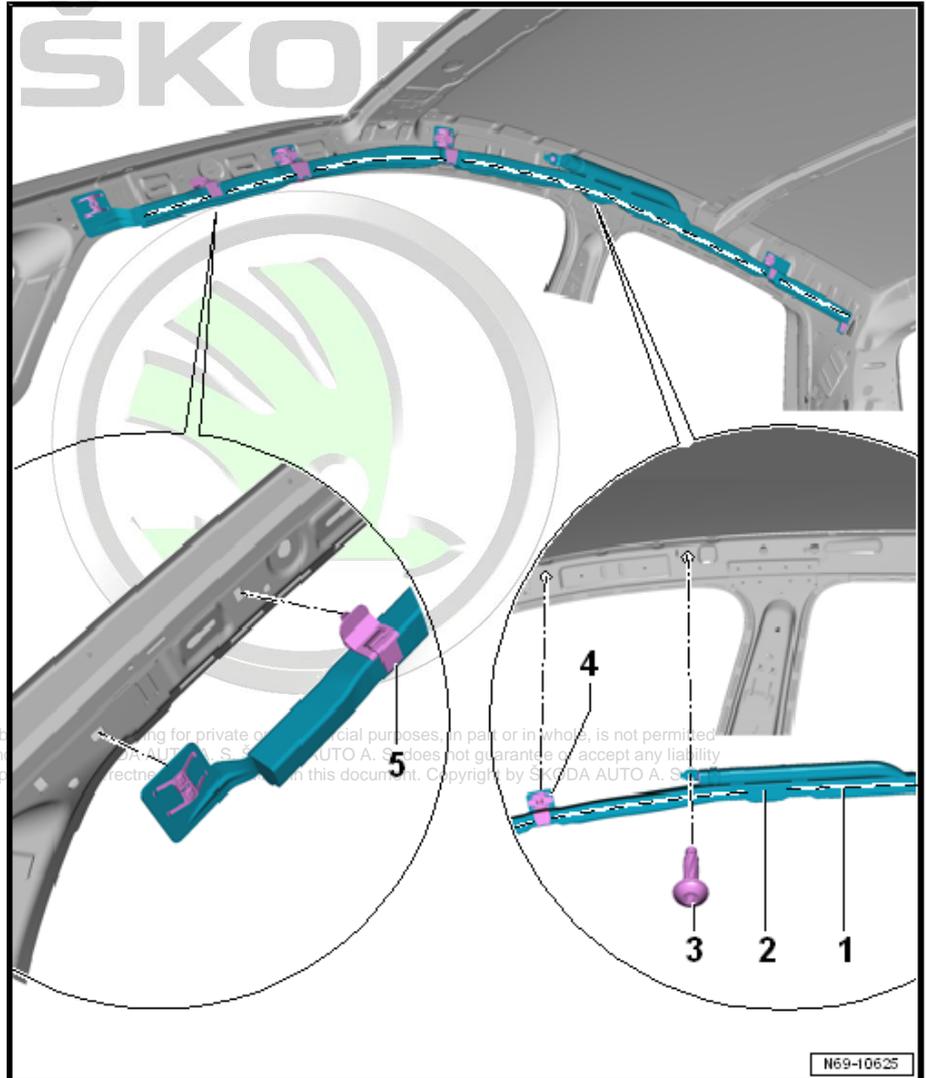
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 324](#) .

3 - Screw

- Replace after disassembly.
- 5.2 Nm.

4 - Retaining clip

5 - Retaining clip





3.23 Removing and installing head airbag with ignition for head airbag driver's side

Removing:



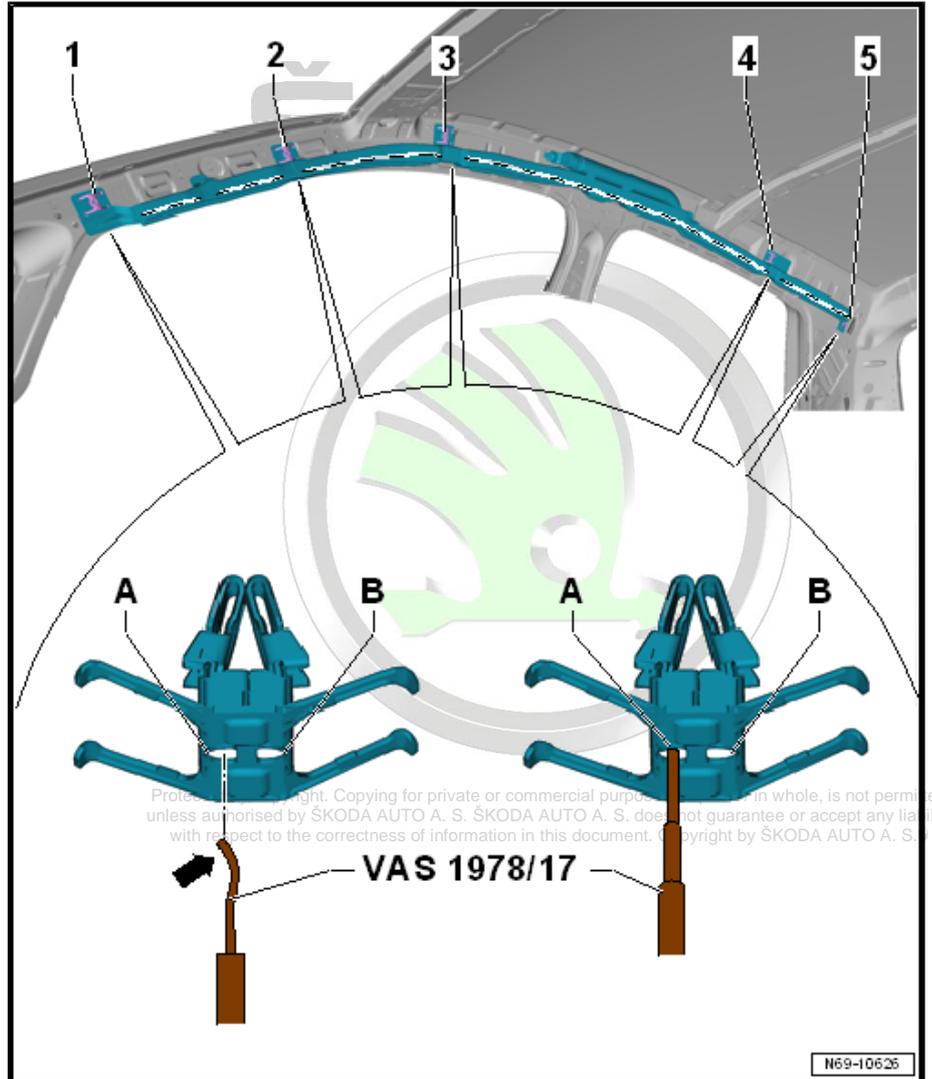
WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

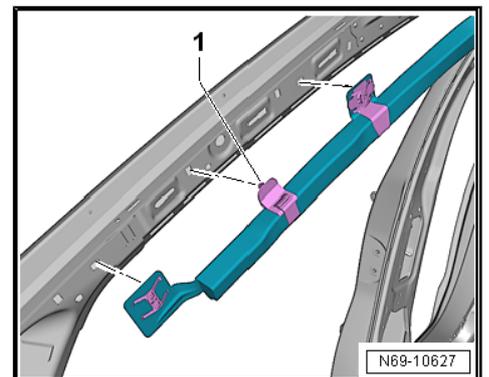
- Remove top trim panels of pillars A, B, C ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Remove moulded headliner (only lower) ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Suspend retaining clips - 1 -, - 2 -, - 3 -, - 4 - and - 5 - from the body in den securing tabs of the head airbag.
- To do so, slide the unlocking tool - VAS 1978/17- with the »spoon« - arrow - with feeling straight into the opening -A - up to the stop, as shown in the figure.
- At the same time, remove the left region of the retaining clip from the body.
- E.g. remove the unlocking tool - VAS 1978/17- again and make sure the retaining clip does not engage with the unlocked area again.
- E.g. turn the unlocking tool - VAS 1978/17- 180°.
- Repeat the procedure at opening - B - .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

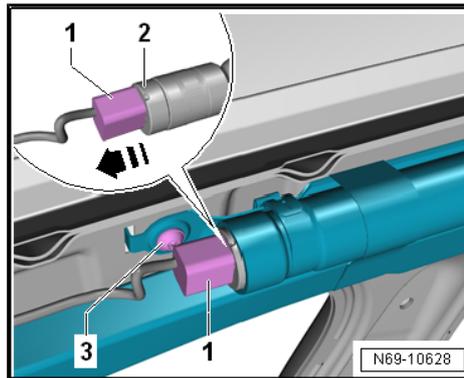


- Unclip the holding clamp -1- from the A pillar.

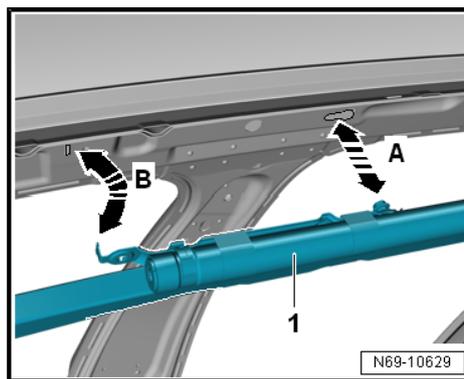




- Remove the fuse and plug - 1 - from the head airbag - 2 -
- arrow -.
- Remove the screw - 3 - from the head airbag.



- First suspend the head airbag - 1 - at the front from the mount and suspend from the body -arrow B- and push towards the rear.
- Suspend the head airbag out of the mount on the body -arrow A- and remove.



Installing:

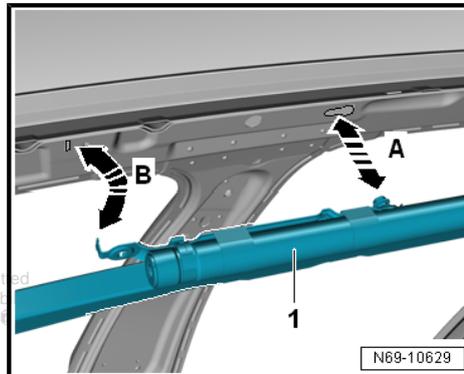


WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => page 304 .

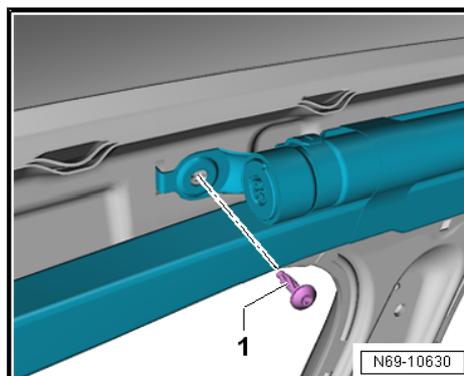
Always observe the correct sequence when installing.

- First suspend the head airbag - 1 - at the rear in the mount and suspend from the body -arrow A- and push towards the front.
- Suspend the head airbag front into the mount on the body - arrow B -.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

- Secure the head airbag with the screw - 1 -.



- Rotate the rear-most retaining clip - 1 - downwards by 90° - arrow - and engage in the body.
- Press in the remaining retaining clips of the head airbag until they audibly lock into place, beginning at the gas generator towards the front and rear.
- Carry out a tensile test on the retaining clips and check them to make sure they are locked completely.
- Plug the connector at the ignition for the head airbag.
- To do so, press in the plug connector fuse - as a result, the connector is pushed into the cylinder for the head airbag up to the stop and is latched at the same time.
- Check whether the anti-twist protection line is visible over the entire length and is straight. This ensures that the airbag is NOT twisted.

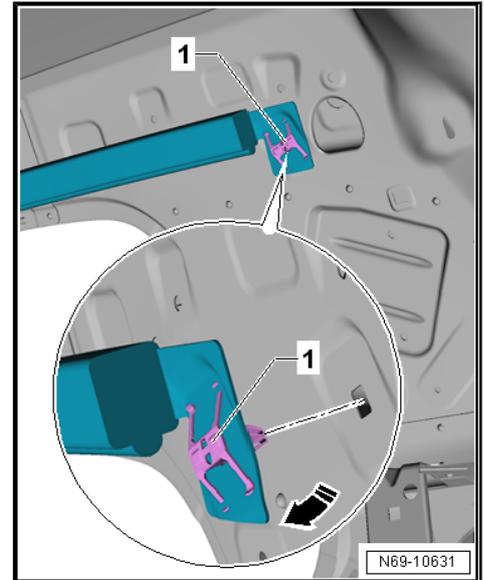
Further installation occurs in reverse order.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.



- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ ["3.22 Summary of components - head airbag", page 323](#)

3.24 Summary of components - knee airbag

ŠKODA





1 - Knee airbag with ignition for knee airbag driver's side

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 328](#) .

! WARNING
Make sure that the surface of the knee airbag cannot be damaged by mechanical loads. After completing the work, carry out a visual inspection to see whether the surface is not damaged, especially in the perforation region.

2 - Connection point of screws

- For knee airbag.

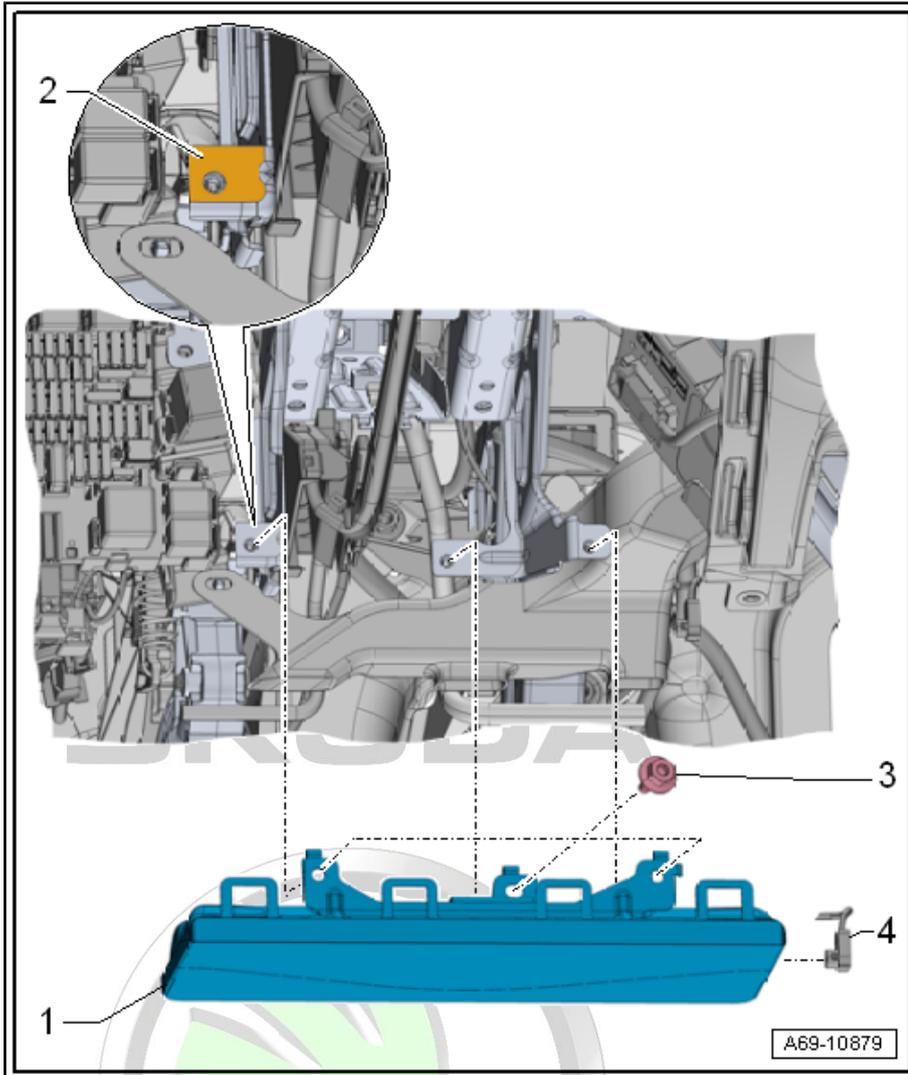
! WARNING
Exclude functional impairments through an inadequate ground connection. The threads and contact surfaces must be free of paint, coatings and corrosion. The screw connection acts as a ground connection for the knee airbag.

3 - Screw

- 18 Nm

4 - Plug connection

- For ignition for knee airbag driver's side .



3.25 Removing and installing knee airbag with ignition for knee airbag driver's side

Removing:

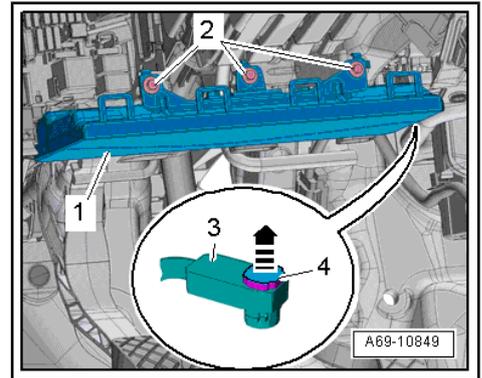
! WARNING
When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Unscrew screws -2-.
- Remove the knee airbag driver's side - 1 - towards the rear.
- Disconnect plug connection - 3 - at the ignition for knee airbag driver's side .
- To do so, unlock the locking mechanism - 4 - with a small screwdriver - arrow - and remove the plug connection.

Caution

Lay aside the airbag unit in such a way that the impact absorber points upwards.

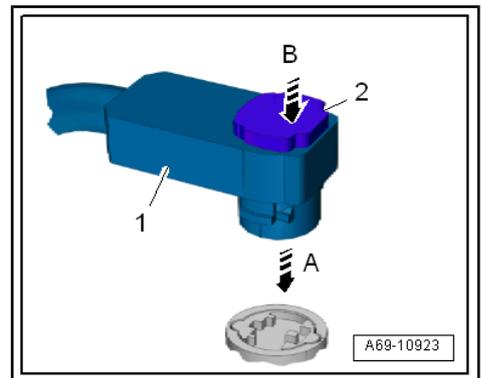


Installing:

WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => page 304 .

- Insert plug connection - 1 - at ignition for airbag - arrow A - .
- Press the fuse - 2 - towards the inside - arrow B - , the plug connection is plugged into the ignition for the airbag as far as it can go and is locked into place at the same time.



Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, note the following:

- Switch on ignition.

WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery => Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

WARNING

Make sure that the surface of the knee airbag cannot be damaged by mechanical loads.

- ◆ *After completing the work, carry out a visual inspection to see whether the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged.*

Tightening torques:

- ◆ => ["3.24 Summary of components - knee airbag", page 327](#)

3.26 After replacement, configure the control unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnosis, measurement and information system - VAS- => Vehicle diagnostic tester.



◆ Diagnostic cable.

After replacing the control unit for the airbag and carrying out the automatic test sequence using the ODIS program in the tab "Test plan", select the suggested test "Code control unit for airbag" (follow the in-test instructions) or select the following procedure:

- In the "Test plan" tab, press "Select self-test".
- Select "Body".
- "Select the assembly work on the body".
- "Select self-diagnosable systems".
- "Select Airbag (UDS)".
- "Select function- airbag".
- "Select Code control unit for airbag".



Note

Do not carry out any coding via SVM!

4 Crash sensors for airbag

4.1 Overview of fitting location - Crash sensors for airbag

1 - Crash sensor for side airbag on front passenger side

- Fitting location in the door.
- Precautions when handling the crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag ⇒ [page 306](#) .
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 334](#) .

2 - Crash sensor for rear side airbag on front passenger side

- Fitting position under the wheel house trim.
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 336](#) .

3 - Screw

- 9 Nm

4 - Screw

- 9 Nm

5 - Crash sensor for rear side airbag on driver's side

- Fitting location: under the wheel house trim.
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 336](#) .

6 - Crash sensor side airbag on driver's side

- Fitting location in the door.
- Precautions when handling the crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag ⇒ [page 306](#) .
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 334](#) .

7 - Crash sensor for front airbag

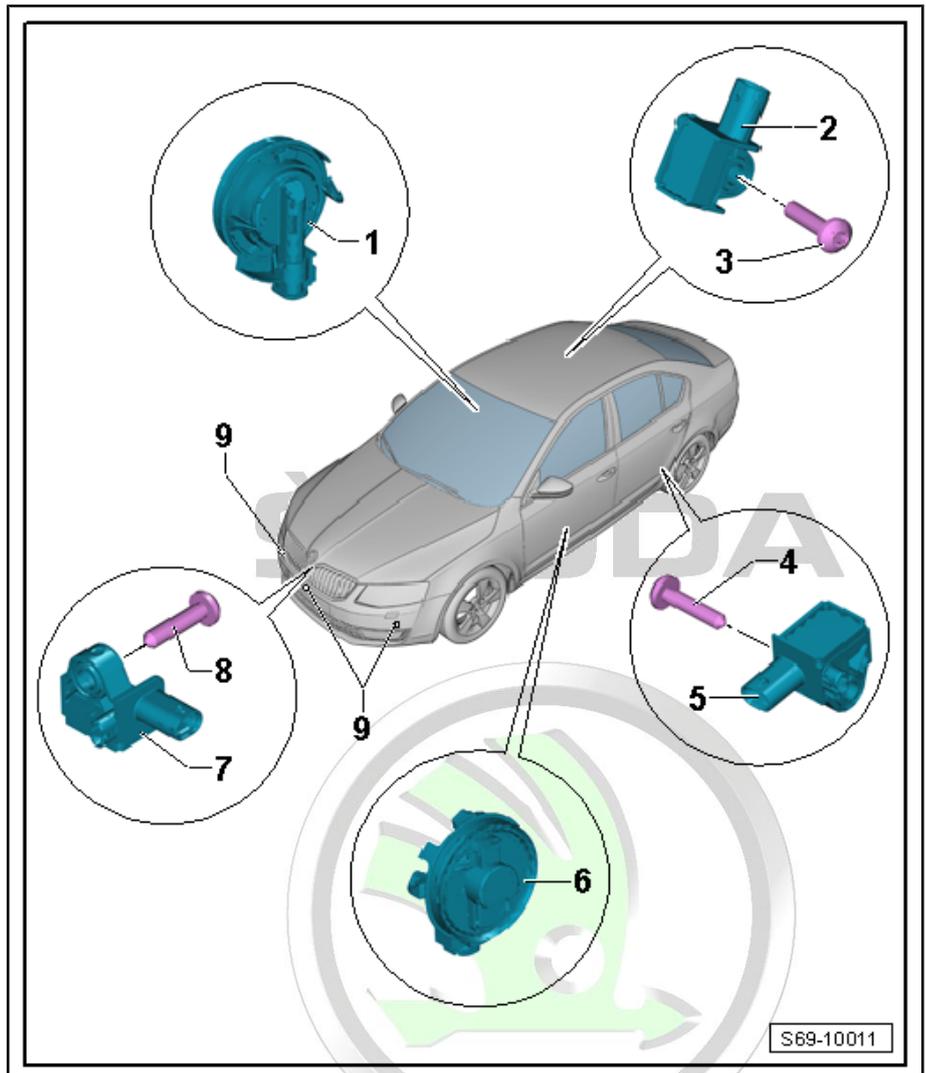
- Fitting location in the centre of the vehicle at the lock carrier.
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 332](#) .

8 - Screw

- 9 Nm.

9 - Crash sensor for pedestrian protection system (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle)

- Removing and installing:
 - Removing front bumper ⇒ [page 203](#) .
 - Disconnect the plug connection for the sensor.
 - Unclip sensor from the bumper.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

4.2 Removing and installing the crash sensor for front airbag

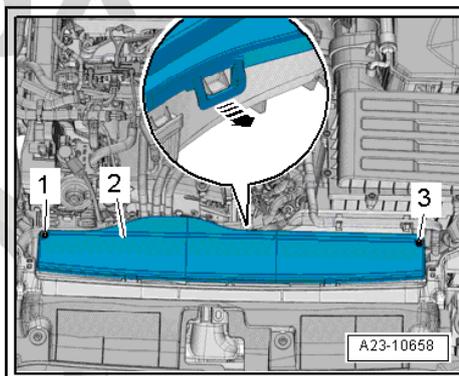
Removing:



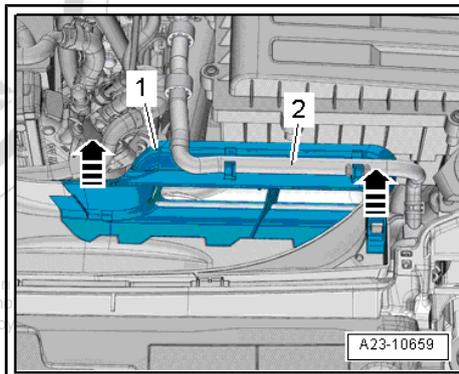
WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => page 304 .

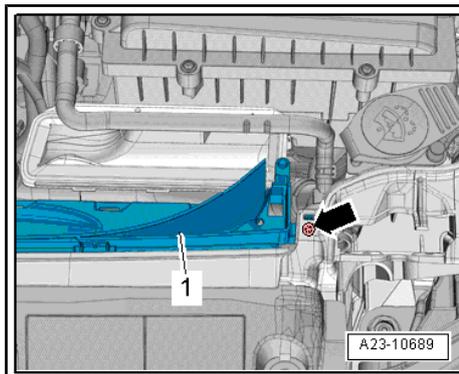
- Open front flap.
- Remove screw - 1, 3 -.
- Unlock fuse -arrow-, remove cover -2-.



- Where installed, place down the coolant hose - 2 - to one side (depends on the engine variant).
- Unlock catches -arrows-, remove air guide pipe top -1-.

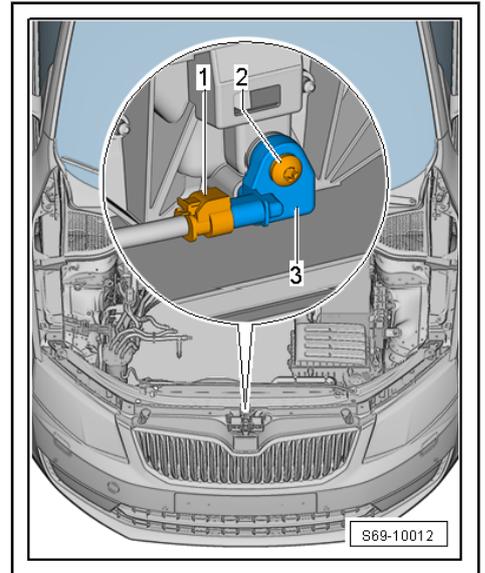


- Remove screws left and right - arrows -.
- Unscrew and remove the air guide pipe bottom - 1 -.

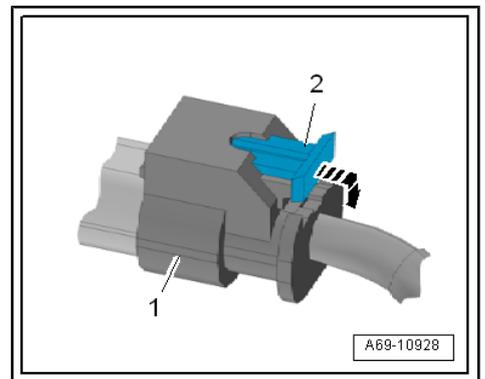


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying and distribution of this document is prohibited.

- Remove the screw - 2 - and remove the crash sensor - 3 - for front airbag at the lock carrier.
- Disconnect plug connection -1-.



- To do so, pull out the fuse - 2 - and push it downwards - arrow -, disconnect the plug connection - 1 - at the crash sensor.



ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Installing:



WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

- Plug in the plug connection - 1 - until it audibly locks into place in the crash sensor - arrow - .
- Press in the plug fuse - 2 - - this locks the plug connection.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, note the following:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

Tightening torques:

- ◆ ⇒ [“4.1 Overview of fitting location - Crash sensors for airbag”](#), [page 331](#)

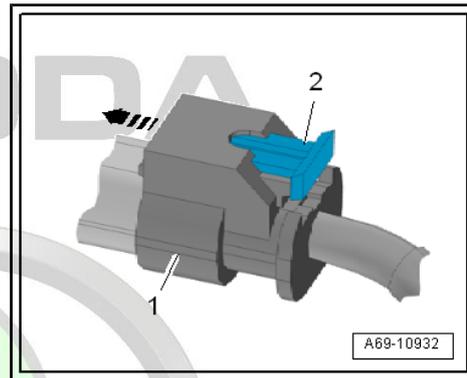
4.3 Removing and installing the crash sensor for side airbag

Removing:

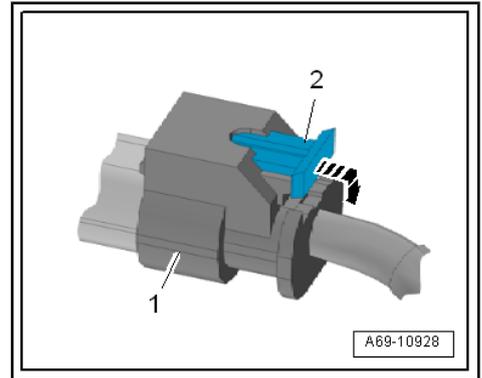


Caution

- ◆ *When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .*
- ◆ *Safety instructions for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag ⇒ [page 306](#) .*



- Remove front door trim panel => [page 359](#) .
- Pull out the fuse - 2 - and push it downwards - arrow - , disconnect the plug connection - 1 - at the crash sensor.



- Release the catch - 2 - and turn the crash sensor fuse - 1 - anti-clockwise by around 45° - arrow - .
- Remove sensor - 3 - through the door opening.

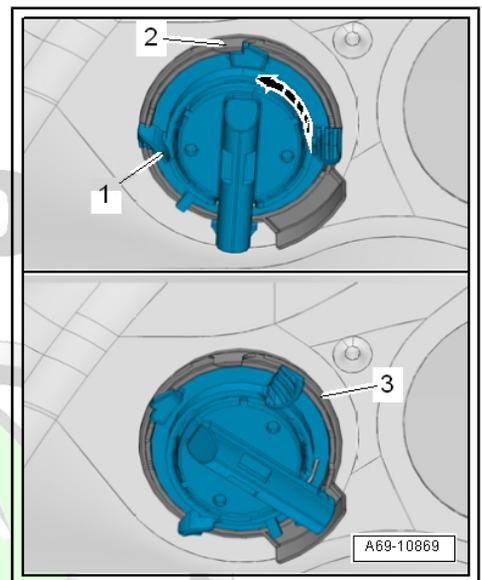
Installing:

WARNING

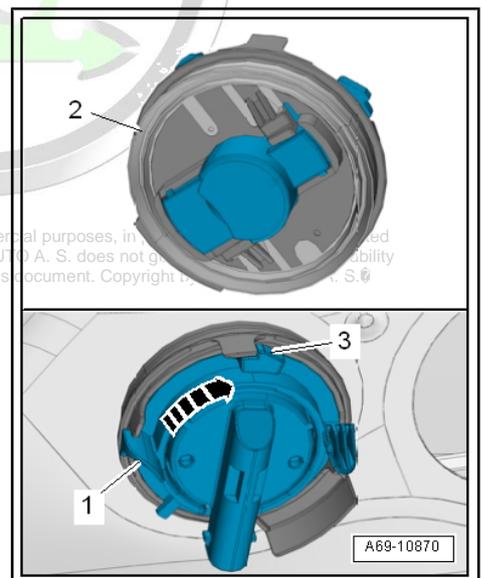
- ◆ *When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => [page 304](#) .*
- ◆ *Safety instructions for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag => [page 306](#) .*

Ensure tightness of the door for smooth operation of the crash sensor (pressure sensor).

Make sure the seal - 2 - is seated correctly. Replace the crash sensor if damaged or deformed.



- Make sure the seal - 2 - is seated correctly. Replace crash sensor with a new part if damaged or deformed.
- Insert the crash sensor into the door opening so that the cut-outs lock into place in the door opening.
- Turn the fuse - 1 - for the crash sensor clockwise - arrow - .
- The locking pin - 3 - must be heard to click into place.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee the accuracy and reliability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2013 ŠKODA AUTO A. S.



- Plug in the plug connection - 1 - until it audibly locks into place in the crash sensor - arrow -.
- Press in the plug fuse - 2 - - this locks the plug connection.



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, note the following:

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

4.4 Removing and installing the crash sensor for side airbag rear

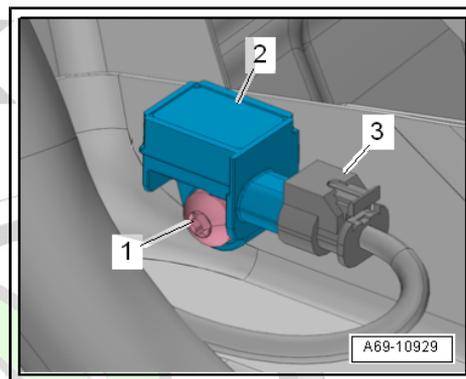
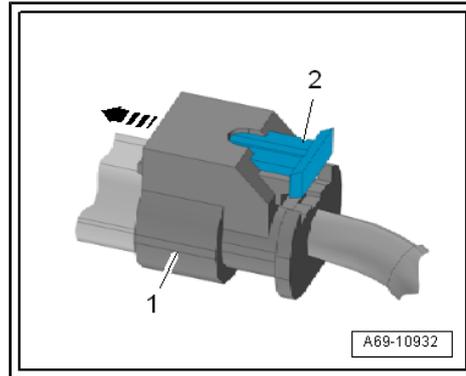
Removing:



Caution

- ◆ *When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .*

- Remove wheel house trim from C pillar ⇒ [page 374](#) .
- Unscrew screw - 1 - and remove crash sensor - 2 - for the side airbag from the body.
- Disconnect plug connection -3-.



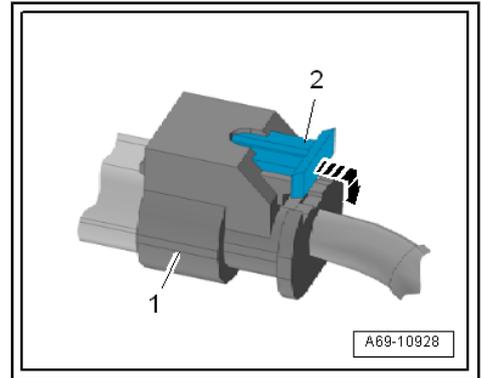
- To do so, pull out the plug fuse - 2 - and push it downwards - arrow -, disconnect the plug connection - 1 - at the crash sensor.

Installing:



WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => [page 304](#) .



- Plug in the plug connection - 1 - until it audibly locks into place in the crash sensor - arrow -.
- Press in the plug fuse - 2 - - this locks the plug connection.

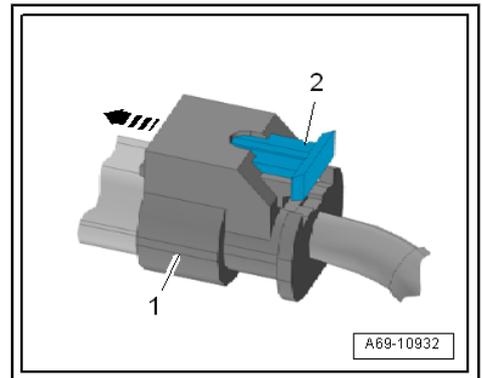


Note

- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, note the following:

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery => Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .

Tightening torques:

- ◆ => [“4.1 Overview of fitting location - Crash sensors for airbag”, page 331](#)

4.5 Removing and installing seat occupation sensor front passenger side



Note

The seat occupation sensor is only installed in the front passenger seat.

Removing:



WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). => [page 304](#) .

- Remove front passenger seat => [page 400](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or domestic use, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by SKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Remove cover and upholstery from seat well ⇒ [page 416](#) .
- Disconnect the plug connection for the seat occupation sensor.
- Press off the retaining clip - 1 - from the seat well and remove the seat occupation sensor - 2 -.

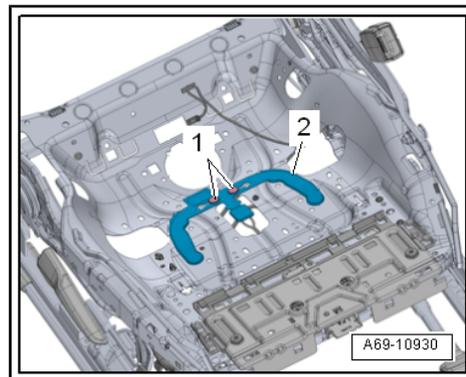
Installing:



WARNING

When working on the airbags, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .

The new seat occupation sensor must be fitted in the same position as the old seat occupation sensor.



Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:

- Press in the retaining clip for the seat occupation sensor until it audibly locks into place into the seat well.



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the plug connection is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the cables are not trapped.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, note the following:

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .



5 Airbag control unit

5.1 Summary of components - Airbag control unit

1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 340](#) .
- The ground connection for the control unit is implemented with the housing unit at the body.



WARNING

The control unit can continue to be used after an activation by a pedestrian protection system. Each pedestrian protection system can be activated independently of the other systems. The control unit can be reused:

For activating the seat-belt system - 3 times.

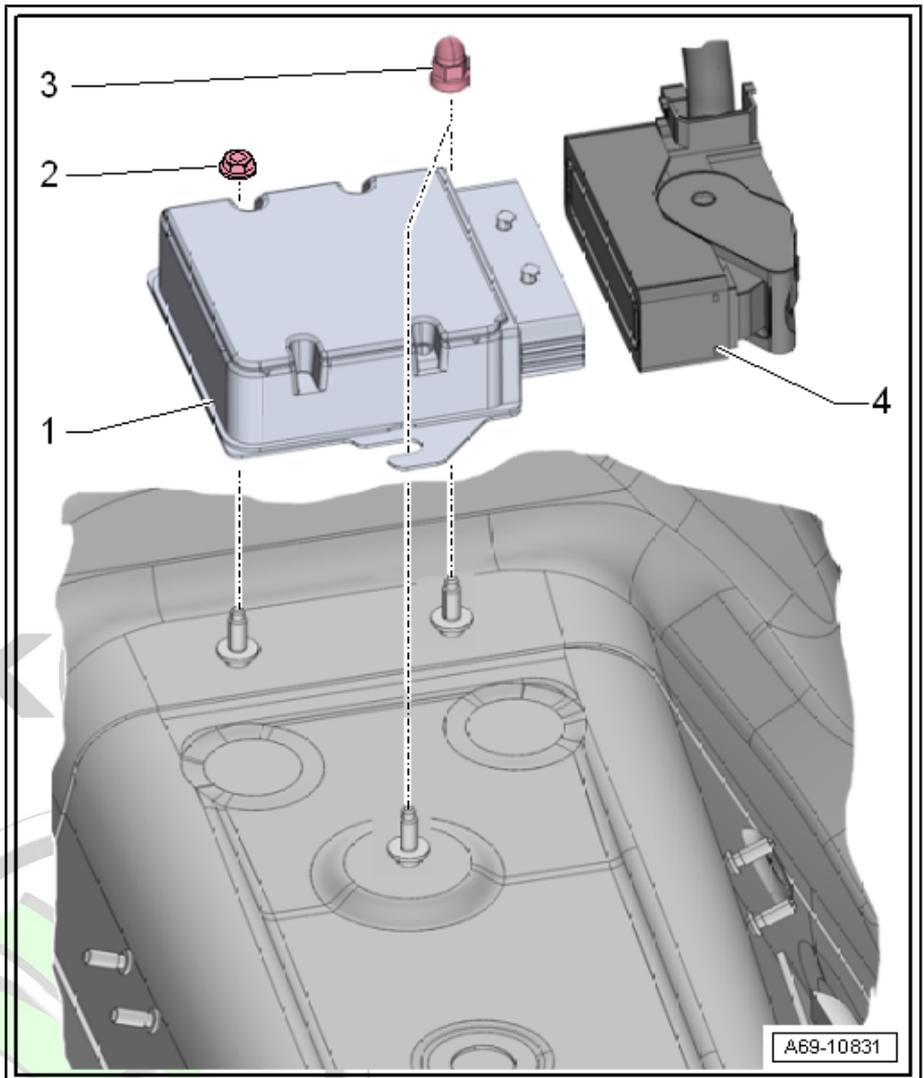
For activating the airbag system - 3 times.

For activating the pedestrian protection system- 3 times.

After the third activation of the individual pedestrian protection system, the control unit for the airbag will need to be replaced.

After each time the control unit is activated: Interrogating and erasing fault memory of airbag control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

If the control unit has been replaced, it must be coded, adapt the components (code) ⇒ [page 329](#) .



- 2 - Nut** Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability.
- The nuts and earth bolts serve as earth connection for the control unit.
 - The threads must be free of paint and dirt.
 - 9 Nm.

3 - Nut

- The nuts and earth bolts serve as earth connection for the control unit.
- The threads must be free of paint and dirt.
- 9 Nm.



4 - Control unit connector

5.2 Removing and installing the airbag control unit - J234-

Removing:



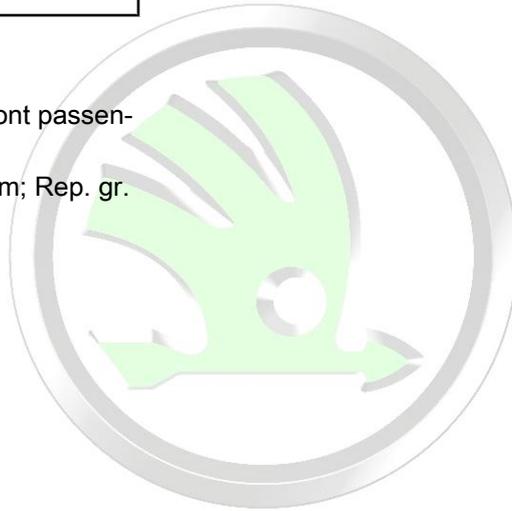
WARNING

When working on the airbag control unit, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components) ⇒ [page 304](#).

ŠKODA

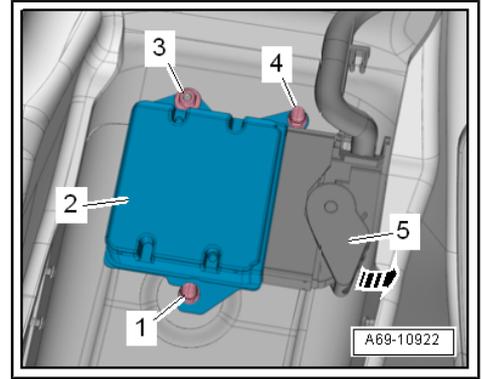
Removing:

- Remove cover for central console in driver and front passenger foot well ⇒ [page 269](#).
- Disconnect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Release the nut -3- in the front of the footwell on the driver's side.
- Unlock the locking mechanism from the plug -5- starting from the footwell on the front passenger side.
- Disconnect the plug from the control unit.
- Disconnect the electrical plug connection at the front of the foot well - to do so, unlock the connector lock and disconnect the locking mount - 5 - on the connector - arrow -.
- Unscrew the nuts - 1, 4 -.
- Remove the airbag control unit -2- from the thread bolts and remove it towards the front passenger side.



i Note

The dash panel and heating and air-conditioning unit have been removed to improve the display.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order. When installing, observe the following:

i Note

Make sure the plug connection for the control unit is plugged in as far as it can go and audibly clicks into place.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .
- Observe the instructions on re-using/replacing the control unit ⇒ [page 339](#) .

i Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

If the airbag warning light - K75- signals a fault after assembly, erase the event memory and interrogate again.

Tightening torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“5.1 Summary of components - Airbag control unit”, page 339](#)



6 Hinges for the pedestrian protection system

6.1 Set hinges for pedestrian protection system into the initial position after activation

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnosis, measurement and information system VAS/ODIS
- ◆ Riveting tongs, e.g. - V.A.G. 1765B-
- ◆ Shear rivets with spacer ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts



DANGER!

When working with actuators, observe the safety instructions ⇒ [page 304](#).

Before handling pyrotechnical components and before disconnecting the ignition and ground lines, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically! When electrostatic discharges occur, there is a risk of the airbag being activated unintentionally!

This occurs, for example, by briefly touching the body or the door closing wedge.

Any damaged parts and electrical lines in the engine compartment and in the plenum chamber must be inspected after activation of the pedestrian protection system.

- ◆ *Repair or replace defective parts.*
- ◆ *Replace electrical lines.*
- *The airbag control unit can be reused after activation of the pedestrian protection system ⇒ [page 339](#).*
- *The hinge which is undamaged after activation of the pedestrian protection system can be used a maximum of 3 more times after being set into the initial position.*
- *The hinge damaged after activation of the pedestrian protection system must not be reused.*
- *Actuators must always be replaced after activation of the pedestrian protection system.*
- *The front flap which is undamaged after activating the pedestrian protection system can be reused after the hinge is set into the initial position.*
- *The front flap which is damaged after activating the front pedestrian protection system must be repaired or replaced depending on the extent of the damage.*

6.1.1 Summary of components - hinges for the pedestrian protection system after activation

1 - Hinge mid section for the pedestrian protection system

2 - Openings after sheared shear rivets

3 - Hinge top section for the pedestrian protection system

- Secured to front flap.
- Remove the hinges as on vehicles without an activated pedestrian protection system ⇒ [page 25](#) .

4 - Locking lever for top stop of hinge

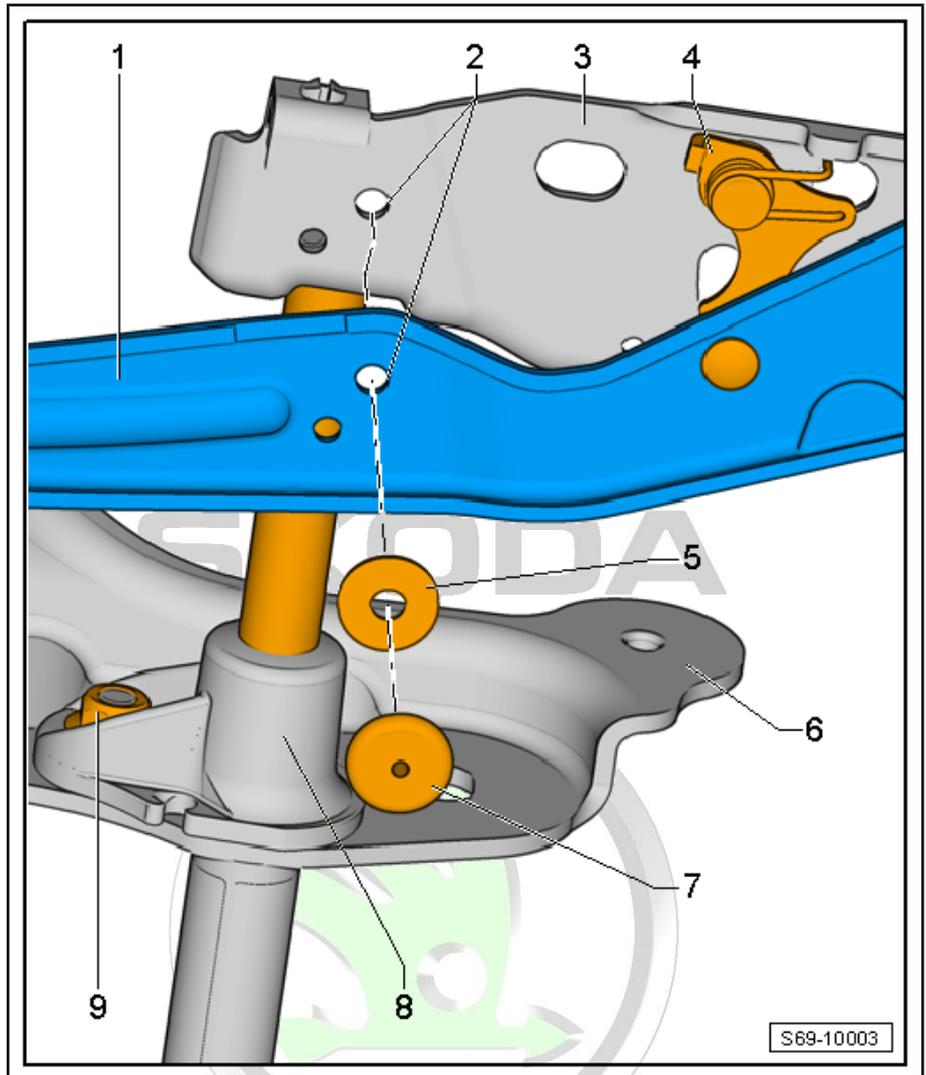
- Manually press the locking lever into the initial position for top stop manually ⇒ [page 344](#)

5 - Spacer - new

- Renew ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .
- Work procedure ⇒ [page 344](#) .

6 - Hinge bottom section for pedestrian protection system

- Fastened to longitudinal beam.
- Remove the hinges as on vehicles without an activated pedestrian protection system ⇒ [page 25](#) .



7 - Shear rivets- new

- Renew ⇒ Electronic Catalogue of Original Parts .
- Work procedure ⇒ [page 344](#) .

8 - Activated actuator

- Removing:
 - Disconnect the plug connection from the plenum chamber.
 - Release the nuts ⇒ [Item 9 \(page 344\)](#) .
- Install the actuator as on vehicles without an activated pedestrian protection system ⇒ [page 25](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

**WARNING**

Before handling pyrotechnical components and before disconnecting the ignition and ground lines, the mechanic must discharge himself electrostatically! When electrostatic discharges occur, there is a risk of the airbag being activated unintentionally!

This occurs, for example, by briefly touching the body or the door closing wedge.

9 - Nut

□ 9 Nm

6.1.2 Set hinges for pedestrian protection system into the initial position

**Note**

◆ *The setting of the hinges for the pedestrian protection system into the initial position can be carried out without removing the hinges.*

◆ *The setting of the hinges for the pedestrian protection system into the initial position must be carried out on both sides of the vehicle.*

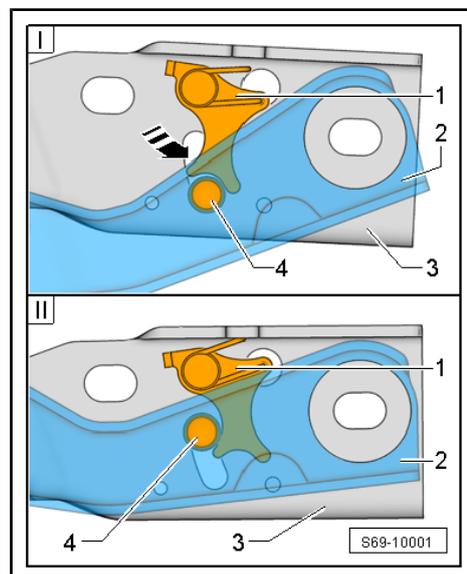
- Disconnect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .
- Remove activated actuator ⇒ [Item 8 \(page 343\)](#) .
- Lift the hinges of the tailgate a little.
- Press in the locking lever - 1 - manually in - direction of arrow - into the initial position.

Set the locking lever into the initial position

I - Locking lever - 1 - in activated position.

II - Locking lever - 1 - in initial position.

- Move the top part of hinge - 3 - against the hinge mid section - 2 - so that the hinge bolt - 4 - is in the top position and at the same time the openings overlap after the sheared shear rivet ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 343\)](#) .

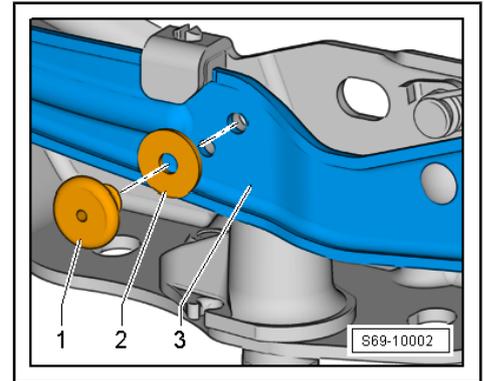


- Rivet on new shear rivets - 1 - with spacer - 2 - using riveting tongs e.g. - V.A.G. 1765B- .
- Install a new actuator ⇒ [page 25](#) .



WARNING

When working on the hinges for the pedestrian protection system, observe the general safety instructions for working on airbag, belt tensioner and battery separation units (pyrotechnical components). ⇒ [page 304](#) .



- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Make sure no person is present in the vehicle.

- Connect the vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27 ; disconnect and connect the battery .



DANGER!

Be careful when connecting the battery!

- Check the adjustment of the front flap ⇒ Body repair work; Rep. gr. 00 .
- Interrogating and erasing fault memory of airbag control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- If the control unit has been replaced, it must be coded, adapt the components (code) ⇒ [page 329](#) .



70 – Trim, insulation

1 Dash panel

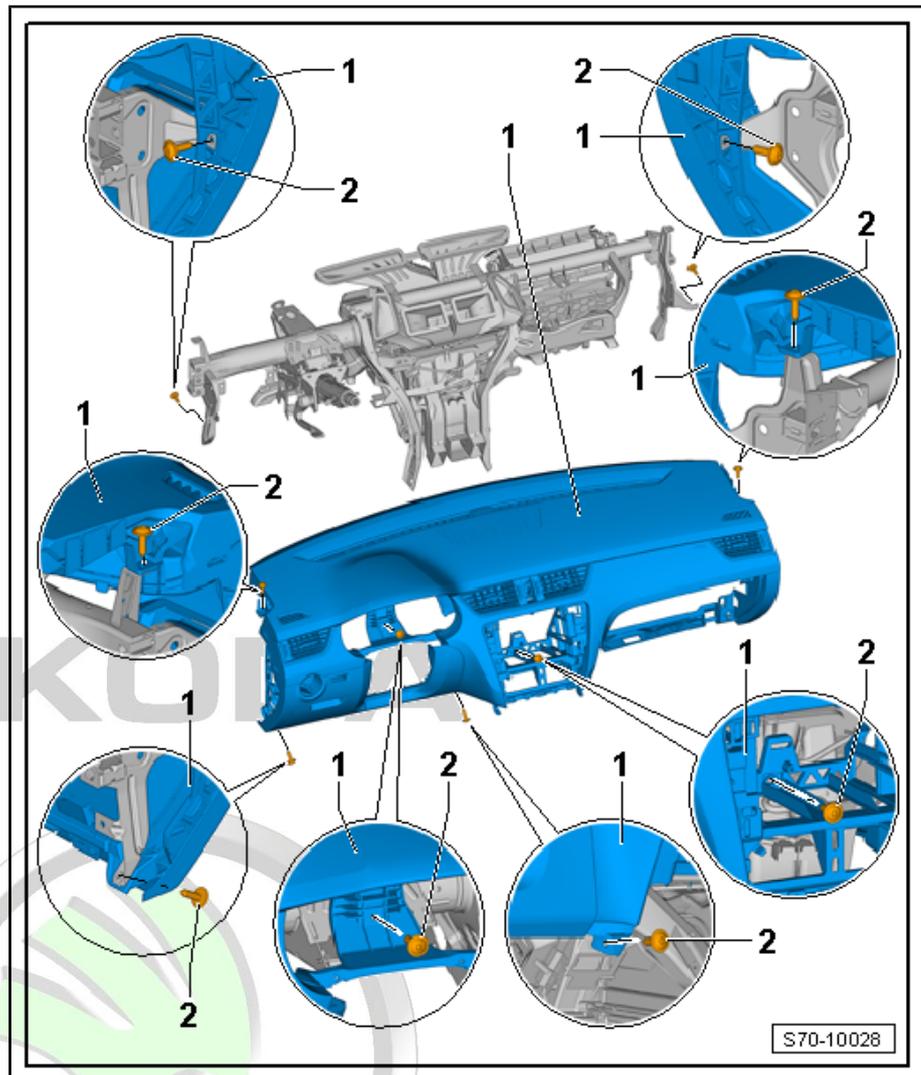
1.1 Removing and installing the dash panel

Summary of components of dash panel

1 - Dash panel

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque -
1.5 Nm.



Removing:



Note

Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ *Electrical System; Rep. gr. 27.*

- Removing the driver's airbag unit ⇒ [page 313](#).
- Remove the steering wheel ⇒ [page 311](#).
- Remove steering column trim panel ⇒ [page 355](#).

- Removing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 90 .
- Removing steering-column control ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 94
- Remove light switch ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove potentiometer plug for headlamp range control ⇒ Electrical system ; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove the warning light switch and airbag warning light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove the radio or navigation unit (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle)⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 91 .
- On vehicles without radio or navigation, remove the storage compartment of the middle dash panel.

Air conditioning system with manual control:

- Remove the heater control ⇒ Heating, Air Conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 .

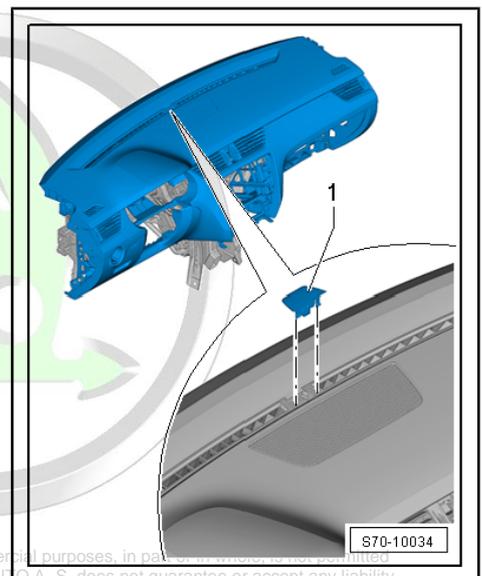
Automatic air conditioning system:

- Removing the control and display unit for air conditioning system with control unit ⇒ Heating, Air Conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 .
- Remove the sunlight penetration photosensor ⇒ Heating and Air Conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 .

Continued for all vehicles:

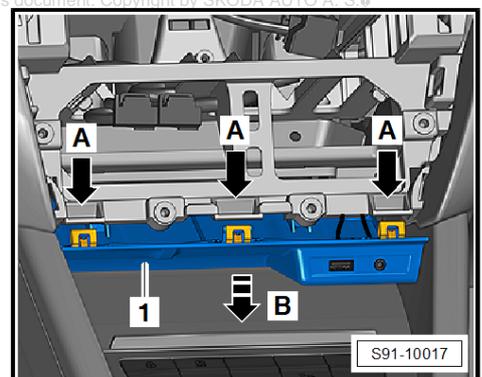
- Removing the centre console ⇒ [page 269](#) .

SKODA

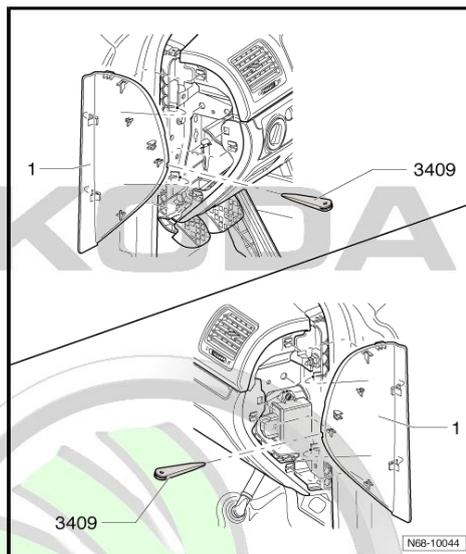


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

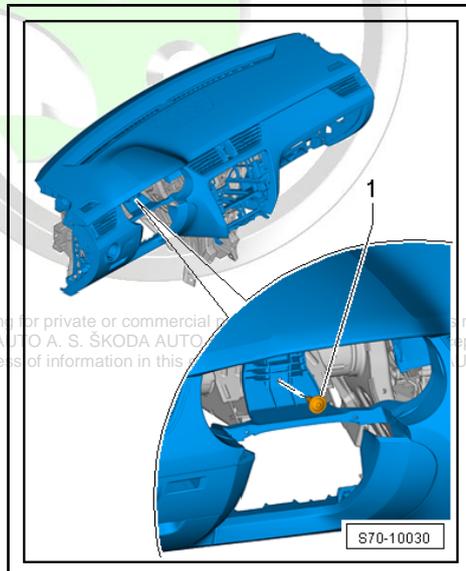
- Remove screen bottom -1- in -direction of arrow A- and disconnect plug connectors for USB connections and external audio sources ⇒ Electrical system ; Rep. gr. 91 .



- Remove the lateral dash panel covers -1 and 2- e.g. using the disassembly wedge -3409-.
- Remove the top trim panel of the pillar A => [page 365](#) .
- Remove supports for glovebox on front passenger side => [page 353](#) .

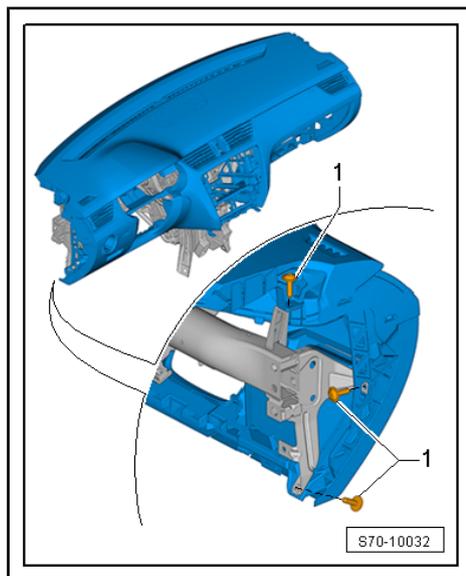


- Release screw -1- (1.5 Nm).



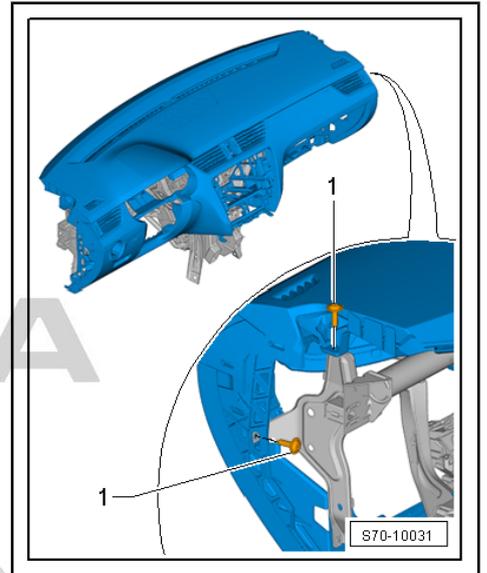
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use without permission is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this manual. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Unscrew screws - 1 - (1.5 Nm).



- Unscrew screws - 1 - (1.5 Nm).

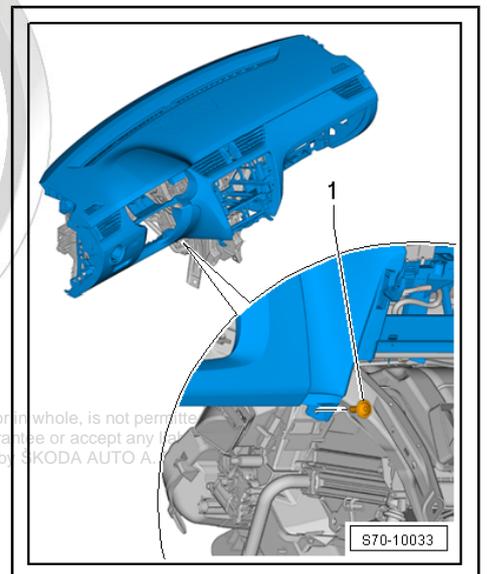
ŠKODA



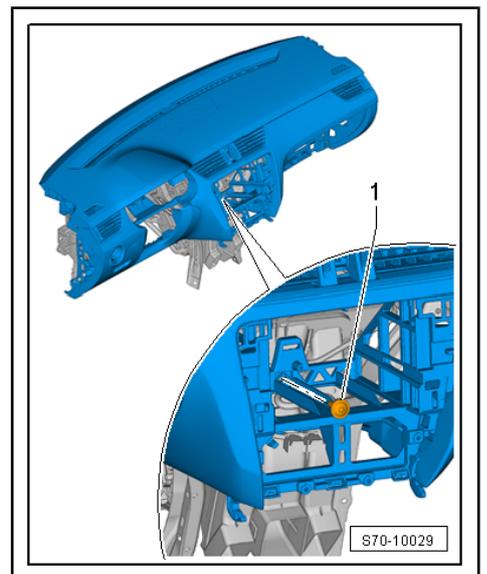
- Release screw -1- (1.5 Nm).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

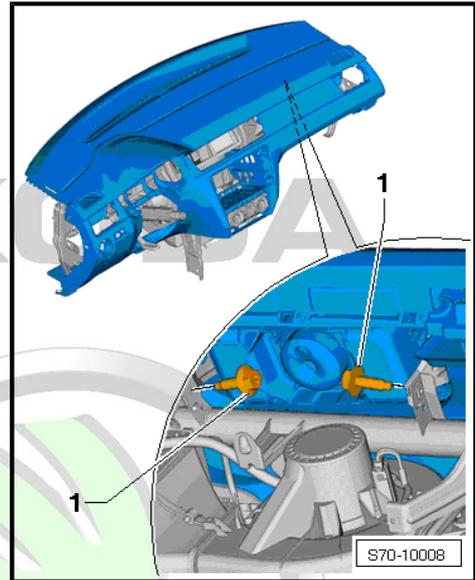


- Release screw -1- (1.5 Nm).
- Disconnect the airbag unit plug connector front passenger side ⇒ [page 315](#).

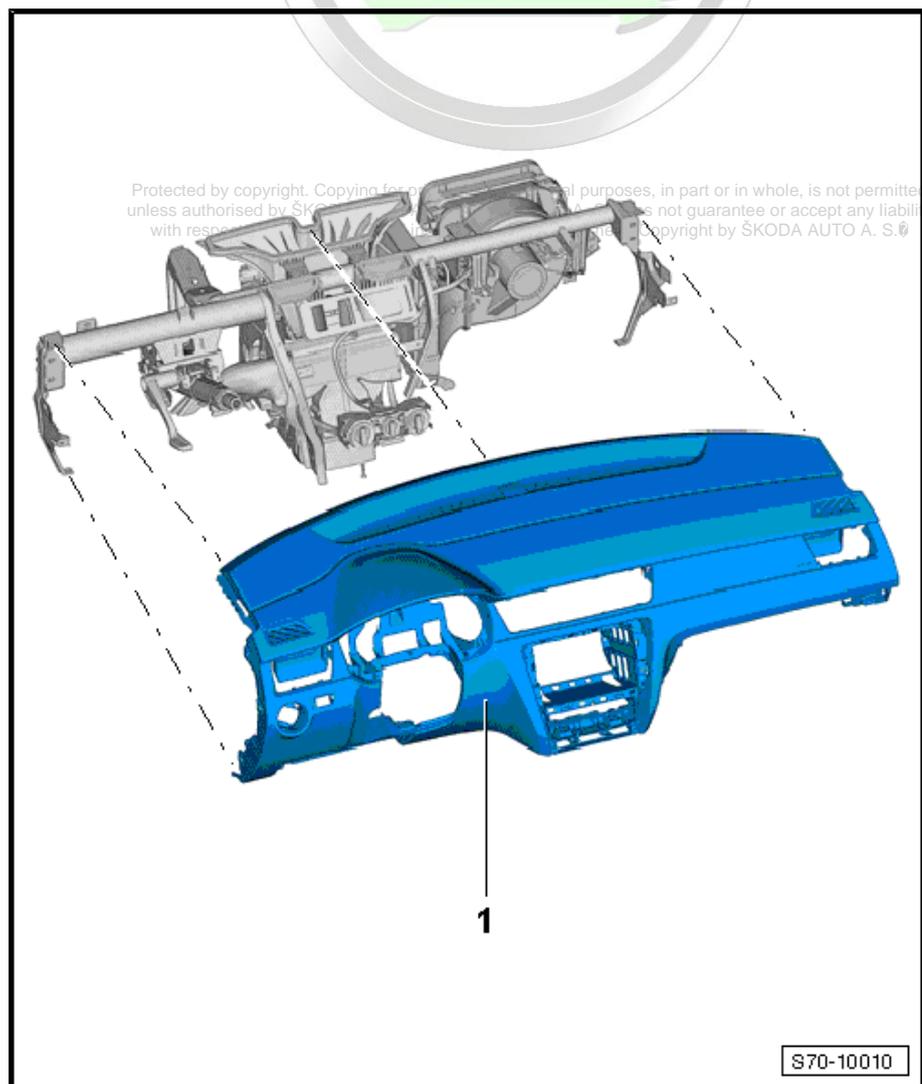




- Remove fixing screws for front passenger's airbag unit - 1 - (9 Nm).
- Pull the dash panel partly out of the supports in the transition area to the windscreen.
- Disconnect the fastening of head airbag cables from the dash panel around the A pillar.



- Remove the dash panel -1- from the vehicle with the assistance of a 2nd mechanic.



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

1.2 Removing and installing passenger glove compartment

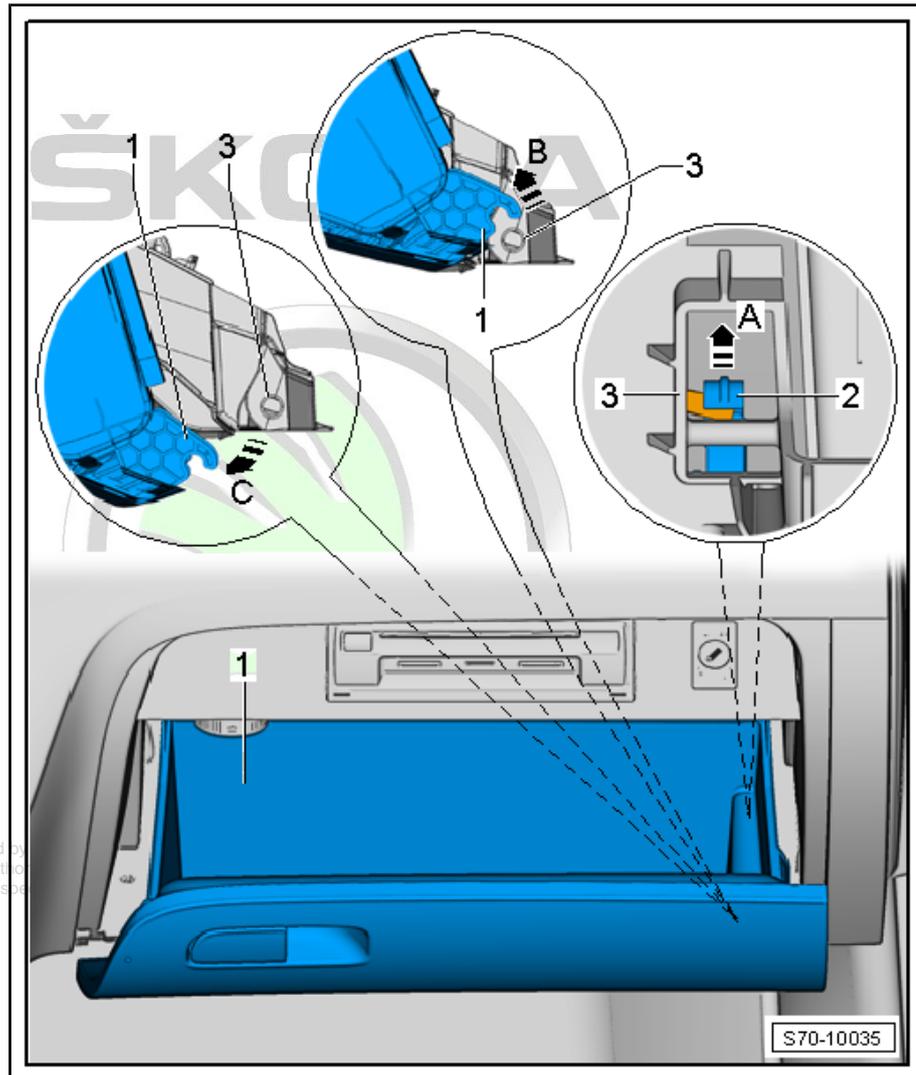
Removing:

- Open the glovebox on the front passenger side.
- Lift the brake cable - 2 - with a screwdriver in direction of arrow
 - A - until it disengages from the hinge in the dash panel
 - 3 -.
- Lift the glovebox in the opened position in the direction of arrow
 - B - until the dash panel comes undone at the lower hinges
 - 3 -.
- Close the lower glovebox in direction of arrow - C - and drop down.
- Remove the glovebox.

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Installing:

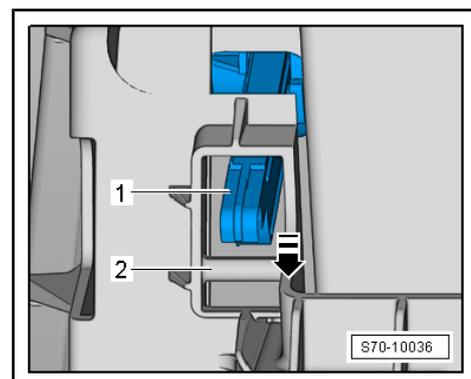
Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

- Insert and lift the glovebox with the upper edge behind the stop for the glovebox support.
- Insert the brake cable - 1 - into the hinge of the dash panel - 2 -.
- Guide the lower section of the glovebox into the hinges of the dash panel.
- In the opened position, press on the underbody of the glovebox in direction of arrow until the glovebox engages into the hinges.



Note

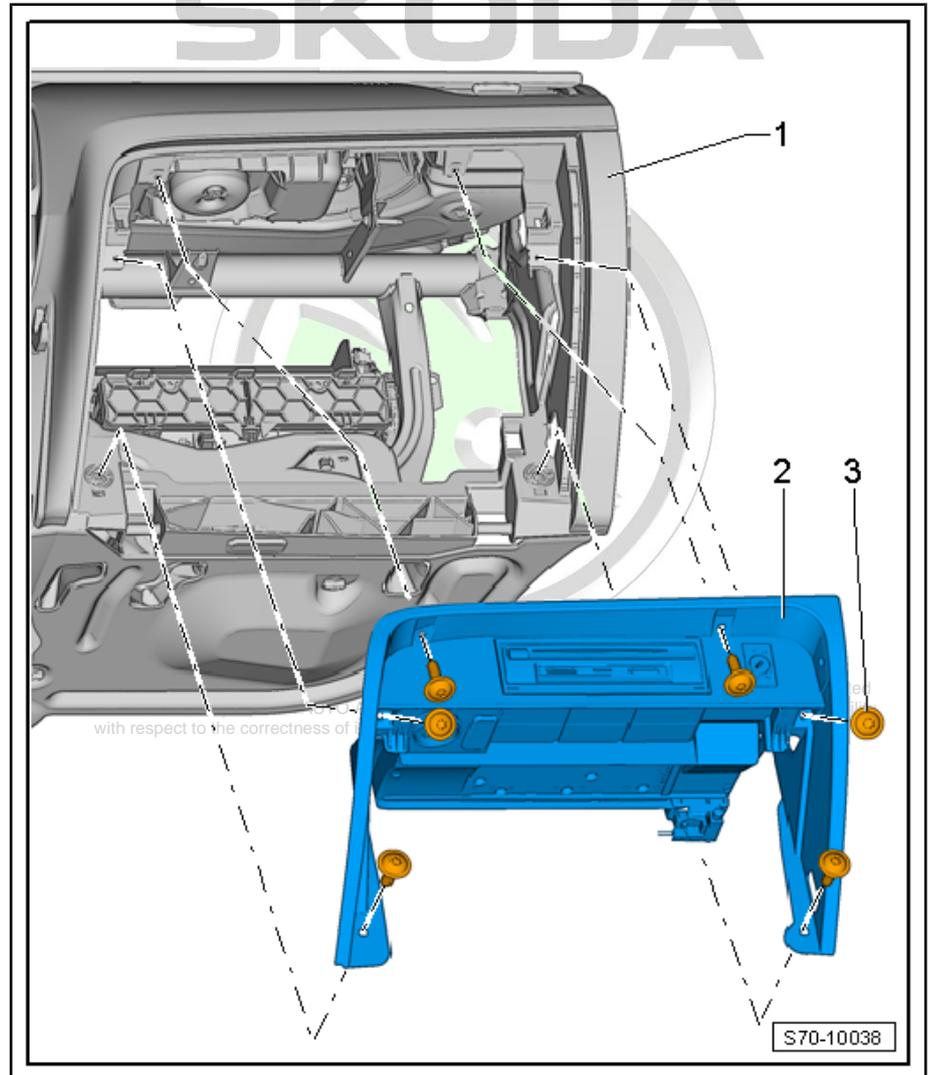
Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.



1.3 Removing and installing passenger side glove compartment support

Removing:

- Remove the glove compartment on front passenger's side
⇒ [page 351](#) .



- Unscrew screws -3- (1.5 Nm).
- By inserting into the vehicle, remove the support - 2 - from the dash panel - 1 -.
- Remove the plug connector for the Infotainment control unit (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) ⇒ Electrical system ; Rep. gr. 91 .
- Remove the supply hose for the air-conditioned glove box and remove the support.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



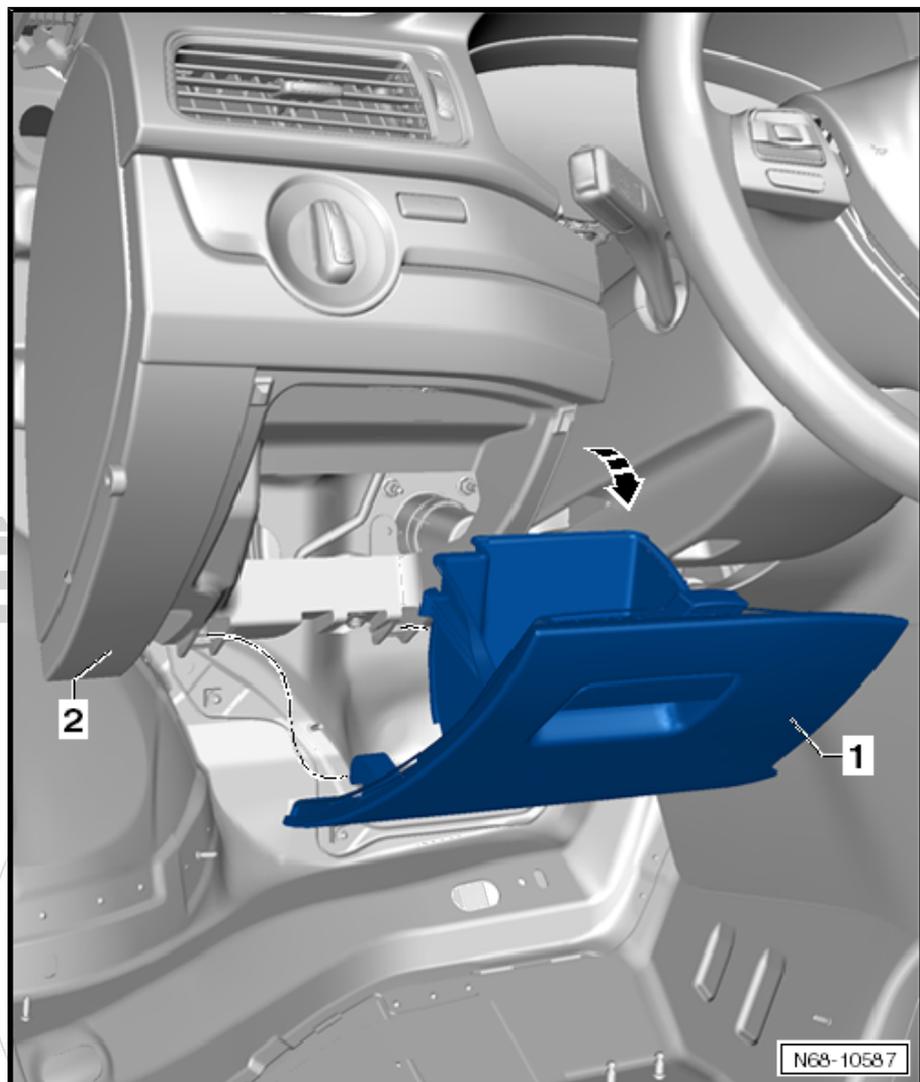
Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

1.4 Removing and installing glovebox on driver's side

Removing:

- Open the glovebox on the driver's side - 1 - in direction of arrow - up to the stop.
- Undo the glovebox - 1 - by raising the stop for the dash panel, e.g. using a screwdriver.
- Fold back the glovebox - 1- behind the stop and remove from the dash panel - 2 -.



Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

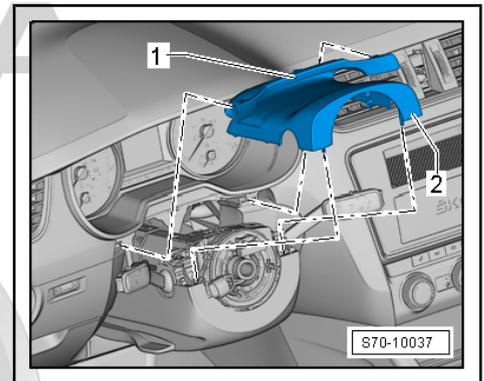
i Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

1.5 Removing and installing the steering column trim panel

Removing:

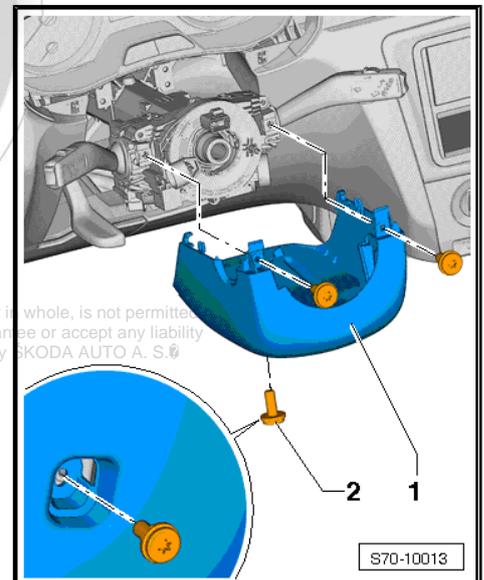
- Slacken the fixing lever of the steering wheel adjustment.
- Pull out the steering column and press it down.
- Remove cover - 1 - from the dash panel insert.
- Loosen the top part of the steering column trim panel -2- from the supports.
- Remove the top part of the steering column trim panel -1-.



- Release the screws from the bottom part of the steering column trim panel - 1 - (1.5 Nm).
- Loosen the bottom part of the steering column trim panel -2- from the supports.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

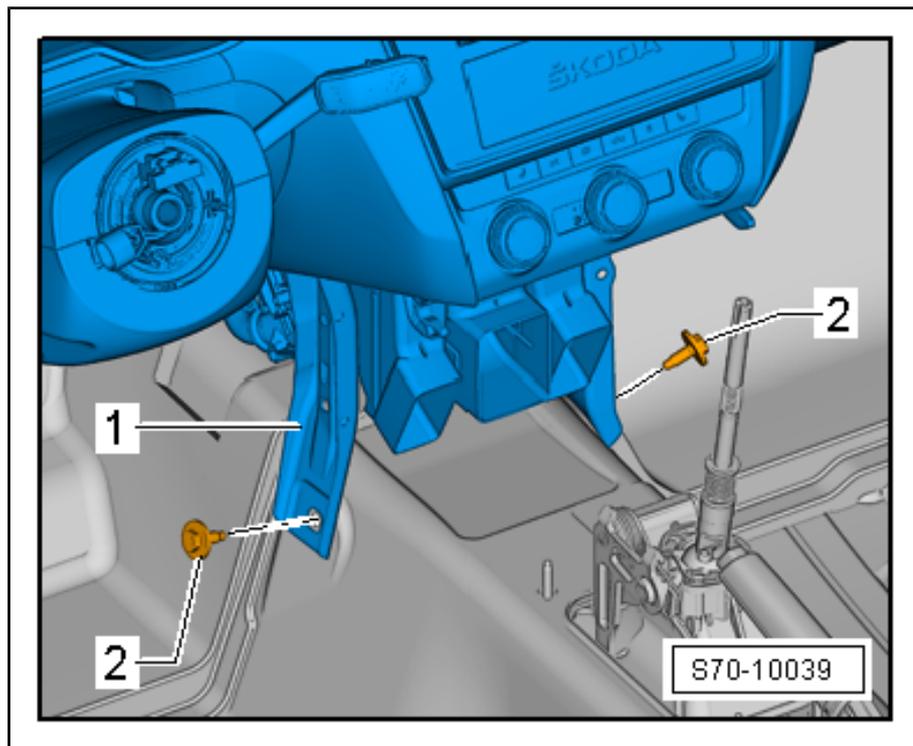


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

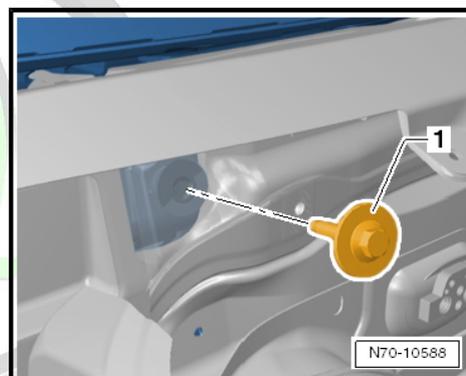
1.6 Removing and installing the central tube of dash panel

Removing:

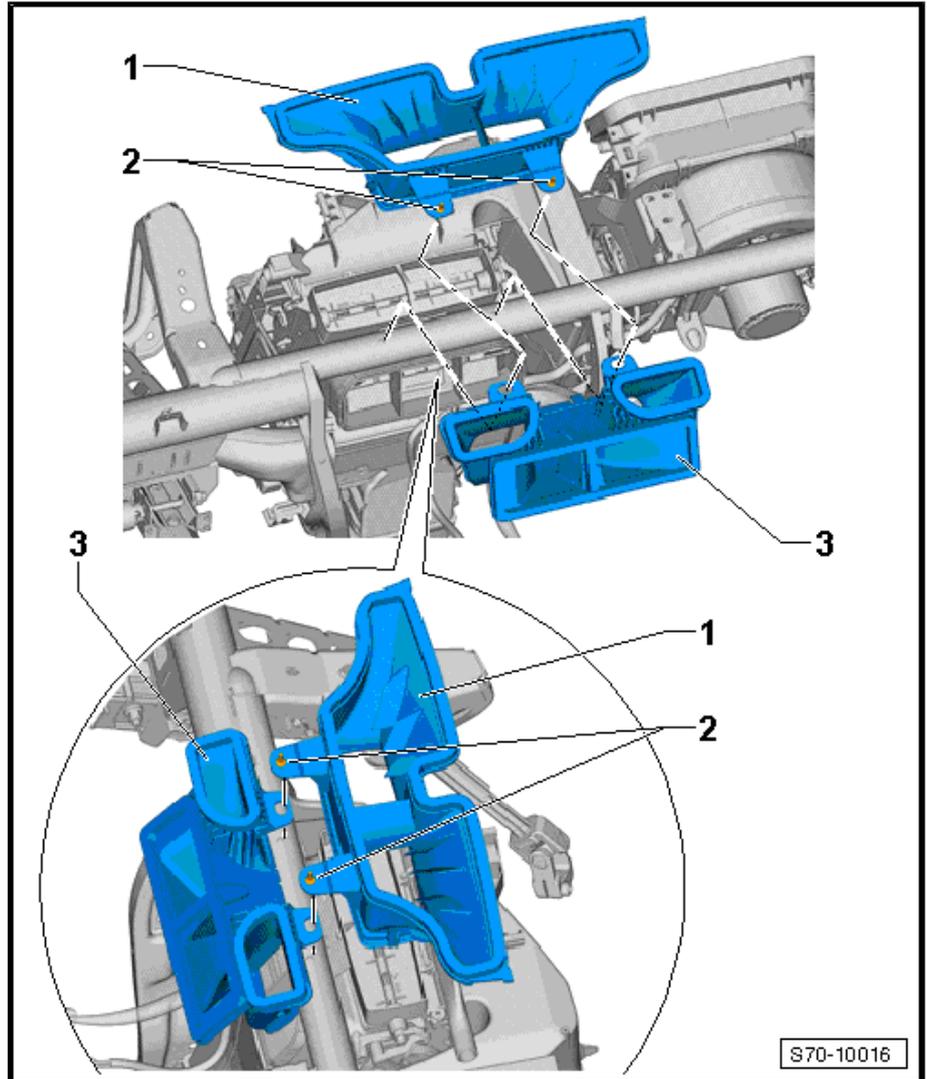
- Removing dash panel => [page 346](#) .
- Release screw -2- (20 Nm).



- Remove the footwell vent on the driver's and front passenger side ⇒ Heating, Air Conditioning; Rep. gr. 80 .
- Remove the screws of the e-box from the central tube and leave the e-box in the central tube as a temporary measure ⇒ Electrical system ; Rep. gr. 97 .
- Remove the steering column assembly from the central pipe ⇒ Chassis; Rep. gr. 48 .
- Disconnect the clips for the electrical lines and ground connections to the central tube.
- Remove the fixing screw for the fan and screw for the heater unit ⇒ Heating, Air Conditioning; Rep. gr. 80 .
- Remove wiper arms and wiper motor ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 92 .
- Remove the plenum chamber cover ⇒ [page 15](#) .
- Release the screw -1- in the plenum chamber on the driver's side (20 Nm).

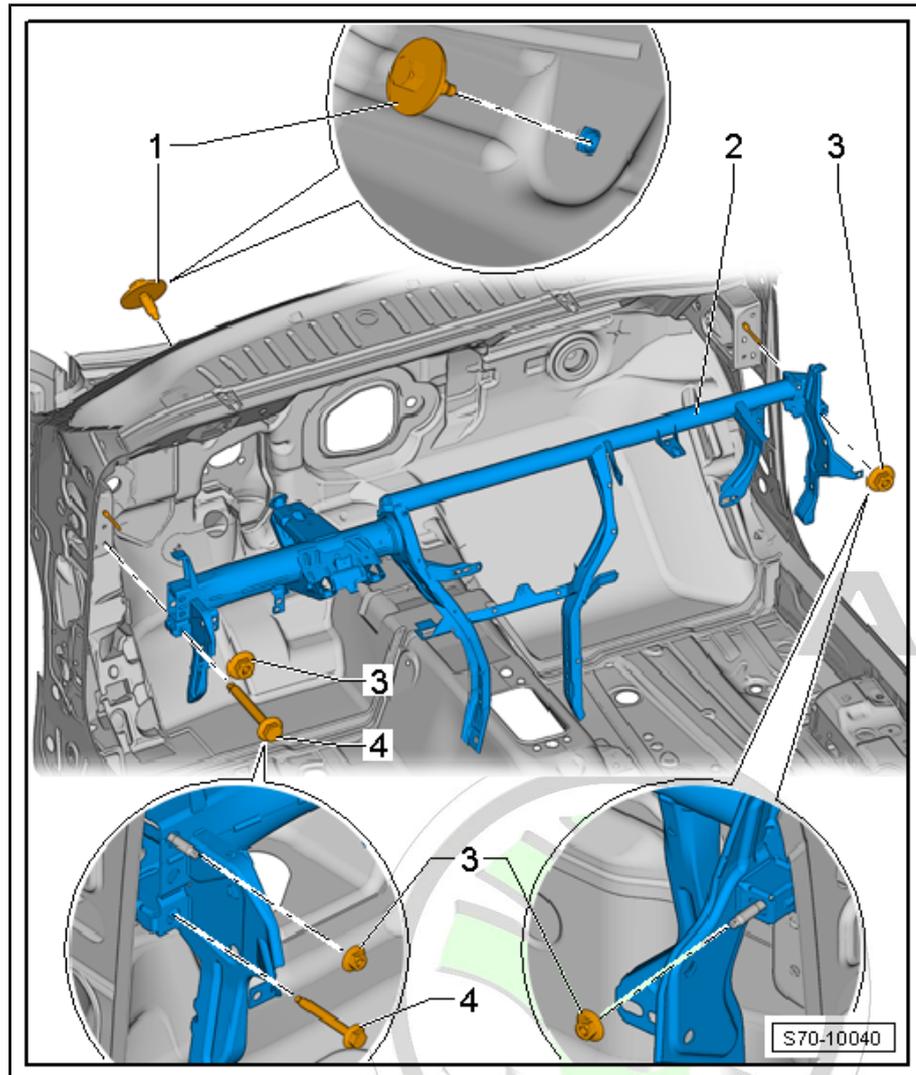


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Press out spreading pins -2-.
- Pull out expanding rivets.
- Remove the intermediate piece -3- ⇒ Heating, Air Conditioning; Rep. gr. 80 .
- Remove air guide duct -1- ⇒ Heating, Air Conditioning; Rep. gr. 80 .
- Release nuts -3- (20 Nm).
- Release screw -4- (20 Nm).





- Remove the central tube - 2 -, do so by disconnecting the e-Box from the central tube.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Note

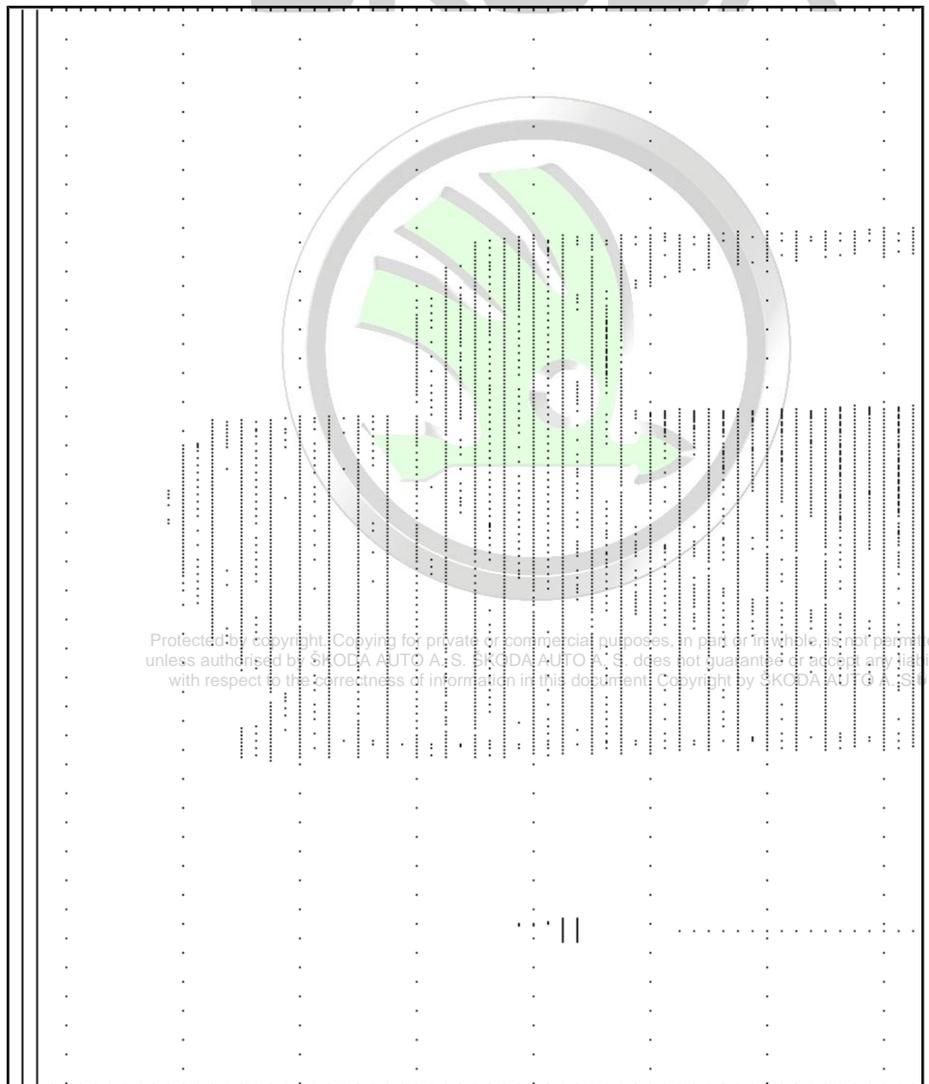
Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

2 Door and side trim panels

2.1 Removing and installing the front door trim panel on the driver's side

Removing:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical components.
- Remove trim -2- for power window lifter ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96 and disconnect plugs -3 and 4-.
- Unclip the trim -6- e.g. using the disassembly wedge - T10383, 3409- .
- Turn the nut -7- by 90° at the bottom side using the open-end spanner SW 10 and unlock the catch peg.
- Unscrew screws -5- (4 Nm).





Caution

When releasing the door trim panel, there is the risk that damage may occur on the fixing elements! To prevent this, the specified location and order of the clip connections to be loosened must absolutely be kept when removing the door trim panel!

- Loosen the door trim panel in the -specified order - out of the clip connections. To do so, use e.g. a wide plastic wedge - T10383/1, T10383- .



- Pull the door trim panel towards the top and out of the window channel.

- Push the Bowden cable -3- on the inside of the door trim panel out of the inner door control -2- in -direction of arrow- and unclip the end piece -1-.
- Disconnect the electrical plug connections from the door trim panel depending on the vehicle equipment.

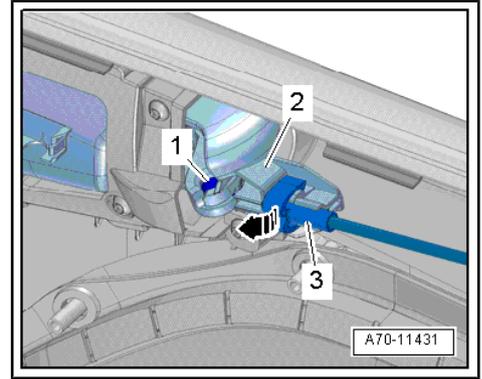
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.



2.2 Removing and installing the rear door trim panel

Removing:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical components.
- Carefully clip the trim -3- out of the door trim panel using e.g. the disassembly wedge - T10383, 3409- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

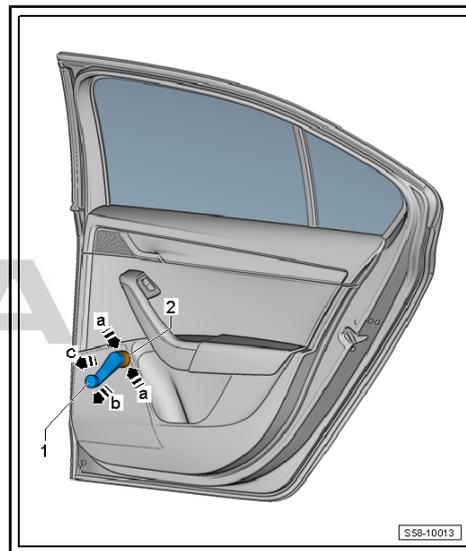


- Unscrew screws -2- (4 Nm).
- Turn the nut -4 - by 90° at the bottom side using the open-end spanner SW 10 and unlock the catch peg.

Vehicles with window crank:

- Remove window crank.
- To do so, press the detention ring - 2 - in direction of arrow - a -.
- Slide detention ring - 2 - in direction of arrow - b -.
- Remove window crank - 1 - in direction of arrow - c - from the shaft.

Continued for all vehicles:



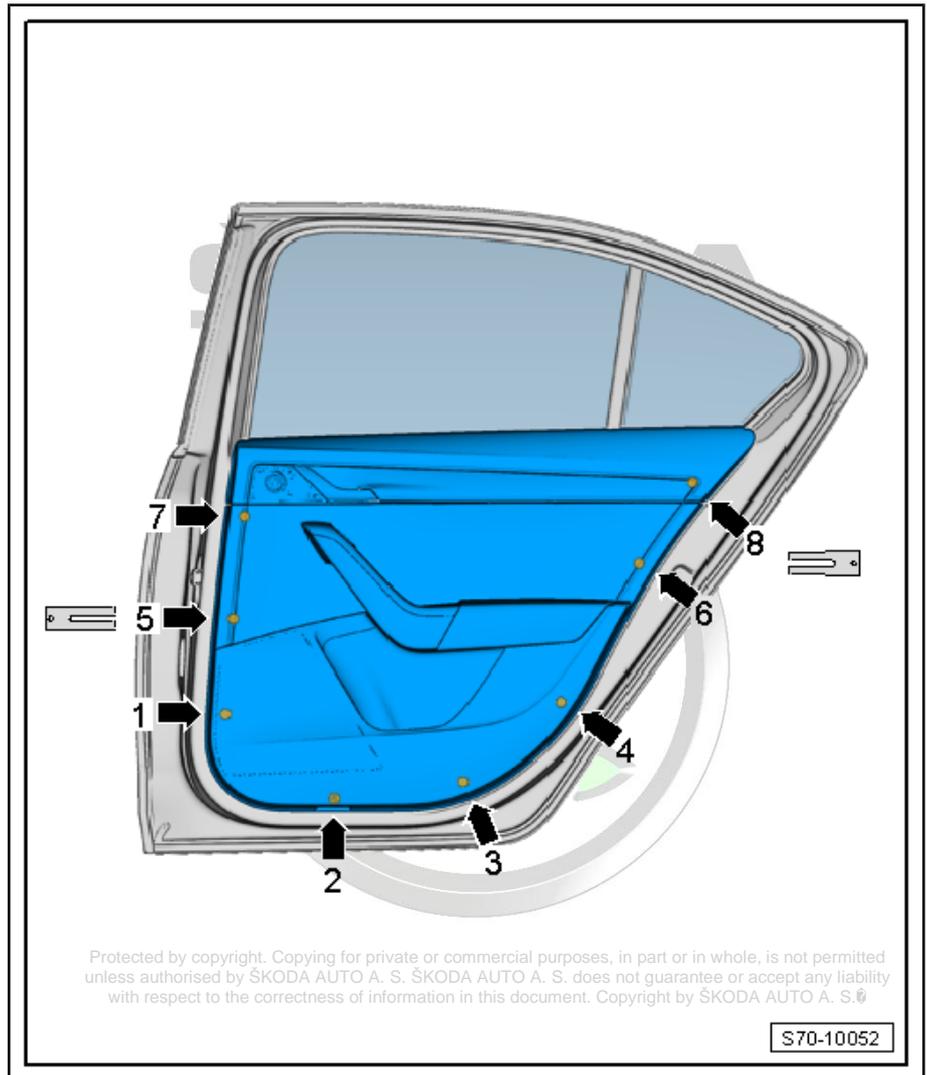
- Turn the nut -7 - by 90° at the bottom side using the open-end spanner SW 10 and unlock the catch peg.
- Unscrew screws -5- (4 Nm).



Caution

When releasing the door trim panel, there is the risk that damage may occur on the fixing elements! To prevent this, the specified location and order of the clip connections to be loosened must absolutely be kept when removing the door trim panel!

- Loosen the door trim panel in the -specified order - out of the clip connections. To do so, use e.g. a wide plastic wedge - T10383/1, T10383- .



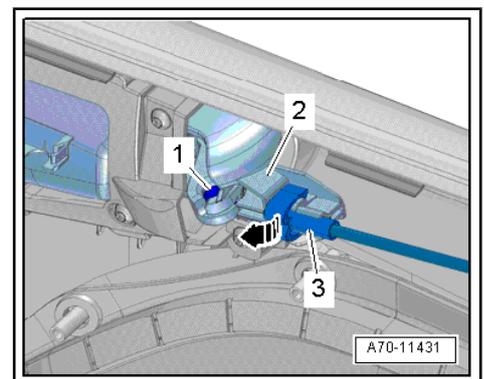
- Pull the door trim panel towards the top and out of the window channel.
- Push the Bowden cable -3- on the inside of the door trim panel out of the inner door control -2- in -direction of arrow- and unclip the end piece -1-.
- Disconnect the plug connections of the wiring looms from the door trim panel depending on the vehicle equipment.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

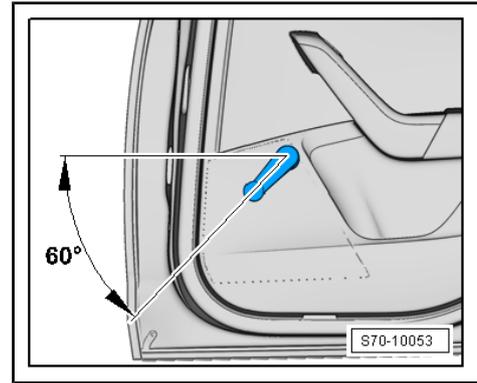
Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.





On vehicles with manual windows, the window crank, when the window is closed, is tilted downwards from the water level at an angle of 60°.



ŠKODA



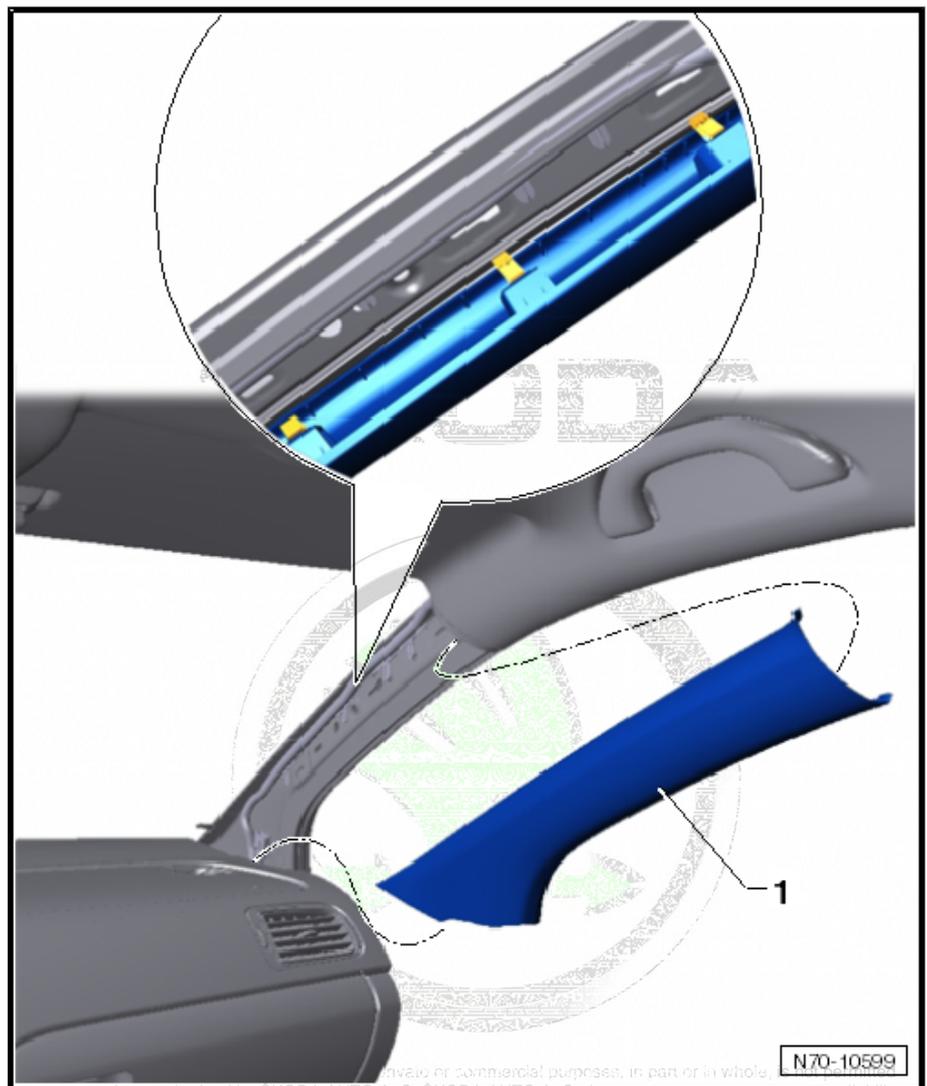
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

3 Trim panels of pillars

3.1 Removing and installing top trim panel of pillar A

Removing:

- Unlock the A pillar trim panel - 1 - by unclipping it from the mounts on the A pillar.
- Move the trim upwards along the A pillar trim and remove.



with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

Installing:

- Firstly, install trim panels behind the fin on the dash panel.
- Close the trim panel to the pillar until the clips engage.

**Note**

- ◆ *Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.*
- ◆ *Ensure that the trim panel is located in the double-braided strip of the door seal after the installation.*

3.2 Removing and installing bottom trim panel of pillar A on the driver's side

Removing:

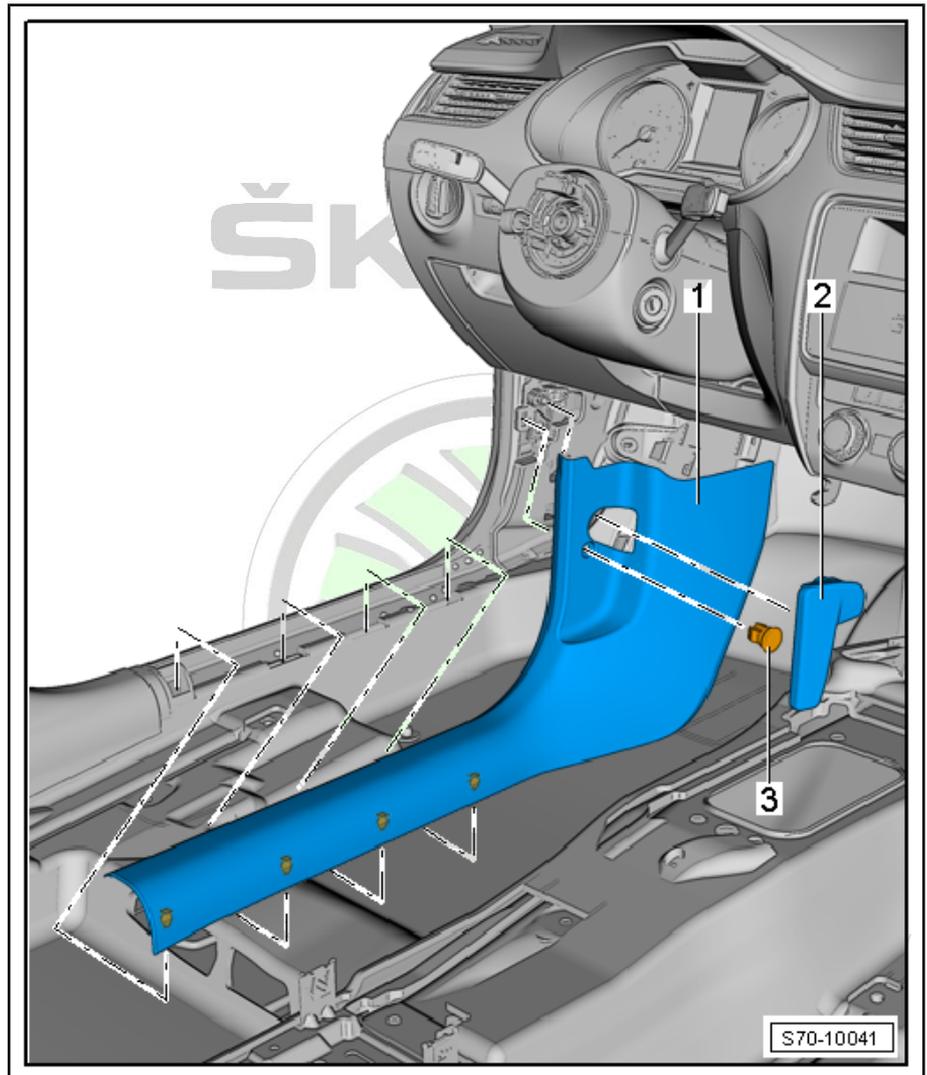
- Remove the operating lever for the front flap - 2 - ⇒ [page 35](#) .
- Remove the cap for the straddling dowels.
- Remove the straddling dowels - 3 - .
- Undo trim securing mechanism -1- by folding it back into the vehicle.
- Clip out the trim - 1 - towards the top and out of the mounts in the body bottom side rail and lower B-pillar trim.
- Remove the trim panel.

**Note**

Before the installation, check the straddling dowel -3- for damage, if necessary replace.

ŠKODA





Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

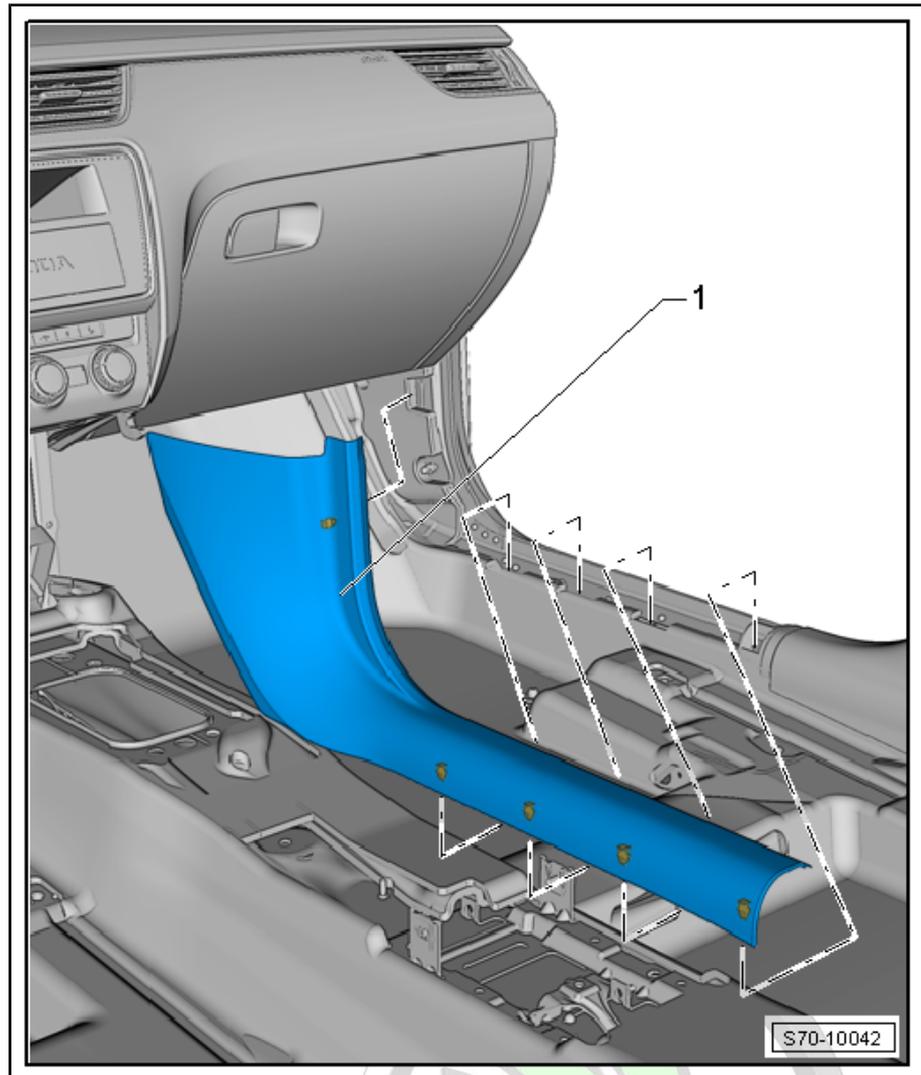
Note

Ensure that the trim panel is located in the double-braided strip of the door seal after the installation.

3.3 Removing and installing bottom trim panel of pillar A on the front passenger side

Removing:

- Undo trim securing mechanism -1- by folding it back into the vehicle.
- Clip out the trim - 1 - towards the top and out of the mounts in the body bottom side rail and lower B-pillar trim.



- Remove the trim panel.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

- ◆ *Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.*
- ◆ *Ensure that the trim panel is located in the double-braided strip of the door seal after the installation.*

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

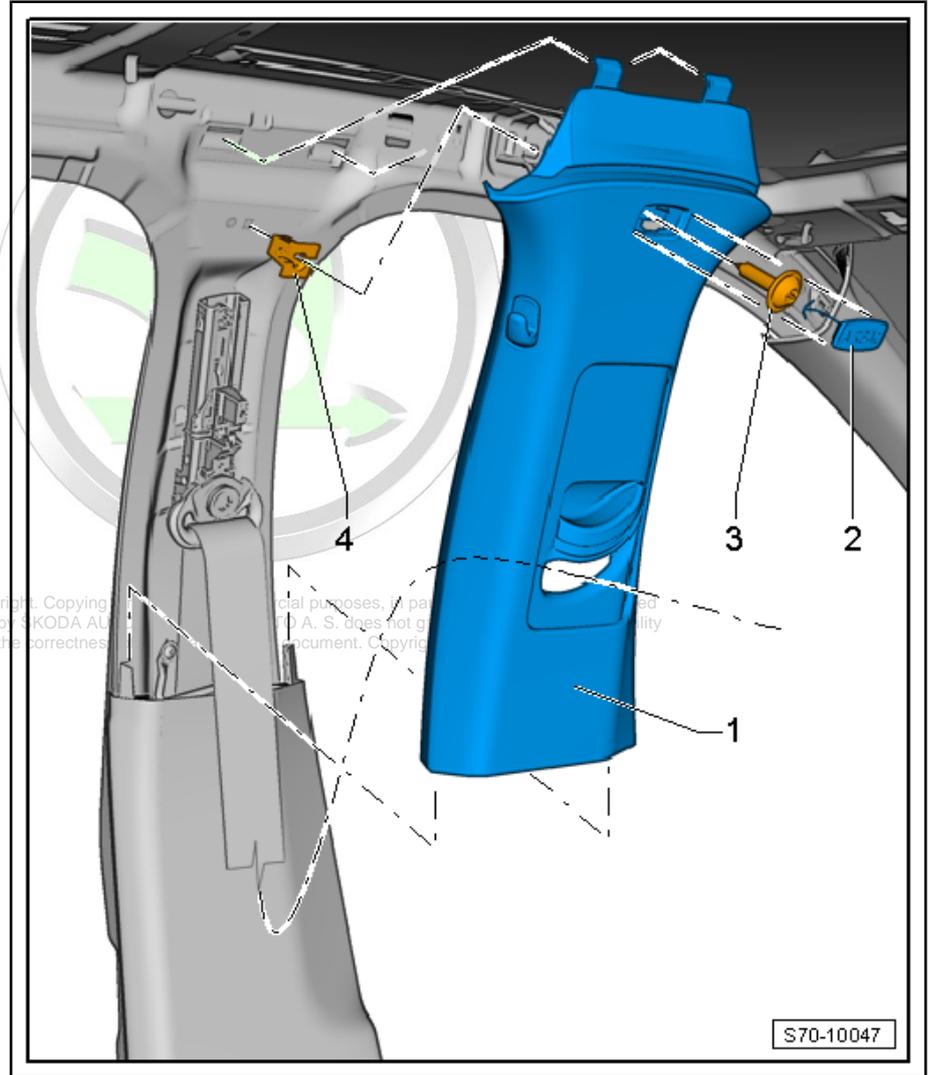
3.4 Removing and installing top B-pillar trim panel

Removing:

- Unclip the cover -2- for the screw marked or unmarked with “airbag” (depending upon vehicle equipment).
- Release screw -3- (1.5 Nm).
- Remove trim - 1 - from the cable on the lower B pillar trim.

- Push the trim panel -1- at the top end out of the supports in the roof.

ŠKODA





- Release screw for front seat belt -1- (40 Nm).
- Run the seat belt through the opening in the trim panel.
- Remove the trim panel from the vehicle.

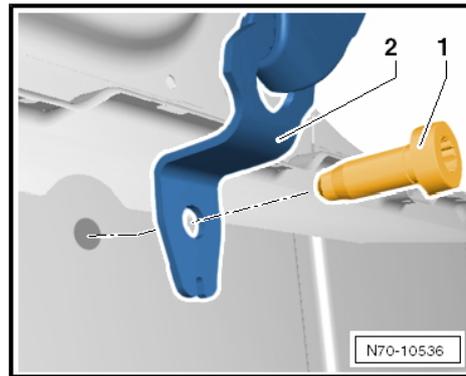
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- After attaching the trim panel, ensure that the trim panel is located in the double-braided strip of the door seal.



Note

- ◆ *Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.*
- ◆ *On vehicles with seat belt height adjuster, ensure before fastening that the seat belt height adjuster is located at the shell and the slider of the seat belt height adjuster is in the top position at the trim panel.*
- ◆ *After the installation has been performed, carry out a functional test of the seat belt height adjuster.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and has unobstructed movement.*

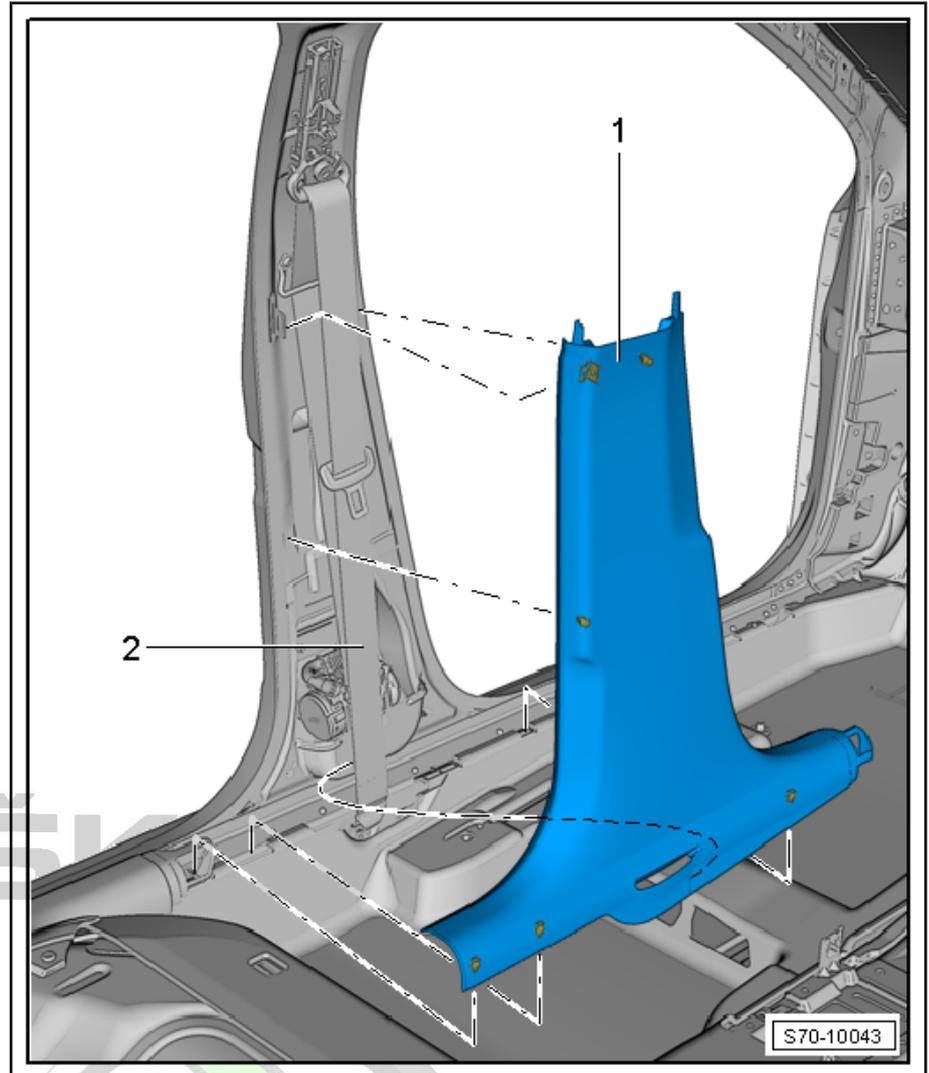


3.5 Removing and installing bottom B-pillar trim panel

Removing:

- Remove top trim panel of B pillar ⇒ [page 368](#) .
- Unclip the upper part of the lower trim - 1 - from the B pillar in direction of the vehicle interior.
- Lift rear part of the lower A pillar trim or remove the trim ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Unclip the lower trim - 1 - towards the top and out of the bottom side rail and wheel house trim.
- Separate the lower trim underneath the belt's and run the belt - 2 - out of the trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of SKODA AUTO A. S. SKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. The publisher is not responsible for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by SKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Carry out the following tasks:

- After installing the trim panels, ensure that the trim panels are located in the double-braided strip of the door seal.
- Check whether the bottom B-pillar trim panel and the A pillar trim panel and wheel house trim are clipped together and fitted.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

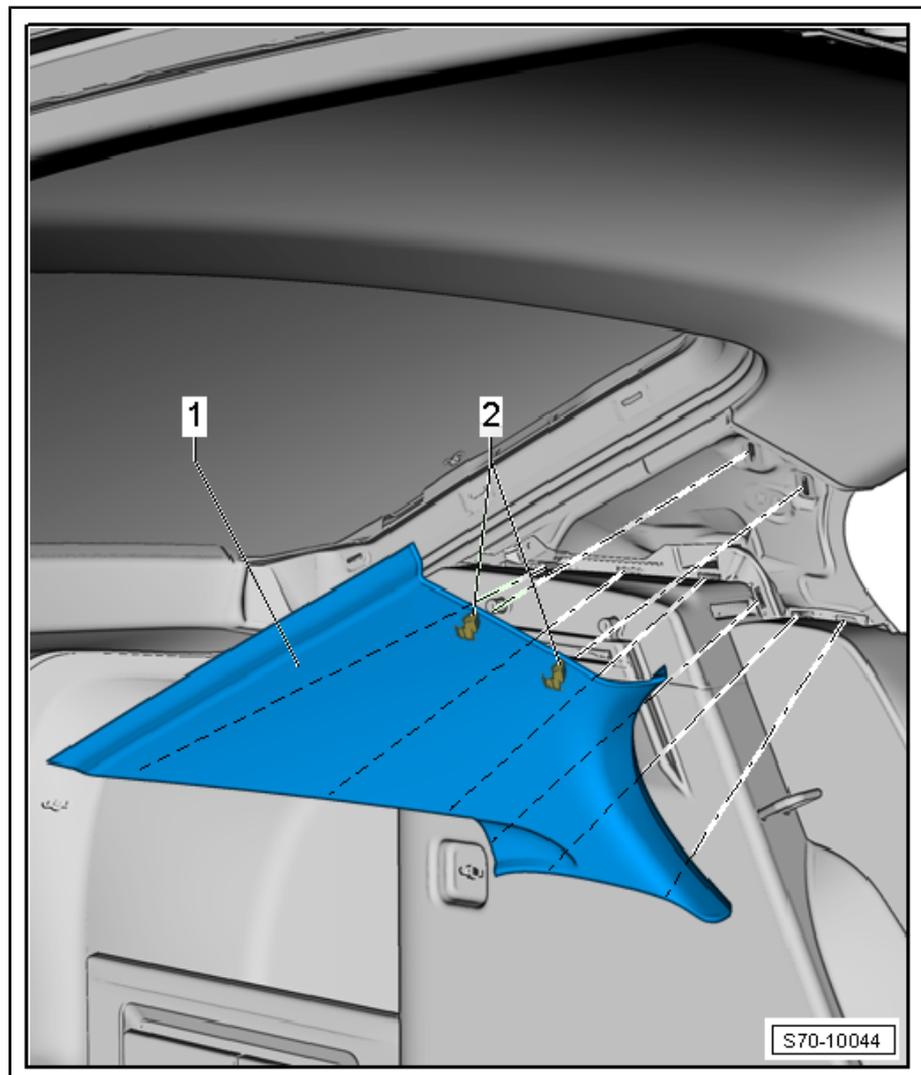


Note

- ◆ Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.
- ◆ On vehicles with seat belt height adjuster, ensure before installing that the seat belt height adjuster is located at the shell and the slider of the seat belt height adjuster is in the top position at the trim panel.
- ◆ After the installation has been performed, carry out a functional test of the seat belt height adjuster.
- ◆ Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and has unobstructed movement.

3.6 Removing and installing trim panel of pillar C

Removing:



- Loosen the C-pillar trim panel -1- in the front area out of the double-braided strip of the door seal.

- Loosen from the tailgate seal in the rear area.
- Unclip the trim panel from the holding clamps - 2 -.
- Push the guides of the C-pillar trim panel out of the luggage compartment trim panel and take the trim panel out of the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

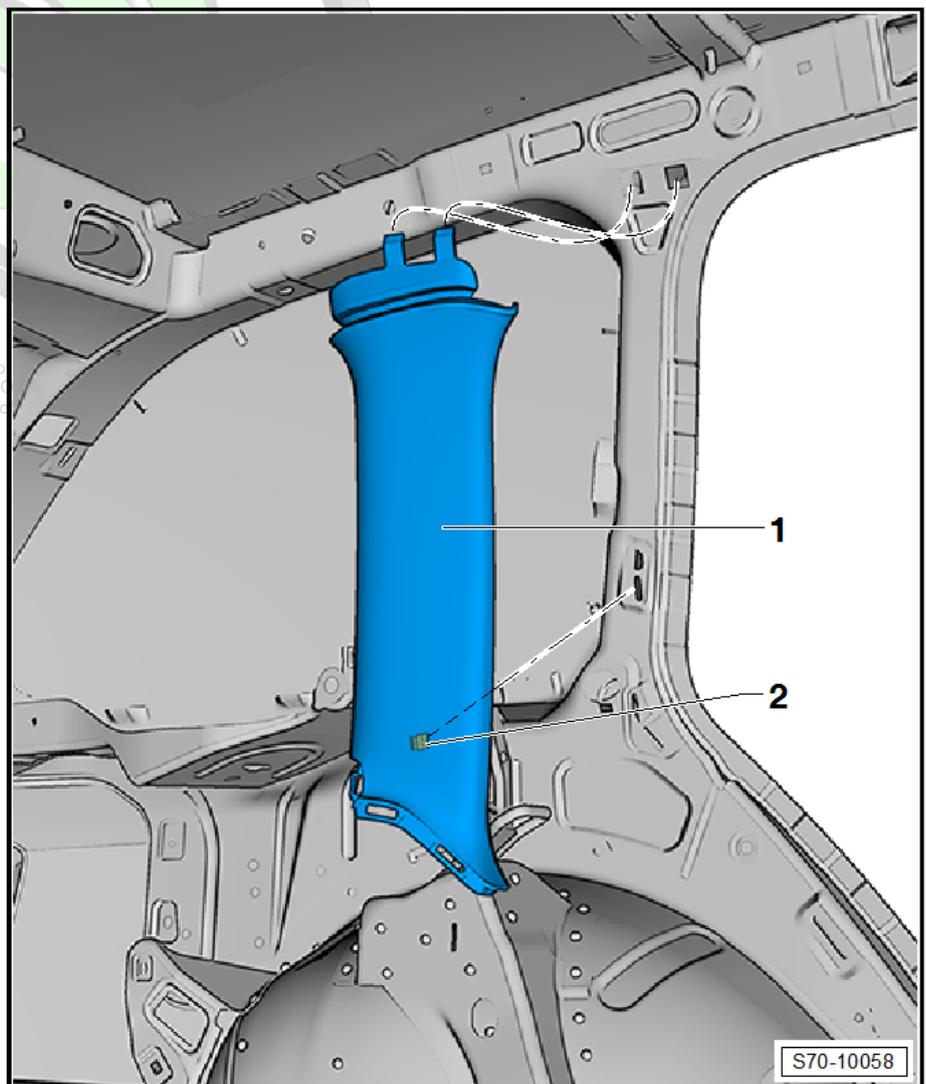


ŠKODA

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

- After installing the trim panel, ensure that the trim panel is located in the double-braided strip of the door seal.

3.7 Removing and installing the top C pillar trim panel (Octavia III - Combi)



Protected by copyright. Copying for
unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO
with respect to the correctness of

Removing:

- Remove bottom wheel house trim from C pillar ⇒ [page 377](#) .



- Partially remove the side trim in the luggage compartment
⇒ [page 390](#) so that the top C pillar trim can be unhooked.
- Unclip trim panel - 1 - from clip - 2 -.
- Push the guides of the C pillar trim panel out of the top openings in the bodyshell and take the trim panel out of the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

- After installing the trim panel, ensure that the trim panel is located in the double-braided strip of the door seal.

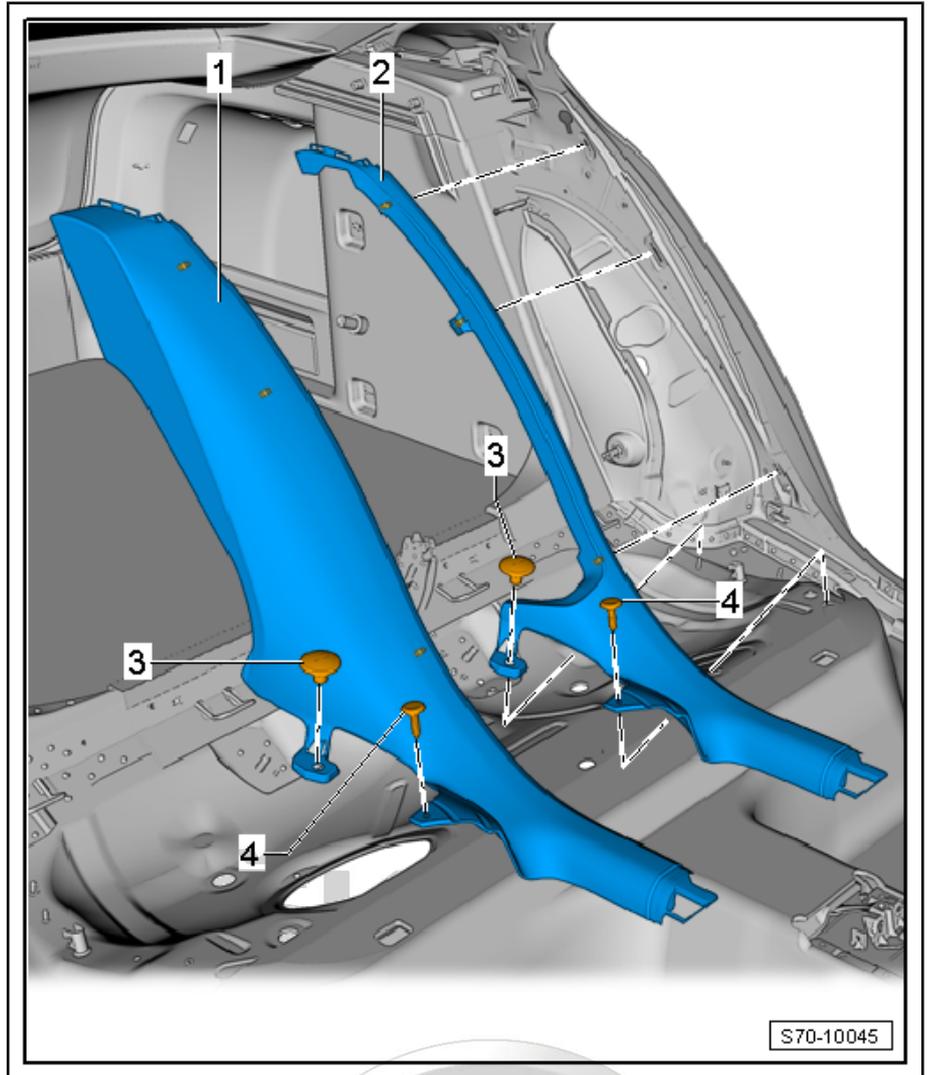
3.8 Removing and installing the wheel house trim on the C pillar



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

- ◆ *To provide a clearer illustration, the seat bench and the backrest are not shown in the illustration.*
- ◆ *Different trim version for vehicles with a side airbag - 2 -.*



Removing:

- Remove the seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .

Vehicles with side airbag:



WARNING

- Remove side airbag ⇒ [page 321](#) .

Continued for all vehicles:

- Remove plastic rivet - 4 -.
- Remove plastic nuts - 3 -.
- Remove holding clamps from the mounts on the body by pulling off the trim into the vehicle.



Note

When removing the wheel house trim, set the seat backrest into a suitable position.



- Lift rear part of the lower B pillar trim or remove the trim
⇒ [page 370](#) .
- Unscrew wheel house trim - 1 - or - 2 - from the lower B pillar trim and remove.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

**Note**

- ◆ *Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.*
- ◆ *Ensure that the wheel house trim panel is placed in the double-braided strip of the door seal after the installation.*

Vehicles with side airbag:**WARNING**

- Install the side airbag ⇒ [page 321](#) .

ŠKODA

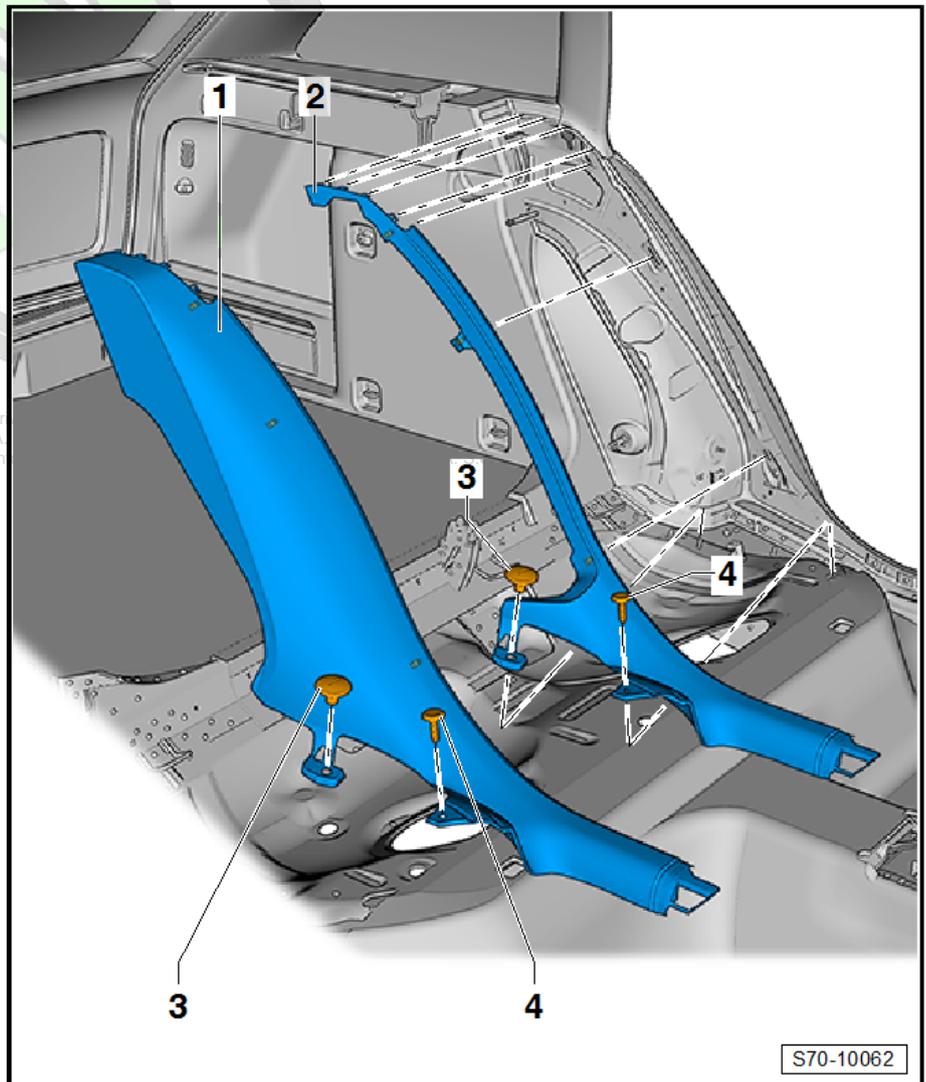


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

4 Removing and installing the wheel house trim of the C pillar (Octavia III - Combi)

Note

- ◆ To provide a clearer illustration, the seat bench and the backrest are not shown in the illustration.
- ◆ Different trim version for vehicles with a side airbag - 2 -.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted without prior written permission from SKODA AUTO A.S. with respect to the correctness of information.

Removing:

- Remove the seat bench => [page 412](#) .

Vehicles with side airbag:

	WARNING
--	----------------



- Remove side airbag ⇒ [page 321](#) .

Continued for all vehicles:

- Remove plastic rivet - 4 -.
- Remove plastic nuts - 3 -.
- Remove holding clamps from the mounts on the body by pulling off the trim into the vehicle.

**Note**

When removing the wheel house trim, set the seat backrest into a suitable position.

- Lift rear part of the lower B pillar trim or remove the trim ⇒ [page 370](#) .
- Unscrew wheel house trim - 1 - or - 2 - from the lower B pillar trim and remove.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

**Note**

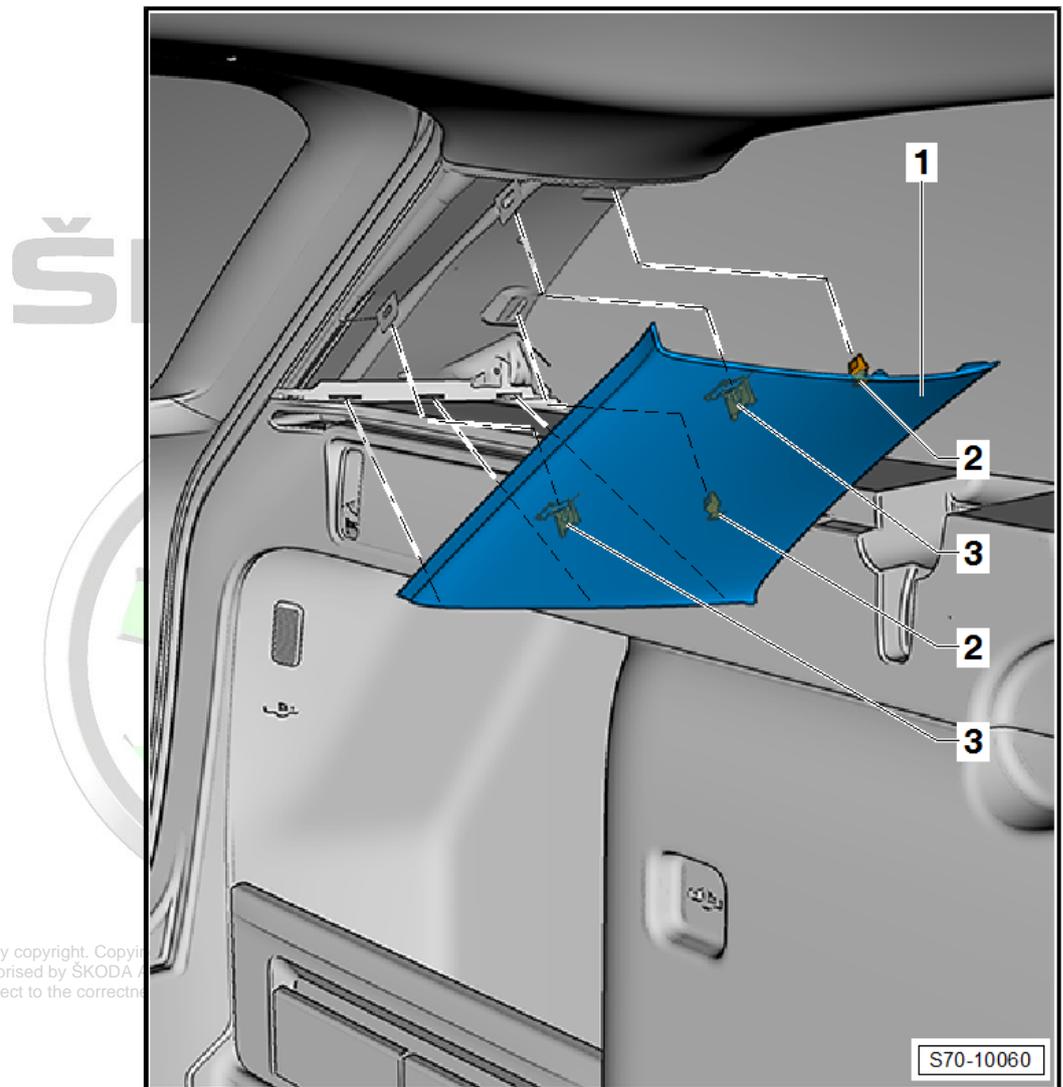
- ◆ *Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.*
- ◆ *Ensure that the wheel house trim panel is placed in the double-braided strip of the door seal after the installation.*

Vehicles with side airbag:**WARNING**

- Install the side airbag ⇒ [page 321](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

5 Removing and installing the D column trim (Octavia III - Combi)



Removing:

- Partially remove the tailgate release switch in the area of the D column trim panel.
- Unclip the brackets on the D column trim panel - 2 - in sequence.
- Unclip brackets - 3 -.
- Slide out the trim panel from the side luggage compartment trim panel and take out of the vehicle.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

**Note**

- ◆ *Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.*
- ◆ *Ensure that the D column trim panel is placed in the D column trim panel after the installation.*

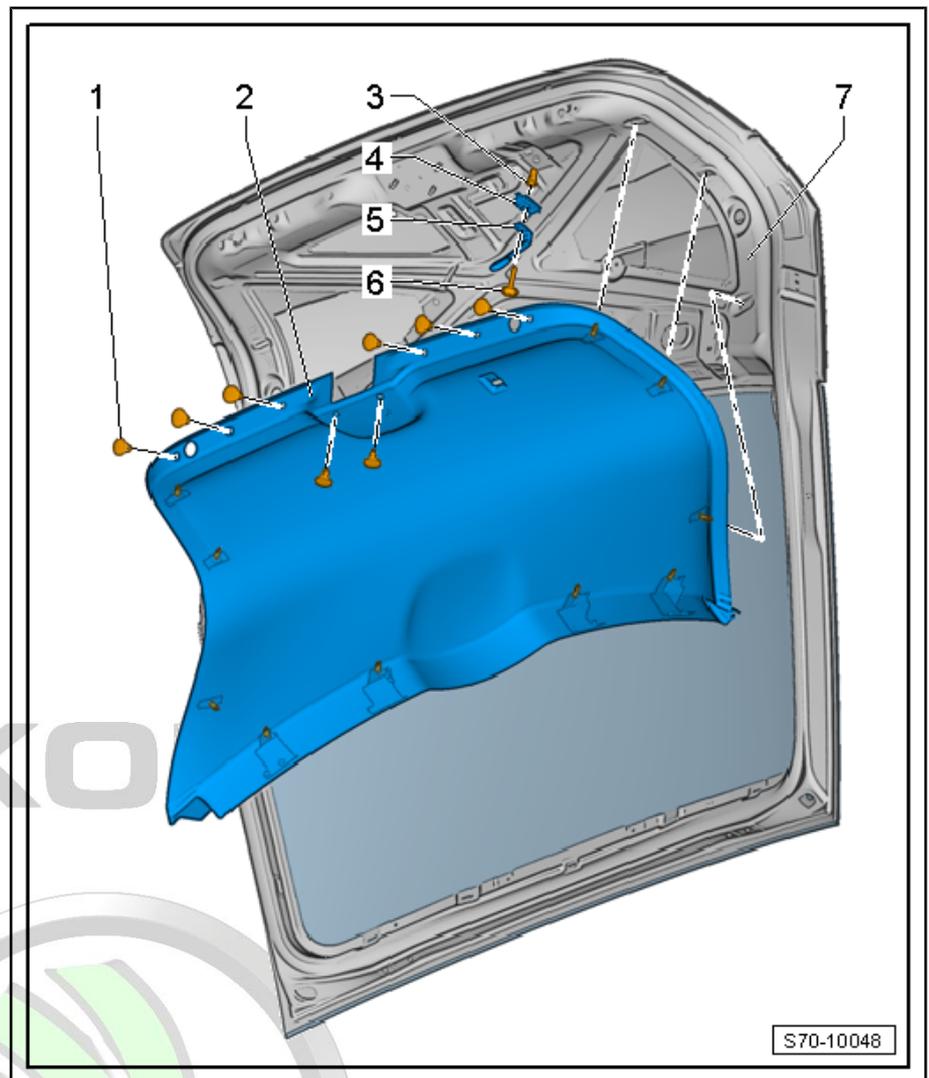
ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

6 Tailgate trim panel

6.1 Removing and installing the tailgate trim panel



Removing:

- Release screws -6- and remove the pull handle -5-.
- Remove cover for rear window wiper motor ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 92 .
- Unclip the plastic clips - 1 - in succession.
- Remove the trim panel - 2 - from the door - 7 -.

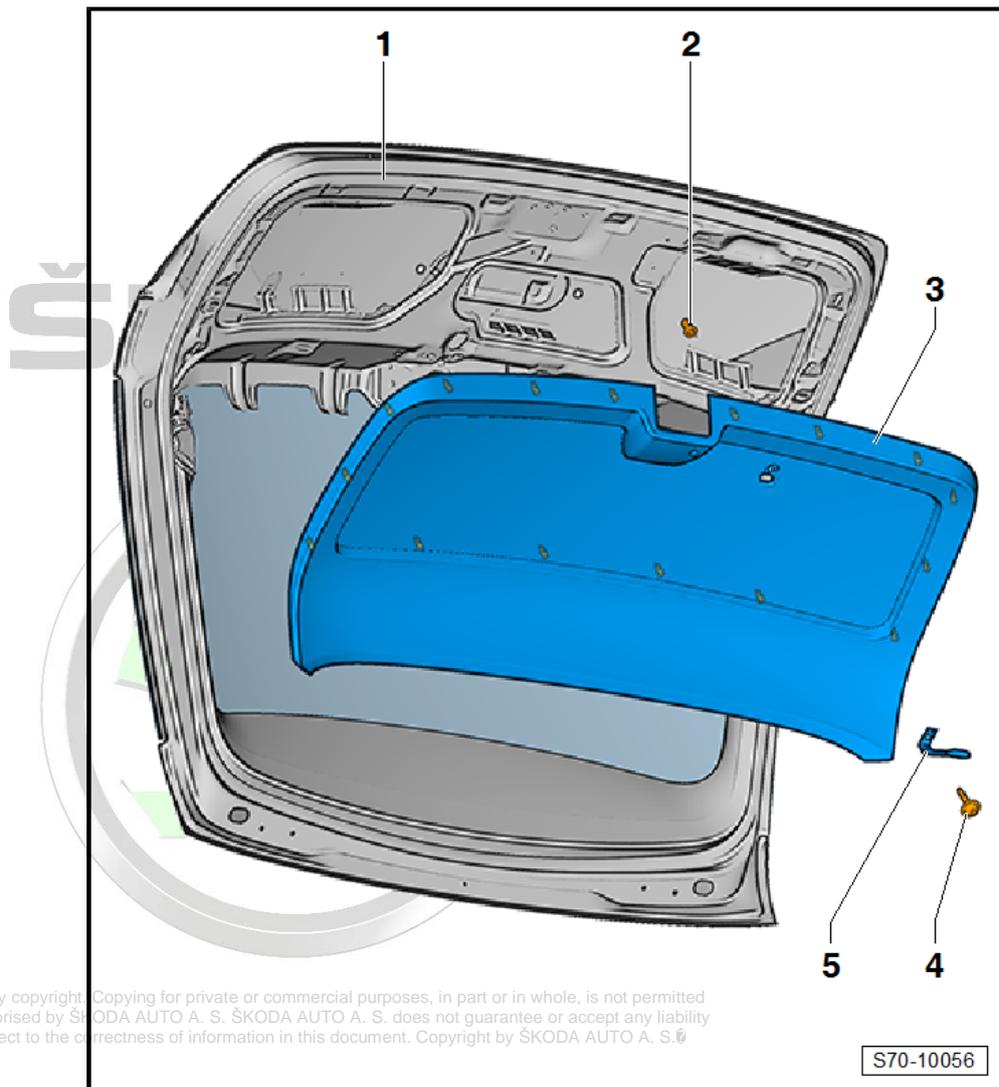
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. ŠKODA does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©


Note

- ◆ Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.
- ◆ When installing, re-fit the trim on the tailgate into the door lock guide.

6.2 Removing and installing the tailgate trim (Octavia III - Combi)


Removing:

- Release screws -4- and remove the pull handle -5-.
- Unclip the brackets on the tailgate - 1 - in sequence.
- Plastic clip for bolt - 4 - .
- Remove the trim panel -3- from the tailgate.

Installing:

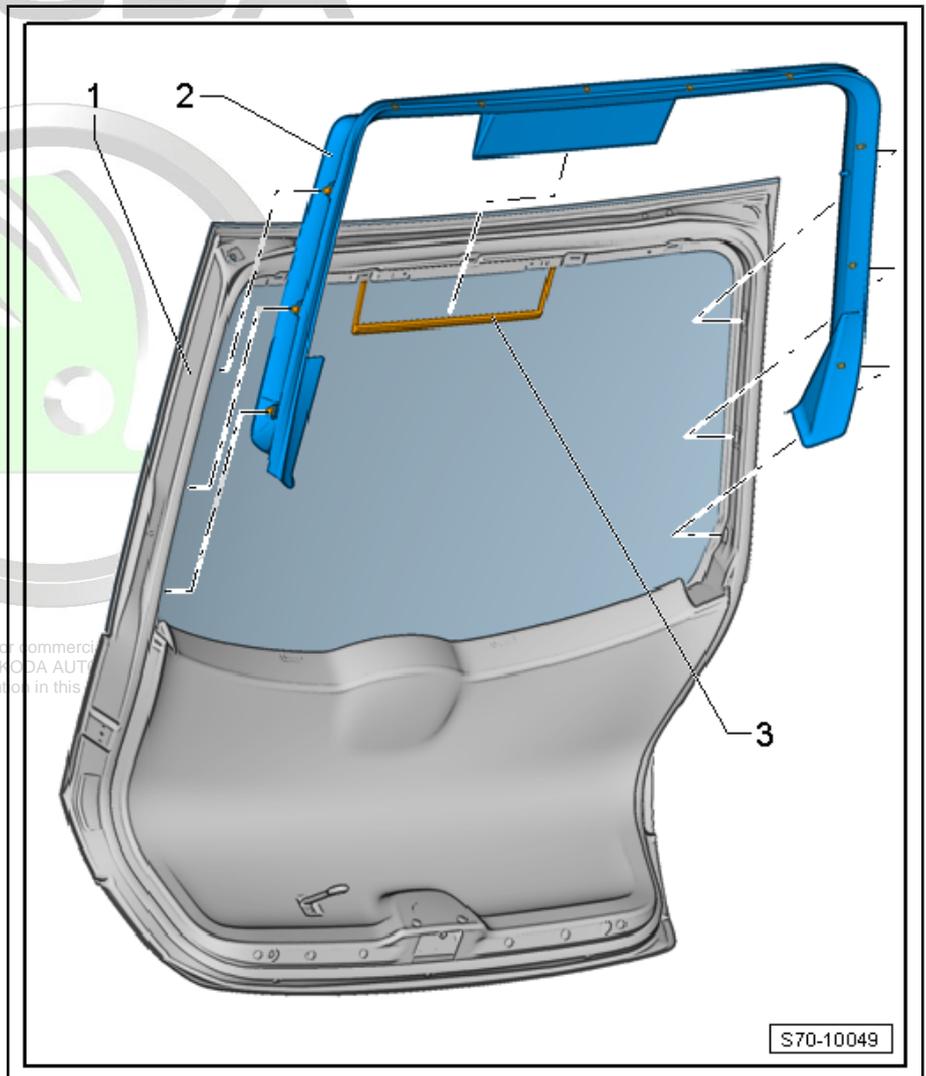
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

i Note

- ◆ Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.
- ◆ When installing, re-fit the trim on the tailgate into the door lock guide.

6.3 Removing and installing the tailgate trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use without the written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. is not permitted with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Removing:

- Unclip the holding clamps on the sides of the door.
- Unclip the holding clamps on the upper side of the door.
- Remove the trim panel.

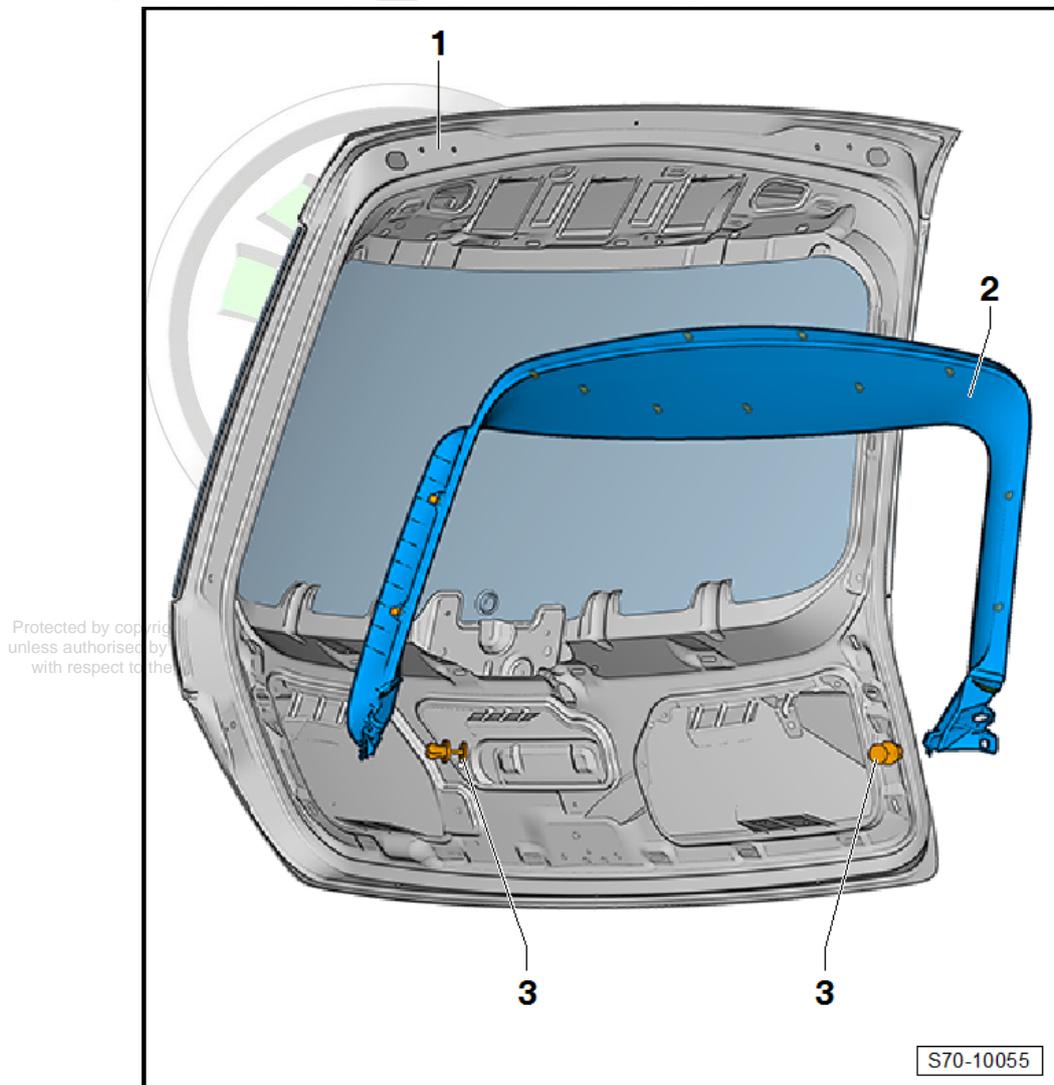
Installing:

- Insert the trim panel at the cover frame for the brake light -3-.
- Clip the frame at the upper side of the door.
- Insert the trim panel for the tailgate underneath the ends of the trim.
- Clip the window trim at the sides.

**Note**

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

6.4 Removing and installing the tailgate trim (Octavia III - Combi)

**Removing:**

- Removing trim panel for tailgate ⇒ [page 382](#) .
- Unscrew and remove the air guide pipe - 3 -.
- Unclip the holding clamps on the sides of the flap - 1 -.
- Unclip the holding clamps on the top side of the flap - 1 -.
- Remove the trim panel -2-.

Installing:

- Clip the frame at the upper side of the flap.
- Clip the window trim at the sides.
- Secure the flap with plastic rivets. - 3 - .

 Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

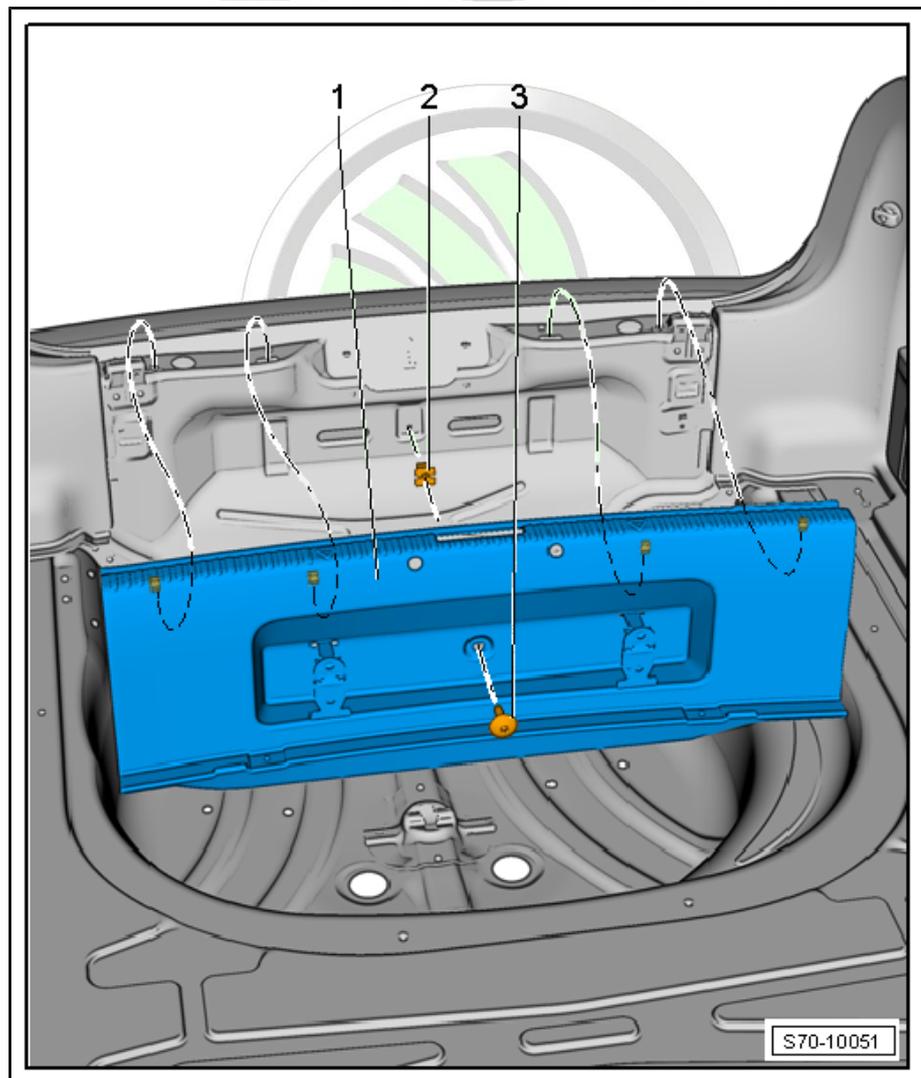


7 Luggage compartment trim panels

7.1 Removing and installing the tailgate/luggage compartment cover

Removing:

ŠKODA



- Unscrew screw -3-.
- Partially remove the tailgate release switch in the area of the tailgate/luggage compartment cover.
- Remove the luggage compartment boot lip - 1 - towards the top and out of lock carrier, this releases the holding clamps.

Installing:

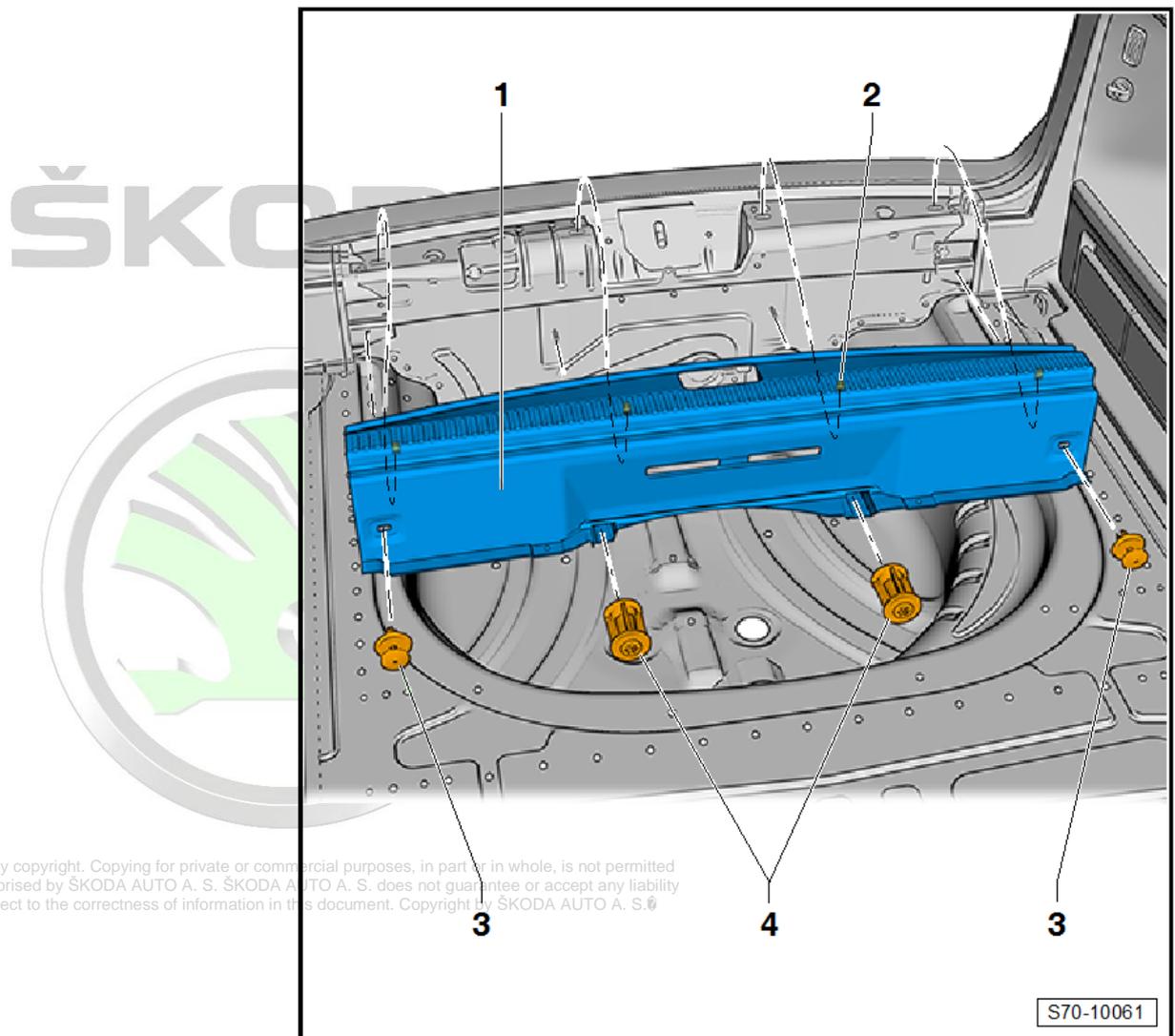
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

i Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

- Ensure that the tailgate/luggage compartment cover is located in the double-braided strip of the tailgate seal after the installation.

7.2 Removing and installing the tailgate/luggage compartment cover (Octavia III - Combi)



- Unscrew and remove the plastic rivets - 3 -.
- Remove screws -4- (2.5 Nm).
- Remove the luggage compartment boot lip - 1 - towards the top and out of lock carrier, this releases the holding clamps - 2 -.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

- Ensure that the tailgate/luggage compartment cover is located in the double-braided strip of the tailgate seal after the installation.

7.3 Removing and installing top part of side luggage compartment trim panel

1 - Top part of side luggage compartment trim panel

Removing:

- Remove wheel house trim panel ⇒ [page 374](#) .
- Remove the trim panel of pillar C ⇒ [page 372](#) .
- Unscrew screw -1-.
- Unclip the trim panel out of the supports of the body.

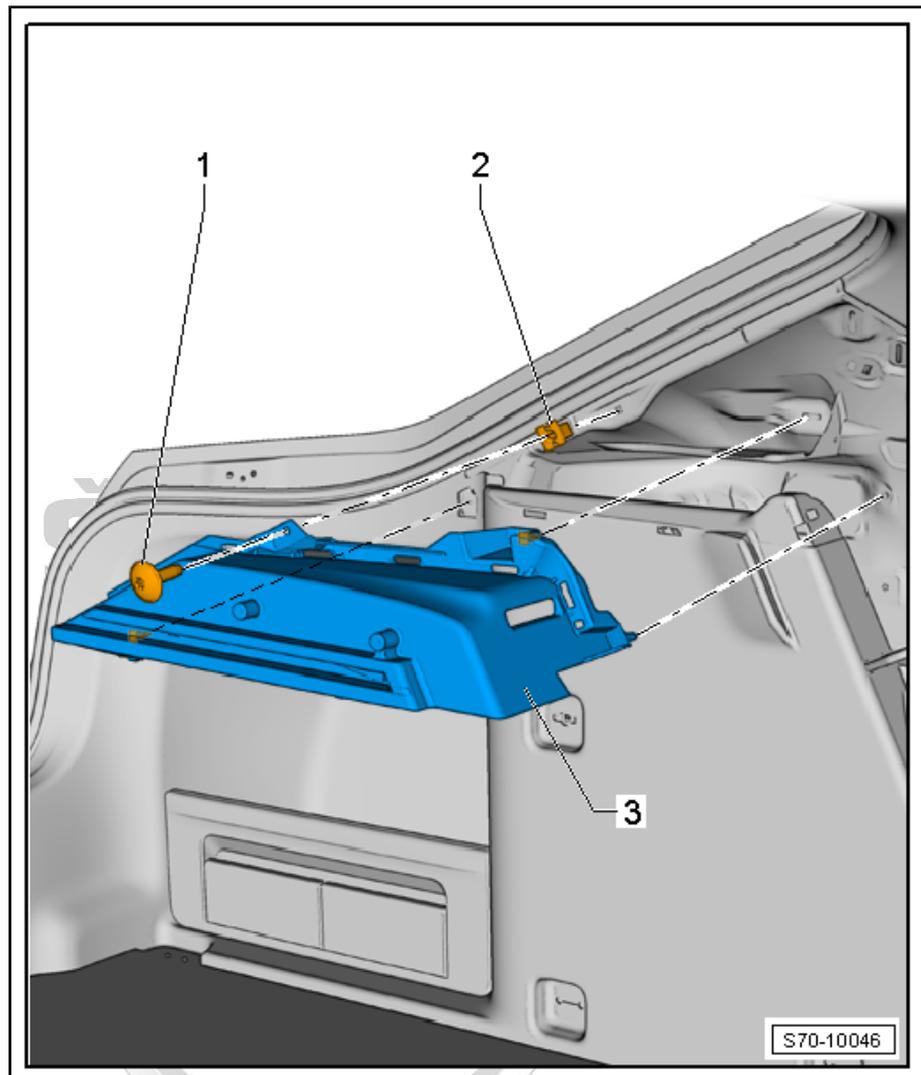
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

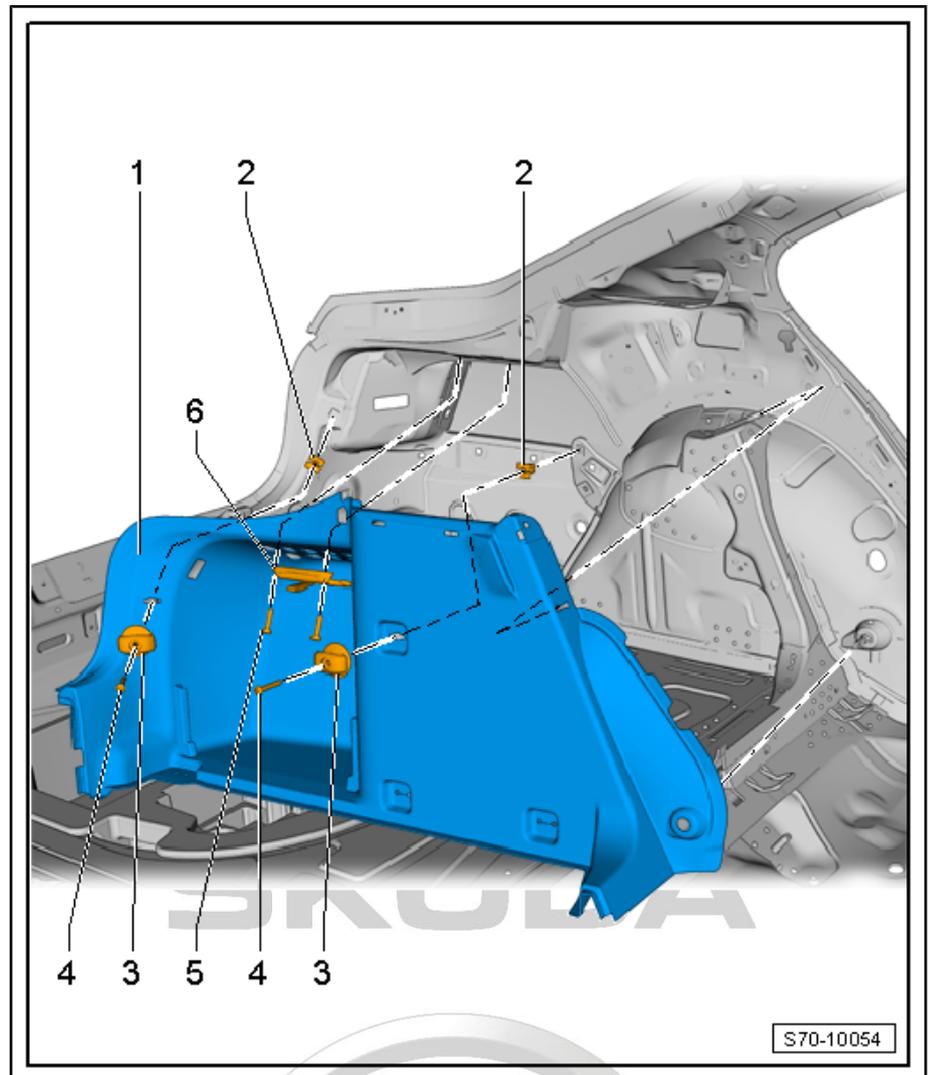
2 - Adjusting nut

3 - Screw

- Tightening torque - 2.5 Nm.



7.4 Removing and installing side luggage compartment trim panel



Removing:



Note

The side trim can deviate depending on the vehicle's equipment level.

- Remove the luggage compartment trim panel.
- Remove the tailgate/luggage compartment cover
⇒ [page 386](#) .
- Remove the seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove the backrest ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Remove rear side airbag and if necessary airbag (depending upon vehicle equipment) ⇒ [page 321](#) .
- Remove top part of side luggage compartment trim panel
⇒ [page 388](#) .
- Remove bolt -4- (1.2 Nm) for retaining clips -3-.



- Unscrew the bolt - 5 - (2.5 Nm) of the hook for bags - 6 - (left side only).
- Partially remove the tailgate release switch in the area of the luggage compartment trim panel.
- Partly slide the trim panel.
- Remove plug for boot light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Disconnect plug for power socket (left side onl) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Take the trim panel -1- out of the luggage compartment.

Installing:

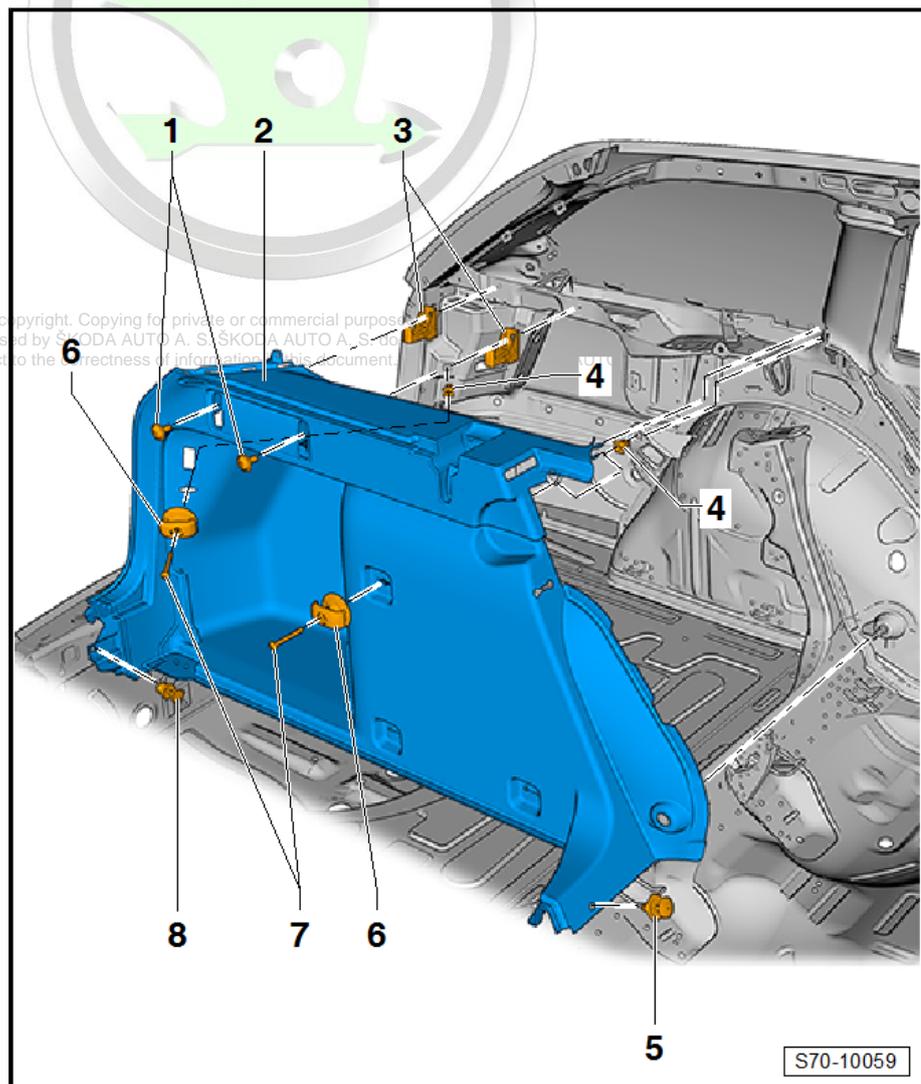
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

7.5 Removing and installing the side luggage compartment trim panel (Octavia III - Combi)



Removing:



The side trim can deviate depending on the vehicle's equipment level.

- Take out roller blind for luggage compartment.
- Remove storage tray (right side only).
- Unhook the luggage compartment trim from the subwoofer (depending on the vehicle equipment).
- Remove the tailgate/luggage compartment cover
⇒ [page 387](#) .
- Remove the seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Removing backrest ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Remove rear side airbag and if necessary airbag (depending upon vehicle equipment) ⇒ [page 321](#) .
- Remove bolt - 7 - (2, 5 Nm) for retaining clips - 6 - .
- Unscrew bolts - 1 - (7 Nm) on the hook for the pockets - 3 - .
- Unscrew and remove the plastic rivet - 5 - .
- Unscrew and remove the plastic rivet - 8 - .
- Remove screws - 4 - (2, 5 Nm).
- Partially remove the tailgate release switch in the area of the luggage compartment trim panel.
- Partly slide the trim panel.
- Remove plug for boot light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove connector for the electrical socket ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Take the trim panel -2- out of the luggage compartment.

Installing:

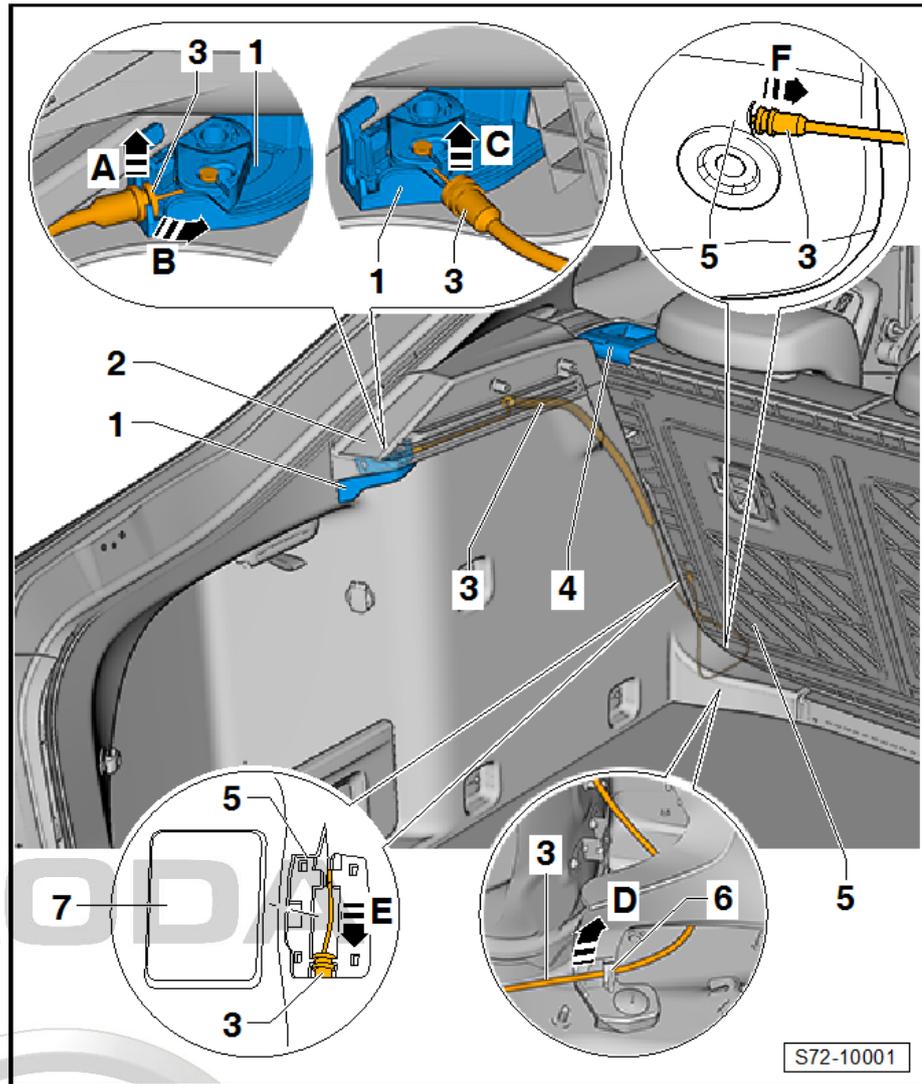
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

7.6 Removing and installing the seat backrests

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Remove - Unlock in the upper part of the side luggage compartment trim panel:

- Remove top part of side luggage compartment trim panel => [page 388](#) .
- Remove Bowden wire - 3 - from the operating lever of the holder - 1 - in - direction of arrow A - .
- Turn in - direction of arrow B - .
- Unhook the control cable in - direction of arrow C - from the holder.
- If the Bowden wire - 3 - is removed, unclip from the mount - 6 - in - direction of arrow D - and thread it through the opening in the trim panel - 5 - in - direction of arrow F - .

Installing: Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Removal - unlocking in the seat backrest:

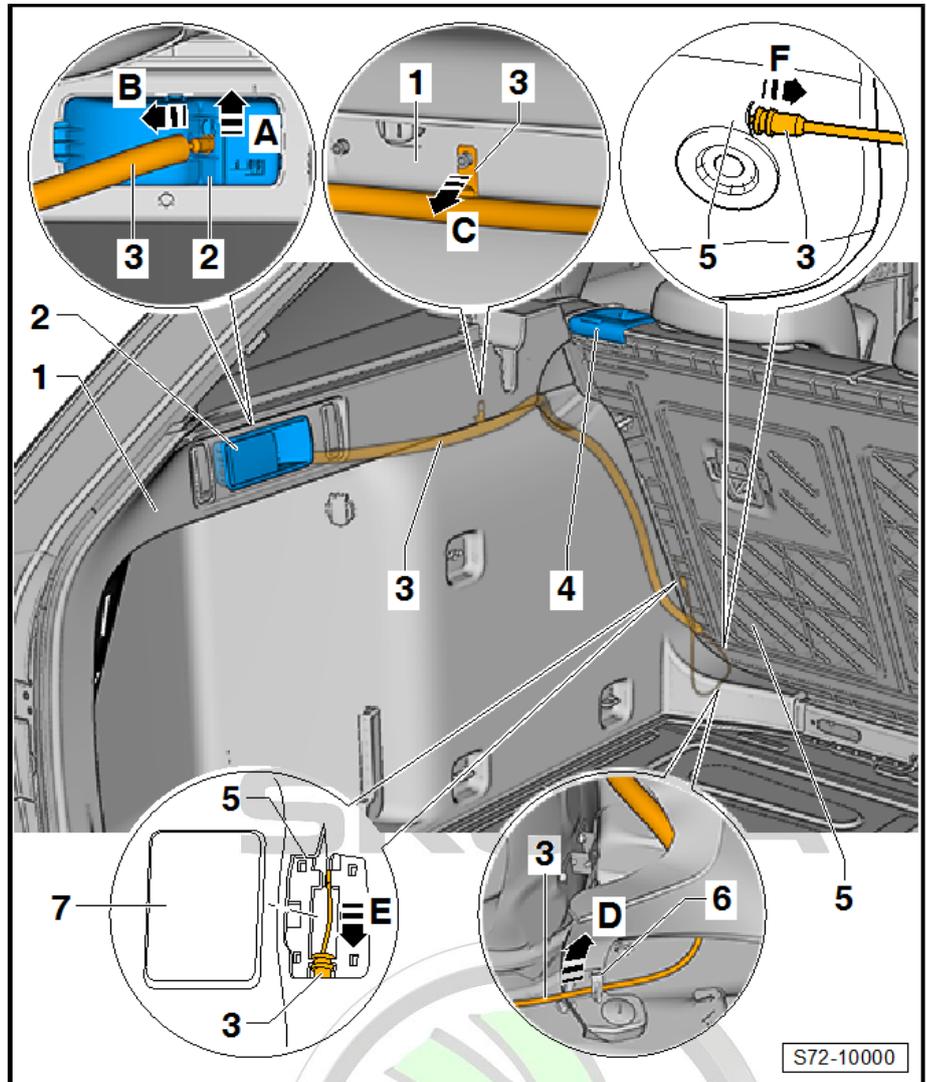
- Removing the rear seat bench => [page 415](#) .
- Remove the cover - 7 - on the seat rest - 5 - .
- Unhook the control cable from the operating lever in - direction of arrow E - .

- Pull the Bowden wire out of the armrest.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

7.7 Removing and installing the unlocking mechanism on the seat backrests (Octavia III - Combi)



Remove - Unlock in the upper part of the side luggage compartment trim panel:

- Removing top side trim panel in luggage compartment
=> [page 390](#) .
- Remove Bowden wire - 3 - from the operating lever of the holder - 2 - in - direction of arrow A - .
- Unhook the control cable from the operating lever of the holder and pull out in - the direction of arrow B - .
- If the Bowden wire - 3 - is removed, unclip from the mount - 6 - in - direction of arrow D - , unclip from the mount - 3 - in - direction of arrow C - and thread through the opening in the trim panel - 5 - in - direction of arrow F - .

ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

**Installing:**

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Removal - unlocking in the seat backrest:

- Removing the rear seat bench ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Remove the cover - 7 - on the seat rest - 5 -.
- Unhook the control cable from the operating lever in
- direction of arrow E -.
- Pull the Bowden wire out of the armrest.

SKODA

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

8 Moulded headliner

8.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner

Removing:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical components.
- Removing sun visors ⇒ [page 279](#) .
- Remove the top trim panel of the pillar A ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Loosen the top trim panel of pillar B ⇒ [page 368](#) .
- Remove the trim panels of pillar C ⇒ [page 372](#) .
- Remove the recessed handles of the roof ⇒ [page 281](#) .
- Removing rear seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove seat backrests ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Fold the front seat rests towards the rear.
- Put the steering wheel into the lowest position by means of the adjustment functions.

Vehicles with interior monitoring

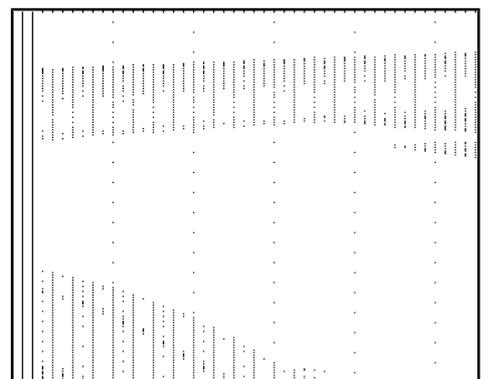
- Disconnect the motion sensor and the sensor for vehicle inclination (depending upon vehicle equipment) ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96 .

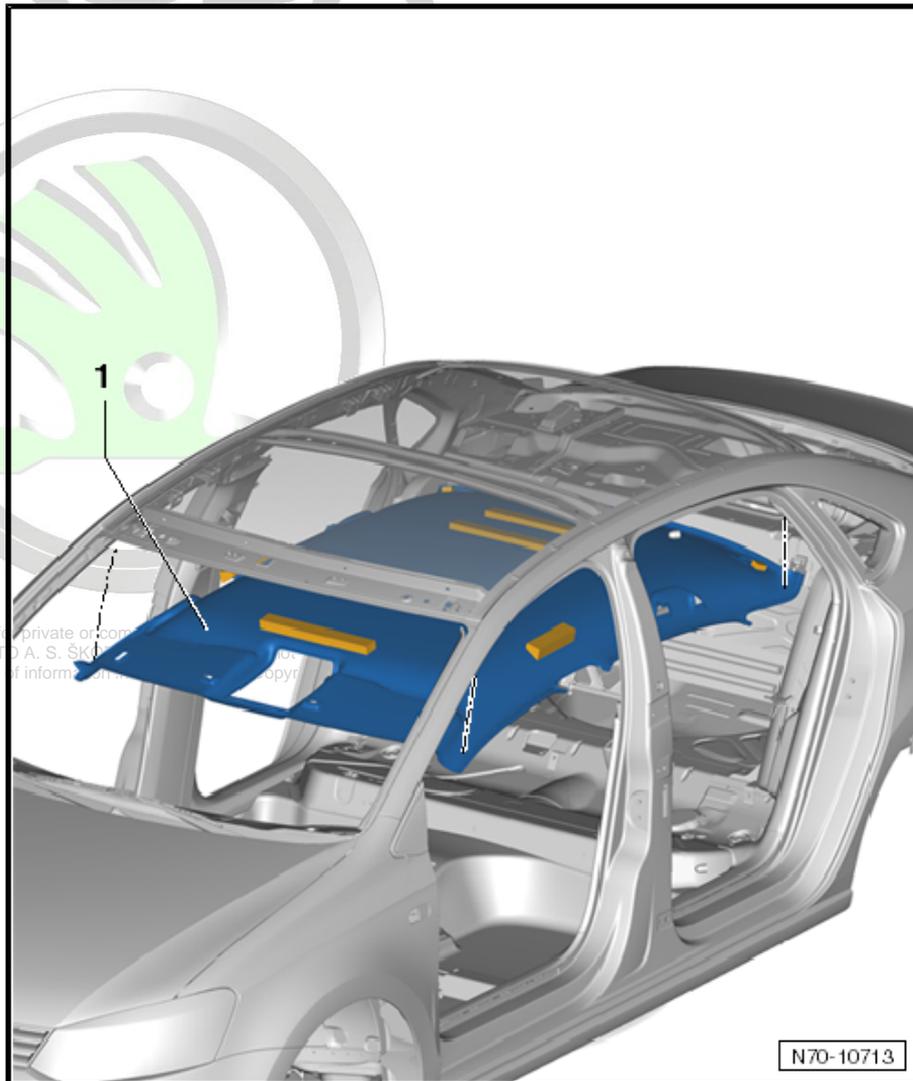
All vehicles

- Remove the front interior light ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Unclip the storage in the roof.
- Release screws for the storage frame (1.5 Nm).
- Unclip the storage frame.
- Loosen rear moulded headliner -1- and unclip clip -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

- Loosen the moulded headliner -1- out of the door seals.
- Lower the moulded headliner - 1 - together with a 2nd mechanic (risk of fracture).





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use without authorisation by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA is a registered trademark with respect to the correctness of information. All rights reserved. Copyright © 2013 ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

N70-10713

- Remove the moulded headliner through the tailgate opening.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

- Ensure that the moulded headliner is located in the double-braided strip of all the door seals after the installation.

8.2 Removing and installing the moulded headliner (Octavia III - Combi)

Removing:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical components.
- Removing sun visors ⇒ [page 279](#) .
- Remove the top trim panel of the pillar A ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Loosen the top trim panel of pillar B ⇒ [page 368](#) .

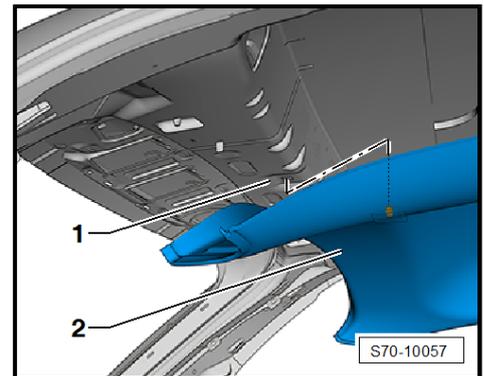
- Remove the trim panels of pillar C ⇒ [page 373](#) .
- Remove the D pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 379](#) .
- Remove the recessed handles of the roof ⇒ [page 281](#) .
- Removing rear seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove seat backrests ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Fold the front seat rests towards the rear.
- Put the steering wheel into the lowest position by means of the adjustment functions.

Vehicles with interior monitoring

- Disconnect the motion sensor and the sensor for vehicle inclination (depending upon vehicle equipment) ⇒ Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96 .

All vehicles

- Remove the inner light front and rear ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Unclip the storage in the roof.
- Release screws for the storage frame (1.5 Nm).
- Unclip the storage frame.
- Loosen the moulded headliner - 2 - rear and undo the clip - 1 -.
- Loosen the moulded headliner -2- out of the door seals.
- Lower the moulded headliner - 2 - together with a 2nd mechanic (risk of fracture).



- With a 2nd mechanic, remove the moulded headliner through the tailgate opening.

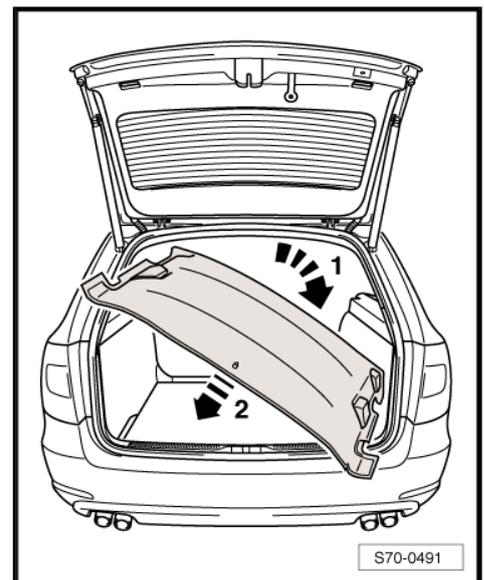
Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

- Ensure that the moulded headliner is located in the double-braided strip of all the door seals after the installation.

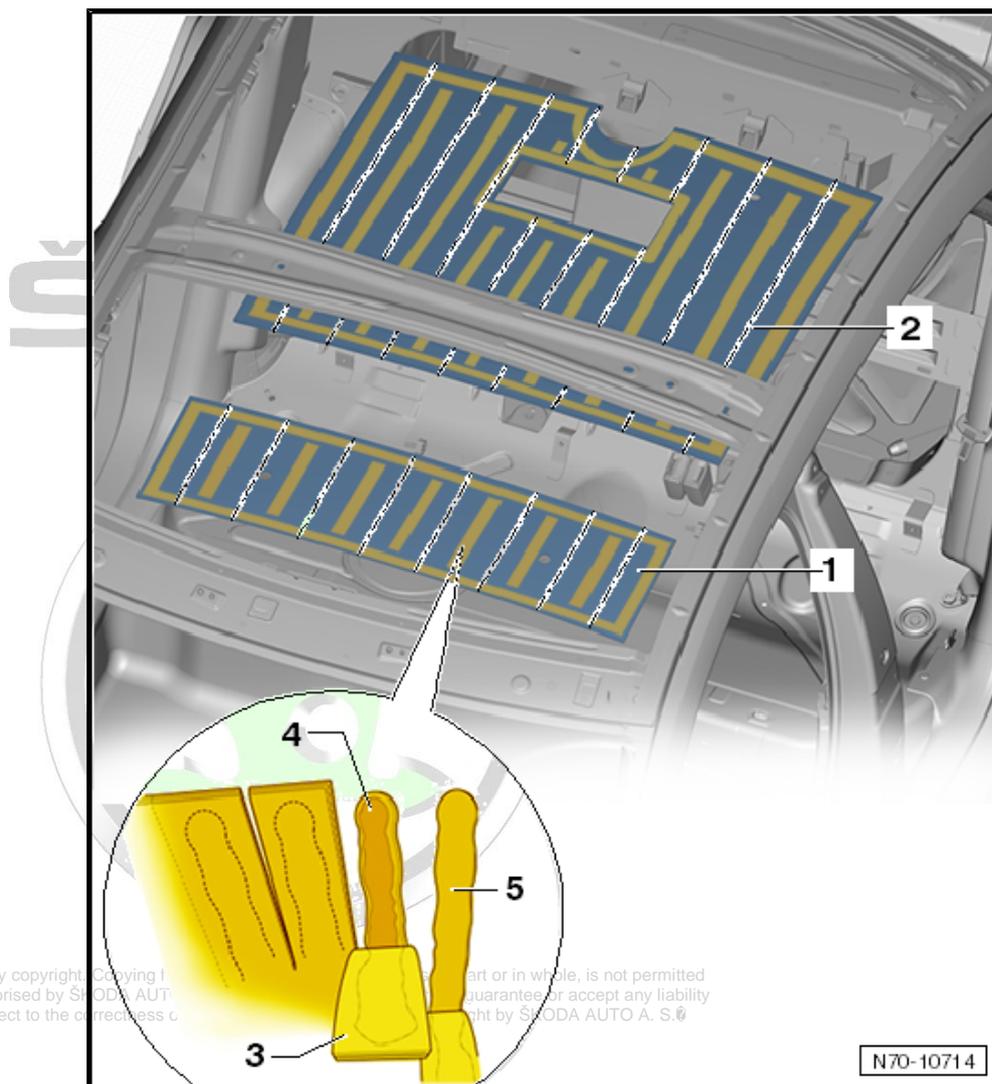




8.3 Removing and installing the dampings and roof reinforcements

Removing:

- Remove the moulded headliner => [page 395](#) .
- Cut the dampings and the roof reinforcements - 1 and 2 - into strips of approx. 9 cm width (Pos.3), using a carpet knife
- (dotted lines) -.
- Detach the strips -3- from the roof.
- Cut back the glue residues -4-.



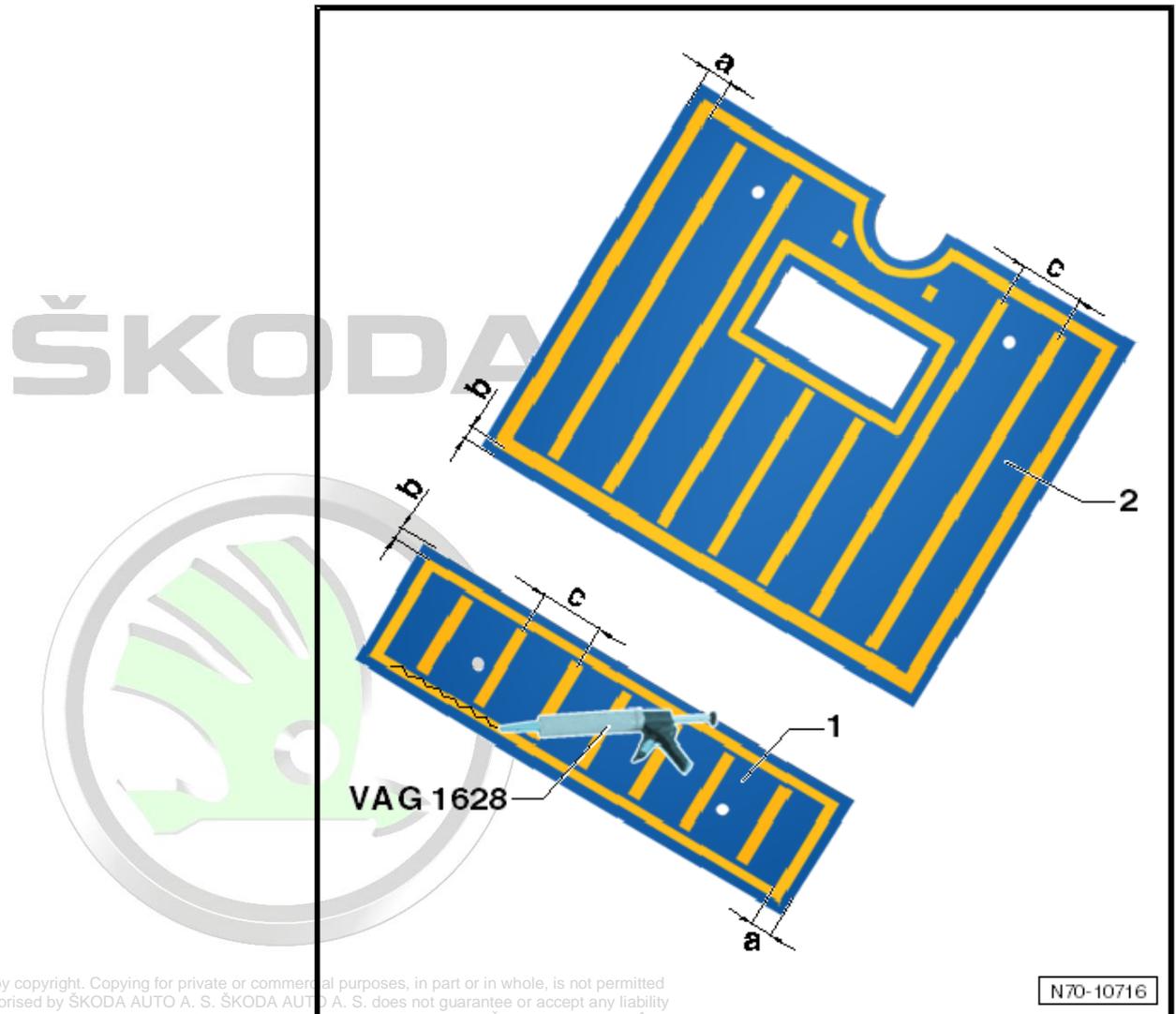
Installing:



Note

When installing the dampings and the roof reinforcements, pay attention to the handling instructions of the glue.

- Use the hand pressure gun to apply the glue - D 190 MKD A3- on the front and rear -2- damping and roof reinforcements -1-.
- Apply the glue beads according to the following dimensions:
- Fully press the dampings and the roof reinforcements -1 and 2- against the roof.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

N70-10716



72 – Seat frames

1 Front seats

1.1 Removing and installing front seat

Removing:

- Put the seat into the foremost position by means of the longitudinal adjustment.
- Unscrew the rear screws -1 and 3-.
- Put the seat into the rearmost position by means of the longitudinal adjustment.
- Unscrew the front screws -2 and 4-.
- Remove seat from vehicle.



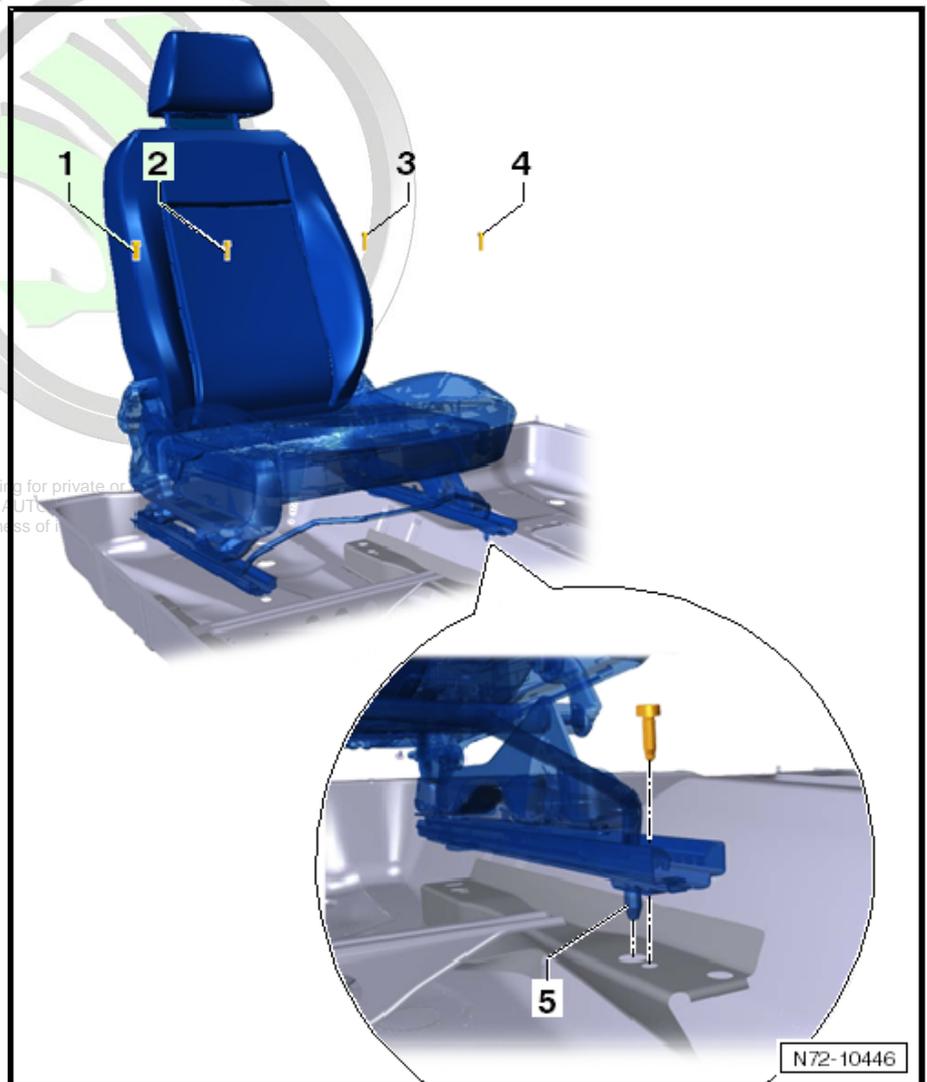


Caution

If the seat is lifted out of the vehicle or transported, it must not be touched at the component parts. These include the belt buckle, the lever for the longitudinal seat adjustment, the seat height adjustment lever and the seat upholsteries. This is necessary to avoid damage.

Installing:

- Insert the seat into the corresponding hole in the floor via a centering pin -5- on the tunnel side.
- Put the seat into the rearmost position by means of the longitudinal adjustment.
- Tighten the front screw -4- on the tunnel side (40 Nm).
- Tighten the front screw -2- on the side sill (40 Nm).
- Put the seat into the foremost position by means of the longitudinal adjustment.
- Tighten the rear screw -3- on the tunnel side (40 Nm).
- Tighten the rear screw -1- on the side sill (40 Nm).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO
with respect to the correctness of



WARNING

If a thread in the support panel of the seat crossmember is damaged during the installation, it is not permitted to rework the damaged thread! In this case, the support panel of the seat crossmember must be replaced.

If there is a thread damage in the support panel of the seat crossmember:

- Replace the affected support panel of the seat crossmember
⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 51 .

1.2 Removing and installing the seat upholstery on the side of the sill (seat without height adjustment)

Removing:

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Release screw -1- (1 Nm).
- Lever the cap -5- out of the backrest adjustment lever -4-.
- Detach the backrest adjustment lever -4-.



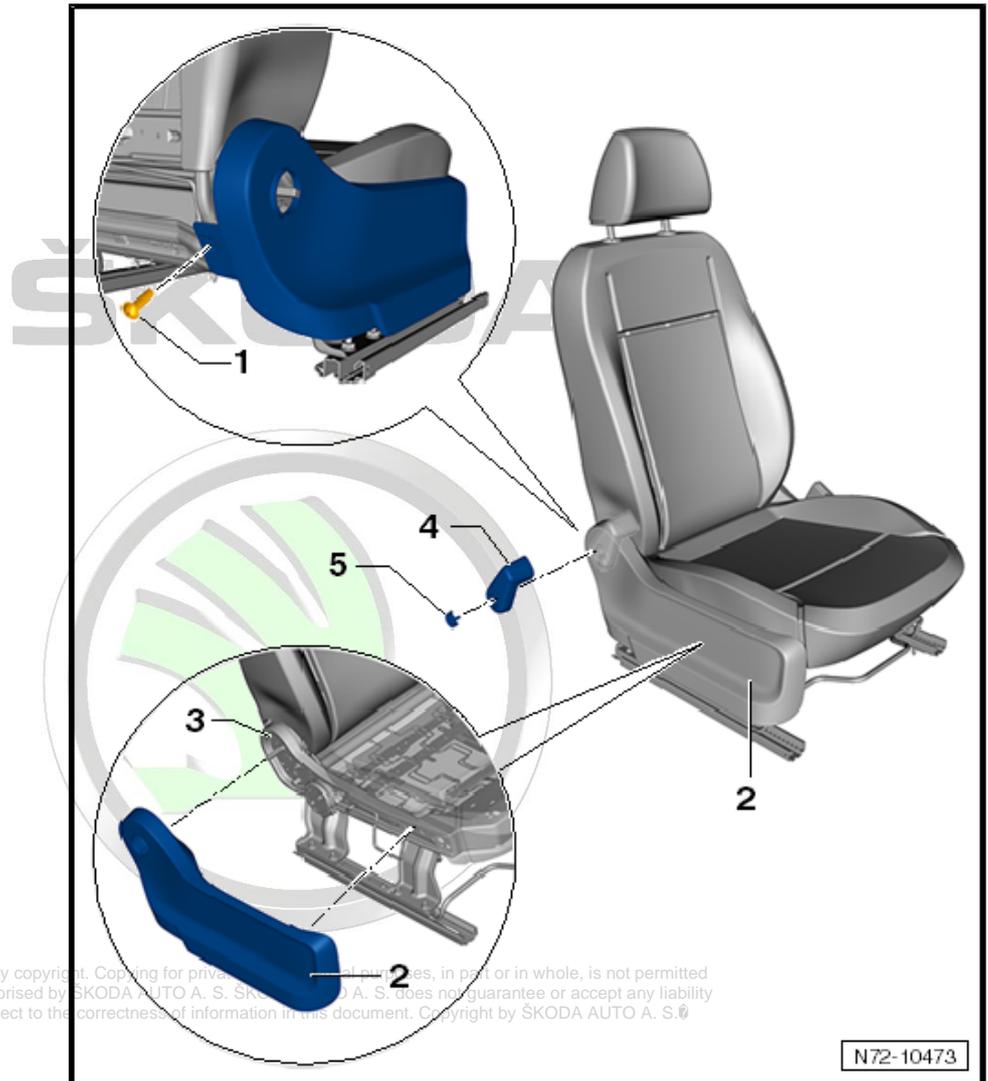
Note

The backrest adjustment lever -4- cannot be detached from the adjustable axle without being destroyed.

- Open the bottom fixing latch of the seat upholstery -2- and press the support from the wire strap.
- Loosen the seat upholstery -2- from the seat rack -1- and remove the seat upholstery.

ŠKODA





Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.

1.3 Removing and installing the seat upholstery on the side of the sill (seat with height adjustment)

Removing:

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Release screw -1- (1 Nm).
- Lever the cap -5- out of the backrest adjustment lever -6-.
- Detach the backrest adjustment lever -6-.



Note

The backrest adjustment lever -6- cannot be detached from the adjustable axle without being destroyed.

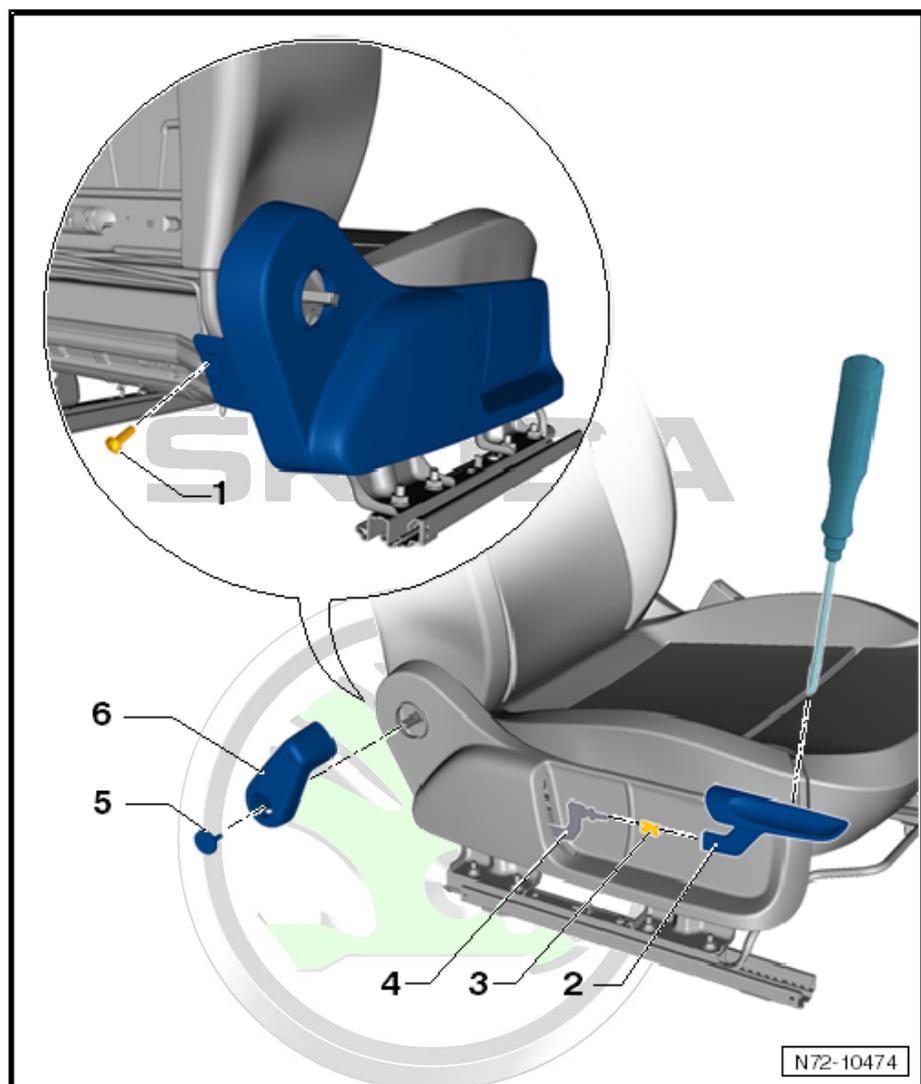
- Pull up the handle -2- and press the metal tab of the retaining clip -3- towards the inside using a small screwdriver. Pull down the handle of the adjusting lever -4-.



Note

To provide a better overview, the retaining clip is shown in the illustration in its removed condition.

- Remove holding clamps - 2 - from the adjuster lever - 3 -.



- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability for the accuracy or completeness of the information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©
- Open the bottom fixing latch of the seat upholstery -2- and press the support from the wire strap.

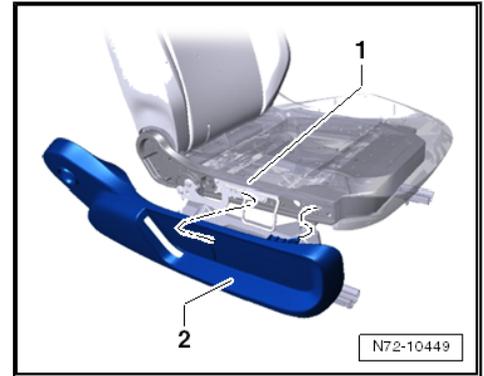
- Loosen the seat upholstery -2- from the seat rack -1- and remove the seat upholstery.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

 **Note**

Before the installation, check all the fixing elements for damage, if necessary replace.



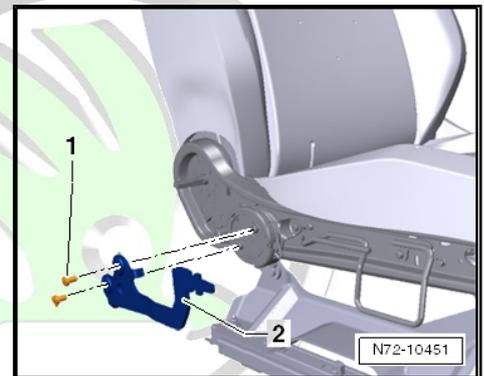
1.4 Removing and installing the operating lever of the seat height adjustment

Removing:

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove the seat upholstery on the side of the sill (seat with height adjustment) ⇒ [page 403](#) .
- Release the screws -1- (4.5 Nm) and remove the operating lever -2-.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

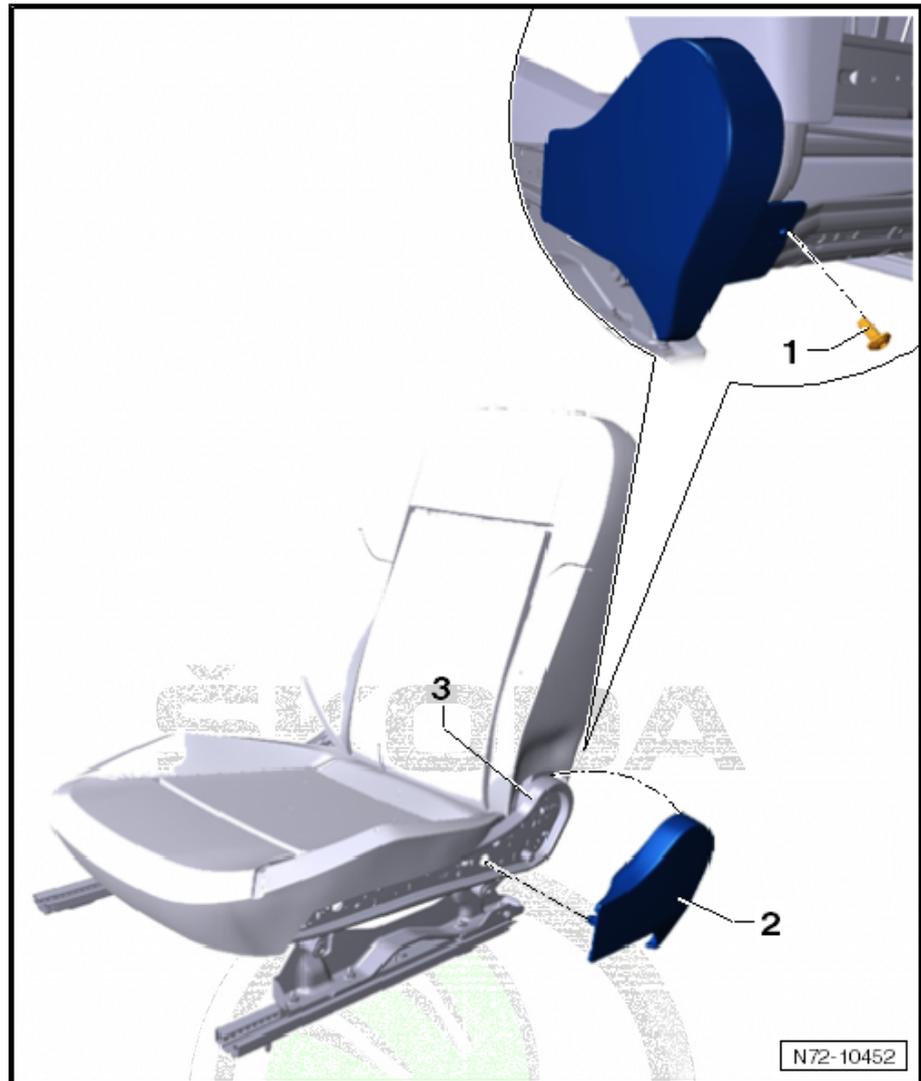


1.5 Removing and installing the seat upholstery on the tunnel side

Removing:

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove the front belt buckle ⇒ [page 301](#) .
- Release screw -1- (1 Nm).
- Loosen the seat upholstery - 2 - from the supports in the seat rack - 3 - and remove the seat upholstery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

1.6 Removing and installing the grip for the seat height adjuster

Removing:



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

To provide a better overview, the retaining clip is shown in the illustration in its removed condition.

- Pull up the handle -1- and press the metal tabs of the retaining clip -2- towards the inside using a small screwdriver. Pull down the handle of the adjusting lever -3-.

- Remove holding clamps - 2 - from the adjuster lever - 3 -.

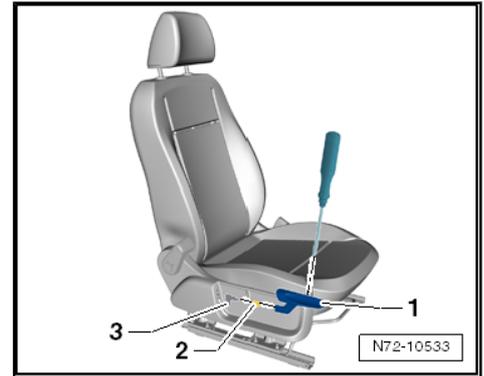
Installing:



Note

Before the installation, check the retaining clip -2- for damage, if necessary replace.

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



1.7 Removing and installing the lever for adjusting the lumbar support

Removing:

- Unclip the lever for adjusting the lumbar support - 1 - from the serration on the shaft - 2 -.

Installing:

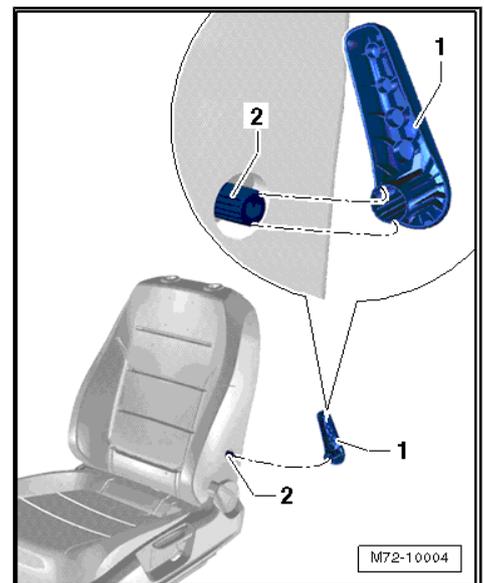
- Slide the lever for adjusting the lumbar support onto the toothed shaft, and clip in.



Note

Make sure that the serration on the shaft is flush with the serration at the shaft for adjusting the lumbar support.

SKODA



1.8 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Removing:



WARNING

Observe the safety instructions for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 304](#).

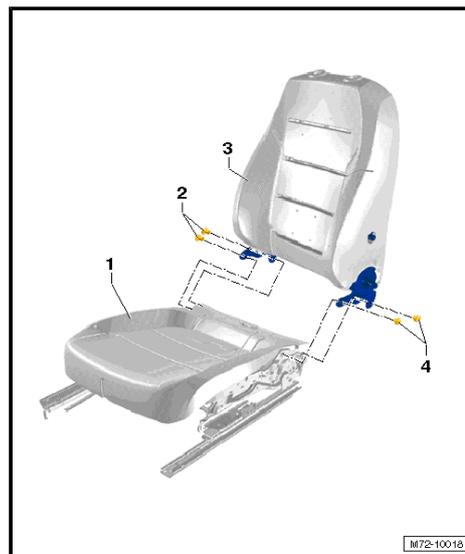
Before handling pyrotechnic components (disconnecting the electrical plug connection, for example) the person carrying out the work must discharge static electricity.

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove the left trim without height adjustment ⇒ [page 402](#) or with height adjustment ⇒ [page 403](#) .
- Remove right trim panel ⇒ [page 405](#) .
- Disconnect the electrical connections (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).
- Release screws - 2 and 4 - (35 Nm).

- Disconnect the seat rest rack - 3 - from the seat frame -1-.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



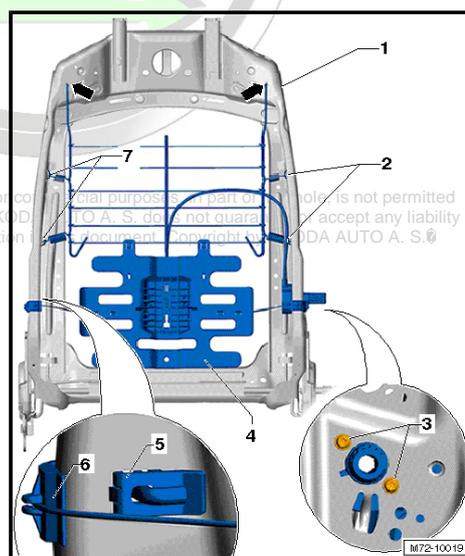
1.9 Removing and installing front lumbar support frame

Removing:

- Removing seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Removing backrest ⇒ [page 407](#) .
- Remove cover and foam padding on the rest ⇒ [page 418](#) .
- Remove the screws - 3 - (2 Nm) and undo the adjustment of the lumbar support from the backrest frame - 1 -.
- Unhook the fastening - 6 and 5 - on both sides of the backrest frame - 1 -.
- Unhook the side springs - 2 and 7 - from the backrest frame - 1 -.
- Unhook the lumbar support frame - 4 - from the top mounts - arrows -.
- Remove lumbar support frame - 4 - from the backrest frame.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © ŠKODA AUTO A. S. 2013

1.10 Removing the headrest guides

Removing:



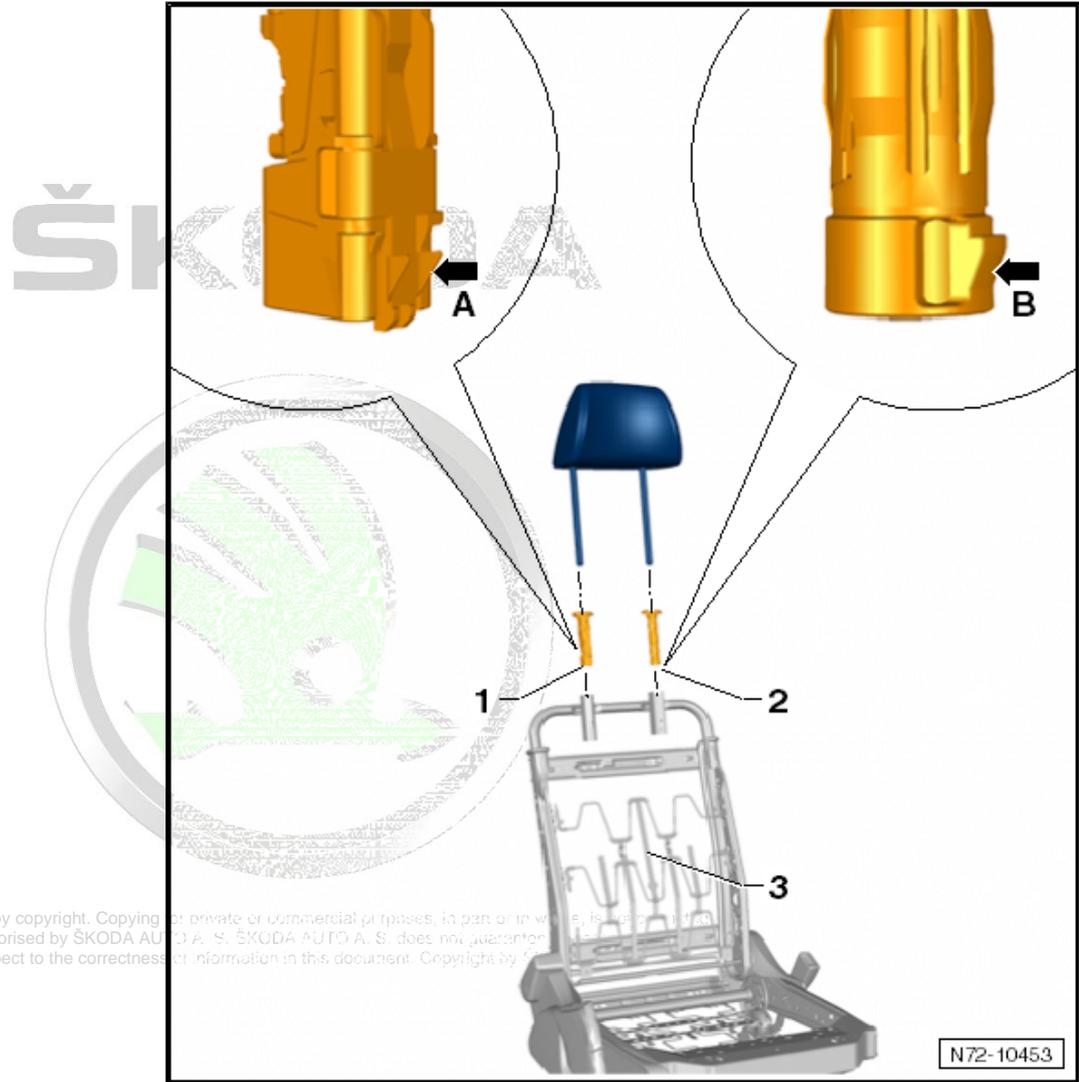
Note

To provide a better overview, the headrest guides are shown in their removed condition.

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove the front belt buckle ⇒ [page 301](#) .
- Remove the seat upholstery on the tunnel side ⇒ [page 405](#) .
- Remove the seat upholstery on the side of the sill:
- ◆ Seat without height adjustment ⇒ [page 402](#) .
- ◆ Seat with height adjustment ⇒ [page 403](#) .
- Remove the cover and the upholstery of the front seat backrest ⇒ [page 418](#) .
- Unlock the locking mechanism -arrow A- of the headrest guide with the button - 1 -.
- Pull the headrest guide out of the backrest - 3 - with the button - 1 -.
- Unlock the locking mechanism -arrow B- of the headrest guide -2-.
- Pull the headrest guide -2- out of the backrest -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

1.11 Remove headrests

Removing:

- By pressing unlock the latching of the head restraint - 1 - under the backrest upholstery e.g. with a screwdriver.
- Unlock the locking mechanism in the same way on the other side too.
- Remove the head restraint from the runners.

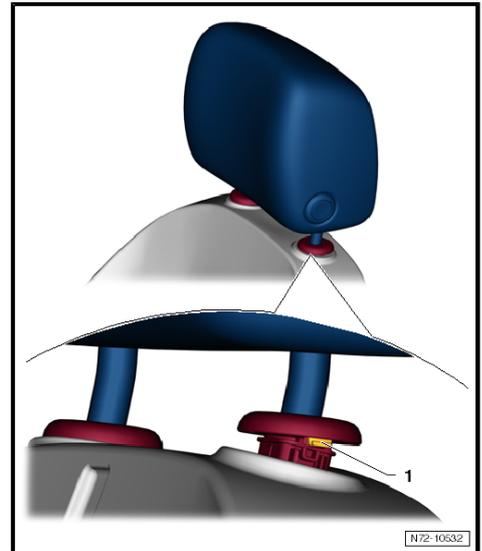


Note

- ◆ *To provide a better overview, the headrest guides are partly shown in their removed condition.*
- ◆ *Be careful not to damage the backrest upholstery when removing.*

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

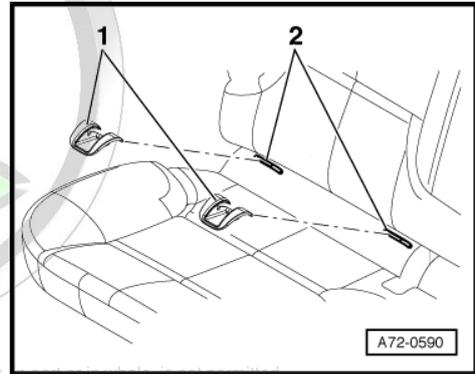


2 Rear seats

2.1 Removing and installing the rear seat bench

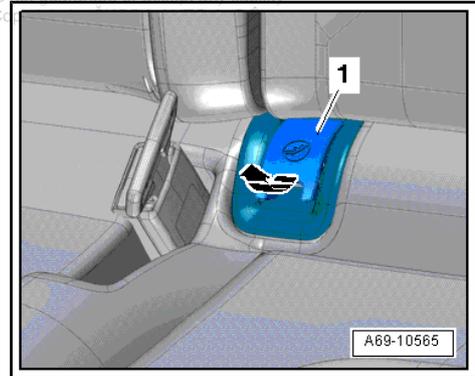
Removing:

- Remove caps for ISOFIX child seat mounts.

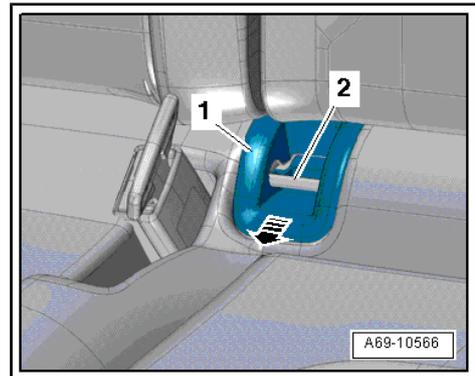


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes without the written permission of ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability in respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2013 ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

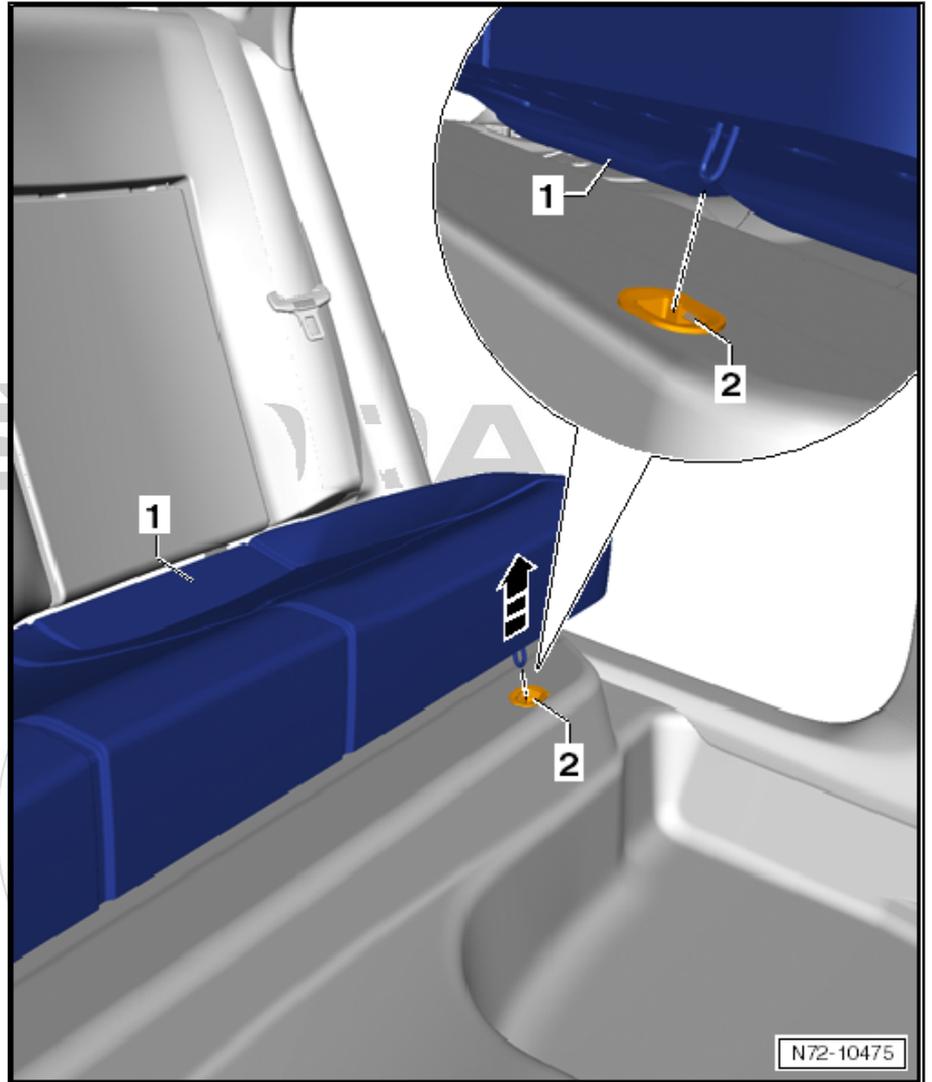
- First undo the top part - 1 -



- Afterwards, release the bottom part - 1 - and remove from the lug - 2 -.



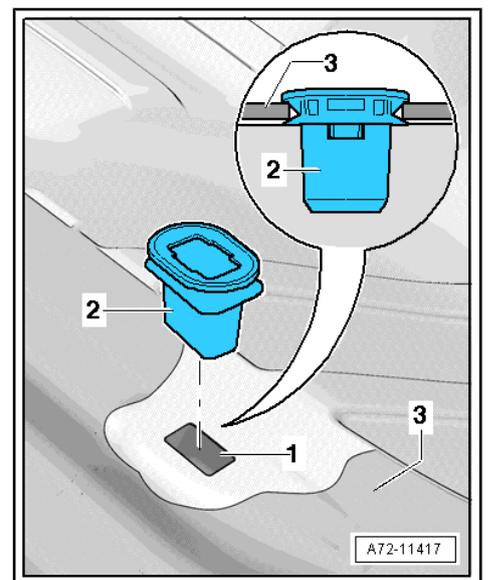
- Grip on both sides with both hands under the seat bench - 1 - in the area of the mounting grommet - 2 - and pull up forcefully and with a sudden motion in the -direction of arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

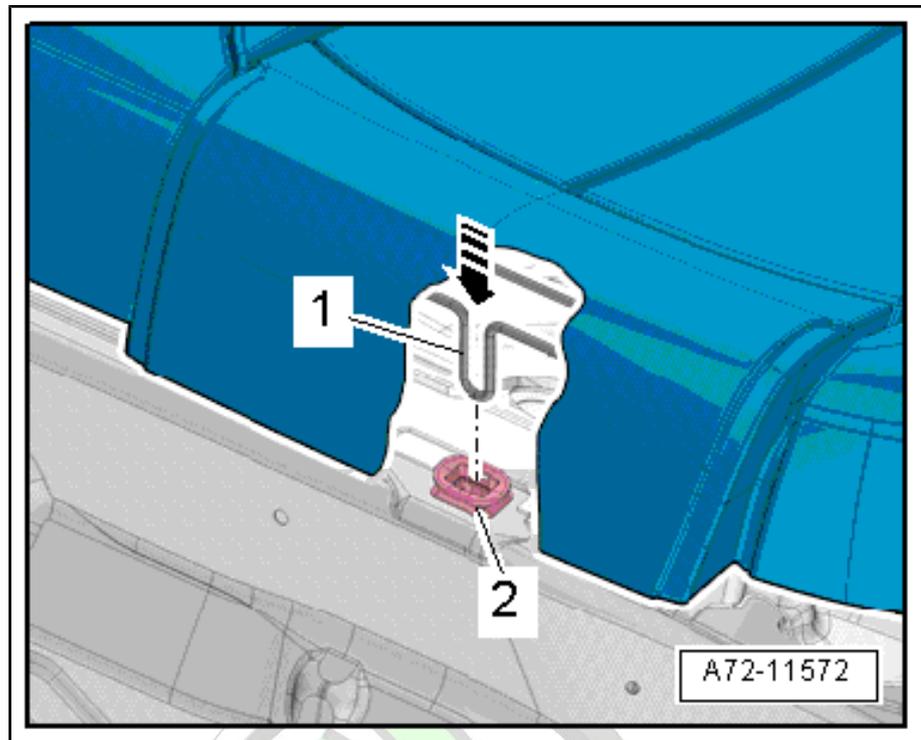
Installing:

- Before assembling the seat bench - 2 - replace the mounting grommets as these parts are not designed for reuse.





- Insert seat bench in - direction of arrow - on both sides with the crash hooks - 1 - into the mounting grommets - 2 - until they audibly click into place.



- Install caps for ISOFIX child seat mounts.

**Note**

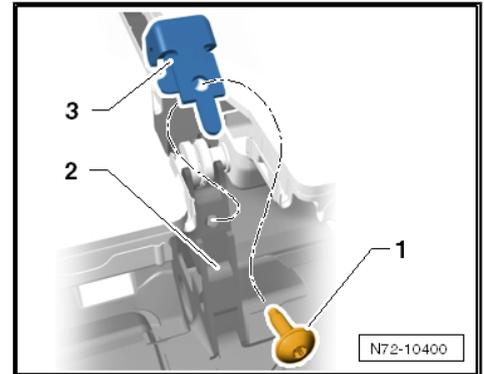
Check seat bench for firm seating after installing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

3 Removing and installing backrests

Removing:

- Remove the seat bench to access the screw -1- more easily
=> [page 412](#) .
- Unlock both backrest parts and fold over.
- Remove cap for clamp.
- Release the screw -1- (9 Nm) and remove the clamp -3- from the support -2-.



- Unhook backrest from the middle positions -arrow A-.
- Push the seat backrest out of the bolts -arrow B-.

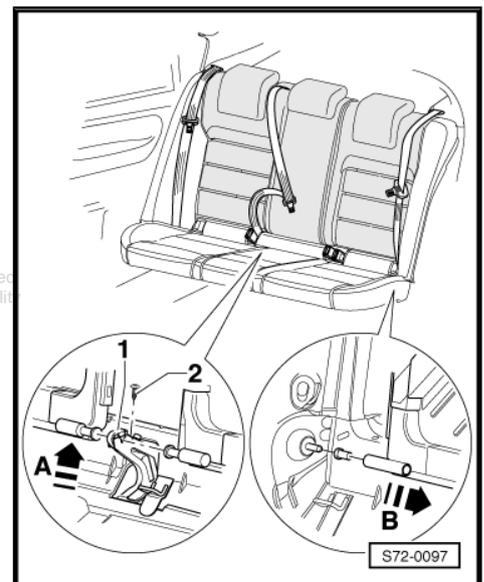
Vehicles with rear seat heating:

- Remove plug connector for seat heating.

Installing:

- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



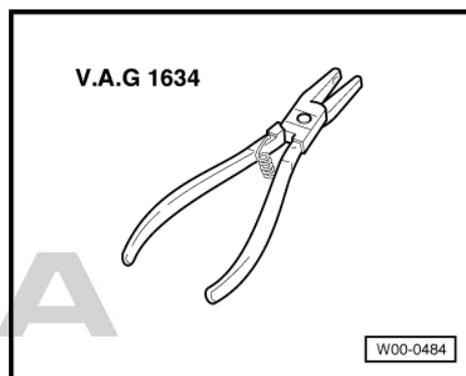
74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Front covers and seat upholstery

1.1 Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

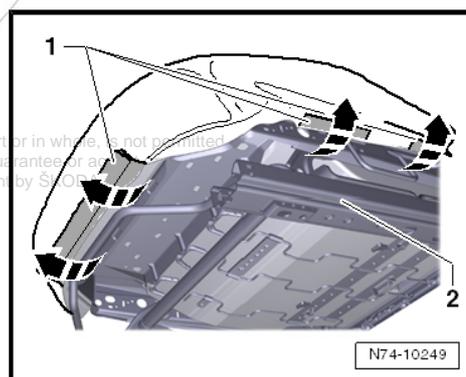
- ◆ Upholstery retaining clip pliers, e.g. - V.A.G 1634-



1.2 Removing and installing the cover and the upholstery of the front seat cushions

Removing:

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove the front belt buckle ⇒ [page 301](#) .
- Remove the seat upholstery on the tunnel side ⇒ [page 405](#) .
- Remove the seat upholstery on the side of the sill:
- ◆ Seat without height adjustment ⇒ [page 402](#) .
- ◆ Seat with height adjustment ⇒ [page 403](#) .
- Unhook the clamping section - 1 - from the seat rack - 2 - .



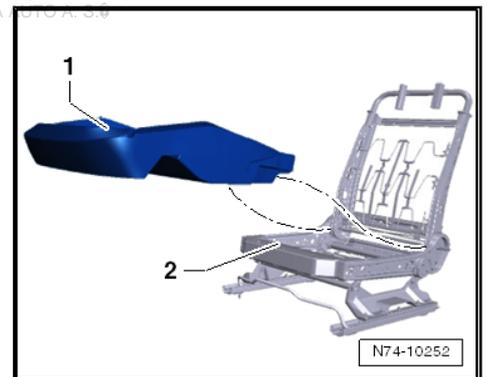
- Fold up the cover - 2 - all around and remove the upholstery retaining clips - 1 - .
- Remove the cover - 2 - from the upholstery - 3 - .



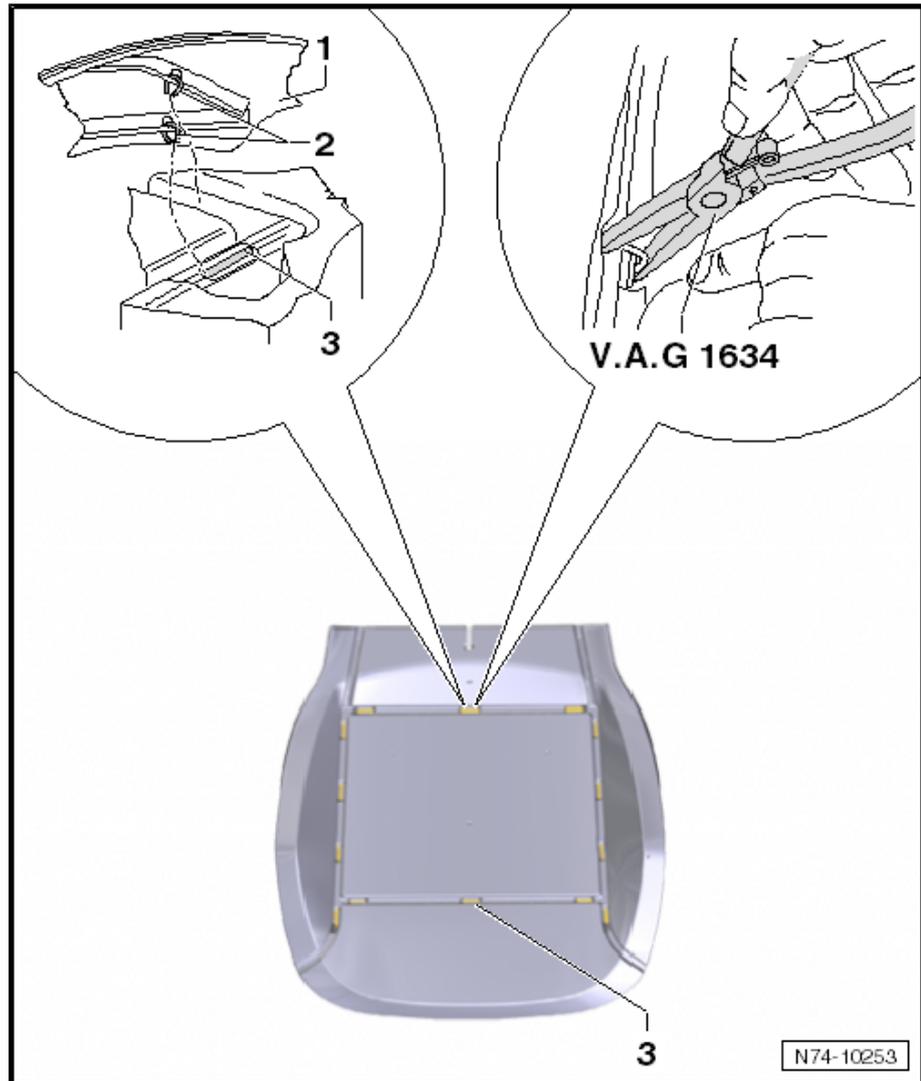
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.

- Remove the front seat cushion -1- from the seat rack -2-.

Installing:



- Attach the cover -1- with new upholstery retaining clips -2-, at the indicated points -3-, using the upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- .



Further installation occurs in reverse order.

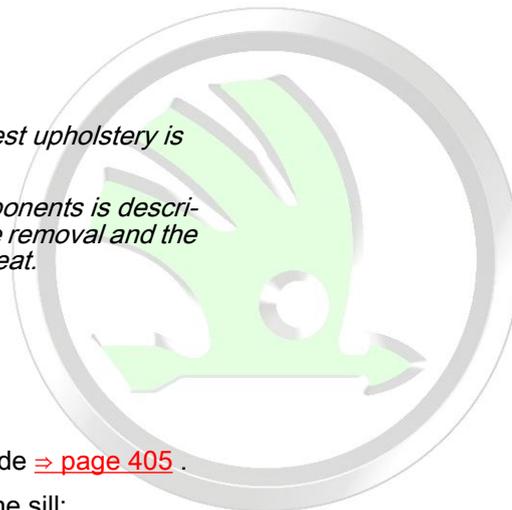
1.3 Removing and installing the cover and the upholstery of the front seat backrest

Removing:

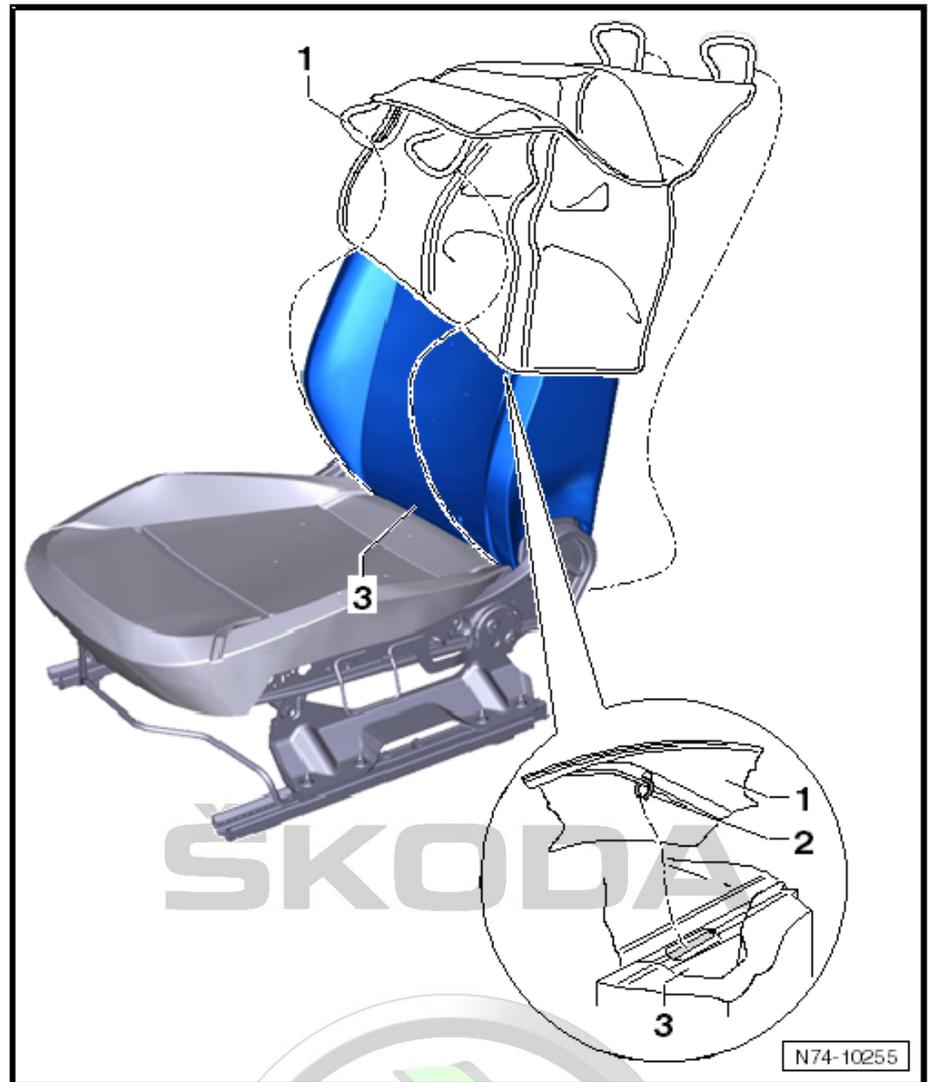


Note

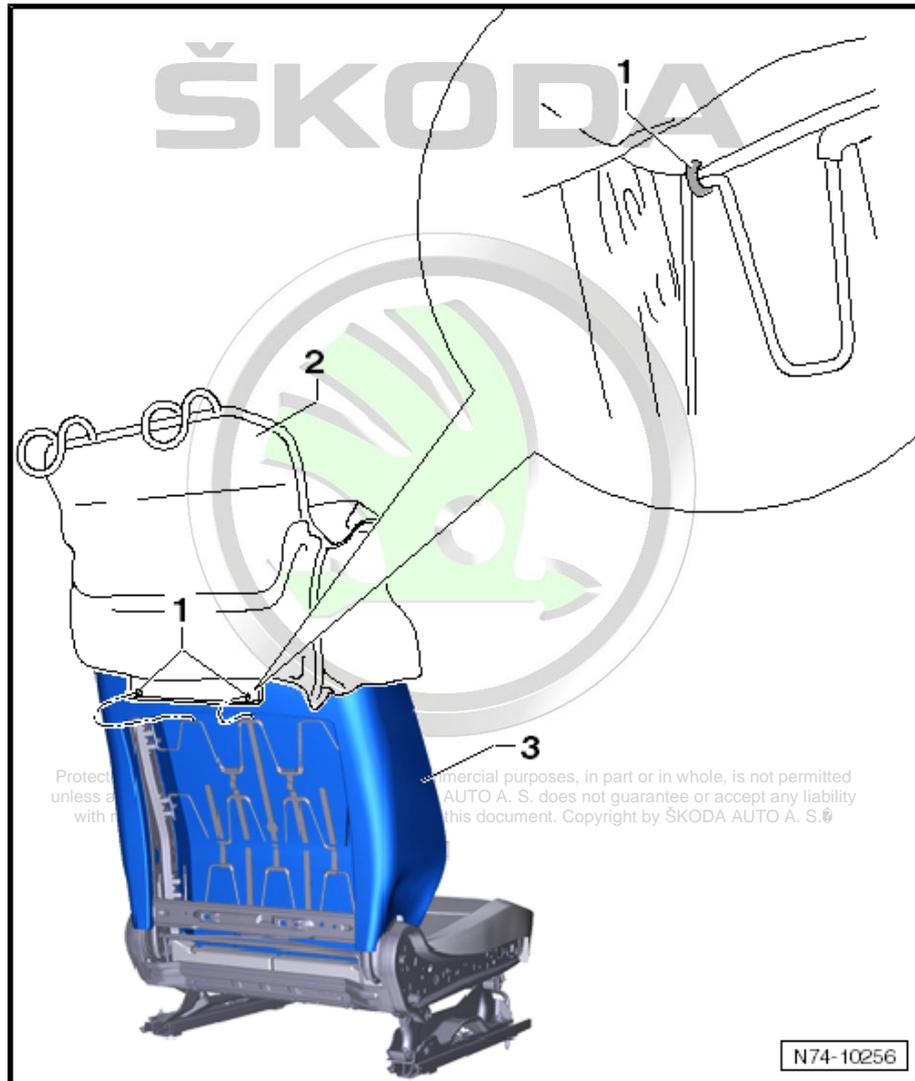
- ◆ *When disassembling, ensure that the backrest upholstery is not damaged.*
- ◆ *The removal and the installation of the components is described for the left seat. The same applies for the removal and the installation of the components for the right seat.*
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Pull out the headrest.
- Remove the front belt buckle ⇒ [page 301](#) .
- Remove the seat upholstery on the tunnel side ⇒ [page 405](#) .
- Remove the seat upholstery on the side of the sill:



- ◆ Seat without height adjustment ⇒ [page 402](#) .
- ◆ Seat with height adjustment ⇒ [page 403](#) .
- Unhook the clamping section in the bottom area of the cover.
- Roll up the cover -1- at the upholstery -3- and while doing so remove all the upholstery retaining clips -2-.



- Roll up the cover on the backside -2- at the upholstery -3- and while doing so remove both upholstery retaining clips -1-.
- Roll up the cover -2- further and remove via the two headrest guides.



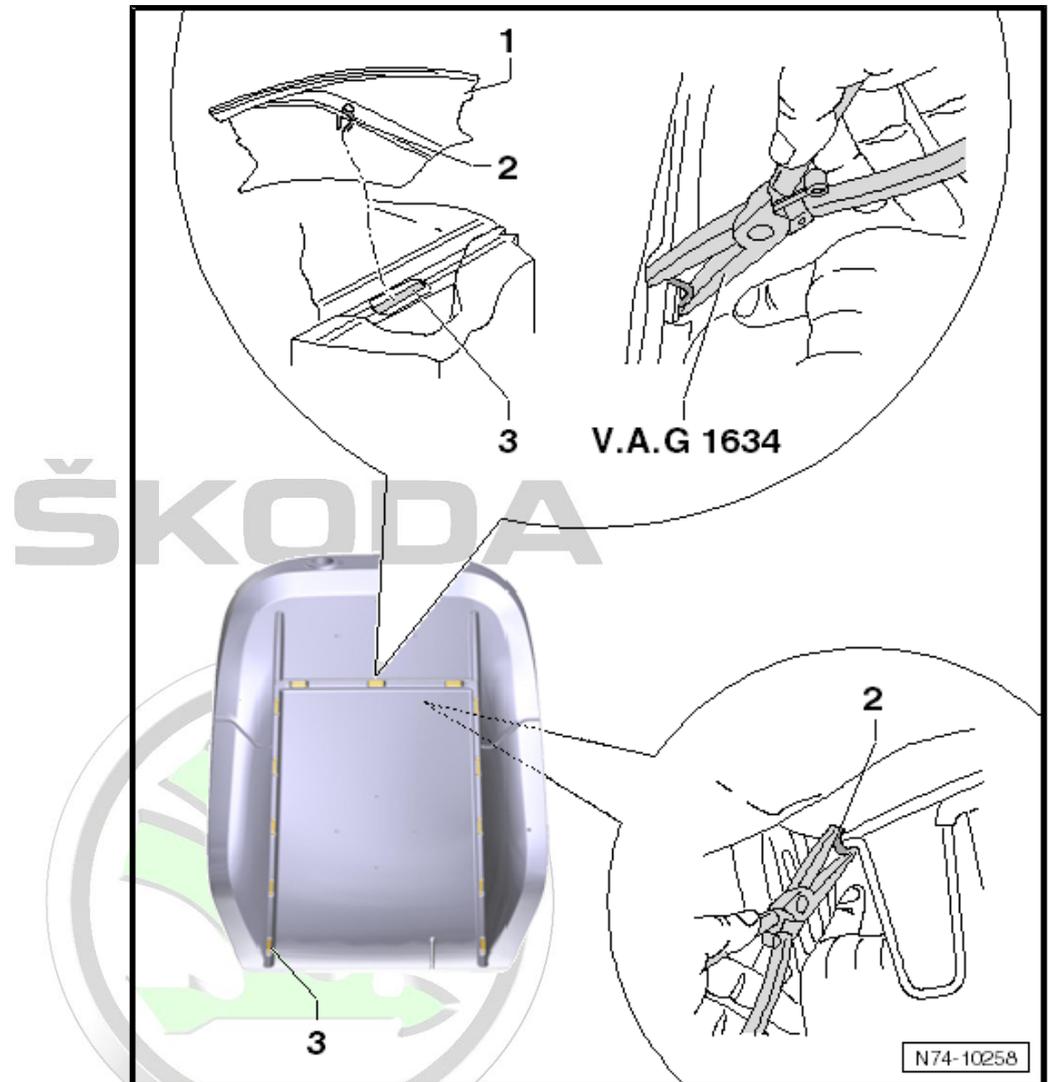
- Pull the upholstery -1- over both headrest guides and remove it from the backrest frame -2-.

Installing:



- Slide the upholstery onto the backrest frame.

- Attach the cover -1- with new upholstery retaining clips -2-, at the indicated points -3-, using the upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- .



Further installation occurs in reverse order.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

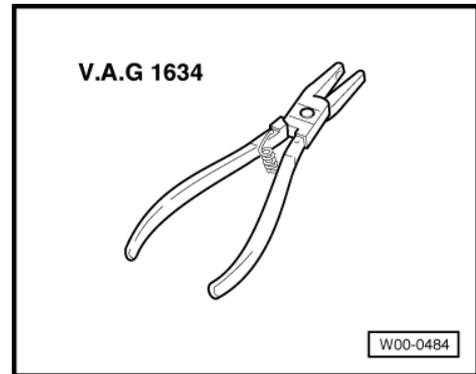


2 Rear covers and seat upholstery

2.1 Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



2.2 Removing and installing cover and seat upholstery

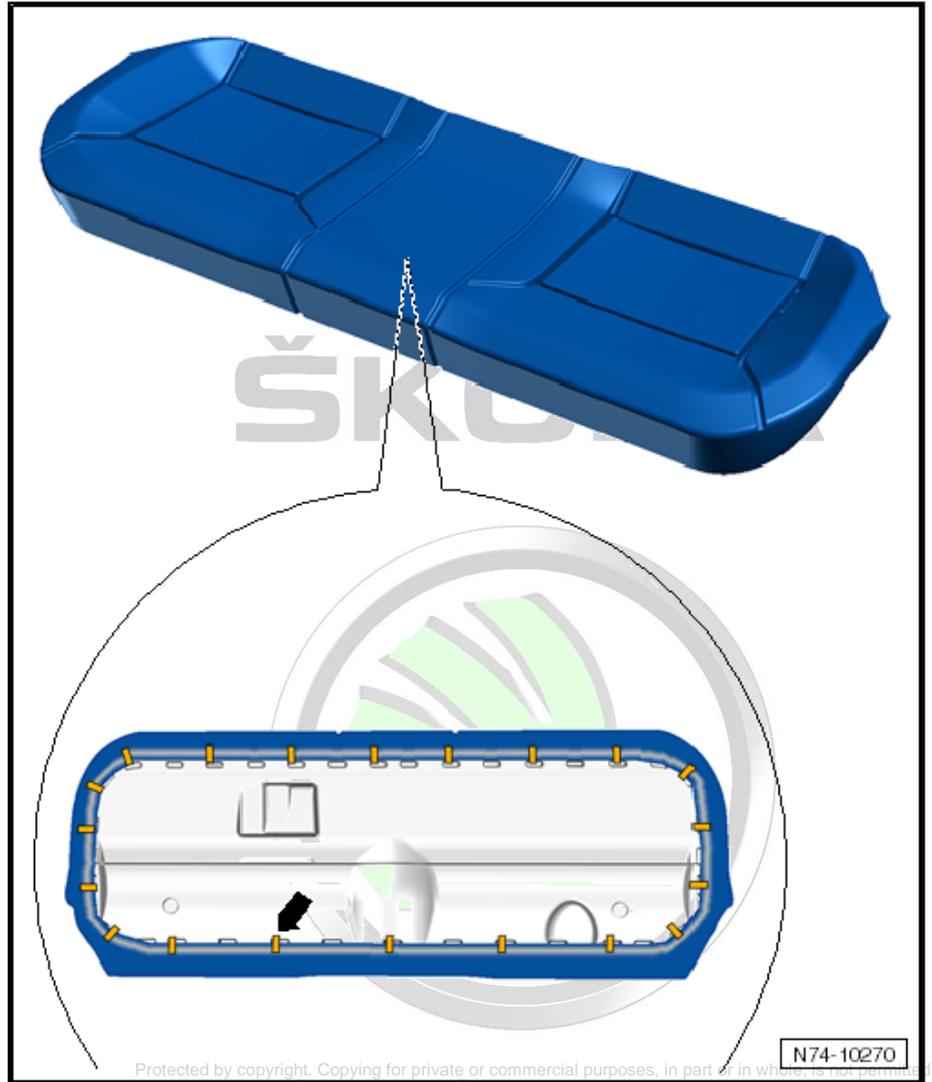
Removing:

- Remove the seat bench ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Separate all the upholstery retaining clips -arrow- all around the underside of the seat bench.

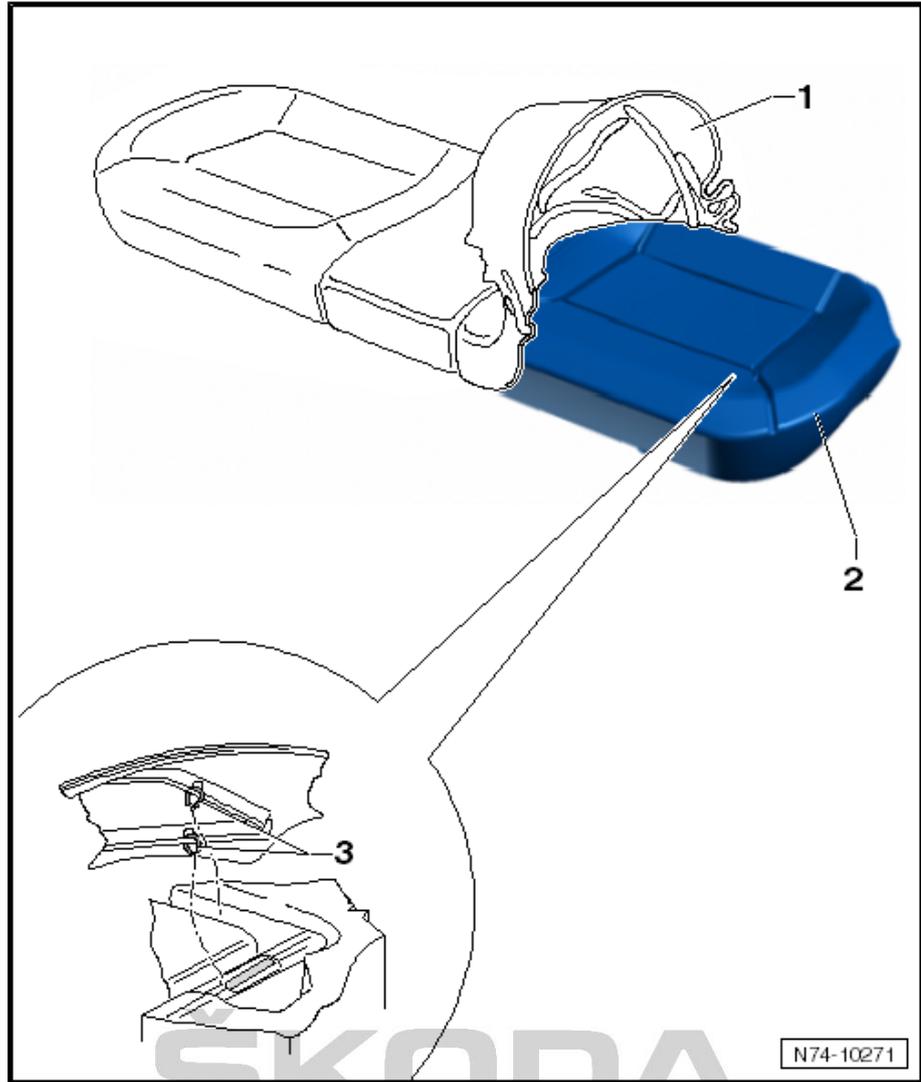
ŠKODA



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



- Roll up the cover -1- all around.
- Remove all the upholstery retaining clips -3-.
- Remove the cover -1- from the upholstery -2-.

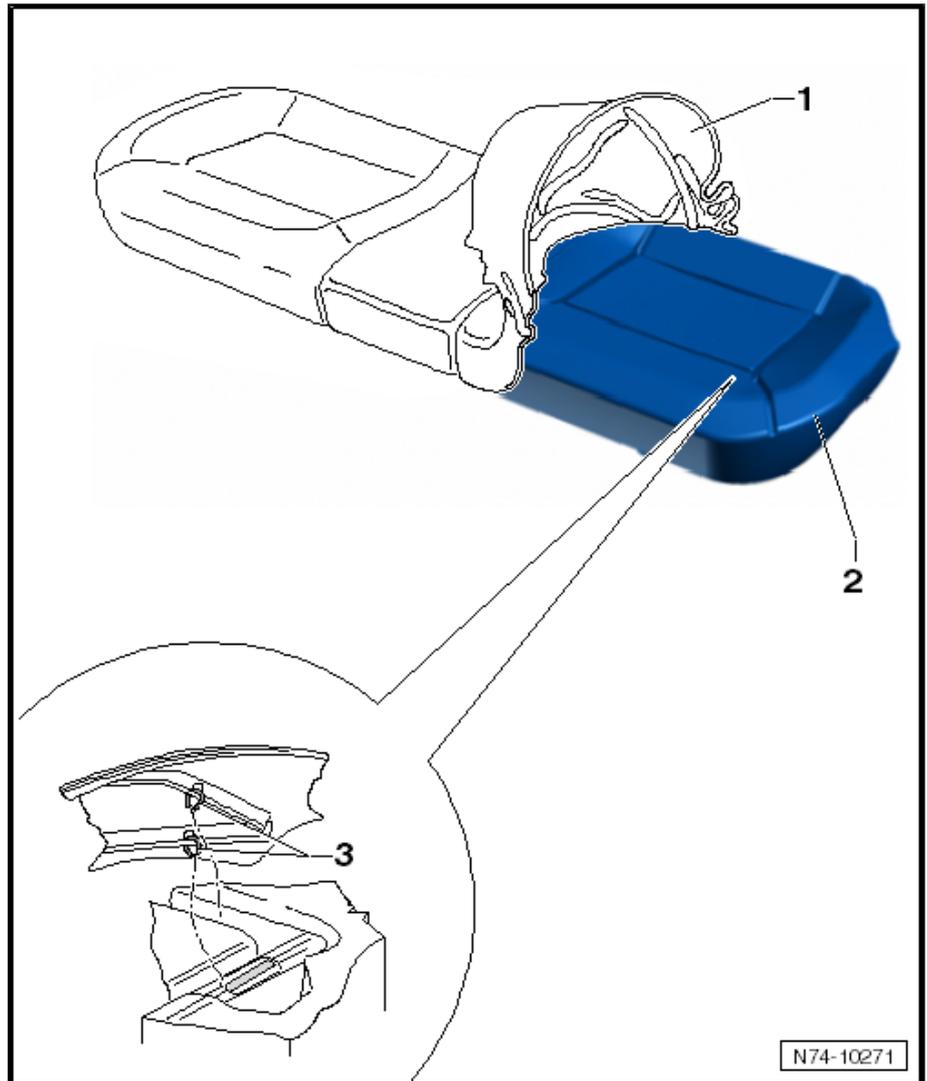


Installing:

- Attach the cover - 1 - with new upholstery retaining clips - 3 - to the upholstery - 2 - using the upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S.®

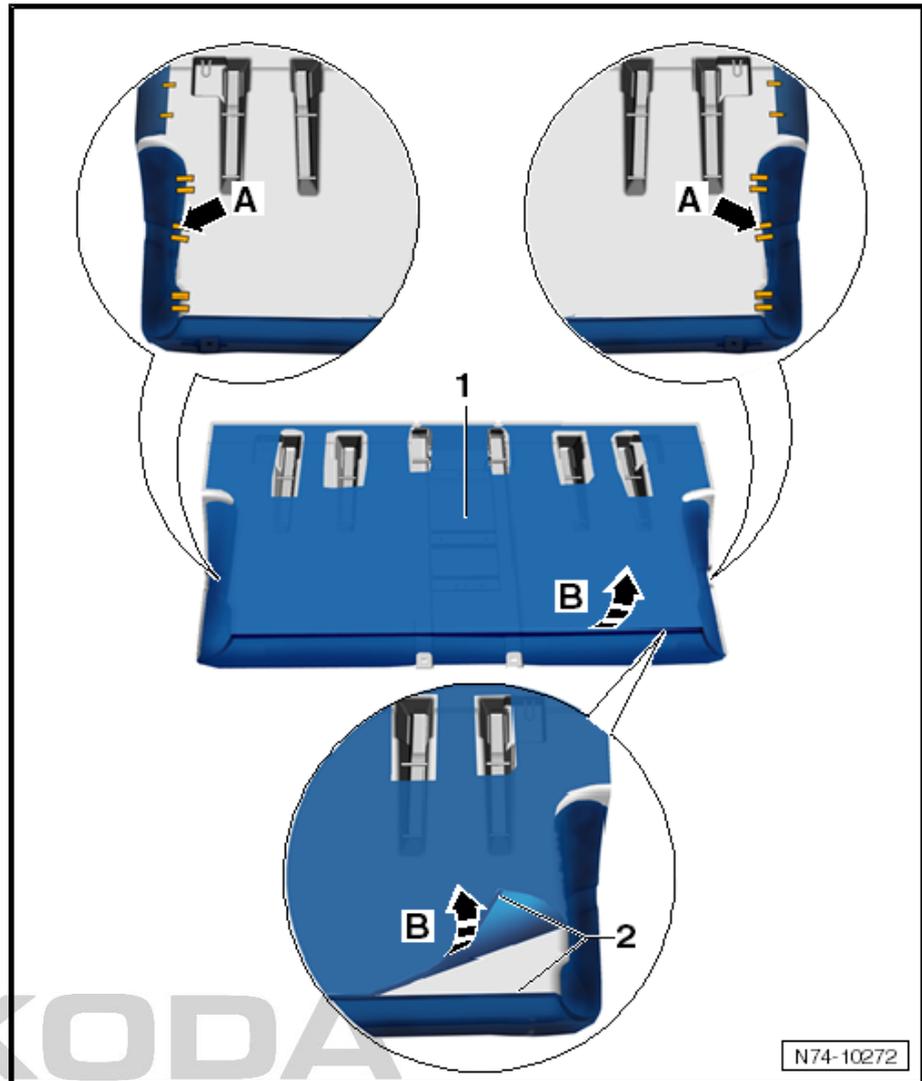


- Further installation occurs in reverse order.

2.3 Removing and installing entire cover and backrest upholstery

Removing:

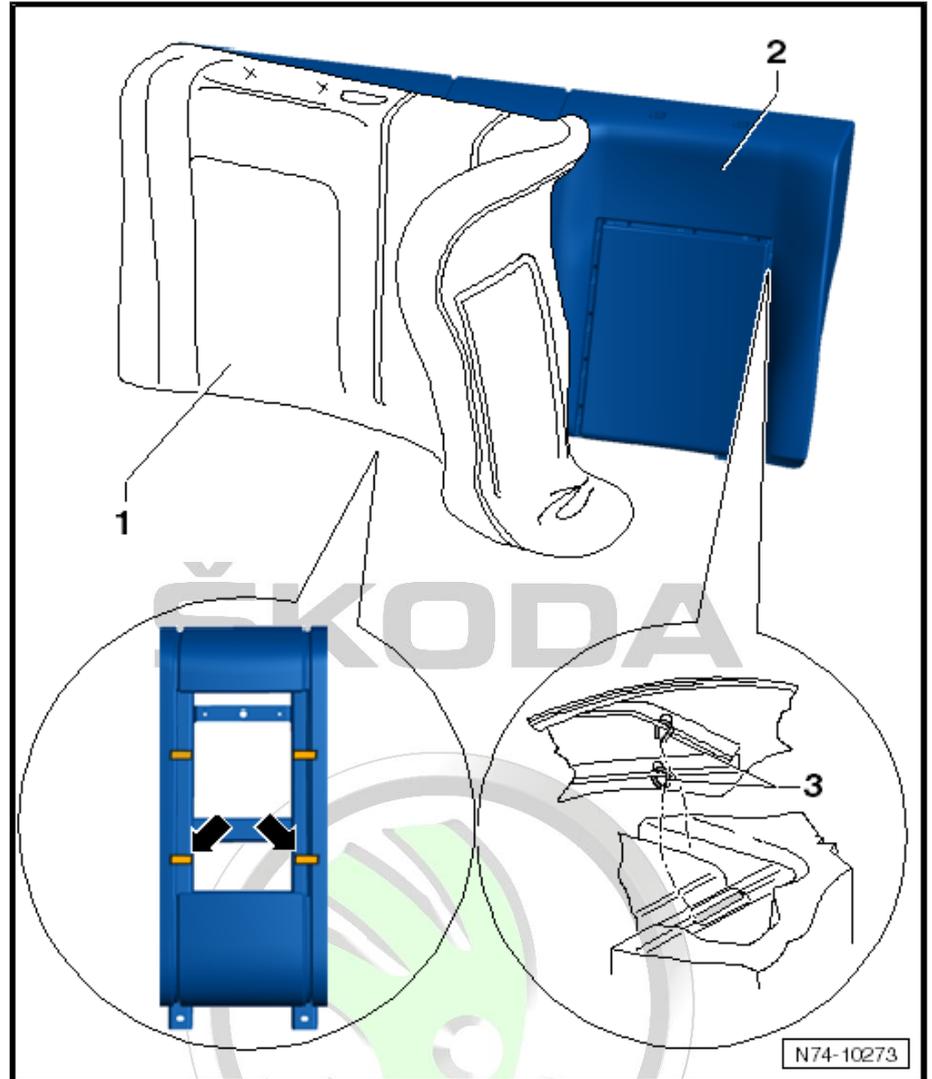
- Remove the backrest ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Open the double-braided strip -2- of the cover -1- on the rear side of the backrest and fold up in -direction of arrow B-.
- Remove all the upholstery retaining clips -arrow A- on both sides.
- Roll up the cover on the sides.



- Remove all the upholstery retaining clips - 3 - on the front side.
- Remove the cover -1- from the upholstery -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©



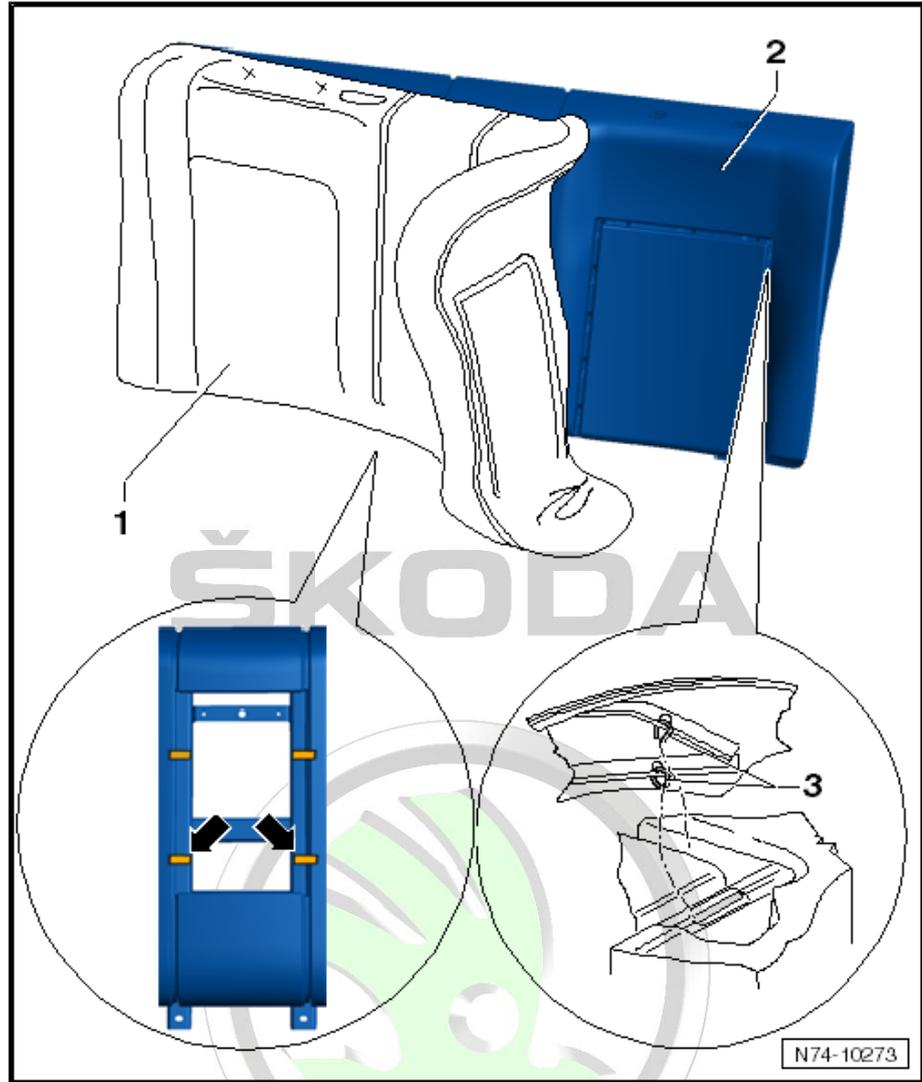
Installing:

- Attach the cover - 1 - with new upholstery retaining clips - 3 - to the upholstery - 2 - using the upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- .

i Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©

On vehicles with armrest, replace the upholstery retaining clips in the area of the armrest cutout -arrows-.



Further installation occurs in reverse order.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ŠKODA AUTO A. S. does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ŠKODA AUTO A. S. ©